

PROJECT MANUAL

CURTIS HALL RENOVATIONS

Castine, ME

Maine Maritime Academy

CHA Project Number 076982

BGS Project Number 3397

100% Construction Documents – Issued for Bidding
November 22, 2023



Prepared by:
CHA Architecture, P.C.
49 Dartmouth Street
Portland, Maine 04101
207-775-1059
www.chasolutions.com

PROJECT MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| Document 002113 | Instructions to Bidders |
| Document 004113 | Contractor Bid Form |
| Document 005213 | Contract Agreement |
| Document 006113.13 | Contractor Performance Bond |
| Document 006113.16 | Contractor Payment Bond |
| Document 007100 | Definitions |
| Document 007213 | General Conditions |
| Document 007346 | Wage Determination Schedule |

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

| | |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Section 011000 | General Requirements |
| Section 011080 | Health and Safety Procedures |
| Section 012100 | Allowances |
| Section 012200 | Unit Prices |
| Section 012300 | Alternates |
| Section 013220 | Photographic Documentation |
| Section 014000 | Special Inspections |
| Section 016200 | Substitution Request Form |
| Section 017400 | Construction Waste Management |
| Section 018120 | Construction Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management |

DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

| | |
|----------------|------------|
| Section 024100 | Demolition |
|----------------|------------|

DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| Section 033000 | Cast-In-Place Concrete |
| Section 037300 | Concrete Rehabilitation |

DIVISION 04 - MASONRY

| | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Section 042000 | Unit Masonry |
| Section 047200 | Cast Stone Masonry |

DIVISION 05 - METALS

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| Section 051200 | Structural Steel |
| Section 052100 | Steel Joists |
| Section 053100 | Steel Deck |
| Section 054000 | Cold-Formed Metal Framing |
| Section 055000 | Metal Fabrications |

DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Section 061000 | Rough Carpentry |
| Section 061600 | Sheathing |

Section 064020 Interior Architectural Woodwork
Section 064200 Paneling

DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

Section 070150 Modifications to Existing Roofing
Section 072100 Thermal Insulation
Section 072419 Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)
Section 072700 Air Barriers
Section 074200 Metal Wall Panels
Section 075300 EPDM Roofing
Section 076200 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
Section 077100 Roof Specialties
Section 077200 Roof Accessories
Section 078410 Penetration Firestopping
Section 078440 Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
Section 079200 Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

Section 081110 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
Section 081210 Interior Aluminum Frames
Section 081400 Flush Wood Doors
Section 083110 Access Doors and Frames
Section 084110 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
Section 085110 Aluminum Windows
Section 087100 Door Hardware
Section 088000 Glazing

DIVISION 09 - FINISHES

Section 092110 Gypsum Board Assemblies
Section 092120 Gypsum Board Shaft-Wall Assemblies
Section 093000 Tiling
Section 095100 Acoustical Ceilings
Section 096513 Resilient Wall Base and Accessories
Section 096800 Carpeting
Section 097200 Wall Coverings
Section 099000 Painting and Coating

DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES

Section 101100 Visual Display Surfaces
Section 101400 Signage
Section 102800 Toilet Accessories
Section 102819 Shower Enclosures
Section 104400 Fire Protection Specialties

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT (NOT USED)

DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS

Section 122400 Shades
Section 124810 Entrance Floor Mats and Frames

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

Section 211000 Fire-Suppression Sprinklers

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

Section 220700 Plumbing Insulation
Section 220800 Commissioning of Plumbing
Section 221116 Domestic Water Piping
Section 221316 Plumbing Sanitary and Storm Piping
Section 223500 Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers
Section 224000 Plumbing Fixtures

DIVISION 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

Section 230500 Common Work Results for Mechanical
Section 230593 Testing, Adjusting, And Balancing for Hvac
Section 230700 Mechanical Insulation
Section 230800 Commissioning of HVAC
Section 230900 Instrumentation and Control for Hvac
Section 230993 Sequence of Operations
Section 232113 Hydronic HVAC Piping
Section 232123 Hydronic Pumps
Section 232213 Steam and Condensate Piping
Section 232300 Refrigerant Piping
Section 233113 Ductwork
Section 233423 Power and Gravity Ventilators
Section 233424 Exhaust Capture Systems
Section 233713 Diffusers, Registers, And Grilles
Section 235700 Steam to Hot Water Converters
Section 237200 Air-To-Air Energy Recovery Equipment
Section 237433 Dedicated Outdoor-Air Units
Section 238129 Variable-Refrigerant-Flow Hvac Systems
Section 238216 Duct Mounted Hot Water Heating Coils
Section 238219 Fan-Coil Units
Section 238233 Convection Heating Units
Section 238239 Cabinet Unit Heaters

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

Section 260010 Supplemental Requirements for Electrical
Section 260100 Basic Electrical Requirements
Section 260513 Medium-Voltage Cables
Section 260519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
Section 260526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
Section 260529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
Section 260533 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
Section 260543 Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
Section 260544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
Section 260548 Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
Section 260553 Identification for Electrical Systems
Section 260572 Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study
Section 260573 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study
Section 260574 Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study

| | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Section 260800 | Commissioning of Electrical Systems |
| Section 260923 | Lighting Control Devices |
| Section 261219 | Pad-Mounted, Liquid-Filled, Medium-Voltage Transformers |
| Section 262413 | Switchboards |
| Section 262416 | Panelboards |
| Section 262713 | Electricity Metering |
| Section 262726 | Wiring Devices |
| Section 262813 | Fuses |
| Section 262816 | Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers |
| Section 262913 | Enclosed Controllers |
| Section 263213.13 | Diesel Emergency Engine Generators |
| Section 263600 | Transfer Switches |
| Section 265119 | LED Interior Lighting |
| Section 265600 | Exterior Lighting |

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

| | |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section 280513 | Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security |
| Section 283111 | Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System |
| Section 283115 | Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System |

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

| | |
|----------------|------------------|
| Section 311000 | Site Clearing |
| Section 312213 | Rough Grading |
| Section 312316 | Excavation |
| Section 312317 | Trenching |
| Section 312318 | Rock Removal |
| Section 312323 | Backfill |
| Section 322513 | Erosion Controls |
| Section 313800 | Geotextiles |

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Section 321216 | Asphaltic Paving |
| Section 323119 | Decorative Metal Fences and Gates |
| Section 329219 | Seeding |

DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES

| | |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Section 331113 | Public Water Utility Distribution Piping |
| Section 331216 | Water Utility Distribution Valves |
| Section 331300 | Disinfection of Water Utility Systems |
| Section 333100 | Sanitary Sewage Systems |
| Section 337119 | Electrical Underground Ducts, Ductbanks, and Manholes |

APPENDICES

TBD

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

Notice to Contractors and Subcontractors**Curtis Hall Renovation at Maine Maritime Academy
BGS Project No. 3397**

Curtis Hall, is the only residence hall at Maine Maritime Academy, and requires extensive building system repairs and upgrades. The proposed scope of work includes, but is not limited to, upgrades of mechanical, plumbing, electrical, fire protection and heating systems as well as the building windows and some exterior work. The 159,000 square foot building, constructed in three phases between 1969 and 1973, at maximum capacity houses approximately 650 students in 315 rooms. The first floor primarily consists of Administrative Offices providing a range of student and health services. The ground floor contains the Academy's Bookstore and utility rooms. The building will remain in service during renovations, and construction will be conducted in 4 phases, allowing for construction in one vacant phase at a time.

The cost of the work (prime Contractor contract) is approximately \$ 28,000,000. The contract shall designate the Substantial Completion Date on or before *31 July 2026*, and the Contract Final Completion Date on or before *28 August 2026*.

1. Sealed Contractor bids, in envelopes plainly marked "Bid for *Curtis Hall Renovation*" and addressed to:

*Hildy Lowell
Maine Maritime Academy
Purchasing Department
1 Pleasant St.
Castine, ME 04421*

will be opened and read aloud at *Maine Maritime Academy Holmes Heritage Room in the Alford Student Center, 1 Pleasant Street, Castine, Maine* at **2:00:00 p.m.** on **11 January 2024** and shall **include (5) hard copies and (1) digital copy**. Any bid submitted after the noted time will not be considered a valid bid and will remain unopened.

2. The bids shall be submitted on the Contractor Bid Form (section 00 41 13) and Subcontractor Bid Form (section 00 41 16) provided in the Bid Documents. The Owner reserves the right to accept or reject any or all bids as may best serve the interest of the Owner.
3. Bid security *is required* on this project.
The Bidder shall include a satisfactory Bid Bond (sections 00 43 13 and 00 43 16) or a certified or cashier's check for 5% of the bid amount with the completed bid form submitted to the Owner. The Bid Bond form is available on the BGS website.
4. Performance and Payment Bonds *are required* on this project.
The selected Contractor and Filed Sub-bid contractors shall furnish their respective 100% contract Performance Bonds (section 00 61 13.13 and 00 61 13.23) and 100% contract Payment Bonds (section 00 61 13.16 and 00 61 13.26) in their contract amounts to cover the execution of the Work. Bond forms are available on the BGS website.
5. Filed Sub-bids *are required* on this project.
The Bidder shall include in the bid all Filed Sub-bids identified in the Bid Documents and shown on the Contractor Bid Form (section 00 41 13). Filed Sub-bids are due at the Maine Construction Bid

Notice to Contractors and Subcontractors

Depository at **2:00 p.m.** on **18 December 2023**. Bids submitted after the noted time will not be accepted.

6. There *are no* Pre-qualified General Contractors on this project.
If Pre-qualified General Contractors are identified for this project, the name of each company, with their city and state, are listed below.
n/a

7. An on-site pre-bid conference *will be* conducted for this project.
If a pre-bid conference is scheduled, it is *mandatory* for General Contractors and optional for Subcontractors and suppliers. Contractors who arrive late or leave early for a mandatory meeting may be prohibited from participating in this meeting and bidding. *A mandatory pre-submission briefing and tour of the building is scheduled for December 6, 2023 at 1:00 PM, at MMA's Curtis Residence Hall, located at 66 Pleasant Street, Castine, ME. Please contact the MMA Owner's Representative, Jake Jacobs, Colliers Project Leaders, to register jake.jacobs@collierseng.com. Do not contact MMA concerning this meeting.*

8. Bid Documents - full sets only - will be available on or about *27 November 2023* and may be obtained *in PDF format at no cost* from:
BGS website:
<https://www.maine.gov/dafs/bgs/business-opportunities>

9. Bid Documents may be examined at:

| | |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>AGC Maine</i> | <i>Construction Summary</i> |
| <i>188 Whitten Road</i> | <i>734 Chestnut Street</i> |
| <i>Augusta, ME 04330</i> | <i>Manchester, NH 03104</i> |
| <i>Phone 207-622-4741 Fax 207-622-1625</i> | <i>Phone 603-627-8856 Fax 603-627-4524</i> |

00 21 13
Instructions to Bidders

1. Bidder Requirements

- 1.1 A bidder is a Contractor which is evidently qualified, or has been specifically pre-qualified by the Bureau of General Services, to bid on the proposed project described in the Bid Documents.
- 1.2 Contractors and Subcontractors bidding on projects that utilize Filed Sub-bids shall follow the requirements outlined in these Bid Documents for such projects. See Section 00 22 13 for additional information.
- 1.3 Contractors and Subcontractors are not eligible to bid on the project when their access to project design documents prior to the bid period distribution of documents creates an unfair bidding advantage. Prohibited access includes consultation with the Owner or with design professionals engaged by the Owner regarding cost estimating, constructability review, or project scheduling. This prohibition to bid applies to open, competitive bidding or pre-qualified contractor bidding or Filed Sub-bidding. The Bureau may require additional information to determine if the activities of a Contractor constitute an unfair bidding advantage.
- 1.4 Each bidder is responsible for becoming thoroughly familiar with the Bid Documents prior to submitting a bid. The failure of a bidder to review evident site conditions, to attend available pre-bid conferences, or to receive, examine, or act on addenda to the Bid Documents shall not relieve that bidder from any obligation with respect to their bid or the execution of the work as a Contractor.
- 1.5 Prior to the award of the contract, General Contractor bidders or Filed Sub-bidders may be required to provide documented evidence to the Owner or the Bureau showing compliance with the provisions of this section, their business experience, financial capability, or performance on previous projects.
- 1.6 The selected General Contractor bidder will be required to provide proof of insurance before a contract can be executed.
- 1.7 Contracts developed from this bid shall not be assigned, sublet or transferred without the written consent of the Owner.
- 1.8 By submitting a bid the Contractor attests that it has not been declared ineligible to bid on State of Maine projects. The Director of the Bureau of General Services may disallow award of this contract to any Contractor if there is evidence that the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors, through their own fault, have been terminated, suspended for cause, debarred from bidding, agreed to refrain from bidding as part of a settlement, have defaulted on a contract, or had a contract completed by another party.
- 1.9 The Contractor attests that it is not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a Federal, State or local government entity with commission of any of the following offenses and has not within a three-year period preceding this bid been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction, or contract under a public transaction, violation of Federal or State anti-trust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property.

00 21 13
Instructions to Bidders

- 1.10 The Contractor shall not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or State of Maine projects.

2. Authority of Owner
 - 2.1 The Owner reserves the right to accept or reject any or all bids as may best serve the interest of the Owner.

 - 2.2 Subject to the Owner's stated right to accept or reject any or all bids, the Contractor shall be selected on the basis of the lowest dollar value of an acceptable Base Bid, or any combination of Base Bid plus Alternate Bids, as well as other limited cost modifications the Owner determines may best serve the interests of the Owner. An acceptable bid is a duly submitted bid from a responsive and responsible bidder.

 - 2.3 The Owner reserves the right to require Bid Bonds or Performance and Payment Bonds for any project of any contract value.

3. Submitting Bids and Bid Requirements
 - 3.1 Each bid shall be submitted on the forms provided in the Bid Documents.

 - 3.2 Each bid shall be valid for a period of thirty calendar days following the Project bid closing date and time. The bid expiration date may be extended in unusual circumstances by mutual consent of the Bidder and the Owner. The bid amount shall not be modified due to the bid expiration date extension.

 - 3.3 Any provision contained in a bid which shows cost escalation, or any modification of schedule or other requirements shall not be accepted. Such a provision causes the bid to be invalid, or, at the discretion of the Owner and BGS, that element of the bid submission may be disregarded for the purpose of awarding the contract without that provision.

 - 3.4 Bidders shall include a Bid Bond or other approved bid security with the bid form submitted to the Owner when the bid form indicates such bid security is required. The bond value shall be 5% of the bid amount. The form of bond is shown in section 00 43 13.

 - 3.5 Bidders recognize that inclusion of contract bonds and the cost of those bonds is dependent on the awarded contract dollar value. Therefore, a Base Bid, or any combination of Base Bid plus Alternate Bids, as well as other limited cost modifications, resulting in a contract award shall include the cost of Performance and Payment Bonds in the submitted bid amount when the construction contract value is over \$125,000.00. Similarly, the cost of Performance and Payment Bonds is excluded in the submitted bid amount when the construction contract value is \$125,000.00 or less unless bonds are specifically required by the Bid Documents. When required for the project, the selected Contractor shall provide these bonds before a contract can be executed, pursuant to 14 M.R.S.A., Section 871, Public Works Contractors' Surety Bond Law of 1971, subsection 3. The form of bonds is shown in section 00 61 13.13 and 00 61 13.16.

00 21 13
Instructions to Bidders

- 3.6 Bidders may modify bids in writing, by the same means as the original bid submission, prior to the bid closing time. Such written amendments shall not disclose the amount of the initial bid. If so disclosed, the entire bid is considered invalid.
- 3.7 Bidders implicitly acknowledge all Addenda issued when they submit the bid form. By usual practice the Consultant shall not issue Addenda less than 72 hours prior to the bid closing time, to allow ample time for bidders to incorporate the information. However, some information, such as extending the bid due date and time, may be issued with shorter notice. Addenda shall be issued to all companies who are registered holders of Bid Documents.
- 3.8 A bid may be withdrawn without penalty if a written request by the bidder is presented to the Owner prior to the bid closing time. Such written withdrawal requests are subject to verification as required by the Bureau.
- A bid may be withdrawn without penalty after the bid closing time if, in the determination of the Bureau, evidence provided by the Contractor shows an apparent unintended error such as a miscalculation, or an erroneous number on estimating documents, was the cause of an inaccurate bid. The Bureau may allow withdrawal in consideration of the bid bond or, without utilizing a bid bond, if the Bureau considers documented evidence provided by the Contractor shows factual errors had been made on the bid form.
- 3.9 In the event State of Maine Offices unexpectedly close on the published date of a public bid opening in the location of that bid opening, prior to the time of the scheduled deadline, the new deadline for the public bid opening will be the following business day at the originally scheduled hour of the day, at the original location. Official closings are posted on the State of Maine government website.
- 3.10 The Owner may require, in a Notice of Intent to Award letter to the apparent low bidder, a Schedule of Values, Project Schedule, and List of Subcontractors and Suppliers as both a demonstration of capability of the Bidder and as a condition of award.
- 3.11 Projects which require a State of Maine wage determination will include that schedule as part of the Bid Documents. See section 00 73 46, if such rates are required.
- 3.12 Projects which require compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act are subject to the regulations contained the Code for Federal Regulations and the federal wage determination which is made a part of the Bid Documents. See section 00 73 46, if such rates are required.
- 3.13 The Owner is exempt from the payment of Maine State sales and use taxes as provided in 36 M.R.S. §1760 (1). The Contractor and Subcontractors shall not include taxes on exempt items in the construction contract.

Instructions to Filed Sub-bidders**1. Filed Sub-bidder Requirements**

- 1.1 A Filed Sub-bidder is a Subcontractor, and in some cases a General Contractor electing to bid in a Subcontractor capacity, which is evidently qualified to bid on a defined portion of the proposed project.
- 1.2 Each Filed Sub-bidder is responsible for all necessary familiarity with all relevant portions of the Bid Documents. Failure of the Filed Sub-bidder to acknowledge Addenda, for example, may result in disqualification of the Filed Sub-bid.
- 1.3 A Filed Sub-bidder may need to meet certain qualifications as a prerequisite to bidding.
- 1.4 By submitting a bid the Filed Sub-bidder attests that they have not been declared ineligible to bid on State of Maine projects. The Director of the Bureau of General Services may disallow award of this contract to any Filed Sub-bidder if there is evidence that they, through their own fault, have been terminated, suspended for cause, debarred from bidding, agreed to refrain from bidding as part of a settlement, or has defaulted on a contract or had a contract completed by another party.
- 1.5 The Filed Sub-bidder attests that it is not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a Federal, State or local government entity with commission of any of the following offenses and has not within a three-year period preceding this bid been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction, or contract under a public transaction, violation of Federal or State anti-trust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property.
- 1.6 The Filed Sub-bidder shall not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or State of Maine projects.

2. Description of the Bid Depository

- 2.1 The Maine Construction Bid Depository (Bid Depository) is operated and managed by the Associated General Contractors of Maine (AGC Maine). The Bid Depository is located at the office of the Associated General Contractors of Maine, 188 Whitten Road, Augusta, Maine 04430, telephone 207-622-4741.
- 2.2 The Bid Depository is a system that maintains a high quality of bidding practices by documenting the receipt of Subcontractor sealed bid envelopes at a particular place, date and time prior to the submission of General Contractor bids to an Owner for a particular project. The bid envelopes are logged in and safeguarded, unopened, then distributed to the appropriate General Contractors and the Owner.
- 2.3 Filed sub-bids from major Subcontractors allow the General Contractor an ample period of time to compile bids in a complete and accurate manner prior to the Contractor bid closing date. The intent of this system is to protect the best interests of Owners, General Contractors, Subcontractors, Architects and Engineers.

Instructions to Filed Sub-bidders

3. The Maine Construction Bid Depository Advisory Committee
 - 3.1 The Maine Construction Bid Depository Advisory Committee (Advisory Committee) is maintained to provide Owners advice and counsel concerning the administration of the bid depository filed bid system.
 - 3.2 The Advisory Committee consists of two Architects, two Engineers, two Subcontractors and two General Contractors selected by the AGC Maine Building Committee, in consultation with the Maine chapters of the American Institute of Architects (AIA), American Council of Engineering Companies (ACEC), and Associated Builders and Contractors (ABC). Additionally, two at-large members are selected by the Advisory Committee.
 - 3.3 Meetings of the Advisory Committee shall be called as necessary by AGC Maine, acting as secretariat, or by a quorum of the committee membership. A quorum consists of any three members of the committee.
 - 3.4 If an aggrieved party believes the Bid Depository procedures were violated, they may request an opinion from the Advisory Committee. Formal complaints concerning the administration of the filed bid system must be submitted in writing to the Owner, with a copy of the complaint submitted to the Architect. Upon receipt of the complaint, the Owner should seek advice and counsel from the Bid Depository Advisory Committee before responding to the complaint.

4. Owner's Use of the Bid Depository
 - 4.1 The Owner shall determine if the Filed Sub-bid process will be employed in the project.
 - 4.2 The Owner shall determine which sections will be designated for each distinct Filed Sub-bid.
 - 4.3 The fee for the use of the Bid Depository is paid by the Owner.

5. Submitting Filed Sub-bids
 - 5.1 Each bid should be placed in official envelopes provided by the Bid Depository and on official forms obtained from the Bid Depository or Architect.
 - 5.2 Three types of official envelopes should be used.
 - a) A sealed large *white* envelope containing the following small pink and green envelopes, and a bid bond, separate from the pink and green envelopes;
 - b) A sealed *pink* envelope addressed to each General Contractor to whom the Filed Sub-bidder intends to bid, containing a complete bid form;
 - c) A sealed *green* envelope addressed to the Bid Depository containing a copy of each bid, and a listing of any General Contractors intentionally omitted by the Subcontractor.

Instructions to Filed Sub-bidders

- 5.3 Each Filed Sub-bid shall include only those sections or combined sections required by the Bid Documents, including all Addenda issued from the Architect's office more than 72 hours prior to Filed Sub-bid closing time.
- 5.4 Filed Sub-bids that do not comply in materials, forms or content may be rejected by the Bid Depository or the Owner.
- 5.5 Filed Sub-bids may be delivered or mailed to the Bid Depository. Filed Sub-bidders assume the risk of delivery by any method.
- 5.6 Filed Sub-bidders may bid any amount to any General Contractor.
- 5.7 Filed Sub-bidders may bid to any or all General Contractors.
- 5.8 General Contractors may select any valid Filed Sub-bid, regardless of relative cost.
- 5.9 General Contractors may use their own forces or a subsidiary company for one or more complete trade sections. The General Contractor is required to submit the Filed Sub-bid as any Filed Sub-bidder would, according to the instruction of this section regarding the Bid Depository, even if bidding only to their own company. Such a bid shall include a statement of the General Contractor's qualifications to perform the work (such as names, relevant certifications and licenses, experience and references of key personnel, and a list of equipment, as appropriate), inserted in the *green* envelope. The Owner shall determine the validity of those stated qualifications and may require further documentation.
- 5.10 General Contractors intending to use their own forces or a subsidiary company shall notify the Bid Depository. The General Contractor is also advised to notify Subcontractors of their intent to submit Filed Sub-bids to clarify the expectations concerning the General Contractor receiving Filed Sub-bids.
- 5.11 Filed Sub-bids may be modified by bidders prior to the Filed Sub-bid closing time. Such written amendments shall not disclose the amount of the initial Filed Sub-bid. If so disclosed, the entire Filed Sub-bid will be declared void.
- 5.12 Filed Sub-bidders acknowledge all Addenda issued in a timely manner as a consequence of submitting the bid form. The Architect shall not issue Addenda affecting Filed Sub-bid trades less than 72 hours prior to the Filed Sub-bid closing time. Addenda will be issued to all companies who are registered holders of Bid Documents.
- 5.13 Filed Sub-bidders shall include a Bid Bond with each bid form submitted to a General Contractor. The bond value shall be 5% of the bid amount. The form of bond is shown in section 00 43 16.
- 5.14 Filed Sub-bidders shall include the cost of Performance and Payment Bonds in the bid amount. If selected by a selected General Contractor, the Filed Sub-bidder shall provide these bonds before a contract will be executed. The form of bonds are shown in section 00 61 13.23 and 00 61 13.26.
- 5.15 In the event a Filed Sub-bidder has failed to bid to a General Contractor as intended, the Filed Sub-bidder shall take the following actions:

Instructions to Filed Sub-bidders

- a) Notify the Bid Depository in writing, not later than 24 hours prior to the closing date for General Contractors, in this manner: "*<name of Filed Sub-bidder> now intends to, but previously did not bid to <name of subject General Contractor> on the <name of project>. Please consider our bid addressed to <name of another General Contractor> as if it were also submitted to <name of subject General Contractor>.*"
 - b) Notify the subject General Contractor of the situation, in writing.
- 5.16 Filed Sub-bids may be withdrawn without penalty if documented in writing by bidders prior to the Filed Sub-bid closing time. Such written withdrawals are subject to whatever verification is required by the Bid Depository. After the Filed Sub-bid closing time, no such request will be considered until after the General Contractor closing time.
6. Receiving Filed Sub-bids
- 6.1 The Bid Depository will provide a receipt, when requested, for each large white envelope submitted.
 - 6.2 The Bid Depository date-and-time-stamps each large white envelope, and collects all such envelopes for the project.
 - 6.3 Filed Sub-bids received by the Bid Depository after the designated closing date and time shall be date-and-time-stamped and returned, unopened.
 - 6.4 The large *white* envelopes containing Filed Sub-bids are opened in the presence of any interested party immediately after the closing time by an official representative of the Bid Depository. The Bid Depository creates a log of all submissions, noting bid bonds, if required, and prepares distribution of Filed Sub-bids to General Contractors and Owners.
 - 6.5 The *pink* envelopes are picked up by the General Contractor. The Bid Depository may require the General Contractor to sign acknowledgement of receipt of the envelopes. The Bid Depository may mail envelopes to the General Contractor upon request, at the risk and expense of the General Contractor.
 - 6.6 In a similar fashion to the above, the *green* envelopes are transmitted to the Owner. Bonds, if required, are also transmitted to the Owner.
7. General Contractor Bids Containing Filed Sub-bids
- 7.1 Each bidding General Contractor shall submit a bid form containing the information received from Filed Sub-bidders. If a GC bid contains a dollar amount different from that filed by a Filed Sub-bidder, the bid amount filed shall be substituted for the amount submitted by the General Contractor. The General Contractor bid shall be corrected prior to the selection of a General Contractor.
 - 7.2 In the event the Owner determines that a General Contractor bid includes an invalid Filed Sub-bid, the Owner may substitute a valid apparent low dollar amount Filed Sub-bid submitted to that

00 22 13
Instructions to Filed Sub-bidders

General Contractor. Any action such as this would not be done until after the General Contractor bid closing.

- 7.3 The Owner may request substitution of a Filed Sub-bidder that has submitted a lower bid to the General Contractor than the Filed Sub-bidder designated by the General Contractor on their bid form. This, or other circumstances where the Owner requests a change in Filed Sub-bidder, is subject to the agreement of General Contractor and Filed Sub-bidder.

**00 41 13
Contractor Bid Form**

Curtis Hall Renovation at Maine Maritime Academy

BGS project number 3397

Bid Form submitted by: *paper documents only to address below*

Bid Administrator:

Deane Rykerson
Bureau of General Services
111 Sewall Street, Cross State Office Building, 4th floor
77 State House Station
Augusta, Maine 04333-0077

BGS.Architect@Maine.gov

Bidder:

Signature: _____

Printed name and title: _____

Company name: _____

Mailing address: _____

City, state, zip code: _____

Phone number: _____

Email address: _____

State of incorporation, if a corporation: _____

List of all partners, if a partnership: _____

The Bidder agrees, if the Owner offers to award the contract, to provide any and all bonds and certificates of insurance, as well as Schedule of Values, Project Schedule, and List of Subcontractors and Suppliers if required by the Owner, and to sign the designated Construction Contract within twelve calendar days after the date of notification of such acceptance, except if the twelfth day falls on a State of Maine government holiday or other closure day, or a Saturday, or a Sunday, in which case the aforementioned documents must be received before 12:00 noon on the first available business day following the holiday, other closure day, Saturday, or Sunday.

As a guarantee thereof, the Bidder submits, together with this bid, a bid bond or other acceptable instrument as and if required by the Bid Documents.

**00 41 13
Contractor Bid Form**

1. The Bidder, having carefully examined the *Curtis Hall Renovations at Maine Maritime* Project Manual dated *22 November 2023*, prepared by *CHA Architecture, PC*, as well as Specifications, Drawings, and any Addenda, the form of contract, and the premises and conditions relating to the work, proposes to furnish all labor, equipment and materials necessary for and reasonably incidental to the construction and completion of this project for the **Base Bid** amount of:

\$ _____ .00

2. Allowances are included on this project.

Bid amount above includes the following Allowances

Allowance No. 1: Transformer work with CMP leased transformer..

\$ 75,000.00

3. Alternate Bids are included on this project.

Alternate Bids are as shown below

Any dollar amount line below that is left blank by the Bidder shall be read as a bid of **\$0.00**.

1 *Dorm room and Dorm bathroom light fixtures* \$ _____ .00

2 *Common area light fixtures* \$ _____ .00

3 *VRF systems for Ground, Intermediate, and First Floors in Phase 1 and Phase 4* \$ _____ .00

4 *Courtyard exterior doors* \$ _____ .00

5 *Structural floor remediation at walk-off mat* \$ _____ .00

6 *Structural floor remediation at two additional locations* \$ _____ .00

7 *Community bathroom sink aprons* \$ _____ .00

8 *Unit Price A – Radiator covers* \$ _____ .00

9 *Unit Price B – Roof membrane replacement*\$ _____ .00

10 *Unit Price C – Drywall ceiling removal and replacement* \$ _____ .00

11 *Unit Price D – Bathroom sink apron replacement* \$ _____ .00

12 *Unit Price E – CMU block wall replacement* \$ _____ .00

**00 41 13
Contractor Bid Form**

| | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------|
| <i>13 Unit Price F – Metal stud wall replacement</i> | \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>14 Unit Price G – Fiberglass shower unit replacement</i> | \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>15 Unit Price H – Ledge removal</i> | \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>16 Unit Price I – Circuit breakers in new or existing panels</i> | 1. \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| | 2. \$ | _____ <u> </u> |
| | 3. \$ | _____ <u> </u> |
| <i>17 Unit Price J – Lighting Control</i> | 1. \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| | 2. \$ | _____ <u> </u> |
| <i>18 Unit Price K- Emergency Lighting</i> | 1. \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| | 2. \$ | _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>19 Unit Price L – Fire Alarm</i> | 1. | _____ <u>\$.00</u> |
| | 2. | _____ <u>\$.00</u> |
| | 3. | _____ <u>\$.00</u> |
| | 4. | _____ <u>\$.00</u> |
| | 5. | _____ <u>\$.00</u> |

4. Bid security *is required* on this project.
If noted above as required, or if the Base Bid amount exceeds \$125,000.00, the Bidder shall include with this bid form a satisfactory Bid Bond (section 00 43 13) or a certified or cashier's check for 5% of the bid amount with this completed bid form submitted to the Owner.

5. Filed Sub-bids *are* on this project.
If noted above as required, the Bidder shall include with this bid form a list of each Filed Sub-bidder selected by the Bidder on the form provided (section 00 41 13F).

00 41 13F
Bid Form - Named Filed Sub-bidders

Curtis Hall Renovation at Maine Maritime Academy
BGS project number 3397

Bidder:

Company name: _____

7. Filed Sub-bidders.

The Bidder names the following Filed Sub-bidders, whose bids have been duly submitted to the Maine Construction Bid Depository and to the Bidder, as the Subcontractors for Base Bid work and any required Alternate Bid work. The Bid shall incorporate dollar amounts which are no less than the bid amounts each named Filed Sub-bidder submitted to the Bidder for the Base Bid work and any required Alternate Bid work.

Name of Filed Sub-bidder

22 00 00 *Plumbing* _____

23 00 00 *HVAC* _____

26 00 00 *Electrical* _____

00 00 00 *insert MasterFormat title* _____

00 00 00 *insert MasterFormat title* _____

00 00 00 *insert MasterFormat title* _____

00 00 00 *insert MasterFormat title* _____

**00 41 16
Subcontractor Bid Form**

**Curtis Hall Renovation at Maine Maritime Academy
BGS Project No. 3397**

To: Maine Construction Bid Depository

The undersigned Subcontractor, called the "Filed Sub-bidder", hereby submits this bid to:
(check only one of the following boxes)

- All Contractors
- All Contractors *Except* those listed below
- Only* Contractors listed below

Filed Sub-bidder:

Signature: _____

Printed name and title: _____

Company name: _____

Mailing address: _____

City, state, zip code: _____

Phone number: _____

Email address: _____

State of incorporation,
if a corporation: _____

List of all partners,
if a partnership: _____

00 41 16
Subcontractor Bid Form

The Filed Sub-bidder agrees, if selected as a Subcontractor of the selected General Contractor, to enter into the designated Contractor-Subcontractor contract according to the terms of this bid, and sign the contract within seven calendar days after the date of notification of such selection, and to provide the General Contractor with a 100% Performance Bond and a 100% Payment Bond for the Subcontractor portion of the work, and to provide any and all affidavits of insurance specified in the Bid Documents.

1. The *Filed Sub-bidder*, having carefully examined the *Curtis Hall Renovation* Project Manual dated *22 November 2023*, prepared by *CHA Architecture P.C.*, as well as Specifications, Drawings, and any Addenda, the form of contract, and the premises and conditions relating to the work, proposes to furnish all labor, equipment and materials necessary for and reasonably incidental to the construction and completion of this project, a propos the “Filed Sub-bidder” scope of work, for the **total Filed Sub-bid Base Bid** amount of:

\$ _____ .00

This Filed Sub-bid includes the following specification sections and dollar amounts for each section. The sum of all filled-in dollar amount lines below shall equal the **total Filed Sub-bid Base Bid** amount shown above. The Filed Sub-bidder shall indicate a dollar amount only for those lines on which they are submitting a bid.

| | |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>22 00 00 Plumbing</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>23 00 00 HVAC</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>26 00 00 Electrical</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>00 00 00 insert MasterFormat title</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>00 00 00 insert MasterFormat title</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>00 00 00 insert MasterFormat title</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |
| <i>00 00 00 insert MasterFormat title</i> | \$ _____ <u>.00</u> |

00 41 16
Subcontractor Bid Form

2. Allowances are included on this project.
 Bid amount above includes the following Allowances

Allowance No. 1 : Transformer work with CMP leased transformer. \$ 75,000.00

3. Alternate Bids are included on this project.
 Alternate Bids are as shown below
 Any dollar amount line below that is left blank by the Bidder shall be taken as a bid of **\$0.00**.

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----|-------|-----|
| 1 Dorm room and dorm bathroom light fixtures | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 2 Common area light fixtures | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 3 Heat pumps for ground and first floor areas | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 4 Courtyard exterior doors | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 5 Structural floor remediation at walk-off mat | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 6 Structural floor remediation at two additional locations | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 7 Community bathroom sink aprons | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 8 Unit Price A – Radiator covers | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 9 Unit Price B – Roof membrane replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 10 Unit Price C – Drywall ceiling removal and replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 11 Unit Price D – Bathroom sink apron replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 12 Unit Price E – CMU block wall replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |

00 41 16
Subcontractor Bid Form

| | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------|-------|--------|
| 13 Unit Price F – Metal stud wall replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 14 Unit Price G – Fiberglass shower unit replacement | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 15 Unit Price H – Ledge removal | \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 16 Unit Price I – Circuit breakers in new or existing panels | 1. \$ | _____ | .00 |
| | 2. \$ | _____ | _____ |
| | 3. \$ | _____ | _____ |
| 17 Unit Price J – Lighting Control | 1. \$ | _____ | .00 |
| | 2. \$ | _____ | _____ |
| 18 Unit Price K- Emergency Lighting | 1. \$ | _____ | .00 |
| | 2. \$ | _____ | .00 |
| 19 Unit Price L – Fire Alarm | 1. | _____ | \$.00 |
| | 2. | _____ | \$.00 |
| | 3. | _____ | \$.00 |
| | 4. | _____ | \$.00 |
| | 5. | _____ | \$.00 |

4. Bid security *is required* on this project.
The Filed Sub-bidder shall include a satisfactory Bid Bond (section 00 43 16) or a certified or cashier's check for 5% of the bid amount with this completed bid form.

5. Filed Sub-bids *are required* on this project.
The Bid Documents show all of the Filed Sub-bids which are required for this project. Separate Subcontractor Bid Forms are required for each trade category.

**00 43 13
Contractor Bid Bond**

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Contractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto select title of obligee in the penal sum of five percent of the bid amount, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, signed this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the first specified bid due date, or subsequent bid due date revised by addendum.

The condition of the above obligation is such that whereas the principal has submitted to the Owner, or State of Maine, to a certain bid, attached hereto and hereby made a part hereof, to enter into a contract in writing, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents

Now therefore:

If said bid shall be rejected, or, in the alternate,

If said bid shall be accepted and the principal shall execute and deliver a contract in the form of contract attached hereto, properly completed in accordance with said bid, and shall furnish a bond for the faithful performance of said contract, and for the payment of all persons performing labor or furnishing material in connection therewith, and shall in all other respects perform the agreement created by the acceptance of said bid, then this obligation shall be void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time within which the Obligee may accept such bid and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**00 43 13
Contractor Bid Bond**

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the first specified bid due date, or subsequent bid due date revised by addendum.

Contractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

*insert address
insert city state zip code*

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

*insert address
insert city state zip code*

If Contractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

00 43 16
Subcontractor Bid Bond

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Subcontractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto select title of obligee in the penal sum of five percent of the bid amount, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, signed this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the first specified Subcontractor bid due date, or subsequent bid due date revised by addendum.

The condition of the above obligation is such that whereas the principal has submitted to the Owner, or State of Maine, to a certain Subcontractor bid, attached hereto and hereby made a part hereof, to enter into a subcontract in writing with any Contractor listed in said Subcontractor bid, provided the designated Contractor has entered into a written agreement with the Owner, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents.

Now therefore:

If said Subcontractor bid shall be rejected, or, in the alternate,

If said Subcontractor bid shall be accepted and the principal shall execute and deliver a subcontract to the Contractor designated by the Owner in the form of subcontract attached hereto, properly completed in accordance with said Subcontractor bid, and shall furnish a bond for the faithful performance of said subcontract, and for the payment of all persons performing labor or furnishing material in connection therewith, and shall in all other respects perform the agreement created by the acceptance of said Subcontractor bid, then this obligation shall be void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time within which the Obligee may accept such Subcontractor bid and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

00 43 16
Subcontractor Bid Bond

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this *insert date, i.e.: 8th* day of *select month, select year*, which is the same date as that of the first specified Subcontractor bid due date, or subsequent bid due date revised by addendum.

Subcontractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address
insert city state zip code

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address
insert city state zip code

If Subcontractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

**State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

Large Construction Project

*This form is used when the Contract value is \$50,000 or greater.
The Project Manual, Specifications and Drawings, and any Addenda are considered part of this Contract.*

Agreement entered into by and between the contracting entity name hereinafter called the **Owner** and Contractor company name hereinafter called the **Contractor**.

BGS Project No.: number assigned by BGS Other Project No.: _____

For the following Project: title of project as shown on bid documents at facility or campus name, municipality, Maine.

The Specifications and the Drawings have been prepared by Consultant firm name, acting as Professional-of-Record and named in the documents as the Consultant Architect or Engineer.

The *Owner* and *Contractor* agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 COMPENSATION AND PAYMENTS

1.1 The Owner shall pay the Contractor to furnish all labor, equipment, materials and incidentals necessary for the construction of the Work described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings the Contract Amount as shown below.

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Base Bid | \$0.00 |
| <u>Alternate Bid number and name or "no Alternates"</u> | \$0.00 |
| <u>Alternate Bid number and name or "no Alternates"</u> | \$0.00 |
| <u>Alternate Bid number and name or "no Alternates"</u> | \$0.00 |
| <u>Alternate Bid number and name or "no Alternates"</u> | \$0.00 |
| <u>Alternate Bid number and name or "no Alternates"</u> | \$0.00 |
| Total Contract Amount | \$0.00 |

1.2 The Contractor’s requisition shall contain sufficient detail and supporting information for the Owner to evaluate and support the payment requested.

1.2.1 Payments are due and payable twenty-five working days from the date of receipt of a Contractor requisition which is approved by the Owner.

1.2.2 Provisions for late payments are governed by 5 M.R.S. Chapter 144, *Payment of Invoices Received from Business Concerns*, and interest shall be calculated at 1% per month.

ARTICLE 2 COMMENCEMENT AND COMPLETION DATES

2.1 The Work of this Contract shall commence no sooner than the date this document is executed by the approval authority, or a subsequent date designated in the contract documents.

2.2 The Substantial Completion Date shall be _____.

2.3 The Work of this Contract shall be completed on or before the Contract Final Completion Date of _____.

2.4 The Contract Expiration Date shall be _____. (This date is the Owner's deadline for internal management of contract accounts. The Contract Expiration Date does not directly relate to any contract obligation of the Contractor.)

ARTICLE 3 INELIGIBLE BIDDER

3.1 By signing this contract the Contractor attests that it has not been declared ineligible to bid on State of Maine projects. The Bureau of General Services may disallow award of this contract to any Contractor if there is evidence that the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors, through their own fault, have been terminated, suspended for cause, debarred from bidding, agreed to refrain from bidding as part of a settlement, have defaulted on a contract, or had a contract completed by another party.

3.2 By signing this contract the Contractor attests that it is not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a Federal, State or local government entity with commission of any of the following offenses and has not within a three-year period preceding this bid been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction, or contract under a public transaction, violation of Federal or State anti-trust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property.

3.3 The Contractor shall not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or State of Maine projects.

ARTICLE 4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

4.1 On this project, the Contractor *shall* furnish the Owner the appropriate contract bonds in the amount of 100% of the Contract Sum. Contract bonds are mandated if the Contract Sum exceeds \$125,000, or if bonds are specifically required by the Contract Documents.

4.2 The Contractor shall comply with all laws, codes and regulations applicable to the Work.

4.3 The Contractor shall acquire all permits and third-party approvals applicable to the Work not specifically identified as provided by the Owner. Costs for Contractor-provided permits and third-party approvals shall be included in the Contract Sum identified in Section 1.1 above.

4.4 The Contractor shall remain an independent agent for the duration of this Contract, shall not become an employee of the State of Maine, and shall assure that no State employee will be compensated by, or otherwise benefit from, this Contract.

4.5 The Contractor shall be responsible for any design cost, construction cost, or other cost incurred on the Project to the extent caused by the negligent acts, errors or omissions of the Contractor or their Subcontractors in the performance of Work under this Contract.

ARTICLE 5 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

5.1 The Owner shall provide full information about the objectives, schedule, constraints and existing conditions of the project. The Owner has established a budget with reasonable contingencies that meets the project requirements.

5.2 By signing this contract, the Owner attests that all State of Maine procurement requirements for this contract have been met, including the solicitation of competitive bids.

ARTICLE 6 INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

6.1 The Contractor's use of the drawings, specifications and other documents known as the Consultant's Instruments of Service is limited to the execution of the Contractor's scope of work of this project unless the Contractor receives the written consent of the Owner and Consultant for use elsewhere.

ARTICLE 7 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

7.1 This Contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Maine.

7.2 The Owner and Contractor, respectively, bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to this Contract. Neither party to this Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other party, which consent the Owner may withhold without cause.

7.3 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, if the Owner does not receive sufficient funds to fund this Agreement or funds are de-appropriated, or if the Owner does not receive legal authority from the Maine State Legislature or Maine Courts to expend funds intended for this Agreement, then the Owner is not obligated to make payment under this Agreement; provided, however, the Owner shall be obligated to pay for services satisfactorily performed prior to any such non-appropriation in accordance with the termination provisions of this Agreement. The Owner shall timely notify the Contractor of any non-appropriation and the effective date of the non-appropriation.

ARTICLE 8 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

8.1 The Project Manual, Specifications and Drawings, and any Addenda, together with this agreement, form the contract. Each element is as fully a part of the Contract as if hereto attached or herein repeated.

8.2 Specifications: **indicate date of issuance of project manual**

8.3 Drawings: **note here or attach each sheet number and title**

8.4 Addenda: **note each addenda number and date, or "none"**

BGS Project No.: _____

The Contract is effective as of the date executed by the approval authority.

OWNER

CONTRACTOR

Signature *Date*
name and title

Signature *Date*
name and title

name of contracting entity
address

name of contractor company
address

telephone
email address

telephone
email address
Vendor Number

Indicate the names of the review and approval individuals appropriate to the approval authority.

| | | | |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| select proper approval authority | | | |
| Reviewed by: | | Approved by: | |
| _____ <i>Signature</i> | _____ <i>Date</i> | _____ <i>Signature</i> | _____ <i>Date</i> |
| <i>insert name</i> | | <i>Joseph H. Ostwald</i> | |
| <i>Project Manager/ Contract Administrator</i> | | <i>Director, Planning, Design & Construction</i> | |

00 52 16
Subcontract Agreement

State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION SUBCONTRACT

Agreement entered into by and between the Contractor company name hereinafter called the *Contractor*, and Subcontractor company name hereinafter called the *Subcontractor*.

The *Contractor* and the *Subcontractor* agree as follows:

ARTICLE 1 COMPENSATION AND PAYMENTS

1.1 The Contractor shall pay the Subcontractor to perform the subcontract Work described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings and defined by attachments to this subcontract the Contract Sum of \$0.00.

ARTICLE 2 TIME OF COMPLETION

2.1 The Work of this Contract shall be completed according to the established construction schedule, on or before the Contract Final Completion Date of 31 December 2024.

ARTICLE 3 INELIGIBLE BIDDER

3.1 By signing this subcontract the Subcontractor attests that it has not been declared ineligible to bid on State of Maine projects. The Bureau of General Services may disallow award of this contract to any Subcontractor if there is evidence that the Subcontractor, through their own fault, have been terminated, suspended for cause, debarred from bidding, agreed to refrain from bidding as part of a settlement, have defaulted on a contract, or had a contract completed by another party.

3.2 By signing this contract the Subcontractor attests that it is not presently indicted for or otherwise criminally or civilly charged by a Federal, State or local government entity with commission of any of the following offenses and has not within a three-year period preceding this bid been convicted of or had a civil judgment rendered against them for commission of fraud or a criminal offense in connection with obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public (Federal, State or local) transaction, or contract under a public transaction, violation of Federal or State anti-trust statutes or commission of embezzlement, theft, forgery, bribery, falsification or destruction of records, making false statements, or receiving stolen property.

3.3 The Subcontractor shall not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party which is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in Federal assistance programs or State of Maine projects.

ARTICLE 4 SUBCONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

4.1 The *Subcontractor* shall furnish all of the materials and perform all the Work described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings for the project entitled: title of project shown on documents prepared by Architect - Engineer firm name, for the specification sections here described: list all sections- for this subcontract only- by number and name.

4.2 *Not used.*

00 52 16
Subcontract Agreement

4.3 The Subcontractor shall comply with all laws, codes and regulations applicable to the Work.

4.4 *Not used.*

4.5 The Subcontractor shall remain an independent agent for the duration of this subcontract, shall not become an employee of the State of Maine, and shall assure that no State employee will be compensated by, or otherwise benefit from, this subcontract.

ARTICLE 5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

5.1 The Contractor shall share all relevant available information about the objectives, schedule, constraints and existing conditions of the project.

ARTICLE 6 INSTRUMENTS OF SERVICE

6.1 The Subcontractor's use of the Drawings, Specifications and other documents known as the Consultant's Instruments of Service is limited to the execution of the Subcontractor's scope of work of this project unless the Subcontractor receives the written consent of the Owner and Consultant for use elsewhere.

ARTICLE 7 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

7.1 This Contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Maine.

7.2 The Contractor and Subcontractor, respectively, bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to this Contract. Neither party to this Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other party, which consent the Contractor may withhold without cause.

7.3 Subcontract bonds are required for projects utilizing Filed Sub-bids. The Subcontractor shall furnish the Contractor the appropriate subcontract bonds in the amount of 100% of the contract amount.

7.4 The Contractor shall make payments on account of the subcontract as provided therein as follows: each month 95% of the value, based on contract prices of labor and materials incorporated in the Work and of materials suitably stored at the site thereof up to the first day of that month, as certified by the Architect or Engineer.

7.5 Final payment shall be due 60 days after completion and acceptance of the Work, provided the Subcontractor has submitted evidence satisfactory to the Contractor and the Owner that all payrolls, material bills and other indebtedness connected with the Work has been paid.

7.6 Other provisions. ***There are no other provisions.***

ARTICLE 8 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

8.1 The Project Manual, Specifications and Drawings, and any Addenda, together with this agreement, form the contract. Each element is as fully a part of the Contract as if hereto attached or herein repeated.

8.2 Specifications: ***indicate date of issuance of project manual***

00 52 16
Subcontract Agreement

8.3 Drawings: *note each sheet number and title*

8.4 Addenda: *note each addenda number and date, or "none"*

SAMPLE

00 61 13.13
Contractor Performance Bond

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Contractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto select title of obligee in the penal sum of the Contract Price \$ insert the Contract Price in numbers for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

The condition of the above obligation is such that if the principal shall promptly and faithfully perform the contract entered into this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents, then this obligation shall be null and void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time which the Obligee may accept during the performance of the contract and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**00 61 13.13
Contractor Performance Bond**

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this *insert date, i.e.: 8th* day of *select month, select year*, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract.

Contractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

If Contractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

**00 61 13.16
Contractor Payment Bond**

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Contractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto select title of obligee in the penal sum of the Contract Price \$ insert the Contract Price in numbers for the use and benefit of claimants, defined as an entity having a contract with the principal or with a subcontractor of the principal for labor, materials, or both labor and materials, used or reasonably required for use in the performance of the contract, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

The condition of the above obligation is such that if the principal shall promptly satisfy all claims and demands incurred for all labor and materials, used or required by the principal in connection with the work described in the contract entered into this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents, and shall fully reimburse the obligee for all outlay and expense with said obligee may incur in making good any default of said principal, then this obligation shall be null and void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time which the Obligee may accept during the performance of the contract and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**00 61 13.16
Contractor Payment Bond**

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this *insert date, i.e.: 8th* day of *select month, select year*, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract.

Contractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

If Contractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

00 61 13.23
Subcontractor Performance Bond

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Subcontractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto insert company name of Contractor in the penal sum of the Contract Price \$ insert the Contract Price in numbers for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

The condition of the above obligation is such that if the principal shall promptly and faithfully perform the contract entered into this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents, then this obligation shall be null and void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time which the Obligee or Contractor may accept during the performance of the contract and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**00 61 13.23
Subcontractor Performance Bond**

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this *insert date, i.e.: 8th* day of *select month, select year*, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract.

Subcontractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

insert address

insert city state zip code

If Subcontractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

00 61 13.26
Subcontractor Payment Bond

Bond No.: insert bond number

We, the undersigned, insert company name of Subcontractor, select type of entity of insert name of municipality in the State of insert name of state as principal, and insert name of surety as Surety, are hereby held and firmly bound unto insert company name of Contractor as obligee, in the penal sum of the Contract Price \$ insert the Contract Price in numbers for the use and benefit of claimants, defined as an entity having a contract with the principal or with a subcontractor of the principal for labor, materials, or both labor and materials, used or reasonably required for use in the performance of the contract, for the payment of which, well and truly to be made, we hereby jointly and severally bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

The condition of the above obligation is such that if the principal shall promptly satisfy all claims and demands incurred for all labor and materials, used or required by the principal in connection with the work described in the contract entered into this insert date, i.e.: 8th day of select month, select year, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract, for the construction of insert name of project as designated in the contract documents, and shall fully reimburse the obligee for all outlay and expense with said obligee may incur in making good any default of said principal, then this obligation shall be null and void.

Otherwise, the same shall remain in force and effect- it being expressly understood and agreed that the liability of the Surety for any and all claims hereunder shall, in no event, exceed the penal amount of this obligation as herein stated.

The Surety, for value received hereby stipulates and agrees that the obligation of said Surety and its bonds shall be in no way impaired or affected by any extension of the time which the Obligee or Contractor may accept during the performance of the contract and said Surety does hereby waive notice of any such extension.

**00 61 13.26
Subcontractor Payment Bond**

In witness whereof, the principal and the Surety have hereunto set their hands and seals, and such of them as are corporations have caused their corporate seals to be hereto affixed and these presents to be signed by their proper officers, the day and year first set above.

Signed and sealed this *insert date, i.e.: 8th* day of *select month, select year*, which is the same date as that of the notice of intent to award letter, or in the absence of such a letter, not later than the date the Owner signs the construction contract.

Subcontractor

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

*insert address
insert city state zip code*

Surety

(Signature)

insert name and title

insert company name

*insert address
insert city state zip code*

If Subcontractor is a partnership, all partners shall execute the bond. A power of attorney document indicating that it still is in full force and effect shall be provided by the person executing this bond.

**State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
Application for Payment**

Project name
location / school / campus

Application Number: **1**

Contractor Company name
address
city state zip code

Period Start Date: **1-Jul-2020**
Period End Date: **31-Jul-2020**
BGS Project No.: **n**
Other Project No.: **x**

| | | | |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|
| 1 | Original Contract Amount | | \$0 |
| 2 | Net of Change Orders to Date (from table below) | | \$0 |
| 3 | Contract Sum to Date (line 1 plus or minus line 2) | | \$0 |
| 4 | Total Completed and Stored to Date (column G on Continuation Sheet) | | \$0 |
| 5a | 5% Retainage of Completed Work (columns D + E x 5%) | \$0 | |
| 5b | 5% Retainage of Stored Materials (column F x 5%) | \$0 | |
| 5c | Total Retainage (column I) | | \$0 |
| 6 | Total Earned Less Retainage (line 4 minus line 5c) | | \$0 |
| 7 | Less Previous Approved Applications for Payment (line 6 from previous Application) | | \$0 |
| 8 | Current Payment Due (line 6 minus line 7) | | \$0 |
| 9 | Balance to Finish, Including Retainage (line 3 minus line 6) | \$0 | |

| Change Order Summary | Additions | Deductions |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------|------------|
| Total Changes Approved in Previous Months | \$0 | \$0 |
| Total Changes Approved this Month | \$0 | \$0 |
| Subtotals | \$0 | \$0 |
| Net of Change Orders to Date | | \$0 |

The undersigned Contractor certifies that to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief the Work covered by this Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by the Contractor for Work for which the previous Certificates for Payment were issued and payments received from the Owner, and that current payment shown herein is now due.

Contractor
Type company name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

In accordance with the Contract Documents, based on on-site observations and the data comprising this Application, the Consultant certifies to the Owner that to the best of the Consultant's knowledge, information, and belief the Work has progressed as indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is entitled to payment of the Amount Certified. **Amount Certified:** _____

Consultant (Architect or Engineer)
Type firm name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Owner
Type contracting entity name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Owner's Rep / other - clear this text if not used
Type entity name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Bureau of General Services
Type person's name, title here

signature date

State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
Application for Payment - Continuation Sheet

Application Number: **1**
Period Start Date: **1-Jul-2020**
Period End Date: **31-Jul-2020**
BGS Project No.: **n**
Other Project No.: **x**

Project name

Contractor Company name

page **1**
of **2**

| A | B | C | D | E | F | G | | H | I |
|----------|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| Item No. | Description of Work | Scheduled Value | Work Completed From Previous Application (Previous D + E) | Work Completed From This Period | Total Stored Materials (Not in D or E) | Total Completed and Stored to Date (D + E + F) | Percent Complete (G ÷ C) | Balance to Finish (C - G) | Retainage 5% |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |
| | | \$0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0.0% | \$0 | 0 |

00 62 76.01

| | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|
| | Total | \$0 | \$0 | \$0 | \$0 | \$0 | 0.0% | \$0 | \$0 |
|--|--------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|

State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
Construction Change Directive

Project name
 location / school / campus

C. C. D. Number: **1**
 CP (Change Proposal) Number **1**
 Issue Date of this Document: **31-Oct-2021**

Contractor Company name
 address
 city state zip code

BGS Project No.: **n**
 Other Project No.: **x**

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------|
| CCD Item | Type name of CCD item here | | |
| Description of Work | Type brief description here of work scope here. | | |
| Reason or Necessity of Work | Type brief justification for change here. | | |
| Method of Compensation | Select from drop down box... | Projected Total Cost | \$0 |
| Supporting Documentation | is attached | Projected Calendar Days* | 0 |

* Calendar Days refers to Contract Final Completion Date only.

Fully describe the scope of work of the CCD item in the table above and on attached drawings and specifications as necessary.

Indicate the reason for the work, and the estimated schedule and cost impacts.

This CCD records the order to do the work. The documented actual final time and cost changes are subject to approval in a subsequent Change Order process.

Consultant
 (Architect or Engineer) Type firm name here
 Type person's name, title here

 signature date

Contractor
 Type company name here
 Type person's name, title here

 signature date

Owner
 Type contracting entity name here
 Type person's name, title here

 signature date

Owner's Rep
 Type entity name here
 Type person's name, title here

 signature date

Bureau of General Services
 Division of Planning, Design & Construction
 Type person's name, title here

 signature date

State of Maine
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT
Change Order

Project name
location / school / campus

Change Order Number: 1

Issue Date of this Document: 31-Dec-2022

Contractor Company name
address
city state zip code

BGS Project No.: n
Other Project No.: x

Cost Change

Show Deduct as a negative number, e.g.: "-\$850".

Table with 4 columns: Add, Deduct, Total. Rows include Net Amount of this Change Order, Net Amount of Previous Change Orders, Net of Change Orders to Date, Original Contract Amount, and Revised Contract Amount.

Time Change

Show Deduct as a negative number, e.g.: "-8".

Table with 4 columns: Add, Deduct, Total. Rows include Net Calendar Days Adjusted by this Change Order, Net Calendar Days Adjusted by Previous Change Orders, Net of Change Orders to Date, Original Contract Final Completion Date, and Revised Contract Final Completion Date*.

Consultant (Architect or Engineer)

Type firm name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Contractor

Type company name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Owner

Type contracting entity name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Type Entity, such as "Owner's Rep", or "not used"

Type entity name here
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Bureau of General Services

Division of Planning, Design & Construction
Type person's name, title here

signature date

Attach the "List of Change Order Items" sheet, plus all supporting documentation for each Change Order Item.

Substantial Completion Date: the deadline for first beneficial use by Owner, as certified by Consultant.

* Contract Final Completion Date: the Contractor's final completion deadline for contract work.

Contract Expiration Date: the Owner's deadline for internal management of contract accounts;

Contract Expiration Date does not directly relate to any contract obligation of the Contractor.

Table with 1 column and 3 rows containing dates: 1-Dec-2023, 31-Dec-2023, 29-Feb-2024.

List of Change Order Items

Project name

C. O. Number: 1

Contractor Company name

| CO Item No. | CP No. | Item Name | Reason Code | Calendar Days* | Cost |
|---------------|--------|-------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| 1 | 1 | Type brief name of Change Order Item here | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| | | | | 0 | \$0 |
| Totals | | | | 0 | \$0 |

Reason Codes

- EO Error or omission of Consultant
- UC Unforeseen job site condition
- OC Owner-generated change
- RC Regulatory authority-generated change
- CC Contractor-generated change

* Calendar Days shows Contract Final Completion Date impact only.

Attach this sheet to the BGS "Change Order" cover sheet (with cost and time summaries, and signatures). Attach a "Details" sheet, and other supporting documentation, for each Change Order Item listed above.

General Services

Type person's name, title here

signature

date

00 71 00
Definitions

1. Definitions

- 1.1 *Addendum*: A document issued by the Consultant that amends the Bid Documents. Addenda shall not be issued less than seventy-two hours prior to the specified bid opening time.
- 1.2 *Allowance*: A specified dollar amount for a particular scope of work or service included in the Work that is identified in the Bid Documents and included in each Bidder's Bid. The Contractor shall document expenditures for an Allowance during the Project. Any unused balance shall be credited to the Owner. The Contractor is responsible for notifying the Owner of anticipated expenses greater than the specified amount and the Owner is responsible for those additional expenses.
- 1.3 *Alternate Bid*: The Contractor's written offer of a specified dollar amount, submitted on the Bid Form, for the performance of a particular scope of work described in the Bid Documents. The Owner determines the low bidder based on the sum of the base Bid and any combination of Alternate Bids that the Owner selects.
- 1.4 *Architect*: A Consultant acting as, or supporting, the Professional-of-Record who is responsible for the design of the Project. Equivalent to "Consultant" in State of Maine contract forms.
- 1.5 *Architectural Supplemental Instruction (ASI)*: A written instruction from the Architect for the purpose of clarification of the Contract Documents. An ASI does not alter the Contract Price or Contract Time. ASIs may be responses to RFIs and shall be issued by the Architect in a timely manner to avoid any negative impact on the Schedule of the Work.
- 1.6 *Bid*: The Contractor's written offer of a specified dollar amount or amounts, submitted on a form included in the Bid Documents, for the performance of the Work. A Bid may include bonds or other requirements. A base Bid is separate and distinct from Alternate Bids, being the only cost component necessary for the award of the contract, and representing the minimum amount of Work that is essential for the functioning of the Project.
- 1.7 *Bid Bond*: The security designated in the Bid Documents, furnished by Bidders as a guaranty of good faith to enter into a contract with the Owner, should a contract be awarded to that Bidder.
- 1.8 *Bidder*: Any business entity, individual or corporation that submits a bid for the performance of the work described in the Bid Documents, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative. See also *Responsive and Responsible Bidder*.
- 1.9 *Bid Documents*: The drawings, procurement and contracting requirements, general requirements, and the written specifications -including all addenda, that a bidder is required to reference in the submission of a bid.
- 1.10 *Bureau*: The State of Maine Bureau of General Services, or BGS, in the Department of Administrative and Financial Services.
- 1.11 *Calendar days*: Consecutive days, as occurring on a calendar, taking into account each day of the week, month, year, and any religious, national or local holidays. Calendar days are used for changes in Contract Time.

00 71 00
Definitions

- 1.12 *Certificate of Substantial Completion*: A document developed by the Consultant that describes the final status of the Work and establishes the date that the Owner may use the facility for its intended purpose. The Certificate of Substantial Completion may also include a provisional list of items - a "punch list" - remaining to be completed by the Contractor. The Certificate of Substantial Completion identifies the date from which the project warranty period commences.
- 1.13 *Certificate of Occupancy*: A document developed by a local jurisdiction such as the Code Enforcement Officer that grants permission to the Owner to occupy a building.
- 1.14 *Change Order (CO)*: A document that modifies the contract and establishes the basis of a specific adjustment to the Contract Price or the Contract Time, or both. Change Orders may address correction of omissions, errors, and document discrepancies, or additional requirements. Change Orders should include all labor, materials and incidentals required to complete the work described. A Change Order is not valid until signed by the Contractor, Owner and Consultant and approved by the Bureau.
- 1.15 *Change Order Proposal (COP) (see also Proposal)*: Contract change proposed by the Contractor regarding the contract amount, requirements, or time. The Contractor implements the work of a COP after it is accepted by all parties. Accepted COPs are incorporated into the contract by Change Order.
- 1.16 *Clerk of the Works*: The authorized representative of the Consultant on the job site. Clerk of the Works is sometimes called the Architect's representative.
- 1.17 *Construction Change Directive (CCD)*: A written order prepared by the Consultant and signed by the Owner and Consultant, directing a change in the Work prior to final agreement with the Contractor on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Price or Contract Time, or both.
- 1.18 *Contract*: A written agreement between the Owner and the successful bidder which obligates the Contractor to perform the work specified in the Contract Documents and obligates the Owner to compensate the Contractor at the mutually accepted sum, rates or prices.
- 1.19 *Contract Bonds (also known as Payment and Performance Bonds)*: The approved forms of security, furnished by the Contractor and their surety, which guarantee the faithful performance of all the terms of the contract and the payment of all bills for labor, materials and equipment by the Contractor.
- 1.20 *Contract Documents*: The drawings and written specifications (including all addenda), Standard General Conditions, and the contract (including all Change Orders subsequently incorporated in the documents).
- 1.21 *Contract Expiration Date*: Date determined by the Owner as a deadline for internal management of contract accounts. This allows time after the Contract Final Completion Date for processing the final Requisition for Payment. The Contract Expiration Date does not directly relate to any contract obligation of the Contractor.
- 1.22 *Contract Final Completion Date*: Point of time when the Work is fully completed in compliance with the Contract Documents, as certified by the Consultant. Final payment to the Contractor is due upon Final Completion of the Project.
- 1.23 *Contract Price*: The dollar amount of the construction contract, also called *Contract Sum*.

00 71 00
Definitions

- 1.24 *Contract Time*: The designated duration of time to execute the Work of the contract, with a specific date for completion.
- 1.25 *Contractor*: Also called the "General Contractor" or "GC" the individual or entity undertaking the execution of the general contract work under the terms of the contract with the Owner, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative. The Contractor is responsible for the means, methods and materials utilized in the execution and completion of the Work.
- 1.26 *Consultant*: The Architect or Engineer acting as Professional-of-Record for the Project. The Consultant is responsible for the design of the Project.
- 1.27 *Drawings*: The graphic and pictorial portion of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.
- 1.28 *Engineer*: A Consultant acting as, or supporting, the Professional-of-Record who is responsible for the design of the Project. Equivalent to "Consultant" in State of Maine contract forms.
- 1.29 *Filed Sub-bid*: The designated major Subcontractor's (or, in some cases, Contractor's) written offer of a specified dollar amount or amounts, submitted on a form included in the Bid Documents, for the performance of a particular portion of the Work. A Filed Sub-bid may include bonds or other requirements.
- 1.30 *General Requirements*: The on-site overhead expense items the Contractor provides for the Project, typically including, but not limited to, building permits, construction supervision, Contract Bonds, insurance, field office, temporary utilities, rubbish removal, and site fencing. Overhead expenses of the Contractor's general operation are not included. Sometimes referred to as the Contractor's General Conditions.
- 1.31 *Owner*: The State agency which is represented by duly authorized individuals. The Owner is responsible for defining the scope of the Project and compensation to the Consultant and Contractor.
- 1.32 *Owner's Representative*: The individual or entity contracted by the Owner to be an advisor and information conduit regarding the Project.
- 1.33 *Overhead*: General and administrative expenses of the Contractor's principal and branch offices, including payroll costs and other compensation of Contractor employees, deductibles paid on any insurance policy, charges against the Contractor for delinquent payments, and costs related to the correction of defective work, and the Contractor's capital expenses, including interest on capital used for the work.
- 1.34 *Performance and Payment Bonds (also known as Contract Bonds)*: The approved forms of security, furnished by the Contractor and their surety, which guarantee the faithful performance of all the terms of the contract and the payment of all bills for labor, materials and equipment by the Contractor.
- 1.35 *Post-Bid Addendum*: Document issued by the Consultant that defines a potential Change Order prior to signing of the construction contract. The Post-Bid Addendum allows the Owner to negotiate

00 71 00
Definitions

contract changes with the Bidder submitting the lowest valid bid, only if the negotiated changes to the Bid Documents result in no change or no increase in the bid price.

A Post-Bid Addendum may also be issued after a competitive construction Bid opening to those Bidders who submitted a Bid initially, for the purpose of rebidding the Project work without re-advertising.

- 1.36 *Project*: The construction project proposed by the Owner to be constructed according to the Contract Documents. The Project, a public improvement, may be tied logistically to other public improvements and other activities conducted by the Owner or other contractors.
- 1.37 *Proposal (see also Change Order Proposal)*: The Contractor's written offer submitted to the Owner for consideration containing a specified dollar amount or rate, for a specific scope of work, and including a schedule impact, if any. A proposal shall include all costs for overhead and profit. The Contractor implements the work of a Proposal after it is accepted by all parties. Accepted Proposals are incorporated into the contract by Change Order.
- 1.38 *Proposal Request (PR)*: An Owner's written request to the Contractor for a Change Order Proposal.
- 1.39 *Punch List*: A document that identifies the items of work remaining to be done by the Contractor at the Close Out of a Project. The Punch List is created as a result of a final inspection of the work only after the Contractor attests that all of the Work is in its complete and permanent status.
- 1.40 *Request For Information (RFI)*: A Contractor's written request to the Consultant for clarification, definition or description of the Work. RFIs shall be presented by the Contractor in a timely manner to avoid any negative impact on the Schedule of the Work.
- 1.41 *Request For Proposal (RFP)*: An Owner's written request to the Contractor for a Change Order Proposal.
- 1.42 *Requisition for Payment*: The document in which the Contractor certifies that the Work described is, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief, complete and that all previous payments have been paid by the Contractor to Subcontractors and suppliers, and that the current requested payment is now due. See *Schedule of Values*.
- 1.43 *Responsive and Responsible Bidder*: A bidder who complies, when submitting a bid on a given project, with the following *responsive* standards, as required by the Bid Documents:
- submits specific qualifications to bid the project, if required;
 - attends mandatory pre-bid conferences, if required;
 - submits a bid prior to the close of the bid period;
 - submits a complete bid form;
 - submits a bid without indications of intent contrary to the stated requirements;
 - submits other materials and information, such as bid security, as required;
- and, meets the following minimums regarding these *responsible* standards:
- sustains a satisfactory record of project performance;
 - maintains a permanent place of business in a known physical location;
 - possesses the financial means for short- and long-term operations;
 - possesses the appropriate technical experience and capabilities;
 - employs adequate personnel and subcontractor resources;

00 71 00
Definitions

maintains the equipment needed to perform the work;
complies with the proposed implementation schedule;
complies with the insurance and bonding requirements;
provides post-construction warranty coverage;
and other criteria which can be considered relevant to the contract.

- 1.44 *Retainage*: The amount, calculated at five percent (5%) of the contract value or a scheduled value, that the Owner shall withhold from the Contractor until the work or portion of work is declared substantially complete or otherwise accepted by the Owner. The Owner may, if requested, reduce the amount withheld if the Owner deems it desirable and prudent to do so. (See Title 5 M.R.S.A., Section 1746.)
- 1.45 *Sample*: A physical example provided by the Contractor which illustrates materials, equipment or workmanship and establishes standards by which the Work will be judged.
- 1.46 *Schedule of the Work*: The document prepared by the Contractor and approved by the Owner that specifies the dates on which the Contractor plans to begin and complete various parts of the Work, including dates on which information and approvals are required from the Owner.
- 1.47 *Schedule of Values*: The document prepared by the Contractor and approved by the Owner before the commencement of the Work that specifies the dollar values of discrete portions of the Work equal in sum to the contract amount. The Schedule of Values is used to document progress payments of the Work in regular (usually monthly) requisitions for payment. See *Requisition for Payment*.
- 1.48 *Shop Drawings*: The drawings, diagrams, schedules and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.
- 1.49 *Specifications*: The portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements of the Work for materials, equipment, systems, standards, workmanship, and performance of related services.
- 1.50 *Subcontractor*: An individual or entity undertaking the execution of any part of the Work by virtue of a written agreement with the Contractor or any other Subcontractor. Also, an individual or entity retained by the Contractor or any other Subcontractor as an independent contractor to provide the labor, materials, equipment or services necessary to complete a specific portion of the Work.
- 1.51 *Substantial Completion Date*: Point of time when the Work or a designated portion of the Work is sufficiently complete in compliance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended purpose without unscheduled disruption. Substantial Completion is documented by the date of the Certificate of Substantial Completion signed by the Owner and the Contractor.
- 1.52 *Superintendent*: The representative of the Contractor on the job site, authorized by the Contractor to receive and fulfill instructions from the Consultant.
- 1.53 *Surety*: The individual or entity that is legally bound with the Contractor and Subcontractor to insure the faithful performance of the contract and for the payment of the bills for labor, materials and equipment by the Contractor and Subcontractors.

00 71 00
Definitions

- 1.54 *Work*: The construction and services, whether completed or partially completed, including all labor, materials, equipment and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor and Subcontractors to fulfill the requirements of the Project as described in the Contract Documents.

00 72 13
General Conditions

Table of Contents of this General Conditions Section

1. Preconstruction Conference.....2

2. Intent and Correlation of Contract Documents2

3. Additional Drawings and Specifications3

4. Ownership of Contract Documents3

5. Permits, Laws, and Regulations3

6. Taxes.....4

7. Labor and Wages4

8. Indemnification.....5

9. Insurance Requirements5

10. Contract Bonds7

11. Patents and Royalties.....8

12. Surveys, Layout of Work8

13. Record of Documents8

14. Allowances8

15. Shop Drawings9

16. Samples.....9

17. Substitutions9

18. Assignment of Contract.....10

19. Separate Contracts10

20. Subcontracts10

21. Contractor-Subcontractor Relationship11

22. Supervision of the Work.....12

23. Observation of the Work12

24. Consultant's Status.....13

25. Management of the Premises.....13

26. Safety and Security of the Premises13

27. Changes in the Work15

28. Correction of the Work.....16

29. Owner's Right to do Work.....17

30. Termination of Contract and Stop Work Action17

31. Delays and Extension of Time18

32. Payments to the Contractor18

33. Payments Withheld.....19

34. Liens20

35. Workmanship20

36. Close-out of the Work21

37. Date of Completion and Liquidated Damages21

38. Dispute Resolution22

00 72 13
General Conditions

1. Preconstruction Conference

- 1.1 The Contractor shall, upon acceptance of a contract and prior to commencing work, schedule a preconstruction conference with the Owner and Consultant. The purpose of this conference is as follows.
- 1.1.1 Introduce all parties who have a significant role in the Project, including:
Owner (State agency or other contracting entity)
 Owner's Representative
Consultant (Architect or Engineer)
 Subconsultants
 Clerk-of-the-works
Contractor (GC)
 Superintendent
 Subcontractors
Other State agencies
Construction testing company
Commissioning agent
Special Inspections agent
Bureau of General Services (BGS);
- 1.1.2 Review the responsibilities of each party;
- 1.1.3 Review any previously-identified special provisions of the Project;
- 1.1.4 Review the Schedule of the Work calendar submitted by the Contractor to be approved by the Owner and Consultant;
- 1.1.5 Review the Schedule of Values form submitted by the Contractor to be approved by the Owner and Consultant;
- 1.1.6 Establish routines for Shop Drawing approval, contract changes, requisitions, et cetera;
- 1.1.7 discuss jobsite issues;
- 1.1.8 Discuss Project close-out procedures;
- 1.1.9 Provide an opportunity for clarification of Contract Documents before work begins; and
- 1.1.10 Schedule regular meetings at appropriate intervals for the review of the progress of the Work.

2. Intent and Correlation of Contract Documents

- 2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to describe the complete Project. The Contract Documents consist of various components; each component complements the others. What is shown as a requirement by any one component shall be inferred as a requirement on all corresponding components.
- 2.2 The Contractor shall furnish all labor, equipment and materials, tools, transportation, insurance, services, supplies, operations and methods necessary for, and reasonably incidental to, the construction and completion of the Project. Any work that deviates from the Contract Documents which appears to be required by the exigencies of construction or by inconsistencies in the Contract Documents, will be determined by the Consultant and authorized in writing by the Consultant, Owner and the Bureau prior to execution. The Contractor shall be responsible for requesting clarifying information where the intent of the Contract Documents is uncertain.
- 2.3 The Contractor shall not utilize any apparent error or omission in the Contract Documents to the disadvantage of the Owner. The Contractor shall promptly notify the Consultant in writing of such errors or omissions. The Consultant shall make any corrections or clarifications necessary in such a situation to document the true intent of the Contract Documents.

00 72 13
General Conditions

3. Additional Drawings and Specifications

- 3.1 Upon the written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall provide, at no expense to the Contractor, up to five sets of printed Drawings and Specifications for the execution of the Work.
- 3.2 The Consultant shall promptly furnish to the Contractor revised Drawings and Specifications, for the area of the documents where those revisions apply, when corrections or clarifications are made by the Consultant. All such information shall be consistent with, and reasonably inferred from, the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall do no work without the proper Drawings and Specifications.

4. Ownership of Contract Documents

- 4.1 The designs represented on the Contract Documents are the property of the Consultant. The Drawings and Specifications shall not be used on other work without consent of the Consultant.

5. Permits, Laws, and Regulations

- 5.1 The Owner is responsible for obtaining any zoning approvals or other similar local project approvals necessary to complete the Work, unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents.
- 5.2 The Owner is responsible for obtaining Maine Department of Environmental Protection, Maine Department of Transportation, or other similar state government project approvals necessary to complete the Work, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.
- 5.3 The Owner is responsible for obtaining any federal agency project approvals necessary to complete the Work, unless otherwise indicated in the Contract Documents.
- 5.4 The Owner is responsible for obtaining all easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing facilities.
- 5.5 The Contractor is responsible for obtaining and paying for all permits and licenses necessary for the implementation of the Work. The Contractor shall notify the Owner of any delays, variance or restrictions that may result from the issuing of permits and licenses.
- 5.6 The Contractor shall comply with all ordinances, laws, rules and regulations and make all required notices bearing on the implementation of the Work. In the event the Contractor observes disagreement between the Drawings and Specifications and any ordinances, laws, rules and regulations, the Contractor shall promptly notify the Consultant in writing. Any necessary changes shall be made as provided in the contract for changes in the work. The Contractor shall not perform any work knowing it to be contrary to such ordinances, laws, rules and regulations.
- 5.7 The Contractor shall comply with local, state and federal regulations regarding construction safety and all other aspects of the Work.
- 5.8 The Contractor shall comply with the Maine Code of Fair Practices and Affirmative Action, 5 M.R.S. §784 (2).

00 72 13
General Conditions

6. Taxes

- 6.1 The Owner is exempt from the payment of Maine State sales and use taxes as provided in 36 M.R.S. §1760 (1). The Contractor and Subcontractors shall not include taxes on exempt items in the construction contract.
- 6.2 Section 1760 further provides in subsection 61 that sales to a construction contractor or its subcontractor of tangible personal property that is to be physically incorporated in, and become a permanent part of, real property for sale to or owned by the Owner, are exempt from Maine State sales and use taxes. Tangible personal property is defined in 36 M.R.S. §1752 (17).
- 6.3 The Contractor may contact Maine Revenue Services, 24 State House Station, Augusta, Maine 04333 for guidance on tax exempt regulations authorized by 36 M.R.S. §1760 and detailed in Rule 302 (18-125 CMR 302).

7. Labor and Wages

- 7.1 The Contractor shall conform to the labor laws of the State of Maine, and all other laws, ordinances, and legal requirements affecting the work in Maine.
- 7.2 The Consultant shall include a wage determination document prepared by the Maine Department of Labor in the Contract Documents for state-funded contracts in excess of \$50,000. The document shows the minimum wages required to be paid to each category of labor employed on the project.
- 7.3 On projects requiring a Maine wage determination, the Contractor shall submit monthly payroll records to the Owner ("the contracting agency") showing the name and occupation of all workers and all independent contractors employed on the project. The monthly submission must also include the Contractor's company name, the title of the project, hours worked, hourly rate or other method of remuneration, and the actual wages or other compensation paid to each person.
- 7.4 The Contractor shall not reveal, in the payroll records submitted to the Owner, personal information regarding workers and independent contractors, other than the information described above. Such information shall not include Social Security number, employee identification number, or employee address or phone number, for example.
- 7.5 The Contractor shall conform to Maine statute (39-A M.R.S. §105-A (6)) by providing to the Workers' Compensation Board a list of all subcontractors and independent contractors on the job site and a record of the entity to whom that subcontractor or independent contractor is directly contracted and by whom that subcontractor or independent contractor is insured for workers' compensation purposes.
- 7.6 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among their employees at all times, and shall not employ any person unfit or unskilled to do the work assigned to them.
- 7.7 The Contractor shall promptly pay all employees when their compensation is due, shall promptly pay all others who have billed and are due for materials, supplies and services used in the Work, and shall promptly pay all others who have billed and are due for insurance, workers compensation coverage, federal and state unemployment compensation, and Social Security

00 72 13
General Conditions

charges pertaining to this Project. Before final payments are made, the Contractor shall furnish to the Owner affidavits that all such payments described above have been made.

- 7.8 The Contractor may contact the Maine Department of Labor, 54 State House Station, Augusta, Maine 04333 for guidance on labor issues.
- 7.9 The Contractor may contact the Maine Workers' Compensation Board, 27 State House Station, Augusta, Maine 04333 for guidance on workers' compensation issues.

8. Indemnification

- 8.1 The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner and its officers and employees from and against any and all damages, liabilities, and costs, including reasonable attorney's fees, and defense costs, for any and all injuries to persons or property, including claims for violation of intellectual property rights, to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, its employees, agents, officers or subcontractors in the performance of work under this Agreement. The Contractor shall not be liable for claims to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Owner or for actions taken in reasonable reliance on written instructions of the Owner.
- 8.2 The Contractor shall notify the Owner promptly of all claims arising out of the performance of work under this Agreement by the Contractor, its employees or agents, officers or subcontractors.
- 8.3 This indemnity provision shall survive the termination of the Agreement, completion of the project or the expiration of the term of the Agreement.

9. Insurance Requirements

- 9.1 The Contractor shall provide, with each original of the signed Contract, an insurance certificate or certificates acceptable to the Owner and BGS. The Contractor shall submit insurance certificates to the Owner and BGS at the commencement of this Contract and at policy renewal or revision dates. The certificates shall identify the project name and BGS project number, and shall name the Owner as certificate holder and as additional insured for general liability and automobile liability coverages. The submitted forms shall contain a provision that coverage afforded under the insurance policies will not be canceled or materially changed unless at least ten days prior written notice by registered letter has been given to the Owner and BGS.
- 9.2 The Owner does not warrant or represent that the insurance required herein constitutes an insurance portfolio which adequately addresses all risks faced by the Contractor or its Subcontractors. The Contractor is responsible for the existence, extent and adequacy of insurance prior to commencement of work. The Contractor shall not allow any Subcontractor to commence work until all similar insurance required of the Subcontractor has been confirmed by the Contractor.
- 9.3 The Contractor shall procure and maintain primary insurance for the duration of the Project and, if written on a Claims-Made basis, shall also procure and maintain Extended Reporting Period (ERP) insurance for the period of time that any claims could be brought. The Contractor shall ensure that all Subcontractors they engage or employ will procure and maintain similar insurance

00 72 13
General Conditions

in form and amount acceptable to the Owner and BGS. At a minimum, the insurance shall be of the types and limits set forth herein protecting the Contractor from claims which may result from the Contractor's execution of the Work, whether such execution be by the Contractor or by those employed by the Contractor or by those for whose acts they may be liable. All required insurance coverages shall be placed with carriers authorized to conduct business in the State of Maine by the Maine Bureau of Insurance.

- 9.3.1 The Contractor shall have Workers' Compensation insurance for all employees on the Project site in accordance with the requirements of the Workers' Compensation law of the State of Maine. Minimum acceptable limits for Employer's Liability are:

| | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Bodily Injury by Accident | \$500,000 |
| Bodily Injury by Disease | \$500,000 Each Employee |
| Bodily Injury by Disease | \$500,000 Policy Limit |

- 9.3.2 The Contractor shall have Commercial General Liability insurance providing coverage for bodily injury and property damage liability for all hazards of the Project including premise and operations, products and completed operations, contractual, and personal injury liabilities. The policy shall include collapse and underground coverage as well as explosion coverage if explosion hazards exist. Aggregate limits shall apply on a location or project basis. Minimum acceptable limits are:

| | |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| General aggregate limit | \$2,000,000 |
| Products and completed operations aggregate | \$1,000,000 |
| Each occurrence limit | \$1,000,000 |
| Personal injury aggregate | \$1,000,000 |

- 9.3.3 The Contractor shall have Automobile Liability insurance against claims for bodily injury, death or property damage resulting from the maintenance, ownership or use of all owned, non-owned and hired automobiles, trucks and trailers. Minimum acceptable limit is:
Any one accident or loss.....\$500,000

- 9.3.4 For the portion of a project which is new construction, the Contractor shall procure and maintain Builder's Risk insurance naming the Owner, Contractor, and any Subcontractor as insureds as their interest may appear. Covered causes of loss form shall be all Risks of Direct Physical Loss, endorsed to include flood, earthquake, transit and sprinkler leakage where sprinkler coverage is applicable. Unless specifically authorized in writing by the Owner, the limit of insurance shall not be less than the initial contract amount, for the portion of the project which is new construction, and coverage shall apply during the entire contract period and until the work is accepted by the Owner.

- 9.3.5 The Contractor shall have Owner's Protective Liability insurance for contract values \$50,000 and above, naming the Owner as the Named Insured. Minimum acceptable limits are:
General aggregate limit \$2,000,000 || Each occurrence limit | \$1,000,000 |

10. Contract Bonds

- 10.1 When noted as required in the Bid Documents, the Contractor shall provide to the Owner a Performance Bond and a Payment Bond, or "contract bonds", upon execution of the contract. Each bond value shall be for the full amount of the contract and issued by a surety company authorized to do business in the State of Maine as approved by the Owner. The bonds shall be

00 72 13
General Conditions

executed on the forms furnished in the Bid Documents. The bonds shall allow for any subsequent additions or deductions of the contract.

- 10.2 The contract bonds shall continue in effect for one year after final acceptance of the contract to protect the Owner's interest in connection with the one year guarantee of workmanship and materials and to assure settlement of claims for the payment of all bills for labor, materials and equipment by the Contractor.

11. Patents and Royalties

- 11.1 The Contractor shall, for all time, secure for the Owner the free and undisputed right to the use of any patented articles or methods used in the Work. The expense of defending any suits for infringement or alleged infringement of such patents shall be borne by the Contractor. Awards made regarding patent suits shall be paid by the Contractor. The Contractor shall hold the Owner harmless regarding patent suits that may arise due to installations made by the Contractor, and to any awards made as a result of such suits.
- 11.2 Any royalty payments related to the work done by the Contractor for the Project shall be borne by the Contractor. The Contractor shall hold the Owner harmless regarding any royalty payments that may arise due to installations made by the Contractor.

12. Surveys, Layout of Work

- 12.1 The Owner shall furnish all property surveys unless otherwise specified.
- 12.2 The Contractor is responsible for correctly staking out the Work on the site. The Contractor shall employ a competent surveyor to position all construction on the site. The surveyor shall run the axis lines, establish correct datum points and check each line and point on the site to insure their accuracy. All such lines and points shall be carefully preserved throughout the construction.
- 12.3 The Contractor shall lay out all work from dimensions given on the Drawings. The Contractor shall take measurements and verify dimensions of any existing work that affects the Work or to which the Work is to be fitted. The Contractor is solely responsible for the accuracy of all measurements. The Contractor shall verify all grades, lines, levels, elevations and dimensions shown on the Drawings and report any errors or inconsistencies to the Consultant prior to commencing work.

13. Record of Documents

- 13.1 The Contractor shall maintain one complete set of Contract Documents on the jobsite, in good order and current status, for access by the Owner and Consultant.
- 13.2 The Contractor shall maintain, continuously updated, complete records of Requests for Information, Architectural Supplemental Instructions (or equivalent), Information Bulletins, supplemental sketches, Change Order Proposals, Change Orders, Shop Drawings, testing reports, et cetera, for access by the Owner and Consultant.

00 72 13
General Conditions

14. Allowances

- 14.1 The Contract Price shall include all allowances described in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall include all overhead and profit necessary to implement each allowance in their Contract Price.
- 14.2 The Contractor shall not be required to employ parties for allowance work against whom the Contractor has a reasonable objection. In such a case, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing of their position and shall propose an alternative party to complete the work of the allowance.

15. Shop Drawings

- 15.1 The Contractor shall administer Shop Drawings prepared by the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers or others to conform to the approved Schedule of the Work. The Contractor shall verify all field measurements, check and authorize all Shop Drawings and schedules required by the Work. The Contractor is the responsible party and contact for the Contractor's work as well as that of Subcontractors, suppliers or others who provide Shop Drawings.
- 15.2 The Consultant shall review and acknowledge Shop Drawings, with reasonable promptness, for general conformity with the design concept of the project and compliance with the information provided in the Contract Documents.
- 15.3 The Contractor shall provide monthly updated logs containing: requests for information, information bulletins, supplemental instructions, supplemental sketches, change order proposals, change orders, submittals, testing and deficiencies.
- 15.4 The Contractor shall make any corrections required by the Consultant, and shall submit a quantity of corrected copies as may be needed. The acceptance of Shop Drawings or schedules by the Consultant shall not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for deviations from Drawings and Specifications, unless the Contractor has called such deviations to the attention of the Consultant at the time of submission and secured the Consultant's written approval. The acceptance of Shop Drawings or schedules by the Consultant does not relieve the Contractor from responsibility for errors in Shop Drawings or schedules.

16. Samples

- 16.1 The Contractor shall furnish for approval, with reasonable promptness, all samples as directed by the Consultant. The Consultant shall review and approve such samples, with reasonable promptness, for general conformity with the design concept of the project and compliance with the information provided in the Contract Documents. The subsequent work shall be in accord with the approved samples.

17. Substitutions

- 17.1 The Contractor shall furnish items and materials described in the Contract Documents. If the item or material specified describes a proprietary product, or uses the name of a manufacturer, the term "or approved equal" shall be implied, if it is not included in the text. The specific item or material specified establishes a minimum standard for the general design, level of quality, type, function, durability, efficiency, reliability, compatibility, warranty coverage, installation factors

00 72 13
General Conditions

and required maintenance. The Drawing or written Specification shall not be construed to exclude other manufacturers products of comparable design, quality, and efficiency.

- 17.2 The Contractor may submit detailed information about a proposed substitution to the Consultant for consideration. Particular models of items and particular materials which the Contractor asserts to be equal to the items and materials identified in the Contract Documents shall be allowed only with written approval by the Consultant. The request for substitution shall include a cost comparison and a reason or reasons for the substitution.
- 17.3 The Consultant may request additional information about the proposed substitution. The approval or rejection of a proposed substitution may be based on timeliness of the request, source of the information, the considerations of minimum standards described above, or other considerations. The Consultant should briefly state the rationale for the decision. The decision shall be considered final.
- 17.4 The duration of a substitution review process can not be the basis for a claim for delay in the Schedule of the Work.

18. Assignment of Contract

- 18.1 The Contractor shall not assign or sublet the contract as a whole without the written consent of the Owner. The Contractor shall not assign any money due to the Contractor without the written consent of the Owner.

19. Separate Contracts

- 19.1 The Owner reserves the right to create other contracts in connection with this Project using similar General Conditions. The Contractor shall allow the Owner's other contractors reasonable opportunity for the delivery and storage of materials and the execution of their work. The Contractor shall coordinate and properly connect the Work of all contractors.
- 19.2 The Contractor shall promptly report to the Consultant and Owner any apparent deficiencies in work of the Owner's other contractors that impacts the proper execution or results of the Contractor. The Contractor's failure to observe or report any deficiencies constitutes an acceptance of the Owner's other contractors work as suitable for the interface of the Contractor's work, except for latent deficiencies in the Owner's other contractors work.
- 19.3 Similarly, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Consultant and Owner any apparent deficiencies in their own work that would impact the proper execution or results of the Owner's other contractors.
- 19.4 The Contractor shall report to the Consultant and Owner any conflicts or claims for damages with the Owner's other contractors and settle such conflicts or claims for damages by mutual agreement or arbitration, if necessary, at no expense to the Owner.
- 19.5 In the event the Owner's other contractors sue the Owner regarding any damage alleged to have been caused by the Contractor, the Owner shall notify the Contractor, who shall defend such proceedings at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall pay or satisfy any judgment that may arise against the Owner, and pay all other costs incurred.

00 72 13
General Conditions

20. Subcontracts

- 20.1 The Contractor shall not subcontract any part of this contract without the written permission of the Owner.
- 20.2 The Contractor shall submit a complete list of named Subcontractors and material suppliers to the Consultant and Owner for approval by the Owner prior to commencing work. The Subcontractors named shall be reputable companies of recognized standing with a record of satisfactory work.
- 20.3 The Contractor shall not employ any Subcontractor or use any material until they have been approved, or where there is reason to believe the resulting work will not comply with the Contract Documents.
- 20.4 The Contractor, not the Owner, is as fully responsible for the acts and omissions of Subcontractors and of persons employed by them, as the Contractor is for the acts and omissions of persons directly or indirectly employed by the Contractor.
- 20.5 Neither the Contract Documents nor any Contractor-Subcontractor contract shall indicate, infer or create any direct contractual relationship between any Subcontractor and the Owner.

21. Contractor-Subcontractor Relationship

- 21.1 The Contractor shall be bound to the Subcontractor by all the obligations in the Contract Documents that bind the Contractor to the Owner.
- 21.2 The Contractor shall pay the Subcontractor, in proportion to the dollar value of the work completed and requisitioned by the Subcontractor, the approved dollar amount allowed to the Contractor no more than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner.
- 21.3 The Contractor shall pay the Subcontractor accordingly if the Contract Documents or the subcontract provide for earlier or larger payments than described in the provision above.
- 21.4 The Contractor shall pay the Subcontractor for completed and requisitioned subcontract work, less retainage, no more than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner for the Contractor's approved Requisition for Payment, even if the Consultant fails to certify a portion of the Requisition for Payment for a cause not the fault of the Subcontractor.
- 21.5 The Contractor shall not make a claim for liquidated damages or penalty for delay in any amount in excess of amounts that are specified by the subcontract.
- 21.6 The Contractor shall not make a claim for services rendered or materials furnished by the Subcontractor unless written notice is given by the Contractor to the Subcontractor within ten calendar days of the day in which the claim originated.
- 21.7 The Contractor shall give the Subcontractor an opportunity to present and to submit evidence in any progress conference or disputes involving subcontract work.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 21.8 The Contractor shall pay the Subcontractor a just share of any fire insurance payment received by the Contractor.
- 21.9 The Subcontractor shall be bound to the Contractor by the terms of the Contract Documents and assumes toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities that the Contractor, by those documents, assumes toward the Owner.
- 21.10 The Subcontractor shall submit applications for payment to the Contractor in such reasonable time as to enable the Contractor to apply for payment as specified.
- 21.11 The Subcontractor shall make any claims for extra cost, extensions of time or damages, to the Contractor in the manner provided in these General Conditions for like claims by the Contractor to the Owner, except that the time for the Subcontractor to make claims for extra cost is seven calendar days after the receipt of Consultant's instructions.
22. Supervision of the Work
- 22.1 During all stages of the Work the Contractor shall have a competent superintendent, with any necessary assistant superintendents, overseeing the project. The superintendent shall not be reassigned without the consent of the Owner unless a superintendent ceases to be employed by the Contractor due to unsatisfactory performance.
- 22.2 The superintendent represents the Contractor on the jobsite. Directives given by the Consultant or Owner to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given directly to the Contractor's main office. All important directives shall be confirmed in writing to the Contractor. The Consultant and Owner are not responsible for the acts or omissions of the superintendent or assistant superintendents.
- 22.3 The Contractor shall provide supervision of the Work equal to the industry's highest standard of care. The superintendent shall carefully study and compare all Contract Documents and promptly report any error, inconsistency or omission discovered to the Consultant. The Contractor may not necessarily be held liable for damages resulting directly from any error, inconsistency or omission in the Contract Documents or other instructions by the Consultant that was not revealed by the superintendent in a timely way.
23. Observation of the Work
- 23.1 The Contractor shall allow the Owner, the Consultant and the Bureau continuous access to the site for the purpose of observation of the progress of the work. All necessary safeguards and accommodations for such observations shall be provided by the Contractor.
- 23.2 The Contractor shall coordinate all required testing, approval or demonstration of the Work. The Contractor shall give sufficient notice to the appropriate parties of readiness for testing, inspection or examination.
- 23.3 The Contractor shall schedule inspections and obtain all required certificates of inspection for inspections by a party other than the Consultant.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 23.4 The Consultant shall make all scheduled observations promptly, prior to the work being concealed or buried by the Contractor. If approval of the Work is required of the Consultant, the Contractor shall notify the Consultant of the construction schedule in this regard. Work concealed or buried prior to the Consultant's approval may need to be uncovered at the Contractor's expense.
- 23.5 The Consultant may order reexamination of questioned work, and, if so ordered, the work must be uncovered by the Contractor. If the work is found to conform to the Contract Documents, the Owner shall pay the expense of the reexamination and remedial work. If the work is found to not conform to the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall pay the expense, unless the defect in the work was caused by the Owner's Contractor, whose responsibility the reexamination expense becomes.
- 23.6 The Bureau shall periodically observe the Work during the course of construction and make recommendations to the Contractor or Consultant as necessary. Such recommendations shall be considered and implemented through the usual means for changes to the Work.
24. Consultant's Status
- 24.1 The Consultant represents the Owner during the construction period, and observes the work in progress on behalf of the Owner. The Consultant has authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent expressly provided by the Contract Documents or otherwise demonstrated to the Contractor. The Consultant has authority to stop the work whenever such an action is necessary, in the Consultant's reasonable opinion, to ensure the proper execution of the contract.
- 24.2 The Consultant is the interpreter of the conditions of the contract and the judge of its performance. The Consultant shall favor neither the Owner nor the Contractor, but shall use the Consultant's powers under the contract to enforce faithful performance by both parties.
- 24.3 In the event of the termination of the Consultant's employment on the project prior to completion of the work, the Owner shall appoint a capable and reputable replacement. The status of the new Consultant relative to this contract shall be that of the former Consultant.
25. Management of the Premises
- 25.1 The Contractor shall place equipment and materials, and conduct activities on the premises in a manner that does not unreasonably hinder site circulation, environmental stability, or any long term effect. Likewise, the Consultant's directions shall not cause the use of premises to be impeded for the Contractor or Owner.
- 25.2 The Contractor shall not use the premises for any purpose other than that which is directly related to the scope of work. The Owner shall not use the premises for any purpose incompatible with the proposed work simultaneous to the work of the Contractor.
- 25.3 The Contractor shall enforce the Consultant's instructions regarding information posted on the premises such as signage and advertisements, as well as activities conducted on the premises such as fires, and smoking.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 25.4 The Owner may occupy any part of the Project that is completed with the written consent of the Contractor, and without prejudice to any of the rights of the Owner or Contractor. Such use or occupancy shall not, in and of itself, be construed as a final acceptance of any work or materials.
26. Safety and Security of the Premises
- 26.1 The Contractor shall designate, and make known to the Consultant and the Owner, a safety officer whose duty is the prevention of accidents on the site.
- 26.2 The Contractor shall continuously maintain security on the premises and protect from unreasonable occasion of injury all people authorized to be on the job site. The Contractor shall also effectively protect the property and adjacent properties from damage or loss.
- 26.3 The Contractor shall take all necessary precautions to ensure the safety of workers and others on and adjacent to the site, abiding by applicable local, state and federal safety regulations. The Contractor shall erect and continuously maintain safeguards for the protection of workers and others, and shall post signs and other warnings regarding hazards associated with the construction process, such as protruding fasteners, moving equipment, trenches and holes, scaffolding, window, door or stair openings, and falling materials.
- 26.4 The Contractor shall restore the premises to conditions that existed prior to the start of the project at areas not intended to be altered according to the Contract Documents.
- 26.5 The Contractor shall protect existing utilities and exercise care working in the vicinity of utilities shown in the Drawings and Specifications or otherwise located by the Contractor.
- 26.6 The Contractor shall protect from damage existing trees and other significant plantings and landscape features of the site which will remain a permanent part of the site. If necessary or indicated in the Contract Documents, tree trunks shall be boxed and barriers erected to prevent damage to tree branches or roots.
- 26.7 The Contractor shall repair or replace damage to the Work caused by the Contractor's or Subcontractor's forces, including that which is reasonably protected, at the expense of the responsible party.
- 26.8 The Contractor shall not load, or allow to be loaded, any part of the Project with a force which imperils personal or structural safety. The Consultant may consult with the Contractor on such means and methods of construction, however, the ultimate responsibility lies with the Contractor.
- 26.9 The Contractor shall not jeopardize any work in place with subsequent construction activities such as blasting, drilling, excavating, cutting, patching or altering work. The Consultant must approve altering any structural components of the project. The Contractor shall supervise all construction activities carried out by others on site to ensure that the work is neatly done and in a manner that will not endanger the structure or the component parts.
- 26.10 The Contractor may act with their sole discretion in emergency situations that potentially effect health, life or serious damage to the premises or adjacent properties, to prevent such potential loss or injury. The Contractor may negotiate with the Owner for compensation for expenses due to such emergency work.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 26.11 The Contractor and Subcontractors shall have no responsibility for the identification, discovery, presence, handling, removal or disposal of, or exposure of persons to, hazardous materials in any form at the project site. The Contractor shall avoid disruption of any hazardous materials or toxic substances at the project site and promptly notify the Owner in writing on the occasion of such a discovery.
- 26.12 The Contractor shall keep the premises free of any unsafe accumulation of waste materials caused by the work. The Contractor shall regularly keep the spaces “broom clean”. See the Close-out of the Work provisions of this section regarding cleaning at the completion of the project.
27. Changes in the Work
- 27.1 The Contractor shall not proceed with extra work without an approved Change Order or Construction Change Directive. A Change Order which has been properly signed by all parties shall become a part of the contract.
- 27.2 A Change Order is the usual document for directing changes in the Work. In certain circumstances, however, the Owner may utilize a Construction Change Directive to direct the Contractor to perform changes in the Work that are generally consistent with the scope of the project. The Owner shall use a Construction Change Directive only when the normal process for approving changes to the Work has failed to the detriment of the Project, or when agreement on the terms of a Change Order cannot be met, or when an urgent situation requires, in the Owner's judgment, prompt action by the Contractor.
- 27.3 The Consultant shall prepare the Construction Change Directive representing a complete scope of work, with proposed Contract Price and Contract Time revisions, if any, clearly stated.
- 27.4 The Contractor shall promptly carry out a Construction Change Directive which has been signed by the Owner and the Consultant. Work thus completed by the Contractor constitutes the basis for a Change Order. Changes in the Contract Price and Contract Time shall be as defined in the Construction Change Directive unless subsequently negotiated with some other terms.
- 27.5 The method of determining the dollar value of extra work shall be by:
- .1 an estimate of the Contractor accepted by Owner as a lump sum, or
 - .2 unit prices named in the contract or subsequently agreed upon, or
 - .3 cost plus a designated percentage, or
 - .4 cost plus a fixed fee.
- 27.6 The Contractor shall determine the dollar value of the extra work for both the lump sum and cost plus designated percentage methods so as not to exceed the following rates. The rates include all overhead and profit expenses.
- .1 Contractor - for any work performed by the Contractor's own forces, up to 20% of the cost;
 - .2 Subcontractor - for work performed by Subcontractor's own forces, up to 20% of the cost;
 - .3 Contractor - for work performed by Contractor's Subcontractor, up to 10% of the amount due the Subcontractor.
- 27.7 The Contractor shall keep and provide records as needed or directed for the cost plus designated percentage method. The Consultant shall review and certify the appropriate amount which

00 72 13
General Conditions

- includes the Contractor's overhead and profit. The Owner shall make payments based on the Consultant's certificate.
- 27.8 Cost reflected in Change Orders shall be limited to the following: cost of materials, cost of delivery, cost of labor (including Social Security, pension, Workers' Compensation insurance, and unemployment insurance), and cost of rental of power tools and equipment. Labor cost may include a pro-ratio share of a foreman's time only in the case of an extension of contract time granted due to the Change Order.
- 27.9 Overhead reflected in Change Orders shall be limited to the following: bond premium, supervision, wages of clerks, time keepers, and watchmen, small tools, incidental expenses, general office expenses, and all other overhead expenses directly related to the Change Order.
- 27.10 The Contractor shall provide credit to the Owner for labor, materials, equipment and other costs but not overhead and profit expenses for those Change Order items that result in a net value of credit to the contract.
- 27.11 The Owner may change the scope of work of the Project without invalidating the contract. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of a change of the scope of work for the Owner's Contractors, which may affect the work of this Contractor, without invalidating the contract. Change Orders for extension of the time caused by such changes shall be developed at the time of directing the change in scope of work.
- 27.12 The Consultant may order minor changes in the Work, not involving extra cost, which is consistent with the intent of the design or project.
- 27.13 The Contractor shall immediately give written notification to the Consultant of latent conditions discovered at the site which materially differ from those represented in the Drawings or Specifications, and which may eventually result in a change in the scope of work. The Contractor shall suspend work until receiving direction from the Consultant. The Consultant shall promptly investigate the conditions and respond to the Contractor's notice with direction that avoids any unnecessary delay of the Work. The Consultant shall determine if the discovered conditions warrant a Change Order.
- 27.14 The Contractor shall, within ten calendar days of receipt of the information, give written notification to the Consultant if the Contractor claims that instructions by the Consultant will constitute extra cost not accounted for by Change Order or otherwise under the contract. The Consultant shall promptly respond to the Contractor's notice with direction that avoids any unnecessary delay of the Work. The Consultant shall determine if the Contractor's claim warrants a Change Order.
28. Correction of the Work
- 28.1 The Contractor shall promptly remove from the premises all work the Consultant declares is non-conforming to the contract. The Contractor shall replace the work properly at no expense to the Owner. The Contractor is also responsible for the expenses of others whose work was damaged or destroyed by such remedial work.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 28.2 The Owner may elect to remove non-conforming work if it is not removed by the Contractor within a reasonable time, that time defined in a written notice from the Consultant. The Owner may elect to store removed non-conforming work not removed by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense. The Owner may, with ten days written notice, dispose of materials which the Contractor does not remove. The Owner may sell the materials and apply the net proceeds, after deducting all expenses, to the costs that should have been borne by the Contractor.
- 28.3 The Contractor shall remedy any defects due to faulty materials or workmanship and pay for any related damage to other work which appears within a period of one year from the date of substantial completion, and in accord with the terms of any guarantees provided in the contract. The Owner shall promptly give notice of observed defects to the Contractor and Consultant. The Consultant shall determine the status of all claimed defects. The Contractor shall perform all remedial work without unjustifiable delay in either the initial response or the corrective action.
- 28.4 The Consultant may authorize, after a reasonable notification to the Contractor, an equitable deduction from the contract amount in lieu of the Contractor correcting non-conforming or defective work.
29. Owner's Right to do Work
- 29.1 The Owner may, using other contractors, correct deficiencies attributable to the Contractor, or complete unfinished work. Such action shall take place only after giving the Contractor three days written notice, and provided the Consultant approves of the proposed course of action as an appropriate remedy. The Owner may then deduct the cost of the remedial work from the amount due the Contractor.
- 29.2 The Owner may act with their sole discretion when the Contractor is unable to take action in emergency situations that potentially effect health, life or serious damage to the premises or adjacent properties, to prevent such potential loss or injury. The Owner shall inform the Contractor of the emergency work performed, particularly where it may affect the work of the Contractor.
30. Termination of Contract and Stop Work Action
- 30.1 The Owner may, owing to a certificate of the Consultant indicating that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, without prejudice to any other right or remedy and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety seven days written notice, terminate the employment of the Contractor. At that time the Owner may take possession of the premises and of all materials,

00 72 13
General Conditions

tools and appliances on the premises and finish the work by whatever method the Owner may deem expedient. Cause for such action by the Owner includes:

- .1 the contractor is adjudged bankrupt, or makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors, or
- .2 a receiver is appointed due to the Contractor's insolvency, or
- .3 the Contractor persistently or repeatedly refuses or fails to provide enough properly skilled workers or proper materials, or
- .4 the Contractor fails to make prompt payment to Subcontractors or suppliers of materials or labor, or
- .5 the Contractor persistently disregards laws, ordinances or the instructions of the Consultant, or is otherwise found guilty of a substantial violation of a provision of the Contract Documents.

- 30.2 The Contractor is not entitled, as a consequence of the termination of the employment of the Contractor as described above, to receive any further payment until the Work is finished. If the unpaid balance of the contract amount exceeds the expense of finishing the Work, including compensation for additional architectural, managerial and administrative services, such balance shall be paid to the Contractor. If the expense of finishing the Work exceeds the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The Consultant shall certify the expense incurred by the Contractor's default. This obligation for payment shall continue to exist after termination of the contract.
- 30.3 The Contractor may, if the Work is stopped by order of any court or other public authority for a period of thirty consecutive days, and through no act or fault of the Contractor or of anyone employed by the Contractor, with seven days written notice to the Owner and the Consultant, terminate this contract. The Contractor may then recover from the Owner payment for all work executed, any proven loss and reasonable profit and damage.
- 30.4 The Contractor may, if the Consultant fails to issue a certificate for payment within seven days after the Contractor's formal request for payment, through no fault of the Contractor, or if the Owner fails to pay to the Contractor within 30 days after submission of any sum certified by the Consultant, with seven days written notice to the Owner and the Consultant, stop the Work or terminate this Contract.

31. Delays and Extension of Time

- 31.1 The completion date of the contract shall be extended if the work is delayed by changes ordered in the work which have approved time extensions, or by an act or neglect of the Owner, the Consultant, or the Owner's Contractor, or by strikes, lockouts, fire, flooding, unusual delay in transportation, unavoidable casualties, or by other causes beyond the Contractor's control. The Consultant shall determine the status of all claimed causes.
- 31.2 The contract shall not be extended for delay occurring more than seven calendar days before the Contractor's claim made in writing to the Consultant. In case of a continuing cause of delay, only one claim is necessary.
- 31.3 The contract shall not be extended due to failure of the Consultant to furnish drawings if no schedule or agreement is made between the Contractor and the Consultant indicating the dates

00 72 13
General Conditions

which drawings shall be furnished and fourteen calendar days has passed after said date for such drawings.

31.4 This article does not exclude the recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions in the Contract Document.

32. Payments to the Contractor

- 32.1 As noted under *Preconstruction Conference* in this section, the Contractor shall submit a Schedule of Values form, before the first application for payment, for approval by the Owner and Consultant. The Consultant may direct the Contractor to provide evidence that supports the correctness of the form. The approved Schedule of Values shall be used as a basis for payments.
- 32.2 The Contractor shall submit an application for each payment (“Requisition for Payment”) on a form approved by the Owner and Consultant. The Consultant may require receipts or other documents showing the Contractor's payments for materials and labor, including payments to Subcontractors.
- 32.3 The Contractor shall submit Requisitions for Payment as the work progresses not more frequently than once each month, unless the Owner approves a more frequent interval due to unusual circumstances. The Requisition for Payment is based on the proportionate quantities of the various classes of work completed or incorporated in the Work, in agreement with the actual progress of the Work and the dollar value indicated in the Schedule of Values.
- 32.4 The Consultant shall verify and certify each Requisition for Payment which appears to be complete and correct prior to payment being made by the Owner. The Consultant may certify an appropriate amount for materials not incorporated in the Work which have been delivered and suitably stored at the site. The Contractor shall submit bills of sale, insurance certificates, or other such documents that will adequately protect the Owner’s interests prior to payments being certified.
- 32.5 In the event any materials delivered but not yet incorporated in the Work have been included in a certified Requisition for Payment with payment made, and said materials thereafter are damaged, deteriorated or destroyed, or for any reason whatsoever become unsuitable or unavailable for use in the Work, the full amount previously allowed shall be deducted from subsequent payments unless the Contractor satisfactorily replaces said material.
- 32.6 The Contractor may request certification of an appropriate dollar amount for materials not incorporated in the Work which have been delivered and suitably stored away from the site. The Contractor shall submit bills of sale, insurance certificates, right-of-entry documents or other such documents that will adequately protect the Owner’s interests. The Consultant shall determine if the Contractor's documentation for the materials is complete and specifically designated for the Project. The Owner may allow certification of such payments.
- 32.7 Subcontractors may request, and shall receive from the Consultant, copies of approved Requisitions for Payment showing the amounts certified in the Schedule of Values.
- 32.8 Certified Requisitions for Payment, payments made to the Contractor, or partial or entire occupancy of the project by the Owner shall not constitute an acceptance of any work that does

00 72 13
General Conditions

not conform to the Contract Documents. The making and acceptance of the final payment constitutes a waiver of all claims by the Owner, other than those arising from unsettled liens, from faulty work or materials appearing within one year from final payment or from requirements of the Drawings and Specifications, and of all claims by the Contractor, except those previously made and still unsettled.

33. Payments Withheld

- 33.1 The Owner shall retain five percent of each payment due the Contractor as part security for the fulfillment of the contract by the Contractor. The Owner may make payment of a portion of this “retainage” to the Contractor temporarily or permanently during the progress of the Work. The Owner may thereafter withhold further payments until the full amount of the five percent is reestablished. The Contractor may deposit with the Maine State Treasurer certain securities in place of retainage amounts due according to Maine Statute (5 M.R.S. §1746).
- 33.2 The Consultant may withhold or nullify the whole or a portion of any Requisitions for Payment submitted by the Contractor in the amount that may be necessary, in his reasonable opinion, to protect the Owner from loss due to any of the following:
- .1 defective work not remedied;
 - .2 claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of claims;
 - .3 failure to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers;
 - .4 a reasonable doubt that the contract can be completed for the balance then unpaid;
 - .5 liability for damage to another contractor.

The Owner shall make payment to the Contractor, in the amount withheld, when the above circumstances are removed.

34. Liens

- 34.1 The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a complete release of all liens arising out of this contract before the final payment or any part of the retainage payment is released. The Contractor shall provide with the release of liens an affidavit asserting each release includes all labor and materials for which a lien could be filed. Alternately, the Contractor, in the event any Subcontractor or supplier refuses to furnish a release of lien in full, may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner, to indemnify the Owner against any lien.
- 34.2 In the event any lien remains unsatisfied after all payments to the Contractor are made by the Owner, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the latter may be compelled to pay in discharging such lien, including all cost and reasonable attorney’s fees.

35. Workmanship

- 35.1 The Contractor shall provide materials, equipment, and installed work equal to or better than the quality specified in the Contract Documents and approved in submittal and sample. The installation methods shall be of the highest standards, and the best obtainable from the respective trades. The Consultant’s decision on the quality of work shall be final.

00 72 13
General Conditions

- 35.2 The Contractor shall know local labor conditions for skilled and unskilled labor in order to apply the labor appropriately to the Work. All labor shall be performed by individuals well skilled in their respective trades.
- 35.3 The Contractor shall perform all cutting, fitting, patching and placing of work in such a manner to allow subsequent work to fit properly, whether that be by the Contractor, the Owner's Contractors or others. The Owner and Consultant may advise the Contractor regarding such subsequent work. Notwithstanding the notification or knowledge of such subsequent work, the Contractor may be directed to comply with this standard of compatible construction by the Consultant at the Contractor's expense.
- 35.4 The Contractor shall request clarification or revision of any design work by the Consultant, prior to commencing that work, in a circumstance where the Contractor believes the work cannot feasibly be completed at the highest quality, or as indicated in the Contract Documents. The Consultant shall respond to such requests in a timely way, providing clarifying information, a feasible revision, or instruction allowing a reduced quality of work. The Contractor shall follow the direction of the Consultant regarding the required request for information.
- 35.5 The Contractor shall guarantee the Work against any defects in workmanship and materials for a period of one year commencing with the date of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, unless specified otherwise for specific elements of the project. The Work may also be subdivided in mutually agreed upon components, each defined by a separate Certificate of Substantial Completion.
36. Close-out of the Work
- 36.1 The Contractor shall remove from the premises all waste materials caused by the work. The Contractor shall make the spaces "broom clean" unless a more thorough cleaning is specified. The Contractor shall clean all windows and glass immediately prior to the final inspection, unless otherwise directed.
- 36.2 The Owner may conduct the cleaning of the premises where the Contractor, duly notified by the Consultant, fails to adequately complete the task. The expense of this cleaning may be deducted from the sum due to the Contractor.
- 36.3 The Contractor shall participate in all final inspections and acknowledge the documentation of unsatisfactory work, customarily called the "punch list", to be corrected by the Contractor. The Consultant shall document the successful completion of the Work in a dated Certificate of Substantial Completion, to be signed by Owner, Consultant, and Contractor.
- 36.4 The Contractor shall not call for final inspection of any portion of the Work that is not completely and permanently installed. The Contractor may be found liable for the expenses of individuals called to final inspection meetings prematurely.
- 36.5 The Contractor and all major Subcontractors shall participate in the end-of-warranty-period conference, typically scheduled close to one year after the Substantial Completion date.

**00 72 13
General Conditions**

37. Date of Completion and Liquidated Damages

- 37.1 The Contractor may make a written request to the Owner for an extension or reduction of time, if necessary. The request shall include the reasons the Contractor believes justifies the proposed completion date. The Owner may grant the revision of the contract completion date if the Work was delayed due to conditions beyond the control and the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall not conduct unauthorized accelerated work or file delay claims to recover alleged damages for unauthorized early completion.

- 37.2 The Contractor shall vigorously pursue the completion of the Work and notify the Owner of any factors that have, may, or will affect the approved Schedule of the Work. The Contractor may be found responsible for expenses of the Owner or Consultant if the Contractor fails to make notification of project delays.

- 37.3 The Project is planned to be done in an orderly fashion which allows for an iterative submittal review process, construction administration including minor changes in the Work and some bad weather. The Contractor shall not file delay claims to recover alleged damages on work the Consultant determines has followed the expected rate of progress.

- 37.4 The Consultant shall prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion which, when signed by the Owner and the Contractor, documents the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or a designated portion of the Work. The Owner shall not consider the issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy by an outside authority a prerequisite for Substantial Completion if the Certificate of Occupancy cannot be obtained due to factors beyond the Contractor’s control.

- 37.5 Liquidated Damages may be deducted from the sum due to the Contractor for each calendar day that the Work remains uncompleted after the completion date specified in the Contract or an approved amended completion date. The dollar amount per day shall be calculated using the Schedule of Liquidated Damages table shown below.

| If the original contract amount is: | The per day Liquidated Damages shall be: |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Less than \$100,000 | \$250 |
| \$100,000 to less than \$2,000,000 | \$750 |
| \$2,000,000 to less than \$10,000,000 | \$1,500 |
| \$10,000,000 and greater | \$1,500 plus \$250 for each \$2,000,000 over \$10,000,000 |

38. Dispute Resolution

38.1 Mediation

- 38.1.1 A dispute between the parties which arises under this Contract which cannot be resolved through informal negotiation, shall be submitted to a neutral mediator jointly selected by the parties.

- 38.1.2 Either party may file suit before or during mediation if the party, in good faith, deems it to be necessary to avoid losing the right to sue due to a statute of limitations. If suit is filed before good faith mediation efforts are completed, the party filing suit shall agree to stay all proceedings in the lawsuit pending completion of the mediation process, provided such stay is without prejudice.

00 72 13
General Conditions

38.1.3 In any mediation between the Owner and the Consultant, the Owner has the right to consolidate related claims between Owner and Contractor.

38.2 Arbitration

38.2.1 If the dispute is not resolved through mediation, the dispute shall be settled by arbitration. The arbitration shall be conducted before a panel of three arbitrators. Each party shall select one arbitrator; the third arbitrator shall be appointed by the arbitrators selected by the parties. The arbitration shall be conducted in accordance with the Maine Uniform Arbitration Act (MUAA), except as otherwise provided in this section.

38.2.2 The decision of the arbitrators shall be final and binding upon all parties. The decision may be entered in court as provided in the MUAA.

38.2.3 The costs of the arbitration, including the arbitrators' fees shall be borne equally by the parties to the arbitration, unless the arbitrator orders otherwise.

38.2.4 In any arbitration between the Owner and the Consultant, the Owner has the right to consolidate related claims between Owner and Contractor.

Supplemental General Conditions

These Supplemental Conditions amend or supplement the General Conditions and other provisions of the Contract Documents as indicated below. Where any article, paragraph or subparagraph in the previously set forth conditions is supplemented by one of the following paragraphs, the provisions previously set forth shall remain in effect and the supplemental provision be considered as added thereto. Where any article, paragraph, or subparagraph is voided or superseded by any of the following paragraphs, the provisions of such article, paragraph or subparagraph not so amended, voided or superseded shall remain in effect.

ADDITIONAL ARTICLES

PART TITLE

- | | |
|----|---------------------------------------------|
| 1 | General Requirements |
| 2 | Use of Premises |
| 3 | Transportation |
| 4 | Not Used |
| 5 | Delays |
| 6 | Utility Interruptions |
| 7 | Subsurface and Physical Conditions |
| 8 | Differing Subsurface or Physical Conditions |
| 9 | Underground Facilities |
| 10 | Hazardous Environmental Conditions at Site |

PART 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- 1.1 Contractors and Employees must have a valid Security Pass, issued by Maine Maritime Academy (MMA) Security.
- 1.2 Smoking and Vaping are prohibited on the MMA campus and the immediately adjacent sidewalks and roadways. Please refer to the enclosed link to the Maine Maritime Academy Smoke- and Tobacco-Free Campus Policy (effective August 1, 2016):
<https://mainemaritime.edu/campus-safety/wp-content/uploads/sites/9/2016/01/611-Smoke-and-Tobacco-Free-Campus.pdf>
- 1.3 Construction work hours are 0700 to1900
 This is Per Town of Castine, ARTICLE 6: PERFORMANCE STANDARDS
<https://castine.me.us/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/Zoning-Ordinance-Amended-2020-07-14.pdf>
- 1.4 Construction Noise Limits are covered by: Town of Castine, ARTICLE 6: PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

Supplemental General Conditions

<https://castine.me.us/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/Zoning-Ordinance-Amended-2020-07-14.pdf>

- 1.5 Town of Castine Special Events may have an impact on construction. Contractors may need to revise operations. The contractor shall discuss with the Owner's Representative. <https://castine.me.us/welcome/special-events/>
Special Events may include but are not limited to: Fourth of July Celebration, 2024 Bastille Day and Castine Classic Yacht Race. Exact dates of these events will be published after 1/1/24
- 1.6 Contractor's Excess Materials Management Plan and Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) will require review and approval from Maine Maritime Academy and the Town of Castine. The Contractor shall prepare both plans in accordance with the Project Specifications and provide submittals to Maine Maritime Academy. Maine Maritime Academy will coordinate with the Town of Castine for their review of the Contractor's plans.
- 1.7 The Contractor's construction lighting plan and lighting details shall be submitted as part of the Contractor's Building Permit application to the Town of Castine. Refer to the enclosed links:
<https://castine.me.us/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/Building-Use-Permit-Application-06-21.pdf>
<https://castine.me.us/wp-content/uploads/2021/07/Zoning-Ordinance-Amended-2020-07-14.pdf>

PART 2. USE OF THE PREMISES

- 2.1 Phasing of the construction project is required to allow Curtis Hall to remain in operation as indicated in the Phasing Plans. The Contractor shall coordinate with Maine Maritime Academy throughout the project. See the Project Drawings for more information on Project Phasing.
- 2.2 The Contractor will have minimal use of the grounds around Curtis Hall. Allowable areas will be agreed upon in writing in order to minimize disruption of the occupants' use of the premises. Appropriate site fencing, durable signage, and other safety measures shall be deployed to provide safe passage of students and staff to and from the occupied portions of the building.

PART 3. TRANSPORTATION

- 3.1 Parking is provided at the MMA Penobscot Lot. This lot is located on Route 199 (Dunbar Road) in Penobscot (about 10 minutes from the MMA campus)

Supplemental General Conditions

- 3.2 Contractors and employees are prohibited from parking in Town of Castine parking spaces and along streets. Contractor (and employee) parking on the Maine Maritime Academy campus is prohibited unless otherwise agreed upon in writing at designated locations.
- 3.3 Contractors must obey Maine DOT roadway load ratings. Impacts to local roads shall be minimized by measures such as best practices for reduced loads and dislodged wheel dirt of trucks. <https://www.maine.gov/mdot/postedroads/faqs/>
- 3.4 Employees of the Contractor and their subcontractors shall not live in recreational vehicles on Maine Maritime Academy or Town of Castine property.
- 3.5 Not Used
- 3.6 Concrete wash-down area – A Concrete wash-down area, is provided (if needed) near the Travel lift area at MMA. See the Marine Operations Manager or Owner’s Representative for more information.
- 3.7 Dust Control. The Contractor will be required to maintain all work areas within or outside the project boundaries free from dust, which would cause a hazardous air pollution or nuisance to others. Approved temporary methods of stabilization consisting of sprinkling with water, or other similar methods will be permitted to control dust. Sprinkling, to be approved, must be repeated at such intervals as to keep all parts of the disturbed area at least damp at all times, and the Contractor must have sufficient competent equipment on the job to accomplish this if sprinkling is used. Dust control shall be performed as the work proceeds and whenever a dust nuisance or hazard occurs.
- 3.9 The Contractor shall submit a SWPPP (Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan) to Maine DEP for review.
<https://www.maine.gov/dep/land/permits/index.html>
https://www.maine.gov/dep/water/wd/ms4/model_dwp_swppp.pdf

PART 4. NOT USED

PART 5. DELAYS

- 5.1 Periods of severe weather shall be conclusively deemed to have been anticipated by the Contractor. The Contractor shall be responsible for stopping work and securing the site when weather conditions and forecasts indicate unsafe working conditions. The Contractor shall secure the site whenever dictated by weather conditions and whenever the Contractor schedules a period of 48 hours or more with no work at the site.
- 5.2 It is expressly understood and agreed by and between the Contractor and the Owner, that the time for the completion of the work described herein is a reasonable time for completion of the same, taking into consideration the average climatic range and usual conditions in the locality of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for researching weather from

Supplemental General Conditions

sources such as the National Weather Service (NWS) and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and shall anticipate having to stop work and secure the site due to severe weather conditions.

- 5.2.2 Abnormal weather will be considered a delay and a cause for extension of a Construction Period only if occurring between the actual time of commencement of the Work at the Site and the designated end date for the current Construction Period. An extension shall be granted only to the extent that (i) the performance of the Work is actually and necessarily delayed and (ii) the effect of such cause cannot be anticipated and avoided or mitigated by the exercise of all reasonable precautions, efforts and measures (including planning, scheduling and rescheduling), whether before or after the occurrence of the cause of delay, and an extension shall not be granted for a cause of delay which would not have affected the performance of the Contract were it not for the fault of the Contractor or for other delay for which the Contractor is not entitled to an extension of time.
- 5.2.3 Any reference herein to the Contractor shall be deemed to include subcontractors and materialmen, whether or not in privity of contract with the Contractor, and employees and others performing any part of the Contract and all the foregoing shall be considered as agents of the Contractor.
- 5.2.4 The period of any extension of time shall be that necessary to make up the time actually lost and shall be only for the portion of the Contract actually delayed. The Owner may defer all or part of their decision on an extension and any extension may be rescinded or shortened if it subsequently is found that the delays can be overcome or reduced by the exercise of reasonable precautions, efforts and measures.
- 5.3 It shall in all cases be presumed that no extension, or further extension, of time is due unless the Contractor shall affirmatively demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Engineer that it is. To this end, the Contractor shall maintain adequate records supporting any claim for an extension of time, and in the absence of such record, the foregoing presumption shall be deemed conclusive.
- 5.4 Notwithstanding any provisions of this Contract, whether relating to time of performance or otherwise, the Owner makes no representation or guaranty as to when conditions at the construction site will be such as to permit the Contract to be performed thereon without interruption or by any particular sequence or method or as to whether the performance of the Contract can be completed by the time required under this Contract or by any other time.

PART 6. UTILITY INTERRUPTIONS

- 6.1 Utility interruptions shall be kept to a minimum and coordinated with the Owner's Representative a minimum of two weeks in advance for review, approval and scheduling with Maine Maritime Academy and the Town of Castine.

Supplemental General Conditions

PART 7 SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS

7.1 Reports and Drawings: The Supplemental Conditions identify:

- A. those reports known to Owner of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or contiguous to the Site; and
- B. those drawings known to Owner of physical conditions relating to existing surface or subsurface structures at the Site (except Underground Facilities).
- C. Certain documents, specified below, are available for reference and examination by bidders. For the bidder's convenience copies of these documents are transmitted with the Contract Documents. The documents are not part of the Contract Documents, but the technical data contained therein upon which Contractor is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraph 7.2 are incorporated therein by reference. These documents were not prepared for the purpose of providing information for bidders upon the present Contract but they were prepared for other purposes, such as for other contracts or for design purposes for this or other contracts, and they do not form a part of this Contract. Neither the Owner nor the Engineer makes any representation or guarantee as to their accuracy, completeness or pertinence, and in addition, shall not be responsible for the conclusions to be drawn therefrom. The documents are made available to the bidders merely for the purpose of providing them with such information as is in the possession of the Owner, whether or not such information may be accurate, complete or pertinent or of any value to the bidders. Said documents are as follows:

1) The reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at or adjacent to the Site

known to the Owner are included as attachments to the Contract Documents and are identified as:

a) (to add)

b) (to add)

2) Drawings photographically reproduced, presented as Reference Drawings, are included as an attachment to the Contract Documents and are identified as:

a) (to add)

b) (to add)

c) (to add)

d) (to add)

7.2 Limited Reliance by Contractor on Technical Data Authorized: Contractor may rely upon the accuracy of the "technical data" contained in such reports and drawings, but such reports and drawings are not Contract Documents. Such "technical data" is identified in the Supplementary Conditions. Except for such reliance on such "technical data," Contractor may not rely upon or make any claim against Owner or Engineer, or any of their officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, or subcontractors with respect to:

- A. the completeness of such reports and drawings for Contractor's purposes, including, but not limited to,

Supplemental General Conditions

- B. any aspects of the means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures of construction to be employed by Contractor, and safety precautions and programs incident thereto; or
- C. other data, interpretations, opinions, and information contained in such reports or shown or indicated in such drawings; or
- D. any Contractor interpretation of or conclusion drawn from any “technical data” or any such other data, interpretations, opinions, or information.

PART 8 DIFFERING SUBSURFACE OR PHYSICAL CONDITIONS

8.1 Notice: If Contractor believes that any subsurface or physical condition that is uncovered or revealed either:

- A. is of such a nature as to establish that any “technical data” on which Contractor is entitled to rely as provided in Part 7 above is materially inaccurate; or
- B. is of such a nature as to require a change in the Contract Documents; or
- C. differs materially from that shown or indicated in the Contract Documents; or
- D. is of an unusual nature, and differs materially from conditions ordinarily encountered and generally recognized as inherent in work of the character provided for in the Contract Documents;

then Contractor shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing the subsurface or physical conditions or performing any Work in connection therewith, notify Owner and Engineer in writing about such condition. Contractor shall not further disturb such condition or perform any Work in connection therewith until receipt of written order to do so.

8.2 Engineer’s Review: After receipt of written notice as required by Paragraph 8.1, Engineer will promptly review the pertinent condition, determine the necessity of Owner’s obtaining additional exploration or tests with respect thereto, and advise Owner in writing (with a copy to Contractor) of Engineer’s findings and conclusions.

PART 9 UNDERGROUND FACILITIES

9.1 Shown or Indicated: The information and data shown or indicated in the Contract Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or contiguous to the Site is based on information and data furnished to Owner or Engineer by the owners of such Underground Facilities, including Owner, or by others. Unless it is otherwise expressly provided in the Supplementary Conditions:

- A. Owner and Engineer shall not be responsible for the accuracy or completeness of any such information or data provided by others; and
- B. the cost of all of the following will be included in the Contract Price, and Contractor shall have full responsibility for:
 - 1) reviewing and checking all such information and data;
 - 2) locate all Underground Facilities shown or indicated in the Contract Documents; during construction; and
 - 3) the safety and protection of all such Underground Facilities and repairing any damage thereto resulting from the Work.

9.2 Not Shown or Indicated:

Supplemental General Conditions

- A. If an Underground Facility is uncovered or revealed at or contiguous to the Site which was not shown or indicated, or not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall, promptly after becoming aware thereof and before further disturbing conditions affected thereby or performing any Work in connection therewith, identify the owner of such Underground Facility and give written notice to that owner and to Owner and Engineer. Engineer will promptly review the Underground Facility and determine the extent, if any, to which a change is required in the Contract Documents to reflect and document the consequences of the existence or location of the Underground Facility. During such time, Contractor shall be responsible for the safety and protection of such Underground Facility.
- B. If Engineer concludes that a change in the Contract Documents is required, a Work Change Directive or a Change Order will be issued to reflect and document such consequences. An equitable adjustment shall be made in the Contract Price or Contract Times, or both, to the extent that they are attributable to the existence or location of any Underground Facility that was not shown or indicated or not shown or indicated with reasonable accuracy in the Contract Documents and that Contractor did not know of and could not reasonably have been expected to be aware of or to have anticipated.

PART 10 HAZARDOUS ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS AT SITE

- 10.1 Contractor shall not be responsible for any Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site which was not shown or indicated in Drawings or Specifications or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work. Contractor shall be responsible for a Hazardous Environmental Condition created with any materials brought to the Site by Contractor, Subcontractors, Suppliers, or anyone else for whom Contractor is responsible.
- 10.2 If Contractor encounters a Hazardous Environmental Condition or if Contractor or anyone for whom Contractor is responsible creates a Hazardous Environmental Condition, Contractor shall immediately: (i) secure or otherwise isolate such condition; (ii) stop all Work in connection with such condition and in any area affected thereby; and (iii) notify Owner and Engineer (and promptly thereafter confirm such notice in writing). Owner shall promptly consult with Engineer concerning the necessity for Owner to retain a qualified expert to evaluate such condition or take corrective action, if any. Promptly after consulting with Engineer, Owner shall take such actions as are necessary to permit Owner to timely obtain required permits and provide Contractor the written notice required by Paragraph 10.3.
- 10.3 Contractor shall not be required to resume Work in connection with such condition or in any affected area until after Owner has obtained any required permits related thereto and delivered written notice to Contractor: (i) specifying that such condition and any affected area is or has been rendered safe for the resumption of Work; or (ii) specifying any special conditions under which such Work may be resumed safely.
- 10.4 If after receipt of such written notice Contractor does not agree to resume such Work based on a reasonable belief it is unsafe, or does not agree to resume such Work under such special

Supplemental General Conditions

conditions, then Owner may order the portion of the Work that is in the area affected by such condition to be deleted from the Work.

- 10.5 To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless Contractor, Subcontractors, and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition, provided that such Hazardous Environmental Condition: (i) was not shown or indicated in the Drawings or Specifications or identified in the Contract Documents to be included within the scope of the Work, and (ii) was not created by Contractor or by anyone for whom Contractor is responsible. Nothing in this Paragraph 10.5 shall obligate Owner to indemnify any individual or entity from and against the consequences of that individual's or entity's own negligence.
- 10.6 To the fullest extent permitted by Laws and Regulations, Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless Owner and Engineer, and the officers, directors, members, partners, employees, agents, consultants, and subcontractors of each and any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses, and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys, and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or relating to a Hazardous Environmental Condition created by Contractor or by anyone for whom Contractor is responsible. Nothing in this Paragraph 10.6 shall obligate Contractor to indemnify any individual or entity from and against the consequences of that individual's or entity's own negligence.
- 10.7 The provisions of Parts 7, 8 and 9, herein, do not apply to a Hazardous Environmental Condition uncovered or revealed at the Site.

END OF SECTION

00 73 46
Wage Determination Schedule

PART 1- GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specifications Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. This Section includes the wage determination requirements for Contractors as issued by the State of Maine Department of Labor Bureau of Labor Standards or the United States Department of Labor.

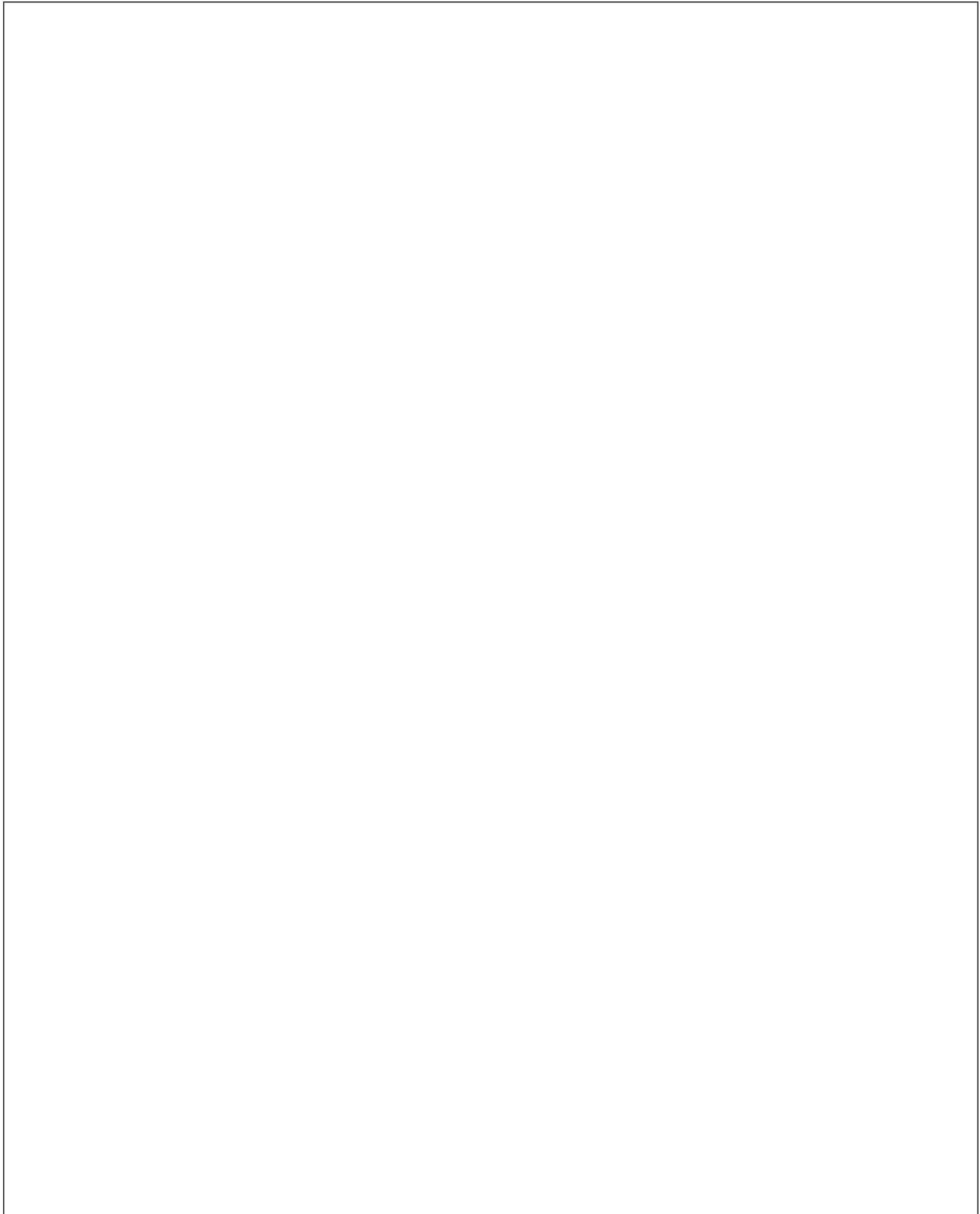
1.3 Requirements

- A. Conform to the wage determination schedule for this project which is shown on the following page.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (not used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (not used)

00 73 46
Wage Determination Schedule



End of Section 00 73 46

State of Maine
 Department of Labor
 Bureau of Labor Standards
 Augusta, Maine 04333-0045
 Telephone (207) 623-7906

Wage Determination - In accordance with 26 MRS §1301 et. seq., this is a determination by the Bureau of Labor Standards, of the fair minimum wage rate to be paid to laborers and workers employed on the below titled project.

**2023 Fair Minimum Wage Rates
 Heavy & Bridge Hancock County**

| Occupational Title | Minimum Wage | Minimum Benefit | Total |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------|---------|
| Brickmasons And Blockmasons | \$32.00 | \$4.74 | \$36.74 |
| Bulldozer Operator | \$30.00 | \$7.29 | \$37.29 |
| Carpenter | \$27.75 | \$7.04 | \$34.79 |
| Cement Masons And Concrete Finisher | \$24.00 | \$3.34 | \$27.34 |
| Commercial Divers | \$27.25 | \$0.00 | \$27.25 |
| Construction And Maintenance Painters | \$23.50 | \$2.74 | \$26.24 |
| Construction Laborer | \$22.00 | \$5.06 | \$27.06 |
| Crane And Tower Operators | \$34.50 | \$7.95 | \$42.45 |
| Crushing Grinding And Polishing Machine Operators | \$24.76 | \$6.23 | \$30.99 |
| Earth Drillers - Except Oil And Gas | \$20.50 | \$0.82 | \$21.32 |
| Electrical Power - Line Installer And Repairers | \$36.00 | \$10.11 | \$46.11 |
| Electricians | \$33.90 | \$15.55 | \$49.45 |
| Excavating And Loading Machine And Dragline Operators | \$25.13 | \$4.31 | \$29.44 |
| Excavator Operator | \$27.00 | \$3.51 | \$30.51 |
| Fence Erectors | \$22.00 | \$1.78 | \$23.78 |
| Flaggers | \$20.00 | \$0.63 | \$20.63 |
| Heating And Air Conditioning And Refrigeration Mechanics And Installers | \$30.00 | \$4.81 | \$34.81 |
| Heavy And Tractor - Trailer Truck Drivers | \$27.00 | \$6.50 | \$33.50 |
| Highway Maintenance Workers | \$25.47 | \$2.38 | \$27.85 |
| Industrial Machinery Mechanics | \$34.00 | \$2.30 | \$36.30 |
| Industrial Truck And Tractor Operators | \$21.00 | \$3.08 | \$24.08 |
| Light Truck Or Delivery Services Drivers | \$22.00 | \$3.17 | \$25.17 |
| Millwrights | \$30.15 | \$8.54 | \$38.69 |
| Mobile Heavy Equipment Mechanics - Except Engines | \$27.00 | \$4.16 | \$31.16 |
| Operating Engineers And Other Equipment Operators | \$26.63 | \$7.17 | \$33.80 |
| Paver Operator | \$25.51 | \$7.33 | \$32.84 |
| Pipelayers | \$25.50 | \$3.54 | \$29.04 |
| Plumbers Pipe Fitters And Steamfitters | \$34.00 | \$18.61 | \$52.61 |
| Radio Cellular And Tower Equipment Installers | \$28.59 | \$1.96 | \$30.55 |
| Reinforcing Iron And Rebar Workers | \$48.58 | \$0.00 | \$48.58 |
| Riggers | \$35.87 | \$23.50 | \$59.37 |
| Screed/Wheelman | \$26.47 | \$3.96 | \$30.43 |
| Sheet Metal Workers | \$26.75 | \$6.43 | \$33.18 |
| Structural Iron And Steel Workers | \$29.02 | \$7.22 | \$36.24 |
| Telecommunications Equipment Installers And Repairers - Except Line Installers | \$29.00 | \$8.40 | \$37.40 |
| Telecommunications Line Installers And Repairers | \$24.00 | \$4.33 | \$28.33 |

Welders are classified as the trade to which welding is incidental (e.g. welding structural steel is Structural Iron and Steel Worker)


Apprentices – The minimum wage rates for registered apprentices are the rates recognized in the sponsorship agreement for registered apprentices working in the pertinent classification.

For any other specific trade on this project not listed above, contact the Bureau of Labor Standards for further clarification.

Title 26 §1310 requires that a clearly legible statement of all fair minimum wage and benefits rates to be paid the several classes of laborers, workers and mechanics employed on the construction on the public work must be kept posted in a prominent and easily accessible place at the site by each contractor and subcontractor subject to sections 1304 to 1313.

Appeal – Any person affected by the determination of these rates may appeal to the Commissioner of Labor by filing a written notice with the Commissioner stating the specific grounds of the objection within ten (10) days from the filing of these rates.

A true copy

Attest: 

**Scott R. Cotnoir
 Wage & Hour Director
 Bureau of Labor Standards**

Expiration Date: 12-31-2023

SECTION 011000

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

| | | | |
|------|---------------------------|------|------------------------------------|
| 1.1 | General Provisions | 1.11 | Submittals |
| 1.2 | Project Requirements | 1.12 | Warranties |
| 1.3 | Specification Information | 1.13 | Cutting and Patching |
| 1.4 | Definitions | 1.14 | Temporary Facilities and Utilities |
| 1.5 | Industry Standards | 1.15 | Products and Substitutions |
| 1.6 | Codes and Regulations | 1.16 | Delivery, Storage and Handling |
| 1.7 | Progress Schedule | 1.17 | Owner-Furnished (OFCL) Products |
| 1.8 | Schedule of Values | 1.18 | Labels |
| 1.9 | Payment Requests | 1.19 | Record Documents |
| 1.10 | Procedures and Controls | 1.20 | Project Close Out |
| | | 1.21 | Final Cleaning and Repair |

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 PROJECT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Identification: Curtis Hall Renovations.
- B. Particular Project Requirements:
1. Owner's partial occupancy and phasing: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Noise control: As indicated on Phasing Drawings.
 3. Dust Control: As indicated on Phasing Drawings.
 4. Utility Coordination: As indicated on Drawings.
 5. Safe passage areas: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Project Requirements for Temporary Utilities and Facilities:
1. Utility Costs: The Contractor shall meter and pay for cost of utility services consumed, including electricity, water, gas and temporary heat.
 2. Temporary Offices: A separate field office for the Architect and the Owner's Representative is not required.
 3. Toilet Facilities: The Contractor shall provide and maintain temporary toilets outside the building.
- D. Permits and Fees: Apply for, obtain, and pay for permits, fees, and utility company backcharges required to perform the work. Submit copies to Architect.
- E. Codes: Comply with applicable codes and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction. Submit copies of inspection reports, notices and similar communications to Architect.

- F. Dimensions: Verify dimensions indicated on drawings with field dimensions before fabrication or ordering of materials. Do not scale drawings.
- G. Existing Conditions: Notify Architect of existing conditions differing from those indicated on the drawings.
- H. Contractor's Conduct on Premises: The Contractor and their employees shall behave in a respectful, courteous and safe manner. Abusive, harassing, and lewd behavior is prohibited. Music playing is prohibited. Alcohol, tobacco, and drug use is prohibited.

1.3 SPECIFICATION INFORMATION

- A. These specifications are a specialized form of technical writing edited from master specifications and contain deviations from traditional writing formats. Capitalization, underlining and bold print is only used to assist reader in finding information and no other meaning is implied.
- B. Except where specifically indicated otherwise, the subject of all imperative statements is the Contractor.
- C. Sections are generally numbered in conformance with Construction Specifications Institute Masterformat System. Numbering sequence is not consecutive. Refer to the Table of Contents for names and numbers of sections included in this Project.
- D. Pages are numbered separately for each section. Each section is noted with "End of Section" to indicate the last page of a section.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.

- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.5 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Referenced standards are part of the Contract Documents and have the same force and effect as if bound with these specifications.
- B. Except where specifically indicated otherwise, comply with the current standard in effect as of the date of the Owner/Contractor Agreement. Obtain copies of industry standards directly from publisher.
- C. The titles of industry standard organizations are commonly abbreviated; full titles may be found in Encyclopedia of Associations or consult Architect.

1.6 CODES AND REGULATIONS

- A. Comply with all applicable codes, ordinances, regulations and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Submit copies of all permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, notices, judgments, and communications from authorities having jurisdiction to the Architect.
- C. COVID-19 Procedures: The Contractor shall submit a written plan for jobsite COVID-19 Procedures in compliance with applicable governmental regulations and as supplemented by the Contractor's own requirements, if any. Scope shall include that people and materials entering the site shall be required to comply with the written plan. Identify the Contractor's personnel responsible for implementing such procedures. For the record, submit a monthly statement certifying that the Contractor has enforced the provisions in its written plan. The Contractor acknowledges that its written plan and monthly statements are submitted for the record only and not for approval by neither the Owner nor the Architect nor their agents.

1.7 PROGRESS SCHEDULE

- A. Provide comprehensive bar chart schedule showing all major and critical minor portions of the work, sequence of work and duration of each activity. Update and reissue regularly, but not less than monthly.

1.8 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Prepare Schedule of Values to coordinate with application for payment breakdown. Submit at least 10 days before first payment application. Update and reissue regularly, but not less than monthly.

1.9 PAYMENT REQUESTS

- A. Provide three copies of each request on completely filled out copies of AIA G702 and continuation sheet G703. Substantiate requests with complete documentation; include change orders to date. Provide partial lien waivers for work in progress and full lien waivers for completed work.

- B. As-Constructed Record Drawing Certification: Certify as a part of each application for payment that the project as-constructed record documents are current at the time of application is submitted. The Contractor shall require such drawings to be current as a condition of approving any payment to the trade Contractor and Subcontractor.
- C. Before first payment application, provide the following:
 - 1. List of subcontractors, suppliers and fabricators.
 - 2. Schedule of values.
 - 3. Progress schedule.
 - 4. Submittal schedule keyed to project schedule.
 - 5. List of Contractor's key project personnel.
 - 6. Copies of permits and other communications from authorities.
 - 7. Contractor's certificate of insurance.
 - 8. Performance and payment bonds if required.
 - 9. Unit price schedule.
- D. Before final payment application, provide and complete the following:
 - 1. Complete closeout requirements.
 - 2. Complete punch list items.
 - 3. Settle all claims.
 - 4. Transmit record documents to Architect. Include statement that Architect's Supplemental Instructions, Change Orders, Construction Change Directives and minor changes in the work have been incorporated in the as-constructed record drawings.
 - 5. Prove that all taxes, fees and similar obligations have been paid.
 - 6. Remove temporary facilities and surplus materials.
 - 7. Change lock cylinders or cores.
 - 8. Clean the work.
 - 9. Submit consent of surety, if any, for final payment.

1.10 PROCEDURES AND CONTROLS

- A. Project Meetings: Arrange for and attend meetings with the Architect and such other persons as the Architect requests to have present. The Contractor shall be represented by a principal, project manager, general superintendent or other authorized main office representative, as well as by the Contractor's field superintendent. An authorized representative of any subcontractor or sub-subcontractor shall attend such meetings if the representative's presence is requested by the Architect. Such representatives shall be empowered to make binding commitments on all matters to be discussed at such meetings, including costs, payments, change orders, time schedules and manpower. Any notices required under the Contract may be served on such representatives. Written reports of meeting minutes shall be prepared by the Contractor and distributed by the Contractor to attendees, the Architect, and Owner within three business days.
 - 1. Pre-Construction Conference: Attendance by Architect, Contractor, major subcontractors. Agenda shall include: Quality of workmanship, coordination, interpretations, job schedule, submittals, approvals, requisition procedures, testing, protection of construction, indoor air quality, and construction waste management.
 - 2. Exterior Envelope Meeting: Attendance by Architect, Contractor, major subcontractors. Agenda shall include as applicable: Review of exterior wall details, wall construction, sample panel preparation, cleaning, control and expansion joints, cold weather procedures.
 - 3. Roofing/Flashings Meeting: Attendance by Architect, Contractor, roofing subcontractor, and representative of roofing manufacturer. Agenda shall include as applicable: Preparation of roof decks, flashing and blocking details, roofing procedures and

- inspections, bonds and guarantees, weather conditions during roofing, protection of roof membrane during construction.
4. Interior Finishes Meeting: Attendance by Architect, Contractor, major subcontractors. Agenda shall include as applicable: Quality of workmanship, environmental conditions for application of finishes, drywall details, millwork details, condition of surfaces to receive finishes, tile work, painting work, samples and test areas and approvals, coordination with mechanical and electrical interfaces and penetrations, indoor air quality.
 5. Progress Meetings: Hold regularly before preparation of payment requests and additional meetings as requested by the Architect. Attendance by Architect, Contractor, and others as determined by Contractor. Agenda shall include work in progress and payment requests.
 6. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction, as specified. Preinstallation Conferences may be part of Progress Meeting agenda. Attendance by Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow. Agenda shall include a review of progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration.
- B. Emergency Contacts: Furnish the Owner and Architect, in writing, the names and telephone numbers of individuals to be contacted in the event of an out-of-hours emergency at the building site. Post a similar list readily visible from the outside of the field office or a location acceptable to the Architect.
- C. Layout: Layout work and be responsible for all lines, elevations, and measurements of the building, grading, utilities and other work executed under the contract. Retain a registered professional engineer or registered land surveyor, acceptable to the Architect, to initially establish exterior lines and required elevations of all buildings and structures to be erected on the site. The registered professional engineer or registered land surveyor shall certify the actual location of the constructed facilities in relation to property lines, building lines, easements, setbacks, and other restrictive boundaries.
- D. Field Measurements: Verify measurements at the building prior to ordering materials or commencing work. No extra charge or compensation will be allowed because of differences between actual dimensions and measurements indicated on the Drawings. Differences which may be found shall be submitted to the Architect for decision before proceeding with the work.
- E. Field Measurements for Fixed Equipment: Dimensions for fixed equipment to be supplied under this Contract or separate contracts shall be determined by field measurements taken jointly by the Contractor and the equipment supplier involved. A record of the field measurements shall be kept until time of substantial completion of the project, or until the equipment has been fully installed and accepted by the Owner, whichever is later. Responsibility for fixed equipment fabricated accurately to field measurements for proper fit and operation shall be that of the Contractor. Contractor shall pay all costs involved in correcting any misfitting fixed equipment as fabricated.
- F. Project Limit Line: The boundaries of the site do not limit the responsibility of the Contractor to perform the work in its entirety. Make utility connections as indicated.
- G. Matching: Where matching is indicated, the Architect shall be the sole and final judge of what is an acceptable match. Mockups and sample submissions are required.
- H. Observation: Notify the Architect and authorities having jurisdiction at least thirty-six hours in advance of concealing any work.

- I. Utilities: Prior to interrupting utilities, services or facilities, notify the utility owner and the Owner and obtain their written approval a minimum 48 hours in advance.
- J. Furnishings, Fixtures, and Equipment:
 - 1. Cooperate and permit the Owner to install their furnishings and equipment during the progress of the work. Owner's installation of furnishings or equipment does not signify Owner's acceptance of any portion of the work.
 - 2. Contractor shall relocate, store, move, and protect Owner furnishings. Furnishings are not permitted to be stored in corridors. Contractor shall repair and replace furniture damaged as a result of contractor operations.
- K. Clean-Up: Frequently clean-up all waste, remove from site regularly, and legally dispose of off-site.
 - 1. Comply with requirements of Section 017400 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT.
- L. Installer's Acceptance of Conditions: All installers shall inspect substrates and conditions under which work is to be executed and shall report in writing to the Contractor all conditions detrimental to the proper execution and completion of the work. Do not proceed with work until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected. Beginning work means installer accepts previous work and conditions.
- M. Coordination: The Contractor shall be fully responsible for coordinating all trades, coordinating construction sequences and schedules, and coordinating the actual installed location and interface of all work.
 - 1. Prior to beginning mechanical, electrical and fire protection work, the Contractor shall prepare coordination drawings showing the exact alignment, physical location and configuration of the mechanical, electrical and fire protection installations and demonstrating to the Contractor's satisfaction that the installations will clear all obstructions, permit proper clearances for the Work of other trades, and present an orderly appearance where exposed. The Contractor shall be solely liable and responsible for any costs and delays resulting from the Contractor's failure to prepare such coordination drawings or from the negligent preparation of such coordination drawings.
 - 2. Exact locations and groupings of mechanical, electrical and fire protection fixtures, switches, heads and outlets shall be obtained from the Architect before the Work is roughed in. Work installed without such information from the Architect shall be relocated at the Contractor's expense if the Architect so requests.
- N. Request For Interpretation (RFIs):
 - 1. Procedure: Immediately on discovery of the need for interpretation of the Contract Documents, and if not possible to request interpretation at Project meeting, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
 - a. RFIs shall originate with Contractor. RFIs submitted by entities other than Contractor will be returned with no response.
 - 2. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing interpretation.
 - 3. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and return it. Allow three working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
 - 4. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.

- c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - f. Incomplete RFIs or RFIs with numerous errors.
- O. Existing Articles of Unusual Value: If during demolition, excavation, or disposal work articles of unusual value or of historical or archaeological significance are encountered, the ownership of such articles is retained by the Owner, and information regarding their discovery shall be immediately furnished to the Architect. If the nature of the article is such that work cannot proceed without danger of damage, work in the area shall be immediately discontinued until the Architect has determined the proper procedure to be followed. Delays in time thereby shall be a condition for which the time of the Contract may be extended. Costs incurred after discovery in the salvaging of such articles shall be borne by the Owner.

1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Required Submittals: Submit shop drawings, product data, initial selection samples, verification samples, calculations, coordination drawings, schedules, and all other submittals as specified in individual specification sections.
- B. Submittal Schedule: Within 30 days after award of contract and before first application for payment, prepare list of submittals in chronological sequence showing all submittals and proposed date first due at Architect's office and proposed date due to be returned to Contractor. Note relevant specification section number.
- C. Contractor's Preparation of Submittals: Modify and customize all submittals to show interface with adjacent work and attachment to building. Identify each submittal with name of project, date, Contractor's name, subcontractor's name, manufacturer's name, submittal name, relevant specification section numbers, and Submittal Schedule reference number. Stamp and sign each submittal to show the Contractor's review and approval of each submittal before delivery to Architect's office; unstamped and unsigned submittals will be returned without action by the Architect. Leave 4" x 6" open space for Architect's "action" stamp.
 - 1. Electronic Submittals: Provide a copy of all submittals in electronic format to the Architect. Architect will return a file of reviewed submittal in electronic format to the Contractor for distribution to subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, governing authorities and others as necessary for proper performance of the Work. Unless otherwise amenable to the Architect, additional hard copies of submittals will not be reviewed by the Architect (or Consultant) and will not be returned to the Contractor.
 - 2. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - 3. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 4. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect and Construction Manager.
 - 5. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use electronic form acceptable to Architect.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's preprinted literature including, without limitation, manufacturer's standard printed description of product, materials and construction, recommendations for application and use, certification of compliance with standards, instructions for installation, and special coordination requirements. Collect data into one submittal for each unit of work or system; mark each copy to show which choices and options are applicable to project.

1. Installer Copy: Verify that the Installer has a current copy of the relevant product data, including installation instructions, before permitting installation to begin.
 - E. Shop Drawings: Provide accurately prepared, large scale and detailed shop drawings prepared specifically for this project. Show adjacent conditions and related work. Show accurate field dimensions and clearly note field conditions. Identify materials and products in the work shown. Note special coordination required.
 1. After Architect's action, follow specified distribution procedure.
 - F. Samples: Provide units identical with final materials and products to be installed in the work. Where indicated, prepare samples to match Architect's sample. Label each sample with description, source, generic name or manufacturer's name and model number. Architect will review samples for confirmation of visual design intent, color, pattern, texture and type only; Architect will not test samples for compliance with other Contract requirements which shall remain the exclusive responsibility of the Contractor.
 1. Initial Selection Samples Submittal Quantities: For initial selection purposes, submit 1 set of samples showing the complete range of colors and finishes available.
 2. Verification Samples Submittal Quantities: For verification of an initial selection, submit 3 sets of samples; one set will be returned to Contractor to be maintained at project site for quality control comparisons.
 - G. Timing of Submittals: Submit submittals in a timely fashion to allow at least 10 business days for each office's review and handling. This means that submittals which have to be reviewed by the Architect and one of their consultants require at least 20 business days for review and handling. Add ten business days for each additional consultant who must review a submission.
 - H. Architect's Action on Submittals: Architect will review submittals, stamp with "action stamp", mark action, and return to Contractor. Architect will review submittals only for conformance with the design concept of the project. The Contractor is responsible for confirming compliance with other Contract requirements, including without limitation, performance requirements, field dimensions, fabrication methods, means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction, coordination with other work. The Architect's review and approval of submittals shall be held to the limitations stated in the Owner/Architect Agreement and the Conditions of the Contract. In no case shall approval or acceptance by the Architect be interpreted as a release of Contractor of their responsibilities to fulfill all of the requirements of the Contract Documents.
 1. Required Resubmittal: Unless submittal is noted "reviewed" or "reviewed except as noted, resubmission not required," make corrections or changes to original and resubmit to Architect.
 2. Distribution: When submittal is noted "reviewed" or "reviewed as noted, resubmittal not required," make prints or copies and distribute to Owner, Subcontractors involved, and to all other parties requiring information from the submittal for performance or coordination of related work.
- 1.12 WARRANTIES
- A. Warranties Required: Refer to individual trade sections for specific product warranty requirements.
 - B. Procurement: Where a warranty is required, do not purchase or subcontract for materials or work until it has been determined that parties required to countersign warranties are willing to do so.

- C. **Warranty Forms:** Submit written warranty to Owner through Architect for approval prior to execution. Furnish two copies of executed warranty to Owner for their records; furnish two additional conformed copies where required for maintenance manual.
- D. **Work Covered:** Contractor shall remove and replace other work of project which has been damaged as a result of failure of warranted work or equipment, or which must be removed and replaced to provide access to work under warranty. Unless otherwise specified, warranty shall cover full cost of replacement or repair, and shall not be pro-rated on basis of useful service life.
- E. **Warranty Extensions:** Work repaired or replaced under warranty shall be warranted until the original warranty expiration date or for ninety days whichever is later in time.
- F. **Warranty Effective Starting Date:** Guarantee period for all work, material and equipment shall begin on the date of substantial completion of the Project, not when subcontractor has completed their work nor when equipment is turned on. In addition to the one year guarantees for the entire work covered by these Contract Documents, refer to the various sections of the specifications for extended guarantee or maintenance requirements for various material and equipment.
- G. **Warranties are Irrevocable:** Warranties issued to the Owner are irrevocable.
 - 1. **Non-Payment:** If warrantor refuses to issue warranty, or attempts to revoke warranty due to lack of payment by any party other than the Owner, the Contractor shall resolve the payment conflict, and cause the warranty to be issued or reinstated.
 - 2. **Incomplete or incorrect Installation:** If warrantor refuses to issue warranty, or attempts to revoke warranty due to improper installation or other deficiency, the Contractor shall correct the deficiency and cause the warranty to be issued or reinstated.
- H. **Transferable Warranties:** All warranties shall permit Owner to transfer or assign warranties to future owners or other assignors at no additional cost to the Owner for the full warranty period.

1.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. **Limitations:** Do not cut and patch any work in a manner that would result in a failure of the work to perform as intended, decreased energy performance, increased maintenance, decreased operational life, or decreased safety.
 - 1. **Structural Work:** Do not cut structural work or bearing walls without written approval from Architect. Where cutting and patching of structural work is necessary and approved by Architect, perform work in a manner which will not diminish structural capacity nor increase deflection of member. Provide temporary shoring and bracing as necessary. Ensure the safety of people and property at all times.
- B. **Cutting and Patching Materials:** Use materials identical to materials to be cut and patched. If identical materials are not available or cannot be used, use materials that match existing materials to the greatest extent possible. Provide finished work that will result in equal to or better than existing performance characteristics.
- C. **Inspection:** Before cutting and patching, examine surfaces and conditions under which work is to be performed and correct unsafe and unsatisfactory conditions prior to proceeding.
- D. **Protection:** Protect adjacent work from damage. Protect the work from adverse conditions.

- E. Cutting: Cut work using methods least likely to damage adjoining work. Use tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering or chopping. Use saws or drills to ensure neat, accurately formed holes to sizes required with minimum disturbance to adjacent work. Temporarily cover openings; maintain weathertightness and safety.
 - 1. Utilities: Locate utilities before cutting. Provide temporary utilities as needed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal ends of abandoned utilities to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter.
- F. Patching: Patch with seams and joints which are durable and not visible. Comply with specified tolerances for similar new work; create true even planes with uniform continuous appearance. Restore finishes of patched areas and, if necessary, extend finish restoration onto adjoining unpatched area to eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing. Repaint entire assemblies, not just patched area. Remove and replace work which has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner as determined by the Architect.
- G. Qualifications: Retain experienced and specialized firms, original installers if possible, to perform cutting and patching. Workmen shall be skilled in type of cutting and patching required.

1.14 TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND UTILITIES

- A. Scope of Temporary Work: This article is not intended to limit the scope of temporary work required under the Contract. Provide all temporary facilities and utilities needed.
- B. Permits and Fees: Obtain and pay for all permits, fees and charges related to temporary work.
- C. Codes and Authorities Having Jurisdiction for Temporary Facilities and Utilities: Comply with all requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, codes, utility companies, OSHA, and industry standards including, but not limited to the following:
 - 1. NFPA 241, Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations.
 - 2. ANSI-A10 Series, Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition.
 - 3. NECA National Joint Guideline NJG-6, Temporary Job Utilities and Services.
 - 4. Electrical Service: NEMA, NECA, and UL.
- D. Field Offices: Provide Contractor's field offices as needed. Keep current copies of all Contract Documents and project paperwork neatly on file at jobsite. Permit Architect's unrestricted use of Contractor's field office facilities including copiers, telephones, plan tables, and other equipment. Furnish, maintain, and pay for light, power, phone, fax, and other field office services.
- E. Shops and Sheds: At Contractor's option, provide shops and sheds for Contractor's use as needed. Locate shops and sheds where acceptable to Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Prior to completion of construction, temporary storage facilities and surplus stored materials shall be removed from the site.
- F. Weather Protection: It is the intent of these Specifications to require that the Contractor shall provide temporary enclosures and heat to permit construction work to be carried on during the months of November through March. Under no circumstances shall the Contractor suspend any work during the months of November through March because of their reluctance to provide and pay for temporary weather protection. These Specifications are not to be construed as requiring enclosures or heat for operations that are not economically feasible to protect in the judgment of the Architect. Included in the preceding category, without limitation, are such items

as site work, excavation, steel erection, erection of certain "exterior" wall panels, roofing, and similar operations.

1. 'Weather Protection' shall mean the temporary protection of that work adversely affected by moisture, wind, and cold, by covering, enclosing and/or heating. This protection shall provide adequate working areas during the months of November through March consistent with the approved construction schedule to permit the continuous progress of all work necessary to maintain an orderly and efficient sequence of construction operations. The Contractor shall furnish and install all "weather protection" material and be responsible for all costs, including heating required to maintain a minimum temperature of 55 degrees F. at the working surface. This provision does not supersede any specific requirements for methods of construction, curing of materials or the applicable general conditions set forth in the Contract with added regard to performance obligations of the Contractor.
 2. Within 30 calendar days after his award of contract, the Contractor shall submit in writing to the Architect for approval, his proposed methods for "Weather Protection."
 3. Installation of weather protection and heating devices shall comply with all safety regulations including provisions for adequate ventilation and fire protection devices. Heating devices which may cause damage to finish surfaces shall not be used.
- G. Heating During Construction: Within 30 calendar days after the commencement of work under this Contract, the Contractor shall submit in writing to the Architect for approval, the Contractor's method and time schedule for heating during construction which shall concur with his general progress schedule.
1. After the building or portion thereof is completely enclosed by either permanent construction or substantial temporary materials having a comparable resistance as the specified permanent construction, The Contractor shall pay and provide heat therein of not less than 55 degrees F., nor more than 75 degrees F., which shall be continuously maintained in the enclosed area to the extent necessary to properly progress and protect the work until the project is accepted.
 2. The Contractor shall furnish and install one accurate recording Fahrenheit thermometer at a place acceptable to the Architect, and one additional accurate thermometer for every 2,000 square feet of floor space, located as directed by the Architect in order to determine if the specified temperatures are maintained. The Contractor or his authorized agent shall furnish daily to the Architect a signed statement of temperatures recorded every three hours.
 3. The Contractor, with the approval of the Architect, may use the permanent heating system as specified for the project once it has been tested, flushed out and chemically treated, thoroughly cleaned of all construction dust and dirt, and is ready to operate. The Contractor shall pay all energy costs for heating during construction and provide meters if required. The Contractor and the HVAC and/or Electrical subcontractor shall coordinate their work so that the permanent heating system for the building will be available and ready to provide heat as soon as the building is closed in. In case the Contract includes more than one building, the heating shall be provided for each building in accordance with the above provision. The guarantee period for equipment shall not start until the equipment is turned over to the Owner for their use. Do not invalidate existing warranty by any action or failure to act. Clean and change air filters frequently to prevent construction dust and debris from contaminating system.
 4. Operating labor shall be provided for continuous direct attendance, for frequent inspection of the system, emergency repairs, and keeping of temperature records. Continuous direct attendance shall mean direct attendance for twenty-four hours each day, seven days per week, Saturdays, Sundays and holidays included, throughout the progress of the work.

5. It shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor to arrange for and pay the HVAC and/or Electrical subcontractor to operate and to put in first-class condition all portions of the permanent heating system used for heating during construction.
 6. If the system is electric heat, the foregoing requirements shall equally apply to all the comparable components thereof.
 7. The installation and operation of heating devices shall comply with all safety regulations including provisions for adequate ventilation and fire protection. Heating devices which may cause damage to finish surfaces shall not be used.
- H. Pumping and Drainage: Protect excavations, trenches, buildings and materials from rain water, ground water, backup or leakage of sewers, drains and other piping, and from water of any other origin. Promptly remove any accumulation of water. Provide and operate all pumps, piping and other equipment necessary for pumping, drainage and protection from water.
- I. Equipment and Tools: Provide all equipment including, but not limited to, hoists, lifts, scaffolding, machines, tools and the like, as needed for execution of the work. Provide safe access to all parts of the work.
- J. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures to maintain proper temperatures and to prevent weather damage. Always maintain legal means of egress.
- K. Snow and Ice: Remove all snow and ice which interferes with work or safety.
- L. Streets, Walks and Grounds: Maintain public and private roads and walks clear of debris caused by construction operations. Repair all damage caused to streets, drives, curbs, sidewalks, fences, poles and similar items where disturbed or damaged by building construction and leave them in as good condition after completion of the work as before operations started.
- M. Protection: Protect nearby property and the public from construction activities. Provide and maintain barricades, warning signs and lights, railings, walkways and similar items. Immediately repair damaged property to its condition before being damaged.
- N. Public Services: Provide temporary public services such as, street lighting, night lighting, sidewalks, covered passages, signs, signals and the like, as requested by authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Construction Fencing: Provide construction fencing and barriers as applicable to the project and as required by code to protect personnel, the public, and to control access.
- P. Security: Secure site against unauthorized entry at all times. Provide secure, locked temporary enclosures. Protect the work at all times. Provide watchman service, if necessary, to protect the work.
- Q. Signs: Erect project identification signs in compliance with details to be provided by Architect. Signs shall be minimum 4' x 8' exterior grade plywood and shall contain the names of the project, Owner, Architect, major Consultants, Contractor, and major financing institution. Except for safety and warning signs, no other signs are permitted. Location as acceptable to the Architect.
- R. Fire Prevention: Take every precaution to prevent fire. Provide and maintain in good operating condition suitable and adequate fire protection equipment and services, and comply with recommendations regarding fire protection made by the representative of the fire insurance company carrying insurance on the Work or by the local fire chief or fire marshal. The area within the site limits shall be kept orderly and clean, and all combustible rubbish shall be promptly removed from the site.

- S. Egress: Maintain safe and legal means of egress at all times. At all times, provide at least two separate means of egress.
- T. Mold Control and Remediation During Construction: The Contractor shall protect construction materials and building systems from moisture damage and from conditions which promote mold growth during and after construction. The Contractor shall be responsible for mold remediation and replacement of materials which cannot be successfully remediated in accordance with the following requirements:
1. Materials which become wet prior to installation shall be cleaned, treated and dried in accordance with EPA Guidelines.
 2. Materials which exhibit mold growth prior to installation shall not be installed and shall be removed from the site.
 3. Materials which exhibit mold growth after installation shall be remediated in accordance with EPA Guidelines for Remediating Building Materials with Mold Growth Caused by Clean Water. The Contractor shall engage and pay for a qualified industrial hygienist acceptable to the Owner to determine the cause of the mold growth, and to certify in writing that materials have been successfully remediated. In the event that the industrial hygienist recommends methods of remediation in addition to those in the Guidelines, the Contractor shall also be responsible for the additional remediation. Materials which can not be successfully remediated shall be removed and replaced with new materials at no additional expense to the Owner.
 4. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall submit the name of the person in the Contractor's organization responsible for ensuring compliance with these requirements for mold control and remediation.
- U. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Include the following:
1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
 4. Waste-handling procedures.
 5. Other dust-control measures.
- V. Noise and Vibration Control Plan: Identify construction activities that may impact the occupancy and use of existing spaces within the building or adjacent existing buildings, whether occupied by others, or occupied by Owner. Include the following:
1. Methods used to meet the goals and requirements of Owner.
 2. Concrete cutting method(s) to be used.
 3. Location of construction devices on the site.
 4. Show compliance with the use and maintenance of quieted construction devices for the duration of the Project.
 5. Indicate activities that may disturb building occupants and that are planned to be performed during non-standard working hours as coordinated with Owner.
 6. Indicate locations of sensitive areas or other areas requiring special attention as identified by Owner. Indicate means for complying with Owner's requirements.

1.15 PRODUCTS AND SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Specified Products: In all cases in which a manufacturer's name, trade name or other proprietary designation is used in connection with materials or articles to be furnished under this Contract, whether or not the phrase "or equal" is used after such name, the Contractor shall

provide the product of the named manufacturers without substitution, unless a written request for a substitution has been submitted by the Contractor and approved in writing by the Architect.

- B. Deviations from Detailed Requirements: If the Contractor proposes to use material which, while suitable for the intended use, deviates in any way from the detailed requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall inform the Architect in writing of the nature of such deviations at the time the materials is submitted for approval, and shall request written approval of the deviation from the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- C. Approval of Substitutions: In requesting approval of deviations or substitutions, the Contractor shall provide evidence, including, but not limited to manufacturer's data, leading to a reasonable certainty that the proposed substitution or deviation will provide a quality of result at least equal to that attainable if the detailed requirements of the Contract Documents were strictly followed. If, in the opinion of the Architect, the evidence presented by the Contractor does not provide a sufficient basis for such reasonable certainty, the Architect may reject such substitution or deviation without further investigation.
- D. Intent of Contract Documents: The Contract Documents are intended to produce a building of consistent character and quality of design. All components of the building including visible items of mechanical and electrical equipment have been selected to have a coordinated design in relation to the overall appearance of the building. The Architect shall judge the design and appearance of proposed substitutes on the basis of the suitability in relation to the overall design of the Project, as well as for their intrinsic merits. The Architect will not approve as equal to materials specified proposed substitutes which in the Architect's opinion, would be out of character, obtrusive, or otherwise inconsistent with the character or quality of design of the Project. In order to permit coordinated design of color and finishes the Contractor shall furnish the substituted material in any color, finish texture, or pattern which would have been available from the manufacturer originally specified, at no additional cost to the Owner.
- E. Additional Costs or Impact: Any additional cost, or any loss or damage arising from the substitution of any material or any method for those originally specified shall be borne by the contractor, notwithstanding approval or acceptance of such substitution by the Owner or the Architect, unless such substitution was made at the written request or direction of the Owner and the Architect. Any decrease in the cost of the substitution shall be returned to the Owner.
- F. Manufacturers: To the greatest degree possible, provide primary materials and products from one manufacturer for each type or kind. Provide secondary materials as recommended by manufacturers of primary materials.
- G. Substitution Requests: Refer to Section 016200 - SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM. Submit 3 copies. Identify product to be replaced by substitute by reference to specification sections and drawing numbers. Provide Contractor's certification and evidence to prove compliance with Contract Document requirements as acceptable to Architect.
- H. Substitution Conditions: Substitution requests will be returned without action unless one of the following conditions is satisfied. The Contractor shall state which of the following conditions applies to the requested substitution:
 - 1. Request is due to an "or equal" clause.
 - 2. Specified material or product cannot be coordinated with other work.
 - 3. Specified material or product is not acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Substantial advantage is offered Owner in terms of cost, time, or other valuable consideration.
 - 5. Specified material or product is not available.

- I. Invalid Substitutions: Contractor's submittal and Architect's acceptance of shop drawings, samples, product data or other submittal is not a valid request for, nor an approval of a substitution unless the Contractor presents the information when first submitted as a Request for Substitution.
- J. Compatibility of Materials Used in the Work:
 - 1. Ensure complete compatibility between materials.
 - 2. Compatibility shall include adhesion, erosion, solubility, differential thermal response, and galvanic action.
 - 3. Provide evidence of compatibility.
 - 4. Provide custom testing where evidence is not available.
 - 5. Where materials are not compatible, provide necessary isolation or transition materials and provide details of same.
 - 6. Correct defects resulting from incompatibility including de-construction and re-construction of assemblies – whether materials are part of a submittal and substitution process or not.
 - 7. Proposed substitutions may be rejected where compatibility information is not provided; or where compatibility is not adequately addressed, according to the Architect's judgment; or where incompatible materials would negatively impact the project's success.

1.16 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturer's Instructions: Strictly comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and prevent damage, deterioration and loss, including theft. Minimize long-term storage at the site. Maintain environmental conditions, temperature, ventilation, and humidity within range permitted by manufacturers of materials and products used.

1.17 OWNER-FURNISHED CONTRACTOR-INSTALLED (OFICI) PRODUCTS

- A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Contractor's Work includes providing support systems to receive Owner's equipment and making plumbing, mechanical, and electrical connections.
 - 1. Owner will arrange for and deliver Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples to Contractor.
 - 2. Owner will arrange and pay for delivery of Owner-furnished items according to Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. After delivery, Owner will inspect delivered items for damage. Contractor shall be present for and assist in Owner's inspection.
 - 4. If Owner-furnished items are damaged, defective, or missing, Owner will arrange for replacement.
 - 5. Owner will arrange for manufacturer's field services and for delivery of manufacturer's warranties to Contractor.
 - 6. Owner will furnish Contractor the earliest possible delivery date for Owner-furnished products. Using Owner-furnished earliest possible delivery dates, Contractor shall designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished items in Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 7. Contractor shall review Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples and return them to Architect noting discrepancies or anticipated problems in use of product.
 - 8. Contractor is responsible for receiving, unloading, and handling Owner-furnished items at Project site.
 - 9. Contractor is responsible for protecting Owner-furnished items from damage during storage and handling, including damage from exposure to the elements.
 - 10. If Owner-furnished items are damaged as a result of Contractor's operations, Contractor shall repair or replace them.

11. Contractor shall install and otherwise incorporate Owner-furnished items into the Work.

B. Owner-Furnished Products: As directed by the Architect.

1.18 LABELS

A. Labels, Trademarks, & Tradenames: Locate required labels on inconspicuous surfaces. Do not provide labels, nameplates, or trademarks which are not required. Provide permanent data plate on each item of equipment stating manufacturer, model, serial number, capacity, ratings and all other essential data.

1.19 RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Definition of As-Constructed Record Drawings: (commonly called "as-builts") are the record of the Project as constructed based on information the Contractor provides to the Owner under the contract for construction. Because the As-constructed Record Drawings will be based on the Contractor's mark-ups, the Architect is not responsible for the accuracy or completeness of the As-constructed Record Drawings.

B. Definition of As-Designed Record Drawings: The record of everything the Architect designed for the Project, and including the original Construction Documents plus all addenda, Architect's Supplemental Instructions, Change Orders, Construction Change Directives and minor changes in the work.

C. General: Keep as-constructed record documents neatly and accurately. Record information as the work progresses and deliver to Architect at time of final acceptance. Include in record documents all field changes made, all relevant dimensions, and all relevant details of the work. Keep record documents up to date with all Architect's Supplemental Instructions, Change Orders, Construction Change Directives and minor changes in the work clearly indicated.

D. Drawings: Keep four separate sets of blackline prints at the site, one set each for mechanical, electrical, plumbing, and architectural/structural disciplines. Neatly and accurately note all deviations from the Contract Documents and the exact actual location of the work as installed. Marked-up and colored prints will be used as a guide to determine the progress of the work installed. Requisitions for payment will not be approved until the record documents are accurate and up-to-date.

1. Work Outside Building: Record data outside of building to an accuracy of plus or minus 1 inch and determine and record the invert elevation of all drain lines.

2. At completion of the work, submit one complete set of marked-up as-built prints for review. After acceptance, these marked-up as-built prints shall be used in the preparation of the as-built drawings.

3. Architect shall furnish Contractor with AutoCAD or BIM Design Intent Model or both files for originals of the Contract Drawings. The Contractor shall make modifications to these files as shown on the marked-up prints. Remove superseded data to show the completed installation.

4. The Contractor shall deliver the completed AutoCAD or BIM Design Intent Model or both as-constructed record drawings, in the same version as Contract Drawings, properly titled and dated to the Architect. Indicate preparer of as-built drawings. These as-built drawings shall become the property of the Owner.

E. Specifications: Maintain one clean copy of complete specifications including addenda, modifications, and bulletins with changes, substitutions, and selected options clearly noted. Circle or otherwise clearly indicate which manufacturer and products are actually used.

- F. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Manuals shall be submitted which contain the following:
1. Description of the system provided.
 2. Handling, storage, and installation instructions.
 3. Detailed description of the function of each principal component of the systems or equipment.
 4. Operating procedures, including prestartup, startup, normal operation, emergency shutdown, normal shutdown and troubleshooting.
 5. Maintenance procedures including lubrication requirements, intervals between lubrication, preventative and repair procedures, and complete spare parts list with cross reference to original equipment manufacturer's part numbers.
 6. Control and alarm features including schematic of control systems, control loop electric ladder diagrams, controller operating set points, settings for alarms and shutdown systems, pump curves and fan curves.
 7. Safety and environmental considerations.
- G. Copies of Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Three copies of the manuals shall be provided within sufficient time to allow for training of Owner's personnel. Submit one copy of the manuals to the Architect for review no later than 90 calendar days prior to substantial completion, or building turn over, whichever comes first. Submit the remaining five copies within 15 days after first review set is returned to contractor. Progress payment may be withheld if this requirement is not met.
- H. Additional Requirements for Operating and Maintenance Manuals: The requirements for manuals applies to each packaged and field-fabricated operating system. The manuals shall be provided in three-ring side binders with durable plastic covers. The manuals shall contain a detailed table of contents and have tab dividers for major sections and special equipment.
- I. Instructions for Owner's Personnel: Prior to final inspection, instruct the Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment and maintenance of products, equipment and systems. Provide instruction at mutually agreed upon times. Video all instruction sessions and deliver videos to Owner on thumb drive or other suitable media.
1. For equipment that requires seasonal operation provide similar instruction during other seasons.
 2. Use operation and maintenance manuals for each piece of equipment or system as the basis of instruction. Review contents in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance.
- J. Framed Data: Provide charts and lists of all valves, circuits, switches, controls and equipment. Install on walls under glass at locations directed by Architect.

1.20 PROJECT CLOSE OUT

- A. Complete the following prior to Substantial Completion:
1. Provide Contractor's Punch List of incomplete items stating reason for incompleteness and value of incompleteness.
 2. Advise Owner of insurance change over requirements.
 3. Submit all warranties, maintenance contracts, final certificates and similar documents.
 4. Obtain Certificate of Occupancy and similar releases which permit the Owner's full and unrestricted use of the areas claimed "Substantially Complete".
 5. Submit record documents.
 6. Deliver maintenance stocks of materials where specified.

7. Make final change over of lock cylinders or cores and advise Owner of change of security responsibility.
 8. Complete startup of all systems and instruct Owner's personnel in proper operation and routine maintenance of systems and equipment.
 9. Complete clean up and restoration of damaged finishes.
 10. Remove all temporary facilities and utilities that are no longer needed.
 11. Request Architect's inspection for Substantial Completion.
- B. Architect will either issue a Certificate of Substantial Completion or notify Contractor of work which must be performed prior to issue of certificate.
- C. Complete the following prior to Final Acceptance and payment:
1. Obtain Certificate of Substantial Completion.
 2. Submit final application for payment, showing final accounting of changes in the work.
 3. Provide final releases and lien waivers not previously submitted.
 4. Submit certified copy of final punch list stating that Contractor has completed or corrected each item.
 5. Submit final meter readings, record of stored fuel and similar information.
 6. Submit Consent of Surety for final payment.
 7. Submit evidence of Contractor's continuing insurance coverage (if required by Contract Documents).

1.21 FINAL CLEANING AND REPAIR

- A. Clean Up: Immediately prior to the Architect's inspection for Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall completely clean the premises and clean and prepare the completed work in order for it to be used for its intended purpose in accordance with the Contract Documents. Such work shall include, but not be limited to the following:
1. Concrete and ceramic surfaces shall be cleaned and washed.
 2. Resilient coverings shall be cleaned, waxed and buffed as applicable.
 3. Woodwork shall be dusted and cleaned.
 4. Sash, fixtures and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned.
 5. Stains, spots, dust, marks and smears shall be removed from all surfaces.
 6. Hardware and metal surfaces shall be cleaned and polished.
 7. Glass and plastic surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned by professional window cleaners.
 8. Damaged, broken or scratched glass or plastic shall be replaced by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.
 9. Vacuum carpeted and soft surfaces with high efficiency particulate arrestor (HEPA) vacuum.
 10. Use low-emitting, environmentally friendly cleaning agents and procedures. Do not use ammonia-, chlorine bleach-, or solvent-based cleaners, unless authorized in writing by Architect.
- B. Pest Control: Engage a licensed exterminator, who practices integrated pest management (IPM), to inspect the project and eliminate rodents, termites and all other insects and pests. Coordinate pest control plan with Owner. Owner's written approval is required prior to application. Submit proposed program to Owner and Architect. Program shall clearly indicate the following:
1. Area or areas to be treated.
 2. Manufacturer's printed instructions and MSDS for each chemical to be used.
 3. Pollution preventive measures to be employed.

- C. Repairs: Repair and touch-up all damaged and deteriorated products and surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS [Not Used]

PART 3 - EXECUTION [Not Used]

END OF SECTION

SECTION 011080

HEALTH AND SAFETY PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. The Contractor shall, prior to the start of work on the site, prepare and submit for the record, a site-specific
1. Health and Safety Plan (HASP). Work may not proceed at the project site until Maine Maritime Academy and/or the Owner's Representative have received the Contractor's Health and Safety Plan. Any delays incurred by the Contractor relating to receipt of the Health and Safety Plan shall be the responsibility of the Contractor and constitutes no additional costs or claims to the Owner.
- B. The Health and Safety Plan shall include, but not be limited to the following:
1. Identification of Contractor's Site Safety Officer, including telephone contact information.
 2. Identification of Contractor's Designated Field Personnel, including telephone contact information of the on-site field supervisor.
 3. Identification of Hazard and Risks Associated with Project.
 4. Identification of required personal protective equipment.
 5. Contractor's Standard Operating Procedures, including Personnel Training and Field Orientation; Contingency and Emergency Procedures; and Listing of Emergency Contacts.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (NOT USED)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012100

ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Coordinate allowance work with other work of this project to ensure that each allowance is completely integrated and interfaced with related and adjacent work.
- B. Requirements per AIA A201: Unless the otherwise provided in the Contract Documents:
1. Allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts.
 2. Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amount shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances.
 3. Whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by change order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Par. 1 above and (2) changes in the Contractor's costs under Par. 2 above.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Definition and Explanations: Certain requirements of the work related to each allowance are shown and specified in Contract Documents. The allowance has been established in lieu of additional requirements for that work, and further requirements (if any) will be issued at a later date by modification to the contract documents.
- B. Types of allowances scheduled herein for the work include the following:
1. Lump sum allowances.
 2. Unit-cost allowances.
- C. Selection and Purchase: At earliest feasible date, advise Architect of date when final decision on each allowance must be made in order to avoid delays in the work.
1. Submit suggestions, proposals and recommendations for each allowance to assist Owner in making final decisions.
 2. Submit suggestions, proposals and recommendations for allowances in form required for change orders.
 3. Purchase products and systems for each allowance as specifically directed (in writing) by the Architect.

- D. Change Order Data: Where applicable, include in each proposed change order both the quantities of products being purchased and unit costs, along with total amount of purchases to be made.
- E. Furnish Contractor's certification that quantities of products being purchased are the actual quantities needed with reasonable allowance for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections and similar margins. When requested, prepare explanations and documentation to substantiate the margins as claimed. The Owner reserves the right to establish the actual quantity of work-in-place by an independent quantity survey, measure or count.
- F. Indicate amounts of applicable trade discounts.
- G. Comply with provisions of Owner/Contractor Agreement and General and Supplementary Conditions. For each allowance, Contractor's claims for increased costs must be submitted with initial change order authorizing work to proceed on that allowance; otherwise, such claims will be rejected.
- H. Excess Materials: Submit invoices or delivery slips to indicate actual quantities of materials delivered to site for each allowance.
 - 1. Where economically feasible, and when so requested by the Architect, return unused materials to the manufacturer/supplier for credit to the Owner, after the installation has been completed and accepted.
 - 2. Where it is not economically feasible to return unused material for credit and when so requested by the Architect, prepare unused material for the Owner's storage, and deliver to the Owner's storage space as directed. Otherwise, disposal of excess material is the Contractor's responsibility.
- I. Unit-Cost Allowances: Each change order amount for unit-cost type allowances shall be based solely on the difference between the actual unit purchase amount and the unit allowance, multiplied by the final measure or count of work-in-place.
 - 1. For unit-cost type allowances, submit a substantiated survey of quantities of materials, coordinate with the "Schedule of Values," and corresponding with change order quantities

PART 2 - PRODUCTS [Not Used]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance No. 1: CMP coordination, supervision and operations scope related to shut down and re-energization of primary feeder, removal and replacement of the existing leased 500 kVA transformer, extend, reroute and re-terminate the primary feeders (entering and leaving) to the new leased 750 kVA transformer at the new pad location; \$75,000.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012200

UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section covers those items for which indefinite quantities can be expected and, therefore, pre-agreed prices per unit of work are established as means to determine adjustments to the Contract Price after actual quantities are determined.

1.3 QUANTITIES AND COST ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Refer to individual Specification Sections for methods of measurement and payment for unit prices. As soon as the work involved in each unit cost item has been completed, submit documentation to establish the actual quantities provided. Submit to the Architect for review and issuance of Change Order.
- B. Change Order amount for each unit cost item will be based on actual quantities multiplied by the unit price. This unit price includes all costs as described below.

1.4 UNIT PRICES

- A. Should certain additional work be required, or should the quantities of certain classes of work be increased or decreased from those required by the Contract Documents, by authorization of the Owner, the below unit prices shall, at the option of the Owner, be the basis of payment to the Contractor or credit to the Owner, for such increase or decrease in the work.
- B. The Unit Prices shall represent the exact net amount per unit to be paid the Contractor (in the case of additions or increases) or to be refunded the Owner (in the case of decreases). No additional adjustment will be allowed for materials, installation, substrate preparation, overhead, profit, insurance, general conditions, or other direct or indirect expenses of the Contractor or Subcontractors.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS [Not Used]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Radiator covers

1. Provide a unit price for replacement of existing radiator covers to replace a damaged cover with a new one.
 2. Format for Unit price: One (1) 8'-0" section of radiator cover plus additional cost per linear foot beyond 8'-0".
- B. Roof membrane replacement areas
1. Provide a unit price to replace small areas of roof membrane that are not otherwise able to be quantified from drawings and notes.
 2. Format for price: price for one (1) patch of 4 square feet. Price for additional square foot after that for each patch.
- C. Drywall ceiling removal and replacement
1. Provide a unit price for removal and replacement of existing drywall ceilings with new to match including prep and paint.
 2. Format: Price for a 4 square foot area plus price for additional square foot per area.
- D. Bathroom sink apron replacement
1. Provide a unit price to replace (1) section of apron 7'-0"+/- long and associated new blocking, support and hardware as indicated on drawing.
- E. CMU block wall replacement
1. Provide a unit price for removal and replacement of existing CMU wall with new to match including prep and paint, wall base and patching ceiling where impacted.
 2. Format: Price for a 4 square foot area plus price for additional square foot per area.
- F. Metal stud wall replacement
1. Provide a unit price for removal and replacement of existing 5/8" GWB on 3 5/8" metal stud wall with new to match including prep and paint, wall base, and patch ceiling to new wall.
 2. Format: Price for a 4 square foot area plus price for additional square foot per area.
- G. Fiberglass shower unit replacement
1. Provide a unit price to provide and install a new fiberglass shower unit in the case where an existing unit is damaged during removal and cannot be reinstalled.
- H. Ledge removal
1. Provide a unit price for ledge removal in cubic yards using chemical removal methods.
- I. Circuit breakers in new or existing panels
1. Provide unit price to furnish, install and terminate branch circuit to an AFCI 20A-1 Pole circuit breaker.
 2. Provide unit price to furnish, install and terminate branch circuit to a GFCI 20A-1 Pole circuit breaker.
 3. Provide unit price to furnish, install and terminate branch circuit to a GFCI 30A-2 Pole circuit breaker.

J. Lighting Control

1. Provide unit price to furnish and install a ceiling mounted occupancy/vacancy sensor.
2. Provide unit price to furnish and install a wall mounted occupancy/vacancy sensor.

K. Emergency lighting

1. Provide unit price to furnish and install an illuminated exit sign (with integral battery back-up)
2. Provide unit price to furnish and install a wall mounted emergency battery unit (with integral battery back-up).

L. Fire Alarm

1. Provide unit price to furnish and install a fire alarm A/V device (177 cd visual with low frequency audio)
2. Provide unit price to furnish and install a system connected photoelectric smoke detector.
3. Provide unit price to furnish and install a system connected CO detector.
4. Provide unit price to furnish and install a manual pull station.
5. Provide unit price to furnish and install an addressable control or monitor module.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012300

ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. For each of the alternates Scheduled at the end of this Section, state the amount in the proposal to be added to or deducted from the Contract Sum for the work.

1.3 ALTERNATES

- A. Definition: "Alternates" are alternate products, materials, equipment, systems, methods, units of work or major elements of the construction, which may, at the Owner's option and under the terms established by the Contract or Agreement, be selected for the work in lieu of the corresponding requirements of the Contract Documents. Selection may occur prior to the Contract Date, or may, by the Agreement, be deferred for possible selection at a subsequent date.
- B. Alternate Requirements: A Schedule of Alternates is included at the end of this Section. Each alternate is defined using abbreviated language, recognizing that the Contract Documents define the requirements. Coordinate related work to ensure that work affected by each alternate is complete and properly interfaced with work of each selected alternate.
- C. Provide written proposals for each alternate on the Bid Form for Owner's consideration. Each proposal amount shall include the entire cost of the alternate portion of the work including overhead, profit, and other costs including cost of interfacing and coordinating the alternate with related and adjacent work.
- D. Selection of Alternates: Selection of alternates to be included in the work will be by the Owner.
- E. Notification: Immediately following award of Contract, prepare and distribute to each entity a notification of status of each alternate. Indicate which alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for consideration at a later date. Include full description of negotiated modifications to alternates, if any

PART 2 - PRODUCTS [Not Used]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate 01: Dorm room and Dorm bathroom light fixtures.

1. Base Bid: Existing light fixtures in dorm rooms and dorm bathrooms to remain or be re-installed, as indicated on drawings. Provide LED EBU's in each bathroom, as indicated on drawings.
 2. Alternate: Existing light fixtures in dorm rooms and dorm bathrooms to be replaced with new LED fixtures, as indicated on drawings. The LED EBU's will be maintained in each bathroom as installed under the Base Bid.
- B. Alternate 02: Common area light fixtures (corridor, office, stair, laundry, storage, utility, etc.)
1. Base Bid: Existing light fixtures in common areas to remain or be salvaged and reinstalled, as indicated on drawings. Provide LED EBU's and self-powered LED exit signs throughout common areas, as indicated on drawings.
 2. Alternate: Existing light fixtures in common areas to be removed and replaced with new LED fixtures. Provide bi-level (50% output and 100% output) lighting, occupancy sensor controlled, for corridor and stairs. Utilize emergency egress lighting central inverters, controlling selected light fixtures, in lieu of LED EBU's, as indicated on drawings.
- C. Alternate 03: VRF systems for Ground, Intermediate and First Floors in Phase 1 and Phase 4 areas as indicated.
1. Base bid: no VRF systems for these areas.
 2. Alternate: provide VRF systems for these areas.
- D. Alternate 04: Courtyard exterior doors
1. Base Bid: existing to remain
 2. Alternate: replace existing wood doors with hollow metal doors and new hardware
- E. Alternate 05 : Structural floor remediation at walk-off mat
1. Base bid: no work
 2. Alternate: replace floor structure, slab and impacted finishes with new as indicated at one location.
- F. Alternate 06: Structural floor remediation at two additional locations
1. Base bid: no work
 2. Alternate: provide access hatch in existing concrete floor where indicated and price to replace potentially failing joists and floor slab with related finishes at (2) two other recessed walk-off mats over crawl spaces assuming similar deterioration and replacement scope.
- G. Alternate 07: Community bathroom sink aprons
1. Base Bid: remove and reinstall existing sink aprons for access to work below sinks.
 2. Alternate: remove and dispose of existing sink aprons and provide new aprons, support blocking and hardware as indicated in drawings. This is for the larger community style restrooms. Smaller restrooms will be handled on an individual basis with unit price.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013220

PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section provides administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

- 1. Preconstruction photographs
- 2. Periodic construction photographs

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor shall submit preconstruction and construction progress photographs within seven days of taking the photographs. Construction progress photographs shall be taken weekly.

- 1. Identification: For each photograph, provide the following information:

- a. Name of Project
- b. Name of Contractor
- c. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by the camera
- d. Unique sequential identifier
- e. Name of subject matter

- 2. Digital Photographs: Submit a complete set of digital photograph electronic files via email or on a flash drive.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a photographer of construction projects.

1.5 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights to Owner for unlimited use and reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in uncompressed TIFF format, or .jpg, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 7.0 megapixels and an image resolution of not less than 1600 by 1200 pixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Photographer: Engage a qualified person to take construction photographs.
- B. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
 - 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in filename for each image.
 - 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images same as for those submitted to the Owner.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of demolition starting construction, take color photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction.
 - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
 - 2. Take sufficient photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to site before starting the Work.
 - 3. Take photographs to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Additional Photographs: Owner/Owner's Representative may issue requests for additional photographs, in addition to periodic photographs specified.
 - 1. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
 - 2. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Special events planned at or adjacent to the Project site.
 - b. Immediate follow-up when special events result in construction damage or losses.
 - c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site.
 - d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
 - e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.

END OF SECTION

Curtis Hall Renovations
Maine Maritime Academy
Castine, ME

CHA Project No. Job #076982
100% Construction Documents, Issued for Bid
November 21, 2023

SECTION 014100
SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Special Inspections and Structural Testing shall be in accordance with Chapter 17 of the International Building Code (2015) as referenced by the Maine Uniform Building and Energy Code (MUBEC).
- B. The program of Special Inspection and Structural Testing is a Quality Assurance program intended to ensure that the work is performed in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- C. This specification section is intended to inform the Construction Manager of the Owner's quality assurance program and the extent of the Construction Manager's responsibilities. This specification section is also intended to notify the Special Inspector, Testing Laboratory, and other Agents of the Special Inspector of their requirements and responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Registered Design Professional: Licensed Professional Engineer or Registered Architect whose seal appears in the Construction Drawings. Unless noted otherwise, references to the Registered Design Professional in this section refer to the Structural Engineer of Record (SER).
- B. Code Enforcement Official: Officer or other designated authority charged with administration and enforcement of the IBC.
- C. Special Inspector: A Professional Engineer retained by the Owner to perform structural inspections and coordinate and oversee the work of the other Agents. The Special Inspector shall be licensed in the state where the project is located and shall have building design experience.
- D. Testing/Inspecting Agency: Agent retained by Special Inspector or Owner and coordinated by Special Inspector to perform some inspection services on behalf of Special Inspector. A Geotechnical Engineer is an example of an Inspecting Agent.
- E. Statement of Special Inspections: Documents prepared by the Registered Design Professional and filed with and approved by the Code Enforcement Official, listing materials and work requiring Special Inspections. The Statement of Special Inspections is in Attachment A.

- F. Schedule of Special Inspections: An itemized list of inspections, verifications, and tests (including frequency) required for the project and individuals, agencies, or firms who will be retained to perform these services. The Schedule of Special Inspections is located in Attachment A.
- G. Continuous Special Inspection: Full-time observation of work by the Special Inspector or Testing Agency while the work is being performed.
- H. Periodic Special Inspections: Part-time or intermittent observation of work by the Special Inspector or Testing Agency for work that has been or is being performed and at completion of the work.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. The Special Inspector shall be a licensed Professional Engineer or Structural Engineer who is approved by the Registered Design Professional for Structural Engineer of Record and Code Enforcement Official.
- B. The Testing Laboratory and individual technicians shall be approved by the Structural Engineer of Record (SER).
- C. The Testing Laboratory shall maintain a full time licensed Professional Engineer on staff who shall certify all test reports. The Engineer shall be responsible for the training of the testing technicians and shall be in responsible charge of the field and laboratory testing operations.
- D. Special Inspections shall be performed by inspectors who are either licensed Professional Engineers (P.E.), Engineer-Intern (E.I.) in the project State, with an education and background in structural engineering except as indicated below.
- E. Comply with the following specific requirements:
 - 1. Special Inspections of soils and foundations may be performed by inspectors with an education and background in geotechnical engineering in lieu of a background in structural engineering.
 - 2. Technicians performing sampling and testing of concrete shall be ACI certified Concrete Field-Testing Technicians – Grade 1.
 - 3. Inspectors performing inspections of concrete work such as inspections of concrete placement, batching, reinforcing placement, curing and protection, may be ACI certified Concrete Construction Inspectors or ICC certified Reinforced Concrete Special Inspector in lieu of being a licensed P.E, S.E. or EIT.
 - 4. Technicians performing visual inspection of welding shall be AWS Certified Welding Inspectors or ICC certified Structural Steel and Welding Special Inspectors, technicians performing non-destructive testing such as ultrasonic testing, radiographic testing, magnetic particle testing, or dye-penetrant testing shall be certified as an ASNT-TC Level II or Level III technician.
 - 5. Inspectors performing inspections of spray fireproofing may be ICC certified Spray-Applied Fireproofing Special Inspector.
 - 6. Technicians performing standard tests described by specific ASTM Standards shall have training in the performance of such tests and must be able to demonstrate either by oral or written examination competence for the test to be conducted. They shall be under the supervision of a licensed Professional Engineer and shall not be permitted to independently evaluate test results.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Special Inspector and Testing Laboratory shall submit to the Registered Design Professional for Structural Engineer of Record (SER) and Code Enforcement Official for review a copy of their qualifications which shall include the names and qualifications of each of the individual inspectors and technicians who will be performing inspections or tests.
- B. The Special Inspector and Testing Laboratory shall disclose any past or present business relationship or potential conflict of interest with the Construction Manager or any of the Subcontractors whose work will be inspected or tested.

1.6 PAYMENT

- A. The Owner will engage and pay for services of Special Inspector and Testing/Inspecting Agency.
- B. If materials requiring Special Inspections are fabricated in a plant not within 100 miles of the project site, Construction Manager shall be responsible for travel expenses of Special Inspector or Testing/Inspecting Agency.
- C. The Construction Manager shall be responsible for cost of retesting or reinspection of work failing to comply with requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. The Construction Manager will provide Special Inspector with complete set of Contract Documents sealed by the Registered Design Professional and approved by the Code Enforcement Official.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION MANAGER RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. The Construction Manager shall cooperate with the Special Inspector and his agents so that the Special Inspections and testing may be performed without hindrance.
- B. The Construction Manager shall review the Statement of Special Inspections and shall be responsible for coordinating and scheduling inspections and tests. The Construction Manager shall notify the Special Inspector or Testing Laboratory at least 24 hours in advance of a required inspection or test. Uninspected work that required inspection may be rejected solely on that basis.
- C. The Construction Manager shall provide incidental labor and facilities to provide access to the work to be inspected or tested, to obtain and handle samples at the site or at source of products to be tested, to facilitate tests and inspections, storage and curing of test samples.
- D. The Construction Manager shall keep at the project site the latest set of construction drawings, field sketches, approved shop drawings, and specifications for use by the inspectors and testing technicians.
- E. The Special Inspection program shall in no way relieve the Construction Manager of his obligation to perform work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or from implementing an effective Quality Control program. All work that is to be subjected to Special Inspections shall first be reviewed by the Construction Manager's quality control personnel.

- F. The Construction Manager shall be solely responsible for construction site safety.

1.8 LIMITS ON AUTHORITY

- A. The Special Inspector or Testing/Inspecting Agencies may not release, revoke, alter, or enlarge on the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. The Special Inspector or Testing/Inspecting Agencies will not have control over the Construction Manager's means and methods of construction.
- C. The Special Inspector or Testing/Inspecting Agencies shall not be responsible for construction site safety.
- D. The Special Inspector or Testing/Inspecting Agencies have no authority to stop the work.

1.9 STATEMENT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. The attached Statement of Special Inspections (Attachment A), prepared by the Registered Design Professional for Structural Engineer of Record (SER), shall be submitted with the application for Building Permit.

1.10 RECORDS AND REPORTS

- A. Detailed daily reports shall be prepared of each inspection or test and submitted to the Special Inspector. Reports shall include:
 - 1. Date of test or inspection.
 - 2. Name of inspector or technician.
 - 3. Location of specific areas tested or inspected.
 - 4. Description of test or inspection and results.
 - 5. Applicable ASTM standard.
 - 6. Weather conditions.
 - 7. Engineer's signature and license number.
- B. The Special Inspector shall submit interim reports to the Code Enforcement Official at the end of each week that include all inspections and test reports received that week. Copies shall be sent to the SER, Architect, and Contractor.
- C. Any discrepancies from the Contract Documents found during a Special Inspection shall be immediately reported to the Construction Manager. If the discrepancies are not corrected, the Special Inspector shall notify the SER and Code Enforcement Official. Reports shall document all discrepancies identified and the corrective action taken.
- D. The Testing Laboratory shall immediately notify the Special Inspector and the SER by telephone and email of any test results that fail to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents. Notification shall be made within 3 days of test showing deficiency.
- E. Reports shall be submitted to the Special Inspector within 7 days of the inspection or test. Handwritten reports may be submitted if final typed copies are not available.

- F. At the completion of the work requiring Special Inspections, each inspection agency and testing laboratory shall provide a statement to the Special Inspector that all work was completed in substantial conformance with the Contract Documents and that all appropriate inspections and tests were performed.

1.11 COMMUNICATION

- A. Testing/Inspecting Agency shall immediately notify Construction Manager, Special Inspector, and Registered Design Professional by telephone, fax, or e-mail of test results failing to comply with requirements of Contract Documents.
- B. Special Inspector shall immediately notify Construction Manager of work found to be in nonconformance with Contract Documents during inspections. If nonconforming work is not corrected while Special Inspector is on-site, Special Inspector shall notify Registered Design Professional within 24 hours (one business day) and issue a nonconformance report. Special Inspector may use Special Inspection Non-Conformance Report form at end of this section or other similar form.
- C. If nonconforming work is not corrected at time of substantial completion of structure or other appropriate time, Special Inspector shall notify Code Enforcement Official.

1.12 DISTRIBUTION OF REPORTS

- A. Testing/Inspecting Agency shall submit reports to Special Inspector and Registered Design Professional within 7 days of inspection or test. Legible handwritten reports may be submitted if final typed copies are not available.
- B. Special Inspector shall submit reports to Registered Design Professional within 7 days of inspections. Legible handwritten reports may be submitted if final typed copies are not available.
- C. If requested by the Code Enforcement Official, Special Inspector shall submit interim reports that include inspections and tests performed since beginning of construction or since previous interim report. Interim reports shall be addressed to the Code Enforcement Official with copies sent to the Registered Design Professionals (Structural Engineer and Architect) and Construction Manager. Interim reports shall be signed by Agent performing inspections.

1.13 FINAL REPORT OF SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. At completion of work, each Testing/Inspecting Agency shall submit Agent's Final Report of Special Inspections to Special Inspector stating work was completed in substantial conformance with Contract Documents and appropriate inspections and tests were performed. Testing/Inspecting Agency may use Agent's Final Report of Special Inspections form provided at end of this section or other similar form.
- B. At completion of work, Special Inspector shall compile inspection and test reports generated by each Agent into a Final Report of Special Inspections. Final Report of Special Inspections shall state required inspections have been performed and itemize nonconforming work not corrected or resolved.

- C. Special Inspector may use Final Report of Special Inspections form provided (Attachment A) or other similar form.
- D. Special Inspector shall submit Final Report of Special Inspections to Registered Design Professional and Code Enforcement Official prior to issuance of a Certificate of Use and Occupancy.

END OF SECTION

ATTACHMENT A

Special Inspections Schedules

Evergreen Credit Union
List of Special Inspections

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| Per IBC Section 1704 of the 2015 International Building Code the following items require Special Inspections. <u>Special inspectors must be employed by the Owner or registered design professional in responsible charge acting as the owner's agent.</u> | | | |
| PROJECT NAME | PROJECT ADDRESS | PERMIT NO. | |
| Curtis Hall Renovations | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT |
| | | | |
| 1704.2.5 Inspection of Fabricators | | | |
| Verify fabrication/quality control procedures | In-plant review (3) | N | Periodic |
| 1705.2 Steel Construction | | | |
| 1. Fabricator and erector documents (Verify reports and certificates as listed in AISC 360, chapter N, paragraph 3.2 for compliance with construction documents) | Submittal Review | N | Each submittal |
| 2. Material verification of structural steel | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 3. Embedments (Verify diameter, grade, type, length, embedment. See 1705.3 for anchors) | Field inspection | Y | Continuous |
| 4. Verify member locations, braces, stiffeners, and application of joint details at each connection comply with construction documents | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 5. Structural steel welding: | | | |
| a. Inspection tasks Prior to Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.4-1) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) |
| b. Inspection tasks During Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.41) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe (4) |
| c. Inspection tasks After Welding (Observe, or perform for each welded joint or member, the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.4) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) |
| d. Nondestructive testing (NDT) of welded joints: see Commentary | | Y | |
| e. Complete penetration groove welds 5/16" or greater in risk category III or IV | Shop (3) or field ultrasonic testing - 100% | Y | Periodic |
| 5) Fabricator's NDT reports when fabricator performs NDT | Verify reports | N | Each submittal (5) |
| 6. Structural steel bolting: | | | |
| | Shop (3) and field inspection | | |
| a. Inspection tasks Prior to Bolting (Observe, or perform tasks for each bolted connection, in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-1) | Field | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) |
| b. Inspection tasks During Bolting (Observe the QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-2) | Field | Y | Observe (4) |
| 1) Pre-tensioned and slip-critical joints | | | |
| a) Turn-of-nut with matching markings | Field | Y | Periodic |
| b) Direct tension indicator | Field | Y | Periodic |
| c) Twist-off type tension control bolt | Field | Y | Periodic |
| d) Turn-of-nut without matching markings | Field | Y | Continuous |
| e) Calibrated wrench | Field | Y | Continuous |
| 2) Snug-tight joints | | | |
| a. Inspection tasks After Bolting (Perform tasks for each bolted connection in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N5.6-3) | | Y | Perform (4) |
| 7. Inspection of steel elements of composite construction prior to concrete placement in accordance with QA tasks listed in AISC 360, Table N6.1 | Shop (3) and field inspection and testing | Y | Observe or Perform as noted (4) |
| 1705.2.2 Steel Construction Other Than Structural Steel | | | |
| 1. Material verification of cold-formed steel deck: | | | |
| a. Identification markings | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| b. Manufacturer's certified test reports | Submittal Review | Y | Each submittal |
| 2. Connection of cold-formed steel deck to supporting structure: | | | |
| | Shop (3) and field inspection | | |
| a. Welding | | Y | Periodic |
| b. Other fasteners (in accordance with AISC 360, Section N6) | | Y | |
| 1) Verify fasteners are in conformance with approved submittal | | Y | Periodic |

Evergreen Credit Union
List of Special Inspections

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Per IBC Section 1704 of the 2015 International Building Code the following items require Special Inspections. <u>Special inspectors must be employed by the Owner or registered design professional in responsible charge acting as the owner's agent.</u> | | | |
| PROJECT NAME | PROJECT ADDRESS | PERMIT NO. | |
| Curtis Hall Renovations | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT |
| | | | |
| 2) Verify fastener installation is in conformance with approved submittal and manufacturer's recommendations | | Y | Periodic |
| 1705.3 Concrete Construction | | | |
| 1. Inspection of reinforcing steel installation (see 1705.2.2 for welding) | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic. |
| 2. Inspection of prestressing steel installation | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 3. Inspection of anchors cast in concrete where allowable loads have been increased per section 1908.5 or where strength design is used | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Continuous |
| 4. Inspection of anchors and reinforcing steel post-installed in hardened concrete: Per research reports including verification of anchor type, anchor dimensions, hole dimensions, hole cleaning procedures, anchor spacing, edge distances, concrete minimum thickness, anchor embedment and tightening torque | Field inspection | Y | Periodic or as required by the research report issued by an approved source |
| 5. Verify use of approved design mix | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 6. Fresh concrete sampling, perform slump and air content tests and determine temperature of concrete | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Continuous |
| 7. Inspection of concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Continuous |
| 8. Inspection for maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 9. Inspection of prestressed concrete: | Shop (3) and field inspection | | |
| a. Application of prestressing force | | N | Continuous |
| b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons in the seismic force-resisting system | | | Continuous |
| 10. Erection of precast concrete members | | | |
| a. Inspect in accordance with construction documents | Field inspection | N | In accordance with construction documents |
| b. Perform inspections of welding and bolting in accordance with Section 1705.2 | Field inspection | N | In accordance with Section 1705.2 |
| 11. Verification of in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs | Review field testing and laboratory reports | N | Periodic |
| 12. Inspection of formwork for shape, lines, location and dimensions | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 13. Concrete strength testing and verification of compliance with construction documents | Field testing and review of laboratory reports | Y | Periodic |
| 1705.4 Masonry Construction | | | |
| (A) Level A, B and C Quality Assurance: | | | |
| 1. Verify compliance with approved submittals | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic |
| (B) Level B Quality Assurance: | | | |
| 1. Verification of f_m and f_{AAC} prior to construction | Testing by unit strength method or prism test method | N | Periodic |
| (C) Level C Quality Assurance: | | | |
| 1. Verification of f_m and f_{AAC} prior to construction and for every 5,000 SF during construction | Testing by unit strength method or prism test method | N | Periodic |
| 2. Verification of proportions of materials in premixed or preblended mortar, prestressing grout, and grout other than self-consolidating grout, as delivered to the project site | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 3. Verify placement of masonry units | Field Inspection | N | Periodic |
| (D) Levels B and C Quality Assurance: | | | |



Evergreen Credit Union
List of Special Inspections

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|----------------------|
| Per IBC Section 1704 of the 2015 International Building Code the following items require Special Inspections. <u>Special inspectors must be employed by the Owner or registered design professional in responsible charge acting as the owner's agent.</u> | | | |
| PROJECT NAME | PROJECT ADDRESS | PERMIT NO. | |
| Curtis Hall Renovations | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT |
| | | | |
| 1. Verification of Slump Flow and Visual Stability Index (VSI) of self-consolidating grout as delivered to the project | Field testing | Y | Continuous |
| 2. Verify compliance with approved submittals | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 3. Verify proportions of site-mixed mortar, grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 4. Verify grade, type, and size of reinforcement and anchor bolts, and prestressing tendons and anchorages | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 5. Verify construction of mortar joints | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 6. Verify placement of reinforcement, connectors, and prestressing tendons and anchorages | Field Inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic |
| | | N | Level C - Continuous |
| 7. Verify grout space prior to grouting | Field Inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic |
| | | N | Level C - Continuous |
| 8. Verify placement of grout and prestressing grout for bonded tendons | Field Inspection | N | Continuous |
| 9. Verify size and location of structural masonry elements | Field Inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 10. Verify type, size, and location of anchors, including details of anchorage of masonry to structural members, frames, or other construction. | | Y | Level B - Periodic |
| | Field inspection | N | Level C - Continuous |
| 12. Verify preparation, construction of masonry during cold weather (temperature below 40oF) or hot weather (temperature above 90oF) | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 18. Prepare grout and mortar specimens | Field testing | N | Level B - Periodic |
| | | N | Level C - Continuous |
| 19. Observe preparation of prisms | Field inspection | Y | Level B - Periodic |
| | | N | Level C - Continuous |
| 1705.5 Wood Construction | | | |
| 1. Inspection of the fabrication process of wood structural elements and assemblies in accordance with Section 1704.2.5 | In-plant review (3) | N | Periodic |
| 2. For high load diaphragms, verify grade and thickness of structural panel sheathing agree with approved building plans | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 3. For high load diaphragms, verify nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, nail or staple diameter and length, number of fastener lines, and that spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agree with approved building plans | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 4. Metal plate connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater: verify temporary and permanent restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.6 SOILS | | | |
| 1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 3. Perform classification and testing of controlled fill materials. | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 4. Verify use of proper materials, densities, and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of controlled fill | Field inspection | Y | Continuous |
| 5. Prior to placement of controlled fill, observe subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 1705.7 Driven Deep Foundations - NOT APPLICABLE | | | |
| 1705.8 Cast-in-Place Deep Foundations - NOT APPLICABLE | | | |
| 1705.9 Helical File Foundations - NOT APPLICABLE | | | |
| 1705.11.1 Structural Wood Special Inspections For Wind Resistance - NOT APPLICABLE | | | |
| 1. Inspection of field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system | Field inspection | N | Continuous |
| 2. Inspection of nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.10.2 Cold-formed Steel Special Inspections For Wind Resistance | | | |

Evergreen Credit Union
List of Special Inspections

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|
| Per IBC Section 1704 of the 2015 International Building Code the following items require Special Inspections. <u>Special inspectors must be employed by the Owner or registered design professional in responsible charge acting as the owner's agent.</u> | | | |
| PROJECT NAME | PROJECT ADDRESS | PERMIT NO. | |
| Curtis Hall Renovations | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | Y/N | EXTENT |
| 1. Inspection during welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 2. Inspections for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the main windforce-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.11.3 Wind-resisting Components | | | |
| 1. Roof cladding | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 2. Wall cladding | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| 1705.12.1 Structural Steel Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| Inspection of structural steel in accordance with AISC 341 | Shop (3) and field inspection | Y | In accordance with AISC 341 |
| 1705.12.2 Structural Wood Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| 1. Inspection of field gluing operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system | Field inspection | N | Continuous |
| 2. Inspection of nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.3 Cold-formed Steel Light-Frame Construction Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| 1. Inspection during welding operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 2. Inspections for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of components within the seismic force-resisting system | Shop (3) and field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.4 Designated Seismic Systems Verification | | | |
| Inspect and verify that that the component label, anchorage or mounting conforms to the certificate of compliance in accordance with Section 1705.12.3. | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.5 Architectural Components Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| 1. Inspection during the erection and fastening of exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 2. Inspection during the erection and fastening of interior and exterior nonbearing walls | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 3. Inspection during anchorage of access floors | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.6 Mechanical and Electrical Components Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| 1. Inspection during the anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency or standby power systems. (SDC C,D,E,F) | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 2. Inspection during the anchorage of other electrical equipment. (SDC E,F) | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 3. Inspection during installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials, and their associated mechanical units (SDC C,D,E,F) | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 4. Inspection during the installation and anchorage of HVAC ductwork that will contain hazardous materials. (SDC C,D,E,F) | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 5. Inspection during the installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems. (SDC C,D,E,F) | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.7 Storage Racks Special Inspections for Seismic Resistance (SDC D,E,F) | | | |
| Inspection during the anchorage of storage racks 8 feet or greater in height | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1705.12.8 Seismic Isolation Systems (SDC B,C,D,E,F) | | | |
| Inspection during the Seismic isolation system installation. | Field inspection | N | Periodic |
| 1706.12 Concrete Reinforcement Testing and Qualification for Seismic Resistance | | | |
| 1. Structural Steel Testing and Qualifications for Seismic Resistance – Test in Accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341 | Shop (3) & Field Testing | Y | Per AISC 341 |
| Sprayed Fire Resistance Materials: | | | |
| 1. Verify Average Thickness of sprayed fire resistant materials applied to structural members | Field inspection | Y | Periodic per IBC Section |

Evergreen Credit Union
List of Special Inspections

| SCHEDULE OF SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICES | | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Per IBC Section 1704 of the 2015 International Building Code the following items require Special Inspections. <u>Special inspectors must be employed by the Owner or registered design professional in responsible charge acting as the owner's agent.</u> | | | |
| PROJECT NAME | PROJECT ADDRESS | PERMIT NO. | |
| Curtis Hall Renovations | | | |
| MATERIAL / ACTIVITY | SERVICE | EXTENT | |
| | | Y/N | EXTENT |
| 2. Verify Density of the sparayed fire resistant material complies with approved fire resistant design | Field inspection | Y | Periodic per IBC Section |
| Mastic and Infumescent Fire Resistant Coatings: | | | |
| Inspect Mastic and Infusement Fire Resistant Coatings Applied to Structural Elements and Decks | Field inspection | Y | Periodic |
| Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems(EIFS): | | | |
| Fire Resistant Penetrations and Joints: | | | |
| 1. Inspect Penetration Firestop Systems | Field Testing | Y | Per ASTM E2174 |
| 2. Inspect Fire Resistant Joint Systems | Field Testing | Y | Per ASTM E2174 |
| 1705.18 Smoke Control Systems | | | |
| 1. Leakage testing and recording of device locations prior to concealment | Field testing | | Periodic |
| 2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion, pressure difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification | Field testing | | Periodic |
| Additional Special Inspections required by Building and Site Development | | | |
| | Accessible Route Certification | | |
| | Exterior Lighting Certification | | |
| | State Elevator Certification | | |
| | State Boiler Certification | | |
| | As-Built BMP required | | |
| -Special inspection reports are to be kept on the job for Building inspector Verification. Send reports bi-weekly to SER and Project Architect | | | |
| -All discrepancies must be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If not corrected discrepancies must be brought to the immediate attention of the building official, and design professional in responsible charge before completion of that stage of work. | | | |
| -A final special inspection report, from the special inspector(s), documenting the required special inspections were performed, correction of discrepancies, and compliance with construction documents shall be submitted before a Certificate of Occupancy is issued. | | | |
| * INSPECTION AGENTS FIRM | | ADDRESS | |
| 1. Allied Engineering, Inc. - QC inspections process. 160 Veranda St, Portland, ME 04103 | | | |
| 3. | | | |
| Notes: | | | |
| 1. The inspection and testing agent(s) shall be engaged by the Owner or the Owner's Agent, and not by the Contractor or Subcontractor whose work is to be inspected or tested. Any conflict of interest must be disclosed to the Building Official prior to commencing work. The qualifications of the Special Inspector(s) and/or testing agencies may be subject to the approval of the Building Official and/or the Design Professional. | | | |
| 2. The list of Special Inspectors may be submitted as a separate document, if noted so above. | | | |
| 3. Special Inspections as required by Section 1704.2.5 are not required where the fabricator is approved in accordance with IBC Section 1704.2.5.2. | | | |
| 4. Observe on a random basis, operations need not be delayed pending these inspections. Perform these tasks for each welded joint, bolted connection, or steel element. | | | |
| 5. NDT of welds completed in an approved fabricator's shop may be performed by that fabricator when approved by the AHJ. Refer to AISC 360, N7. | | | |
| Are Requirements for Seismic Resistance included in the Statement of Special Inspections ? | | Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |
| Are Requirements for Wind Resistance included in the Statement of Special Inspections ? | | Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | |
|  | |  | |
| SIGNATURE: Registered design professional in responsible charge: | | 9/13/2022 DATE | |

SECTION 016200

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

No substitutions will be considered without this completed substitution request form and supporting documentation. Substitutions made without completion of this form will be considered defective work as stated in AIA A201.

Date: _____

Number: _____

Re: Request for Substitution

The Contractor proposes the following substitution in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents:

Scope of Substitution _____

Specification Reference _____

Drawing Reference _____

Reason for Proposed Substitution _____

Benefit to Owner _____

Impact on Project Cost _____

Impact on Project Schedule _____

Impact on Guarantees and Warranties _____

Coordination and Compatibility Required with Adjacent Materials and System _____

List Deviations From Specified _____

Requirements

Attachments: Attach supporting documentation sufficient for Architect to evaluate substitution.
Substitution Request Forms submitted without adequate documentation will be returned without review.

Attachments

Response Date: List date by which response by Architect is requested to maintain project schedule and allow sufficient time for inclusion of proposed substitution.

Response Date

Submitted By

Firm and Address

Signature below signifies acceptance of responsibility for accuracy and completeness of information included in this Substitution Request Form.

Authorized Signature

ARCHITECT'S RESPONSE

Notations listed below shall have same meaning as on Architect's approval stamp. Clarifications to or changes in project schedule or time shall be processed using standard project forms.

Architect's
Response

- Approved
- Approved as Corrected
- Revise and Resubmit
- Rejected
- Returned Without Review

Remarks

Date

Signed

END OF FORM

SECTION 017400

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes requirements for the Contractor's implementation of waste management controls and systems for the duration of the Work.
- B. Develop a waste management plan, quantifying material diversion by either weight or volume to recycle and/or salvage non-hazardous construction and demolition debris.

1.3 INTENT

- A. The Owner and Architect have established that this Project shall generate the least amount of waste practical and that processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors shall be employed.
- B. With regard to these goals the Contractor shall develop, for the Architect's review, a Construction Waste Management Plan (CWMP) for this Project.
- C. Each Subcontractor shall be responsible for segregating his own waste into different dumpsters as directed by the Contractor.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that debris will be disposed of at appropriately designated licensed solid waste disposal facilities, as defined by MGL Chapter 111, Section 150A.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan (WMP): Submit within 21 calendar days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, in a format acceptable to the Owner.
 - 1. Analysis of the proposed jobsite waste to be generated, including types and rough quantities.
 - 2. Landfill Options: The name of the landfills where trash and building debris will be disposed of, the applicable landfill tipping fees, and the projected cost of disposing of all Project waste in the landfills.
 - 3. Landfill Certification: Contractor's statement of verification that landfills proposed for use are licensed for types of waste to be deposited and have sufficient capacity to receive waste from this project.
 - 4. Alternatives to Landfilling: A list of each material proposed to be salvaged or recycled during the course of the Project. Include the following and any additional items proposed:
 - a. Cardboard and paper products.

- b. Clean dimensional wood.
 - c. Beverage containers.
 - d. Concrete.
 - e. Slurry wall materials.
 - f. Bricks and masonry.
 - g. Asphalt.
 - h. Metals from framing, banding, stud trim, ductwork, piping, rebar, roofing, other trim, steel, iron, galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, lead, brass, and bronze.
 - i. Mechanical and electrical equipment.
 - j. Building components which can be removed relatively intact from existing construction.
 - k. Packaging materials, including cardboard, boxes, plastic sheet and film, polystyrene packaging, wood crates, plastic pails.
 - l. Glass.
 - m. Scraps from new gypsum wall board.
 - n. Carpet and pad.
 - o. Acoustical ceiling panels.
 - p. Plastics.
5. Meetings: A description of the regular meetings to be held to address waste management.
 6. Materials Handling Procedures: A description of the means by which any waste materials identified above will be protected from contamination, and a description of the means to be employed in recycling the above materials consistent with requirements for acceptance by designated facilities.
 7. Transportation: A description of the means of transportation of the recyclable materials (whether materials will be site-separated and self-hauled to designated centers, or whether mixed materials will be collected by a waste hauler and removed from the site) and destination of materials.
- B. Waste Management Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit a written Waste Management Progress Report in the same format as required for Final Report.
- C. Waste Management Final Report: Prior to Substantial Completion, submit a written Waste Management Final Report summarizing the types and quantities of materials recycled and disposed of under the Waste Management Plan. Include the name and location of disposal facilities.
1. Material category.
 2. Generation point of waste.
 3. Total quantity of waste, by weight.
- D. Other Submittals:
1. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
 2. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
 3. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, and/or receipts.
 4. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, and/or receipts.

5. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.5 CONTRACTORS

- A. Contractor may subcontract work of this Section to a sub-contractor specializing in recycling and salvaging of construction waste.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard Recycling: New, paper-faced gypsum wallboard scrap (cuts from construction - not demolition waste) generated at project shall be recycled. Keep scrap dry.
- C. Acoustical Ceiling Panel Recycling: Demolition and construction waste pulpable mineral fiber ceiling panels may be recycled by Armstrong World Industries and US Gypsum. Contact Armstrong at 1-877-ARMSTRONG (1-877-276-7876) or www.armstrong.com or contact USG at 1-800-USG-4YOU or www.usg.com, to coordinate recycling efforts, apply for product approvals, and receive reclamation procedure requirements.
- D. Carpet Recycling: Demolition and construction waste carpet and carpet padding may be recycled by Carpet America Recovery Effort (CARE). Visit www.carpetrecovery.org to locate carpet reclaimers in local project area and reclamation procedure requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS [Not Used]

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement Waste Management Plan as approved by the Architect. Provide containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement WMP for the entire duration of the Contract.

3.2 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. Manager: The Contractor shall designate an on-site person responsible for instructing workers and overseeing and documenting results of the Waste Management Plan for the Project.
- B. Distribution: The Contractor shall distribute copies of the Waste Management Plan to the Job Site Foreman, each Subcontractor, the Owner and the Architect.
- C. Instruction: The Contractor shall provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, and recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the Project.
- D. Separation Facilities: The Contractor shall lay out and label a specific area to facilitate separation of materials for recycling, salvage, reuse, and return. Recycling and waste bin areas are to be kept neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials. Location shall be acceptable to the Architect.

- E. Hazardous Wastes: Any unforeseen hazardous wastes shall be separated, stored, and disposed of according to local regulations and as directed by the Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 018120

CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY (IAQ) MANAGEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Requirements for minimum indoor air quality (IAQ) performance standards during the construction period and before occupancy.
 - 2. With regard to these goals the Contractor shall develop, for Owner and Architect review, a Construction Indoor Air Quality Management Plan for this Project.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 011000 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS; Submittal requirements.
 - 2. Section 011000 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS; Construction facilities and controls.
 - 3. Section 017400 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT.
 - 4. Division 23 - HVAC.
 - 5. Divisions 02 through 48 Specification Sections; Specific requirements relating to indoor air quality for each Section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Prevent exposure of building systems to environmental tobacco smoke during construction. At a minimum, take the following measures:
 - 1. Do not allow smoking in enclosed portions of the project site.
 - a. This prohibition includes electronic cigarettes.
 - 2. Locate exterior designated smoking areas at least 25 feet away from entries, outdoor air intakes and operable windows. Provide signage for designated smoking areas at each entry.
- B. During construction meet or exceed the minimum requirements of the recommended Control Measures of the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning National Contractors Association (SMACNA) IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction, Second Edition, November 2007, Chapter 3.
- C. Protect absorptive materials from moisture damage when stored on-site and after installation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Construction Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan: With the completed Form of Bidder's Proposal, the Contractor shall submit a preliminary Construction IAQ Management Plan.
 - 1. Within 21 calendar days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner a finalized Construction IAQ Management Plan.
 - 2. The proposed Plan shall comply with Division 23 – HVAC requirements.
 - 3. The proposed Plan shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Protection of ventilation system components during construction.
 - b. Cleaning and replacing contaminated ventilation system components after construction, including filtration media.
 - c. Temporary ventilation.
 - d. Protection of absorptive materials from moisture damage when stored on-site and after installation, including exterior wall rain protection.
 - e. Sequence of finish installation plan.
 - f. Selection of cleaning products and procedures to be used during construction and final cleaning.
 - g. Other items as required by SMACNA IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction, Chapter 3.
 - 4. Coordinate Construction IAQ Management Plan with Owner's current IAQ management plans and procedures.
- B. Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Data: Submit emission test data as required, with testing laboratory and date clearly identified.
- C. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS): Submit for materials as required, with date clearly identified. MSDS must contain specific chemical content data identifying the percent of the total product mass represented by each listed chemical.
- D. Product Data: Submit for each type of filtration media used during construction and installed immediately prior to occupancy, with MERV values clearly identified.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Take special care to prevent accumulation of moisture on materials and within packaging during delivery, storage, and handling to prevent development of mold and mildew inside packaging and on products.
- B. Immediately remove from site and properly dispose of materials showing signs of mold and mildew, including materials with moisture stains.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FILTRATION MEDIA

- A. Filtration Media: Comply with ASHRAE 52.2-1999 and provide MERV as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION IAQ MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. IAQ Manager: The Contractor shall designate an on-site person responsible for instructing workers and overseeing and documenting results of the Construction IAQ Management Plan for the Project.
- B. Distribution: The Contractor shall distribute copies of the Construction IAQ Management Plan to the Job Site Foreman, each subcontractor, the Owner, and the Architect.
- C. Instruction: The Contractor shall provide on-site instruction of appropriate procedures and methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the Project.
- D. Preconditioning: Allow products, which have odors and significant VOC emissions, to off-gas in a dry, well-ventilated space for sufficient period to dissipate odors and emissions prior to delivery to Project.
 - 1. Remove containers and packaging from materials prior to conditioning to maximize off-gassing of VOCs.
 - 2. Condition products in ventilated warehouse or other building.
- E. Coordinate Construction IAQ Management Plan with final cleaning as indicated in Section 011000, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 024100

DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Work Included:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of buildings and structures and as required for new work. Refer to the Drawings for additional requirements.
2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements and as required for new work. Refer to the Drawings for additional requirements.
3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or turned over to the facility.
4. Removal and legal disposal of demolished materials off site. Except those items specifically designated to be relocated, reused, or turned over to the facility, all existing removed materials, items, trash and debris shall become property of the Contractor and shall be completely removed from the site and legally disposed of at their expense. Salvage value belongs to the Contractor. On-site sale of materials is not permitted.
5. Demolition and removal work shall properly prepare for alteration work and new construction to be provided under the Contract.
6. Scheduling and sequencing operations without interruption to utilities serving occupied areas. If interruption is required, obtain written permission from the utility company and the Owner.

B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 011000 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS for temporary facilities and controls, for maintenance of access, for cleaning during construction, and for dust and noise control.
2. Section 017400 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT for waste management and recycling.
3. Section 018120 - CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY (IAQ) MANAGEMENT for indoor air quality control procedures.
4. Section 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL:
 - a. Waste management and recycling.
5. Division 21 - FIRE PROTECTION:
 - a. Disconnecting, capping and otherwise making inactive existing fire protection services in areas where demolition and removal work is required.
 - b. Disconnect and reinstallation of fire protection equipment temporarily interrupted during construction.

6. Division 22 - PLUMBING:
 - a. Disconnecting, capping and otherwise making inactive existing plumbing services in areas where demolition and removal work is required.
 - b. Disconnection and reinstallation of plumbing equipment temporarily interrupted during construction.
7. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING:
 - a. Disconnecting, capping and otherwise making inactive existing HVAC services in areas where demolition and removal work is required.
 - b. Disconnect and reinstallation of HVAC equipment temporarily interrupted during construction.
8. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL WORK:
 - a. Disconnecting, capping and otherwise making inactive existing electrical services in areas where demolition and removal work is required.
 - b. Disconnect and reinstallation of electrical equipment temporarily interrupted during construction.
9. Section 311000 – SITE CLEARING:
 - a. Excavating and removal of existing pavement, sub-surface building and utility structures and lines, appurtenances, and other elements indicated on the Drawings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to the Owner ready for reuse, at a location designated by the Owner. Protect from weather until accepted by Owner.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated. Protect from weather until reinstallation.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition remain property of the Owner as applicable. Carefully remove each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to a location acceptable to the Owner.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:

1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with early and late starting and finishing dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted if applicable.
 2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 4. Use of elevator and stairs.
 5. Locations of proposed dust- and noise-control temporary partitions and means of egress, including for other occupants affected by selective demolition operations.
 6. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
 7. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from building.
- B. Inventory: After selective demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged, and turned over the Owner.
- C. Predemolition Video and Pictures: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Comply with Division 01 requirements. Submit before Work begins.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Examination of Existing Conditions: The Contractor shall examine the Contract Drawings for demolition and removal requirements and provisions for new work. Verify all existing conditions and dimensions before commencing work. The Contractor shall visit the site and examine the existing conditions as he finds them and shall inform herself/himself of the character, extent and type of demolition and removal work to be performed. Submit any questions regarding the extent and character of the demolition and removal work in the manner and within the time period established for receipt of such questions during the bidding period.
- B. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.
- E. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 011000 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Project Meetings. Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SALVAGING

- A. Salvaged for Reinstallation: Materials indicated on the Drawings to be salvaged and reinstalled shall be carefully removed and stored at a location acceptable to the Architect and Owner.
- B. Salvaged for Storage: Materials indicated on the Drawings or designated in the field by the Owner to be salvaged and stored shall be carefully removed and delivered to the Owner at locations determined by Owner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
- B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required. Existing furniture to remain.
- C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Engage a professional engineer registered in the state that the project is located to survey condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective demolition operations.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction videotapes.
 - 1. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.
- G. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.

1. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies and Owner.
2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
3. Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing. Where entire wall is to be removed, existing services/systems may be removed with removal of the wall.
4. Prior to commencing cutting work in existing surfaces, take all precautionary measures to assure that mechanical and electrical services to the particular area have been made inactive. Coordinate with Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical subcontractors. Only licensed tradesmen of that particular trade shall disconnect and cap existing mechanical and electrical items that are to be removed, abandoned and/or relocated.
5. If, during the process of cutting work, existing utility lines are encountered which are not indicated on the Drawings, regardless of their condition, immediately report such items to the Architect. Do not proceed with work in such areas until instructions are issued by the Architect. Continue work in other areas.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Section 011000 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, Temporary Facilities and Controls.
 2. Maintain adequate passage to and from all exits at all times. Before any work is done which significantly alters access or egress patterns, consult with the Architect and obtain approval of code required egress. Under no condition block or interfere with the free flow of people at legally required exits, or in any way alter the required condition of such exits.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
 2. Remove temporary shoring, bracing and structural supports when no longer required.
 3. Post warning signs and place barricades as applicable during placement and removal of temporary shoring.
- C. Conduct demolition operations to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain. Ensure safe passage of people around demolition area(s).
1. Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary barricades as required to limit access to demolition areas.
 2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:

1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
 4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
 5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
 6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
 7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
 8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
 9. Maintain clear unimpeded passage through the work area for safety and emergency egress.
 10. Saw cut overruns in concrete and masonry for new door, window and other finish openings is not permitted. Core drill corners and finish square to match required opening.
 11. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Section 017400 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT.
- B. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to storage area designated by the Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- C. Removed Items for Reinstallation by the Respective Trade.
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to storage area designated by the Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.
- E. Items for Re-use and Preservation of Existing Surfaces to Remain:

1. The Contractor shall inspect closely each item specifically designated to be relocated, re-used, or turned over to the Owner prior to its removal, and immediately report damages and defects to the Architect and the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for any subsequent damage to the same other than latent defects not readily apparent from close inspection, and shall bear responsibility for its repair or same replacement as directed by the Architect, to the satisfaction of the Owner.
2. Unless special surface preparation is specified under other Specification Sections, leave existing surfaces that are to remain in a condition suitable to receive new materials and/or finishes.

3.5 PROTECTION OF PUBLIC AND PROPERTY

- A. Provide all measures required by federal, state and municipal laws, regulations, and ordinances for the protection of surrounding property, the public, workmen, and Owner's employees during all demolition and removal operations. Measures are to be taken, but not limited to installation of sidewalks, sheds, barricades, fences, warning lights and signs, trash chutes and temporary lighting.
- B. Protect all walks, roads, streets, curbs, pavements, trees and plantings, on and off premises, and bear all costs for correcting such damage as directed by the Architect, and to the satisfaction of the Owner.
- C. Demolition shall be performed in such a manner that will insure the safety of adjacent property. Protect adjacent property from damage and protect persons occupying adjacent property from injuries which might occur from falling debris or other cause and so as not to cause interference with the use of other portions of the building, of adjacent buildings or the free access and safe passage to and from the same.
- D. Every precaution shall be taken to protect against movement or settlement of the building, of adjacent buildings, sidewalks, roads, streets, curbs and pavements. Provide and place at the Contractor's own expense, all necessary bracing and shoring in connection with demolition and removal work.
- E. Remove portions of structures with care by using tools and methods that will not transfer heavy shocks to existing and adjacent building structures, both internal and external of the particular work area.
- F. Provide and maintain in proper condition, suitable fire resistive dust barriers around areas where interior demolition and removal work is in progress. Dust barriers shall prevent the dust migration to adjacent areas. Remove dust barriers upon completion of major demolition and removal in the particular work area.

3.6 DISCOVERY OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

- A. If hazardous materials, such as chemicals, asbestos-containing materials, or other hazardous materials are discovered during the course of the work, cease work in affected area only and immediately notify the Architect and the Owner of such discovery. Do not proceed with work in such areas until instructions are issued by the Architect. Continue work in other areas.
- B. If unmarked containers are discovered during the course of the work, cease work in the affected area only and immediately notify the Architect and the Owner of such discovery. Do not proceed with work in such areas until instructions are issued by the Architect. Take immediate precautions to prohibit endangering the containers integrity. Continue work in other areas.

3.7 CUTTING

- A. Perform all cutting of existing surfaces in a manner which will ensure a minimal difference between the cut area and new materials when patched. Use extreme care when cutting existing surfaces containing concealed utility lines which are indicated to remain and bear full responsibility for repairing or replacement of all such utilities that are accidentally damaged.
- B. Provide a flush saw cut edge where pavement, curb and concrete removals abut new construction work or existing surfaces to remain undisturbed.
- C. All slurry and water shall be contained and managed to avoid damage to existing conditions when using a wet saw or wet core driller.
- D. Obtain and pay for a hot work permit and arrange to have on-site a Fire Watch when using a cutting torch or similar item.

3.8 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements of Section 017400 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT and the following:
 - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Premises shall be left in a clean condition and ready to accept alteration work and new construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 033000

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mix design, placement procedures, and finishes, and underslab vapor barrier system.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 31 Section "Earthwork" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
 2. Division 31 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
1. 117 - Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials
 2. 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings
 3. 305R - Hot Weather Concreting
 4. 306R - Cold Weather Concreting
 5. 309R - Guide for Consolidation of Concrete
 6. 315 - Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete
 7. 347 - Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork
 8. 318 - Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete
 9. 544.1R - State-of-the-Art Report of Fiber Reinforced Concrete
 10. 554.2R - Measurement of Properties of Fiber Reinforced Concrete
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
1. A 615 - Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
 2. C 33 - Concrete Aggregate
 3. C 39 - Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
 4. C 94 - Ready-Mixed Cement

5. C 150 - Portland Cement
6. C 260 - Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete
7. C 309 - Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
8. C 494 - Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
9. C 1018 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Toughness and First-Crack Strength of Fiber-Reinforced Concrete (Using Beam with Third-Point Loading)
10. C 1116 - Type III, Sections 4.1.3 and 4.2, and Performance Level I, Toughness Index I5 outlined in Section 21, Note 17, Standard Specification for Fiber-Reinforced Concrete and Shotcrete

C. Federal Specifications (FS):

1. TT-C-800 - Curing Compound, Concrete, for New and Existing Surfaces

D. Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI):

1. CRSI - Manual of Standard Practice and Recommended Practice for Placing Reinforcing Bars (MSP-latest edition)

E. American Welding Society (AWS)

F. Scaffolding and Shoring Institute (SSI):

1. Scaffolding and Shoring Safety Rules

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.

B. Design Mixes: For each concrete mix. Include alternate mix designs when characteristics of materials, project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Provide cement manufacturer's letter of certification and chemical content test results stating that the Portland cement is in compliance with ASTM designation C 150.
2. Indicate amounts of mix water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Details of fabrication, bending, and placement, prepared according to ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Include material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, arrangement, and supports of concrete reinforcement. Include special reinforcement required for openings through concrete structures.

D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

E. Flatwork Certificates: Copies of supervisors "ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician" certificate.

F. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following items complies with requirements:

1. Cementitious materials and aggregates.
2. Form materials and form-release agents.
3. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
4. Fiber reinforcement.

5. Admixtures.
6. Curing materials.
7. Bonding agents.
8. Adhesives.
9. Waterstops.
10. Vapor retarders.
11. Epoxy joint filler.
12. Joint-filler strips.
13. Repair materials.

- G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete Work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
1. Flatwork (interior and exterior slabs) shall be placed, finished and cured under the direct supervision of a "Certified ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician".
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products complying with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer must be certified according to the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association's Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, approved by the Engineer and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, each aggregate from one source, and each admixture from the same manufacturer.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code-Reinforcing Steel."
- F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following, unless more stringent provisions are indicated:
1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete."
 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."
1. Before submitting design mixes, review concrete mix design and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

- a. Contractor and Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixes.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
 - d. Concrete subcontractors.
 - e. Architect.
 - f. Owner's representative.
2. Flatwork (interior and exterior slabs) Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to review all details and requirements for the batching, mixing, transporting, placing, finishing, and curing all interior and exterior flatwork operations. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with flatwork operation to attend, including the following:
- a. Contractor and Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixes.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete producer.
 - d. Flatwork subcontractors.
 - e. Cement Manufacturer's factory representative
 - f. Architect.
 - g. Owner's representative.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. To prevent exterior concrete entrance slabs, pavement and walls from repeated freeze thaw cycles and deicers before adequate curing to protect concrete has occurred, placement shall meet the requirements of ACI 306R, Cold Weather Concreting. No deicers shall be used on the concrete during the project.
- B. Apply surface evaporation retardant to slab surface when water loss reaches .15 lbs of water loss per square foot (.6kg per sm) per hour as determined in ACI 308.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
1. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. Structural 1, B-B, or better, mill oiled and edge sealed.

2. Manufactured forming system: metal or other panel system with prior review and approval.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for a tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent with a maximum of 350 g/L volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- E. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of the exposed concrete surface.
 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes not larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.
 1. Bars shall be clean and free from rust, scale or coatings that will reduce bond. Reinforcing steel shall be capable of bending 180 degrees and rebending to original shape without fracture.
- B. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, galvanized.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Manufacture bar supports according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete or fiber-reinforced concrete of greater compressive strength than concrete, and as follows:
 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
- B. Joint Dowel Bars: Plain-steel bars, ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60. Cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
 1. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 120.

- a. At the contractor's option, slag cement may be blended with type II cement to modify specific properties of the concrete. The percentage of slag cement recommended by the supplier shall be approved by the Engineer.
 - b. At the supplier's option, slag cement may be blended with type II cement to achieve the performance of 0.60% alkali. The cement supplier shall provide a letter certifying the percentage of slag cement required to achieve the performance of low alkali cement specified.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, and as follows:
1. Class: Severe weathering region, but not less than 3S.
 2. Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch.
- C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330, 3/8-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Water: Potable and complying with ASTM C 94.

2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Admixtures certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- C. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
- D. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
- E. Water-Reducing and Accelerating Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type E.
- F. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
- G. Non-Corrosive Accelerator: ASTM C 494, Type C or E.
1. Non –corrosive accelerator shall have long-term test data proving its non-corrosive effect on reinforcing steel.
- H. Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Catexol 1000CL; Axim Concrete Technologies.
 - b. MCI 2000 or MCI 2005; Cortec Corporation.
 - c. DCI or DCI-S; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Div.
 - d. Rheocrete 222+; Master Builders, Inc.
 - e. FerroGard-901; Sika Corporation.

2.6 FIBER REINFORCEMENT

- A. Synthetic Fiber: Fibrillated or monofilament polypropylene fibers engineered and designed for use in concrete, complying with ASTM C 1116, Type III, 1/2 to 1-1/2 inches long.
- B. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Fibrillated Fibers:
 - a. Fibrasol F; Axim Concrete Technologies.
 - b. Fibermesh; Fibermesh, Div. of Synthetic Industries.
 - c. Forta; Forta Corporation.
 - d. Grace Fibers; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Div.
 - 2. Monofilament Fibers:
 - a. Fibrasol IIP; Axim Concrete Technologies.
 - b. Fiberstrand 100; Euclid Chemical Co.
 - c. Fibermix Stealth; Fibermesh, Div. of Synthetic Industries.
 - d. Forta Mono; Forta Corporation.
 - e. Grace MicroFiber; W. R. Grace & Co., Construction Products Div.
 - f. Hi-Tech PPM Fiber; Hi-Tech Fibers, Div. of Martin Color-Fi, Inc.
 - g. Polystrand 1000; Metalcrete Industries.

2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, sodium bentonite or other hydrophylic material for adhesive bonding to concrete. Parastop II by Paramount Technical Products, Inc. or approved equal.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDER SYSTEM (UNDER FLOOR SLABS).

- A. Vapor Retarders: Provide water-resistant barrier consisting of high density, polyethylene meeting the following specifications:
 - 1. Permeance Rating: ASTM E 96, 0.036 Perms or lower.
 - 2. Puncture Resistance: ASTM E 1745, minimum 2340 grams.
 - 3. Tensile Strength: ASTM E 1745, minimum 54.4 lbf./in.
 - 4. Meets to ASTM E 1745, Class A and B standards for underslab vapor retarders.
- B. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stego Wrap by Stego Industries, LLC, 10 mil thick vapor retarder. (877) 464-7834.
- C. Seam Tape: Seam Tape must have the following qualities:
 - 1. Water Vapor Transmission Rate; ASTM E 96, 0.3 perms or lower
 - 2. Stego Tape by STEGO INDUSTRIES LLC, San Juan Capistrano, CA (877) 464-7834, www.stegoindustries.com

- D. Mastic: Mastic must have the following qualities:
 - 1. Water Vapor Transmission Rate; ASTM E 96, 0.3 perms or lower
 - 2. Stego Mastic by STEGO INDUSTRIES LLC, San Juan Capistrano, CA (877) 464-7834, www.stegoindustries.com
- E. Pipe Boots
 - 1. Construct pipe boots from vapor barrier material, pressure sensitive tape and/or mastic per manufacturer's instructions.

2.9 EXTERIOR ON-GRADE SLAB TREATMENTS

- A. Water Repellent and Chloride Screen: Equal to Consolideck Saltguard by ProSoCo, Inc. Consolideck Saltguard.

2.10 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. dry.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Clean and Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
- F. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Evaporation Retarder:
 - a. Sure Film; Dayton Superior Corporation.
 - b. Eucobar; Euclid Chemical Co.
 - c. Confilm; Master Builders, Inc.
 - d. SikaFilm; Sika Corporation.
 - 2. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound:
 - a. AH Clear Cure WB; Anti-Hydro International, Inc.
 - b. Safe Cure and Seal; Dayton Superior Corporation.
 - c. Aqua Cure VOX; Euclid Chemical Co.
 - d. Vocomp-20; W. R. Meadows, Inc.
 - e. Kure-N-Seal WB; Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex, Inc.

2.11 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Isolation Joint Former (Columns): Provide as noted on Drawings one of the following:
1. 4" x 24" diameter as manufactured by Greenstreak, P.O. Box 7139, St. Louis, MO 63177, or approved equal.
 2. 4" x 24" square diamond shaped as manufactured by Greenstreak, P.O. Box 7139, St. Louis, MO 63177, or approved equal.
- B. Perimeter Isolation Joint: 2 lb. density, cross linked polyethylene with removable strip-off equal to ISO-STRIP as manufactured for Century Floors, Topsham, Maine.
- C. Edge Tape: Vaporlock edge tape, pre-formed 3 inch wide two-sided adhesive.
- D. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber, or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- E. Epoxy Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Shore A hardness of 80 per ASTM D 2240.
- F. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- G. Epoxy-Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class and grade to suit requirements.
- H. Doweling Adhesive: A two-component, vinylester blend resin equal to HI HY150 adhesive as manufactured by Hilti Fastening Systems, Tulsa, Oklahoma or approved equal
- I. Key Joint (Construction Joint only): 24 gauge galvanized steel with 1-1/8" dowel knockouts 6" on center. Keyway shall be equal to "Key-Lock Joint" with removable plastic cap strip by Form-A-Key Products Div., Louisville, KY 40214, or approved equal.
- J. Dowels: 24 (608 mm) inch long square dowels with sawn ends (sheared bars not acceptable).
1. Dowel Sleeve: 3/4 inch (19 mm) by 12 (304 mm) inch long, plastic sleeve with 3/16 inch (4 mm) thick polyethylene foam on vertical legs equal to Expando-Lok by Jay Kay Sales.
 2. Dowel Aligner: Cast plastic dowel aligner with nailing flange.
- K. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- L. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- M. Non-Shrink Grout: Premixed compound with non-metallic aggregate, cement, water-reducing and plasticizing agents capable of minimum compression strength of 2,400 lbs. Non-shrink grout shall be equal to "Eucon N-S" (non-metallic) by the Euclid Chemical Co., "Masterflow 713" (non-metallic) by Master Builders, or Five Star Grout by U.S. Grout Corp.

2.12 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.13 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Prepare design mixes for each type and strength of concrete determined by either laboratory trial mix or field test data bases, as follows:
1. Proportion normal-weight concrete according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301.
- B. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for the laboratory trial mix basis.
- C. Typical Foundation Spread Footings and Foundation Walls: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4,000 psi at 28 days.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50.
 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
 4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 5. Rebar/Mesh: As Noted on the drawings and/or structural notes.
- D. Interior Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3,500 psi at 28 days.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.49.
 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
 4. Air Content: Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
 5. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd.
 6. Rebar/Mesh: Reinforce 6" slabs with #4 @ 12" each way at center depth of slab, U.N.O. on drawings.
- E. Elevated Slabs on Metal Decking: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 3500 psi at 28 days.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.49.
 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 2 inch.
 4. Aggregate: 3/8" pea stone.
 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

6. Synthetic Fiber: Uniformly disperse in concrete mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate, but not less than 1.0 lb/cu. yd.
 7. Reinforcement: Provide 6 x 6 x W2.1 x W2.1 WWM on bolsters at 1" clear below top of slab surface.
- F. Miscellaneous Site Concrete not specified in other sections: Unless otherwise indicated, proportion normal-weight concrete mix as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.
 3. Slump Limit: Shall not exceed 3 inches.
 4. Air Content: 6 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 3/4-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 5. Reinforcement: Reinforce 6" slabs with #4 @ 12" each way at center depth of slab, U.N.O. on drawings.
- G. Cementitious Materials: For concrete exposed to deicers, limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than Portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements.
- H. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.50 for concrete required to have low water permeability.
- I. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45 for concrete exposed to deicers or subject to freezing and thawing while moist.
- J. Air Content: Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows within a tolerance of plus 1 or minus 1.5 percent, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Air Content: 6 percent for 3/4-inch-nominal maximum aggregate size.
- K. Do not air entrain concrete to trowel-finished interior floors. Do not allow entrapped air content to exceed 3 percent.
- L. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- M. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixes where indicated.
- 2.14 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT
- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."
- 2.15 CONCRETE MIXING
- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94 and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90°F (30 and 32°C), reduce mixing and delivery time from one and one-half (1-1/2) hours to seventy-five (75) minutes: when air temperature is above 90°F (32°C), reduce mixing and delivery time to sixty (60) minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until concrete structure can support such loads.
 1. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117. Excessive deflection of forms after concrete is poured shall be sufficient cause for rejection of that portion of concrete and formwork. Excessive deflection will be considered to be that which will produce visible and noticeable waves in the finished concrete.
 2. Construct forms so that walls will key into each other at ends unless poured monolithically.
- B. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 1. Surfaces exposed to view: Class A, 1/8 inch
 2. Surfaces not exposed Class C, 1/2 inch
- C. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- D. All possible care shall be taken in the formwork to produce surfaces free from honeycomb or other defects.
- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical. Kerf wood inserts for forming keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 1. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Schedule the work and notify other trades in time so that provisions for their work in the formwork can be made without delaying progress of the project. Verify that all sleeves, pipes, etc., for electrical, plumbing, heating and ventilation, or other work are installed.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

- J. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- K. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- L. Bolts, rods or other approved devices shall be used for internal ties. They shall be so arranged that when the forms are removed, no metal shall be within 1" of any surface.
- M. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- N. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use Setting Drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Secure information about and provide for all openings, offsets, recessed nailing blocks, channel chases, anchors, ties, inserts, etc., in the formwork before concrete is poured.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts, accurately located, to elevations required.
 - a. The setting of all anchor bolts and the grouting for all structural steel base plates shall be included as part of this contract. Bolts and base plates will be furnished under Section 05500 - Metal Fabrications.
 - b. All column base plates, equipment bases, and other locations noted in the structural drawings shall be grouted with the specified non-shrink grout. All exposed grout shall be the specified non-metallic type.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork, for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work, that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete provided concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and provided curing and protection operations are maintained.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Engineer.

3.4 MOISTURE VAPOR RETARDER SYSTEM (UNDER FLOOR SLABS)

- A. Moisture vapor retarder system shall be installed at all interior floor slabs and as otherwise indicated in the drawings in strict accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and as follows.
1. Snap chalk line along inside perimeter of foundation walls at top of slab elevation.
 2. Without wetting, clean a 3" wide band on the surface of the concrete below the chalk line at approximately mid-slab height. Remove dirt, residual form release, or other bond inhibiting surface contaminants. Grind smooth any surface projections within the band.
 3. While removing the contact paper on the backside, firmly press 2" wide perimeter and penetration strip onto wall, parallel to the chalk line on the cleaned band at mid-slab elevation.
 4. Remove contact paper on the face side.
 5. Apply 12" wide edge roll covering only the bottom 1" of contact surface on the perimeter strip. Cut, fit, and seal corner details with seaming tape.
 6. Align top edge of isolation joint material to chalk line, and press material onto remaining 1" of exposed perimeter strip adhesive.
 7. Roll out Vapor barrier material, overlapping edge rolls and all seams by 3". Tape all seams with seaming tape.
 8. All tears, punctures, etc. to be repaired and taped as required to maintain the watertight integrity of the vapor barrier system.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
1. Steel reinforcing shall not be bent in a manner that will injure the material or the embedding concrete. Bars with kinks or bends not shown on the plans shall not be used. Heating of reinforcement for bending will not be permitted. Bars shall be bent once only (no rebending or straightening allowed) unless shown as such on the drawings.
 2. All details of reinforcement not shown or indicated on the drawings or specifically called for in the specifications shall conform to ACI 315.
 3. Lap all bars at splices, corners and intersections a minimum of 36 bar diameters unless otherwise indicated. Laps of welded-wire fabric shall be at least two times the spacing of the members in the direction lapped but not less than twelve inches.
 4. All intersecting concrete walls shall be tied with #4L bars 3'-0" long, bent 18" x 18" spaced 12" on center, outside face only unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Splices of reinforcement shall not be made at points of maximum stress. Splice lengths shall be a minimum of 36 bar diameters unless otherwise indicated and shall provide sufficient lap to transfer the stress between bars by bond and shear. Stagger splices of adjacent bars where possible. All splices and laps at corners and intersections shall be tied with wire at each end.
 6. Where obstructions (pipes, conduit, ducts, etc.) prevent the intended placement of reinforcing, provide additional reinforcing as directed by the Engineer or his Representative around the obstruction to match that reinforcing interrupted.
 7. Provide additional stirrups, ties, trim bars, etc., as directed around all openings, sleeves, pipes, and conduits, which pass through structural elements.
 8. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and

support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Coverage of bars (including stirrups and column ties) shall, unless otherwise shown, be as follows:

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Footings: | 3" soil face, 2" top |
| Slabs (on grade): | 2" soil face, 1-1/2" top face |
| Walls: | 2" clear to form at exterior |
2. Misplaced Reinforcing: If any reinforcing bars are found to be misplaced after concrete has been placed, the Engineer shall be notified immediately and no correction or cutting shall be made without his direction. Misplaced bars shall not be bent or kinked. Any redesign and/or reinforcing required because of misplaced bars shall be at the Contractor's expense.
3. All reinforcing shall be kept separate from soil, pipe, conduit ducts, etc., by approved non-metallic separators.
4. Shop- or field-weld reinforcement according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.

C. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Engineer.
 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 2. Form from preformed galvanized steel, plastic keyway-section forms, or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 3. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 - a. Wall control "V" joints shall have a depth of 1/8 times the thickness of the wall and be 1/2" wide at surface. "V" joints shall be placed as shown or as directed by the Engineer.
 4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness, or 3/4" minimum for soft-cut as follows:
 1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/4" maximum wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

- a. Floor slab control joints shall be placed as shown on the foundation plan. Unless otherwise noted, control joints shall be spaced at intervals not to exceed 12'-0" on center in both directions.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 2. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Dowel Joints: Install dowel sleeves and dowels or dowel bar and support assemblies at joints where indicated.
1. All intersecting slab construction joints acting as control joints shall be doweled according to the following schedule unless otherwise indicated. Dowels shall be smooth, steel grade 60 with saw cut ends. Grease, wrap or cap one end.

Dowel Schedule

| | Dowel Dia. | Length | Spacing |
|---------|------------|--------|---------|
| 4" Slab | 1/2" | 12" | 12" |
| 5" Slab | 5/8" | 14" | 12" |
| 6" Slab | 3/4" | 14" | 12" |
| 7" Slab | 7/8" | 14" | 12" |
| 8" Slab | 1" | 14" | 12" |

3.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, bonding or mechanically fastening and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.
1. Remove all protrusions and indentations 2" or over in all areas.
 2. Lay waterstop flat against concrete surface and nail every 1" to 6" with case hardened washered nails.
 3. Overlap all joints a minimum of 2".

3.8 MIXING CONCRETE

- A. General: The concrete shall be mixed in the quantities required for immediate use, and any which has developed initial set or exceed the time limit of ASTM C 94 shall not be used. No retempering of mortar or concrete shall be allowed under any circumstances. Concrete shall be proportioned, mixed and placed only in the presence of the Engineer or his Authorized Representative. The Contractor shall give ample notice to the Engineer before mixing is commenced. Aggregate size will be adjusted to suit conditions of work. Pumping of concrete shall be permitted only after approval by the Engineer of the Pumping Contractor and the

pumping equipment and method to be employed. The Engineer shall be notified of dates when pumping of concrete shall be performed to permit his on-the-job inspection of the operations.

- B. Final proportions shall be in accordance with approved mix designs. Adjustments to approved proportions, for whatever reason, shall be approved by the Engineer.
- C. Add fibrous concrete reinforcing to all concrete used at slabs on grade (interior and exterior), sidewalks and exterior stairs. The amount of fiber reinforcement shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and approved submittals. Add the fibrous reinforcement at the time the concrete is batched; mix in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for a uniform and complete distribution.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Remove loose dirt, mud, standing water, and foreign matter from excavations or from cavities.
- C. Thoroughly clean reinforcement and other embedded items free from loose rust and other matter. Assure reinforcing is held securely in place.
- D. Thoroughly wet wood forms (except coated plywood), bottom and sides of trenches, base underslab, and adjacent concrete or masonry at least one hour in advance of placing concrete; securely close cleanout and inspection ports; repeat wetting as necessary to keep forms damp.
- E. Equipment shall be maintained clean and of sufficient quantity and capacity to efficiently execute the work required.
- F. Before placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
- G. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
- H. Deposit concrete in forms in horizontal layers no deeper than 24 inches and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints. Place each layer while preceding layer is still plastic, to avoid cold joints.
 - 1. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment. Use equipment and procedures for consolidating concrete recommended by ACI 309R.
 - a. concrete shall be vibrated into final position in forms with an internal type vibrating machine. The vibration shall have a frequency of not less than 8,000 vibrations per minute. The mechanical vibrating equipment shall be satisfactory to the Engineer.
 - b. The vibration shall be of sufficient intensity and duration to cause flow or settlement of the concrete and complete consolidation. Over vibration, especially of mixtures that are too wet, may cause segregation and will be avoided. A sufficient number of vibrators shall be provided to permit consolidation of each batch before the next batch is delivered and without delaying the delivery.

- c. The vibrations shall be applied directly to the concrete, and vibration through the forms shall not be permitted. Vibration shall be applied at the point of deposit and in the area of freshly deposited concrete. The concrete shall be placed in layers of uniform thickness
2. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations no farther than the visible effectiveness of the vibrator. Place vibrators to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mix constituents to segregate.
3. When conditions make puddling difficult, or where the reinforcement is congested, batches of mortar containing the same proportions of cement to sand used in the concrete shall be deposited in the forms. The operation of filling with the regularly specified mix shall be carried on at such a rate that the mix is at all times plastic and flows readily into the spaces between the bars.
4. In thin walls or inaccessible portions of the forms where rodding is impractical, the concrete shall be worked into place by tapping or hammering forms adjacent to the freshly deposited concrete.
5. The Contractor's attention is called to the importance of making the concrete dense, and he shall provide sufficient labor to the entire satisfaction of the Engineer to thoroughly consolidate the concrete, avoid air pockets and voids in exposed sections, and leave smooth, uniform surfaces after forms are removed.
6. Should any honeycombed concrete be disclosed upon removal of forms, the Contractor shall immediately cut out the said honeycombed portions back to solid concrete and shall fill the opening thus formed with a concrete of the same proportions as that specified for the section of work in which the fault occurs.
7. When placing fresh concrete upon hardened concrete, the latter shall be thoroughly roughened and cleaned of all loose material, scum or latency. The bonding compound shall be applied and the new concrete placed while the bonding compound is still tacky.
8. Joints in the concrete work shall be made only in places and the manner specified by the Engineer.
9. The Contractor's attention is called to the importance of properly and carefully placing concrete around reinforcement, as the reinforcing metal must not be exposed; and in cases where reinforcing metal becomes exposed on the surface, that portion of work must be removed and re-laid as the covering of same by plastering with cement mortar will not be allowed. All reinforcing rods or other reinforcing material shall be lightly tapped so that they will retain their original position.
10. No concrete shall be retempered except as allowed in ASTM C 94 nor shall set concrete be used as aggregate.
- I. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - a. Reinforcement, unless otherwise indicated, shall be placed one-half the thickness of the slab.
 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.

5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, free of humps or hollows, before excess moisture or bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
 6. In addition to steel bar reinforcement, slabs shall be reinforced with fibrous concrete reinforcement which is to be added when the concrete is being batched in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
 7. Slabs shall be monolithically placed with control joints. Sawed control joints will be located as indicated on the drawings and/or as directed by the Engineer. Floors shall be cleaned of objects before saw cutting begins. A true, continuous saw cut is what is expected as a finish result.
- J. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators, unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
 4. Contractor shall have on the job, ready to install, adequate equipment for heating the materials and the freshly placed concrete and for enclosing the work in accordance with the requirements specified herein.
- K. Hot-Weather Placement: Place concrete according to recommendations in ACI 305R and as follows, when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
 3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- L. Protection:
1. Concrete just placed shall be protected from rain in an approved manner until the concrete has set, or if a slab, the curing compound has dried.
 2. Concrete, when placed in the forms, shall have a temperature of not less than 50 degrees F or more than 90 degrees F. Freshly placed concrete and the surrounding air shall be maintained at a temperature of 50 degrees F or greater for a period of seven days after placing. If high early strength concrete is used, the aforementioned time period may be reduced to three days. The methods of protection and curing shall be such as to prevent evaporation of moisture from the concrete and injury to the surface.
 3. Should it later develop that any concrete work has become injured in any way by freezing or otherwise, the defective concrete shall be repaired or replaced as directed by the Engineer at no added expense to the Owner. Repair materials shall include all reinforcement grouts, dry pack, admixtures, epoxy and aggregates as may be necessary

M. Deicer Protection:

1. Apply deicer protection to all exterior slabs on grade, stairs, sidewalks, and related work 30 days after concrete placement in strict accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.10 PROTECTIVE COATING FOR STRUCTURAL STEEL

- A. All structural steel and columns and their bases which extend into or through concrete floors or walls shall be thoroughly brush painted with two coats of foundation coating as specified in Section 07150 - Dampproofing, and applied in accordance with the manufacturer's directions, neatly cut off one inch below finish floor.

3.11 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defective areas repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections exceeding ACI 347R limits for class of surface specified.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defective areas. Remove fins and other projections exceeding 1/8 inch in height.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete, such as waterproofing, dampproofing, veneer plaster, or painting.
 2. Do not apply rubbed finish to smooth-formed finish.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with recommendations in ACI 302.1R for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
1. All interior concrete floor slabs shall be finished true and smooth by steel troweling or finishing machine. All exterior slabs, pads, ramps, stairs, and sidewalks shall be broom finished.
 2. When a section of the concrete floor is completed, it shall be left entirely undisturbed until the concrete is thoroughly hardened.
 3. Adequate provisions will be made to eliminate the possibility of accidental encroachment upon the newly concreted area.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated, to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first trowel finish and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated and to floor and slab surfaces exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin film-finish coating system
 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, measured within 24 hours according to ASTM E 1155/E 1155M for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Tolerances will be in accordance with ACI Publication #117 - Class AX. Depression in floor between high spots shall not be greater than 3/16" in 10'-0" \pm 1/16", and the measurement will be taken by the straight edge method no later than the day after the concrete floor has been poured.
- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a partial trowel finish, stopping after second troweling, to surfaces indicated and to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. Immediately after second troweling, and when concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
- E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Engineer before application.

3.13 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates of manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Mechanical Equipment Pads: Provide 4" concrete pads reinforced with 6x6 - W1.4xW1.4 welded-wire fabric under all mechanical equipment supported on concrete floor slab unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

- F. Foundation Insulation: Install foundation insulation using a dab of emulsified asphalt mastic in each corner and the center to adhere the insulation to the concrete wall. Insulation will be installed on the inside face of all perimeter foundation walls extending from the underside of floor slab to top of footing. Insulation furnished under Section 07200 - Insulation.

3.14 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and with recommendations in ACI 305R for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, and other surfaces as indicated below.
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer recommends for use with floor coverings.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - 4. Waterproof Paper: Apply waterproof paper in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations in widths as wide as possible. Paper shall be lapped and seams taped with reinforced tape.
 - a. For Interior Non-Exposed Concrete: Typical curing operation for all interior slabs with moisture sensitive floor coverings. Verify individual requirements with flooring manufacture.
 - 5. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written

instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.15 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling till the completion of the project. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid epoxy joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.
- D. Install isolation joints around columns in accordance with the drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.
- E. Install perimeter isolation joints in accordance with the drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.

3.16 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Engineer. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to

manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least 3/4 inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mix as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- D. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit test reports during concrete placement. Sampling and testing for quality control may include those specified in this Article.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mix exceeding 5 cu. Yd, but less than 25 cu. yd. plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
 2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mix, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 3. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
 5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
 7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - a. Cast and field cure one set of four standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and two at 28 days.
 - a. Test two field-cured specimens at 7 days and two at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
- C. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- D. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi
- E. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7-and 28-day tests.
- F. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- G. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Engineer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 037300

CONCRETE REHABILITATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Furnish all labor, equipment, and materials, and perform all operations necessary to complete the concrete spalling repair work in accordance with the drawings and specifications.
- B. The work includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Demolition.
 - 2. Removal and disposal of concrete.
 - 3. Concrete and steel surface preparation.
 - 4. Doweling or rebar replacement.
 - 5. Patching.
 - 6. Sealer.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The work under this Section shall comply with International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI) Surface Preparation for the Repair of Deteriorated Concrete Resulting from Reinforcing Steel Corrosion (See Appendix A) and shall comply with all manufacturers' product recommendations and installation requirements. Any conflicts in these instructions shall be brought to the attention of the Engineer prior to initiating either installation or preparation recommendation.
- B. Concrete surface preparation of all interior wall surfaces shall be to a Concrete Surface Profile of a minimum of 6.
- C. The Concrete Repair Contractor shall have been regularly engaged in concrete repairs of the type required for the previous five (5) years and shall submit references of at least three projects completed in the last three (3) years.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01340, SAMPLES AND SHOP DRAWINGS.
- B. Mill Test Reports: Reinforcing Steel.
- C. Submit product data specifications and instructions for all splices, grouts, protective coatings, restoration cement, and accessories.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original sealed containers bearing name of brand and manufacturer and marked with net weight of contents. Store in suitable watertight building in which floor is raised at least one foot above ground.

- B. Deliver other packaged materials in original sealed containers, plainly marked with manufacturer's name and brand, and protect from damage until used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy-Coated Fabricated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 934/A 934M, and as follows:
 - 1. Select type of reinforcement from two subparagraphs below to supplement either paragraph above.
 - 2. Steel Reinforcement: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Wire: ASTM A 884/A 884M, Class A coated, plain-steel wire.
- C. Tension Lap Splices: Quick-Wedge Mechanical Lap Splice
 - 1. Basis of Design: ERICO products, Inc. or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
- D. Compression Splices: Speed Sleeve Splice
 - 1. Basis of Design: ERICO Products, Inc. or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
- E. Grouting of Epoxy Coated Dowels:
 - 1. Basis of Design: SikaGrout 212 as manufactured by Sika Corporation or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
- F. Protective Coating of Exposed Steel and Exposed Concrete Surfaces Within Patch Areas:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Sika FerroGard 903 as manufactured by Sika Corporation or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
- G. Cementitious Repair, Partial Depth wall repairs:
 - 1. Basis of Design:
 - a. SikaTop 123 Plus for areas of 3 square feet and up to 1" depths as manufactured by Sika Corporation or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
 - b. SikaRepair 224 for all remaining areas of repair as manufactured by Sika Corporation or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.

H. Cementitious Coating (Sealer):

1. Basis of Design: Sikagard 62 as manufactured by Sika Corporation or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXPOSING AND UNDERCUTTING REINFORCING STEEL

- A. Method: Shall comply with "Exposing and Undercutting Reinforcing Steel," "3730-4, Appendix 3730, ICRI Technical Guidelines.

3.2 EDGE AND SURFACE CONDITIONING OF CONCRETE

- A. Method: Shall comply with "Edge and Surface Conditioning of Concrete," "3730-6, Appendix 3730, ICRI Technical Guidelines.

3.3 REPAIR OF REINFORCING STEEL

- A. Comply with Appendix A Section 037300, ICRI Technical Guidelines No. 310.1R-2008 (formerly No. 03730), entitled "Guide for Surface Preparation for the Repair of Deteriorated Concrete Resulting from Reinforcing Steel Corrosion."
 1. Tie rebars in place to prevent sags, loose ends or movement. All rebars and dowels must be adequately tied, anchored, or placed and in proper position before the cementitious patching is placed.
 2. Replace any damaged existing wall reinforcing with bars of the same size and spacing. Dowel per paragraph 3.06 of this section.

3.4 TENSION LAP SPLICES

- A. Bars shall be "mechanically lap spliced" using a steel sleeve and wedge pin assembled in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to produce a positive connection.

3.5 GROUTING OF STEEL DOWELS

- A. Method and Material: All concrete patches with depths greater than 2-1/2 inches shall be dowelled into place as part of the cementitious patching procedure using #3 rebar dowels. The material and method used in the installation of steel dowels shall comply with the following or an approved equal.
 1. Method: Shall comply with Rawl Foil-Fast, Manufacturer Product Data, and the following.
 - a. Drilled hole(s) for #3 rebar dowels shall be as noted on drawings into acceptable concrete and shall be one inch in diameter.
 - b. Clean out hole of all debris and dust. Use forced air and not water.
 - c. Fill hole 1/2 to 2/3 full with specified grout.

- d. Place rebar into hole with a twisting motion to minimize voids and to fully seat in hole.
- e. Allow grout to fully cure prior to placing patching material.

3.6 PROTECTIVE COATING OF EXPOSED STEEL SURFACES

- A. Method and Material: All exposed existing and newly installed steel rebar and/or dowel surfaces shall receive an anti-corrosive steel coating. The method and material used in the protective coating of steel rebar and/or dowel surfaces shall comply with the following or an equal substitute approved by the Engineer.
 1. Method: Shall comply with Manufacturer Product Technical Data.

3.7 CEMENTITIOUS REPAIR

- A. Method and Material: The methods and materials used in cementitious repair shall comply with the following or an equal substitution approved by the Engineer.
 1. Method: Shall comply Manufacturer Product Technical Data.

3.8 CEMENTITIOUS COATING (SEALER)

- A. Method and Material: The methods and materials used in cementitious coating shall comply with the following or an equal substitution approved by the Engineer.
 1. Method: Shall comply Manufacturer Product Technical Data.
 2. Surface preparation of all interior concrete surfaces requires:
 - a. Removal of existing bituminous coating either through sand blasting or Handheld Scarifier or a combination. NO water blasting methods will be acceptable.
 3. Sealer application shall be spray applied in two coat application (minimum 10-12 mil per applications)

END OF SECTION

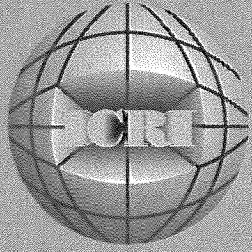
Attachments: Appendix A:

- Guideline No. ACI 310-1R-2008; Guide for Surface Preparation for the Repair of Deteriorated Concrete Resulting from Reinforcing Steel Corrosion

Curtis Hall Renovations
Maine Maritime Academy
Castine, ME

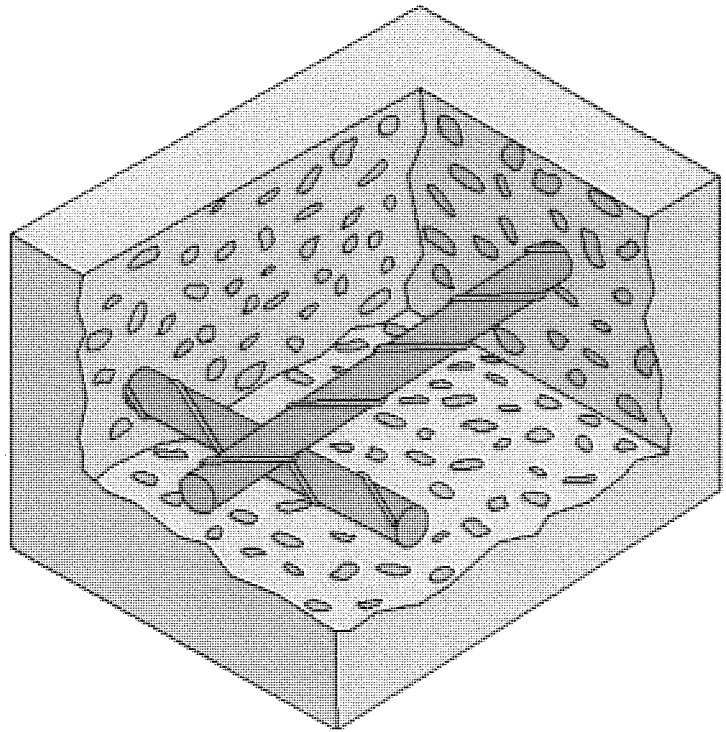
CHA Project No. Job #076982
100% Construction Documents, Issued for Bid
November 21, 2023

Appendix A
Guideline No. 03730



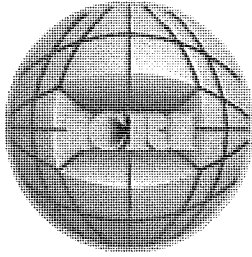
TECHNICAL GUIDELINES

Prepared by the International Concrete Repair Institute December 2008



Guideline No. 310.1R-2008 (formerly No. 03730)
Copyright © 2008 International Concrete Repair Institute

**Guide for Surface Preparation
for the Repair of Deteriorated
Concrete Resulting from
Reinforcing Steel Corrosion**



TECHNICAL **GUIDELINES**

Prepared by the International Concrete Repair Institute

December 2008

Guide for Surface Preparation for the Repair of Deteriorated Concrete Resulting from Reinforcing Steel Corrosion

Guideline No. 310.1R–2008 (formerly No. 03730)

Copyright © 2008 International Concrete Repair Institute

All rights reserved.

International Concrete Repair Institute
3166 S. River Road, Suite 132, Des Plaines, IL 60018
Phone: 847-827-0830 Fax: 847-827-0832
Web site: www.icri.org
E-mail: info@icri.org

About ICRI Guidelines

The International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI) was founded to improve the durability of concrete repair and enhance its value for structure owners. The identification, development, and promotion of the most promising methods and materials are primary vehicles for accelerating advances in repair technology. Working through a variety of forums, ICRI members have the opportunity to address these issues and to directly contribute to improving the practice of concrete repair.

A principal component of this effort is to make carefully selected information on important repair subjects readily accessible to decision makers. During the past several decades, much has been reported in the literature on concrete repair methods and materials as they have been developed and refined. Nevertheless, it has been difficult to find critically reviewed information on the state of the art condensed into easy-to-use formats.

To that end, ICRI guidelines are prepared by sanctioned task groups and approved by the ICRI Technical Activities Committee. Each guideline is designed to address a specific area of practice recognized as essential to the achievement of durable repairs. All ICRI guideline documents are subject to continual review by the membership and may be revised as approved by the Technical Activities Committee.

Technical Activities Committee

Kevin Michols, Chair
Jim McDonald, Secretary
Randy Beard
Don Caple
Bruce Collins
William "Bud" Earley
Don Ford
Tim Gillespie
Peter Golter
Peter Lipphardt
David Rodler
Michael Tabassi
David Whitmore
Pat Winkler

Producers of this Guideline

Surface Preparation Committee

Pat Winkler, Chair*
Dan Anagnos
Randy Beard
Bruce Collins
William "Bud" Earley
Peter Emmons*
Andrew Fulkerson
Randy Glover
Fred Goodwin*
Kurt Gottinger
Tyson Herman
Dave Homerding
Bob Johnson
David Karins
Ken Lozen*
Jim McDonald
Beth Newbold
Jeffery Smith
Sandra Sprouts
Rick Toman
Patrick Watson

*Contributing editors

Synopsis

This guideline provides guidance on concrete removal and surface preparation procedures for the repair of deteriorated concrete caused by reinforcing steel corrosion. Removal geometry, configuration of the repair area, removal process, edge preparation, reinforcement repair, surface preparation and inspection necessary for durable repairs are discussed. Special considerations for concrete removal associated with column repair are included.

Keywords

anodic ring effect, bonding, bruising, corrosion, delamination, deterioration, reinforcing steel, structural repair, surface preparation.

This document is intended as a voluntary guideline for the owner, design professional, and concrete repair contractor. It is not intended to relieve the professional engineer or designer of any responsibility for the specification of concrete repair methods, materials, or practices. While we believe the information contained herein represents the proper means to achieve quality results, the International Concrete Repair Institute must disclaim any liability or responsibility to those who may choose to rely on all or any part of this guideline.

Contents

| | | |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|---|
| 1.0 | Introduction | 1 |
| 2.0 | Definitions | 1 |
| 3.0 | Exposure of Reinforcing Steel | 1 |
| 4.0 | Anodic Ring (Halo) Effect | 2 |
| 5.0 | Removal Geometry | 2 |
| 6.0 | Configuration of Repair Area | 3 |
| 7.0 | Concrete Removal/Surface Preparation | 3 |
| | 7.1 Exposing and Undercutting of Reinforcing Steel | 3 |
| | 7.2 Preparation of the Repair Perimeter | 4 |
| | 7.3 Cleaning of the Concrete Surface and Reinforcing Steel | 4 |
| 8.0 | Inspection and Repair of Reinforcing Steel | 5 |
| 9.0 | Final Surface Inspection | 5 |
| 10.0 | Special Conditions at Columns | 6 |
| 11.0 | Summary | 7 |
| 12.0 | References | 7 |
| | 12.1 Referenced Standards and Reports | 7 |



1.0 Introduction

This guideline provides owners, design professionals, contractors, and other interested parties with a recommended practice for the removal of deteriorated concrete caused by the corrosion of reinforcing steel, including the preparation of the removal cavity to provide a clean sound surface to bond a repair material.

This guideline outlines removal geometry, configuration, removal process, edge preparation, reinforcement repair, surface preparation, and inspection prior to placing a repair material. An engineer should evaluate the impact of concrete removal on structural capacity prior to performing concrete removal and repair. The repair methods involve saw cutting and concrete removal using impact tools, hydrodemolition, and other removal techniques. Special caution should be taken to locate and avoid cutting or damaging embedded reinforcing bars, prestressing strands, post-tensioning tendons, or electrical conduits. Cutting into these items can be life threatening and may significantly affect structural integrity.

This guideline also contains a discussion of concrete removal and preparation for the repair of columns where the concrete is in compression. Special consideration must be given to the repair of concrete in compression as the load-carrying capacity of the element may be permanently compromised during the concrete removal and preparation process.

While the procedures outlined herein have been used to successfully remove concrete and prepare the removal cavity on many projects, the requirements for each project will vary due to many different factors. Each project should be evaluated individually to ascertain the applicability of the procedures described herein. Refer to ACI 506R-05, "Guide to Shotcrete" for surface preparation prior to shotcrete application.

2.0 Definitions

Anodic ring effect: Corrosion process in which the steel reinforcement in the concrete surrounding a repaired area begins to corrode preferentially to the steel reinforcement in the newly repaired area (sometimes referred to as the halo effect).

Bruised surface (micro-fracturing): A surface layer weakened by interconnected microcracks in concrete substrates caused by the use of high-impact, mechanical methods for concrete removal, and surface preparation; fractured layer

typically extends to a depth of 0.13 to 0.38 in. (3 to 10 mm) and, if not removed, frequently results in lower bond strengths as compared with surfaces prepared with nonimpact methods.

Carbonation: The conversion of calcium ions in hardened cementitious materials to calcium carbonate by reaction with atmospheric carbon dioxide. Carbonation reduces the pH of the concrete and its ability to protect reinforcing steel and embedded metal items from corrosion.

Chloride contamination: Contamination of concrete with chloride ions commonly used in deicing salts and accelerating admixtures such as calcium chloride and sodium chloride. Chloride contamination above the threshold for corrosion can result in corrosion of the reinforcing steel.

Chloride threshold: The amount of chloride required to initiate steel corrosion in reinforced concrete under a given set of exposure conditions; commonly expressed in percent of chloride ion by mass of cement.

Corrosion: Degradation of concrete or steel reinforcement caused by electrochemical or chemical attack.

Microcrack: A crack too small to be seen with the unaided eye.

Tensile pulloff test: A test to determine the unit stress, applied in direct tension, required to separate a hardened repair material from the existing concrete substrate. The test may also be used to determine the maximum unit stress that the existing concrete substrate is capable of resisting under axial tensile loading and the near-surface tensile strength of a prepared surface (refer to ICRI Technical Guideline No. 210.3–2004 [formerly No. 03739] and ASTM C1583).

Substrate: The layer immediately under a layer of different material to which it is typically bonded; an existing concrete surface that receives an overlay, partial-depth repair, protective coating, or some other maintenance or repair procedure.

3.0 Exposure of Reinforcing Steel

The practice of completely removing the concrete (undercutting) from around the corroded reinforcement, no matter what degree of corrosion is found, is key to achieving long-term performance of surface repairs. In most cases, complete removal of the concrete from around the reinforcing steel is the best practice, where protection of the reinforcing steel within the

repair cavity is achieved by providing a uniform chemical environment around the reinforcing steel. If noncorroded reinforcing steel is exposed and the concrete is chloride contaminated, removal of the concrete around the reinforcing should occur or other corrosion-reducing means should be considered. Reinforcing steel partially embedded in chloride-contaminated concrete is susceptible to future accelerated corrosion.

If, for structural reasons, the concrete cannot be completely removed from around the corroded reinforcing steel or if a corrosion inhibiting system is not used, the repair may be compromised due to continued corrosion. If there is a potential trade-off between durability and structural capacity, structural capacity should always take priority. When reinforcing steel is not fully exposed through the concrete removal and preparation process, alternative corrosion inhibiting systems should be considered. These systems may include use of corrosion inhibitors, sacrificial anodes, or cathodic protection.

4.0 Anodic Ring (Halo) Effect

The existing concrete surrounding a repair area in chloride-contaminated or low pH reinforced concrete is susceptible to accelerated corrosion. This is due to the electrical potential differential between the chloride contaminated or low pH existing concrete and the chloride-free or high pH repair material. This anodic ring effect

can result in accelerated corrosion of the surrounding reinforcing steel leading to future concrete deterioration. To assess existing concrete conditions beyond the repair area, chloride content and pH of the concrete at the level of the reinforcing steel should be determined. Where the chloride content exceeds the threshold level for the initiation of corrosion or where the reinforcing steel is susceptible to corrosion as a result of carbonation, a corrosion inhibiting system should be considered to minimize future corrosion. Other measures may also be considered, such as the application of sealers and coatings, to slow the corrosion process. In severely chloride-contaminated or carbonated concrete, the complete removal and replacement of the contaminated concrete at and beyond the repair area may be necessary to provide a successful long-term repair.

5.0 Removal Geometry

Examples of the removal geometry for several different types of reinforced concrete elements are shown in Fig. 5.1 through 5.6. Repairs may be located on horizontal, vertical, and/or overhead surfaces. The removal in Fig. 5.5 and 5.6 is for columns where the removal will not affect the structural capacity of the column. Removal of concrete within the reinforcing or to expose the reinforcing (concrete in compression) is a special condition and is discussed in Section 10.

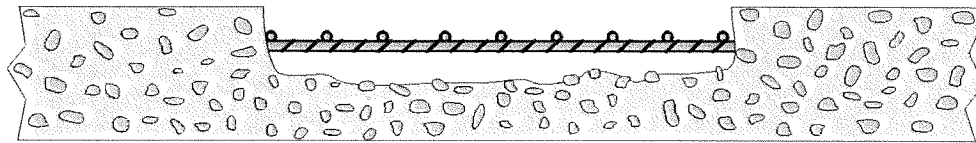


Fig. 5.1: Partial depth repair; slab or wall, section

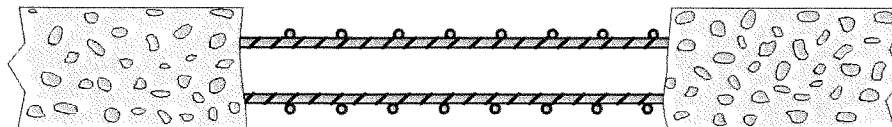


Fig. 5.2: Full depth repair; slab or wall, section

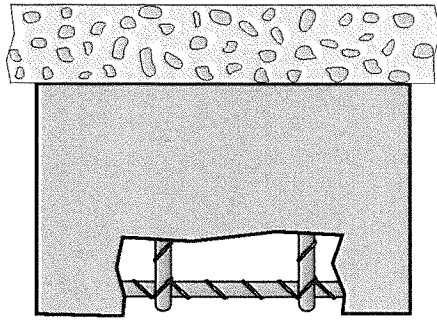


Fig. 5.3: Beam or rib repair, elevation

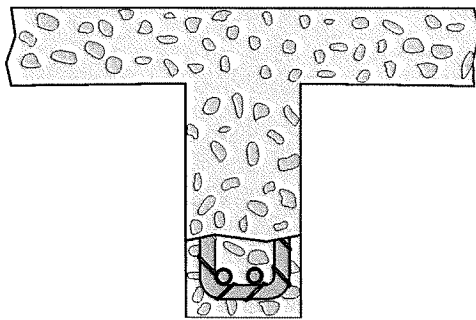


Fig. 5.4: Beam or rib repair, section

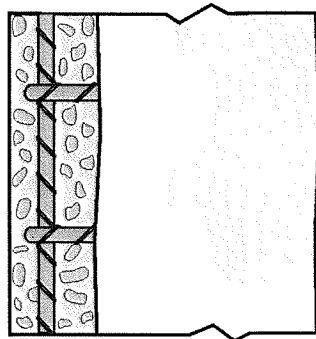


Fig. 5.5: Column repair, elevation

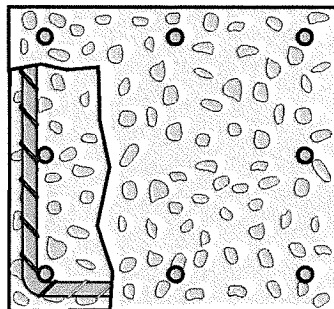


Fig. 5.6: Column repair, section

6.0 Configuration of Repair Area

Deteriorated and delaminated concrete should be located and marked prior to starting the removal process. Delaminated concrete can be located using sounding or other suitable techniques. The repair area should extend a minimum of 6 in. (152 mm) beyond the actual delaminated concrete. Note that during concrete removal, repair areas can grow in size beyond the areas identified due to incipient delaminations that are not readily identifiable by sounding. Repair configurations should be kept as simple as possible, preferably square or rectangular with square corners (Fig. 6.1). This may result in the removal of sound concrete. Reentrant corners should be minimized or avoided, as they are susceptible to cracking.

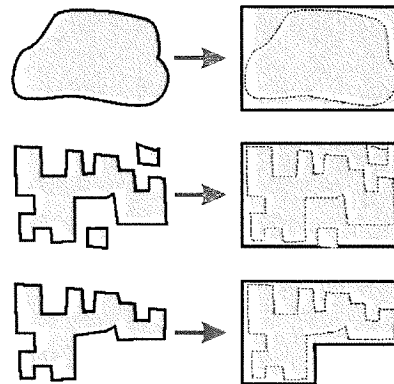


Fig. 6.1: Areas of deterioration and recommended removal configurations

7.0 Concrete Removal/Surface Preparation

7.1 Exposing and Undercutting of Reinforcing Steel

Remove concrete from the marked areas and undercut exposed reinforcing steel (Fig. 7.1) using impact breakers, hydrodemolition, or another suitable method. Undercutting will provide clearance under the reinforcing steel for cleaning and full bar circumference bonding to the repair material and the surrounding concrete. Bonding

the repair material to the full circumference of the reinforcing steel will secure the repair structurally. Provide a minimum of 0.75 in. (19 mm) clearance between exposed reinforcing steel and surrounding concrete or 0.25 in. (6 mm) larger than the coarse aggregate in the repair material, whichever is greater. Sound concrete may have to be removed to provide proper clearance around the reinforcing steel. If impact breakers are used for partial depth concrete removal, the breaker should not exceed 30 lb (12 kg). A 15 lb (7 kg) breaker is preferred

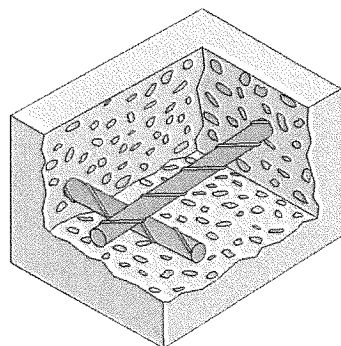


Fig. 7.1: Remove concrete to undercut and expose reinforcing steel and provide uniform repair depth

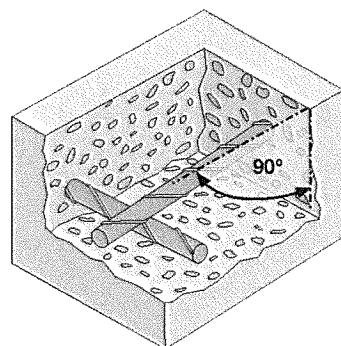


Fig. 7.2: Saw cut perimeter to provide vertical edge

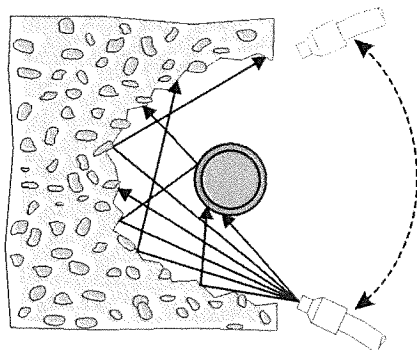


Fig. 7.3: Abrasive blasting to clean substrate and reinforcing

to minimize damage to the substrate, reinforcing steel, and surrounding concrete.

Concrete removal should extend along the reinforcing steel until there is no further delamination, cracking, or significant corrosion and the reinforcing steel is well bonded to the surrounding concrete. Care should be taken to avoid significant and sudden changes in the depth of concrete removal, as the repair material is more susceptible to cracking at these locations.

If noncorroded reinforcing steel is exposed during the removal process, care should be taken to not damage the bond to the surrounding concrete. If the bond between the reinforcing steel and concrete is broken, undercutting of the reinforcing steel is required.

Remove all deteriorated concrete and additional concrete as required to provide the proper configuration and/or the minimum required thickness of repair material as required by the manufacturer of the repair material and/or the project specifications.

7.2 Preparation of the Repair Perimeter

The perimeter of the repair area should be saw cut 0.75 in. (19 mm) deep to provide a vertical edge (Fig. 7.2) for the repair material. This will avoid featheredging of the repair material. Depending on the repair material selected, the depth of the existing reinforcing and the manufacturer's recommendations, a saw cut depth less than 0.75 in. (19 mm) deep may be sufficient. Care should be taken to avoid cutting the existing reinforcing steel.

7.3 Cleaning of the Concrete Surface and Reinforcing Steel

The use of high-impact, mechanical methods to remove deteriorated concrete will result in a surface layer weakened by interconnected micro-cracks in the concrete substrate. The fractured (bruised) layer can extend to a depth of 0.125 to 0.375 in. (3 to 10 mm) into the resultant concrete substrate and may result in reduced bond strength. Remove the bruised layer and bond-inhibiting materials such as dirt, concrete slurry, and loosely bonded concrete by oil-free abrasive blasting (Fig. 7.3) or high-pressure water blasting. The

saw-cut edge of the repair area should also be blasted to roughen the polished vertical surface caused by the saw-cutting.

All concrete, corrosion products, and scale should be removed from the reinforcing steel by oil-free abrasive blasting or high-pressure water blasting. Verify that the reinforcing steel and concrete surface are free from dirt, oil, cement fines (slurry), or any material that may interfere with the bond of the repair material. Inspect the repair cavity to verify that all delaminations and deterioration have been removed. If hydro-demolition is used, cement fines (slurry) must be completely removed from the repair surface. A tightly-bonded light rust build-up on the reinforcing surface is usually not detrimental to bond. If a protective coating is applied to the reinforcing steel, follow the coating manufacturer's recommendations for steel surface preparation.

8.0 Inspection and Repair of Reinforcing Steel

Loose reinforcement should be secured in its original position by tying to secure bars or by other appropriate methods to prevent movement during placement of repair material.

If reinforcing steel has lost cross-sectional area, a structural engineer should be consulted. Repair reinforcing steel by either replacing the

damaged/deteriorated steel or placing supplemental reinforcing steel in the affected section (Fig. 8.1). Supplemental reinforcing steel may be lap-spliced or mechanically spliced to existing reinforcing steel. The supplemental reinforcing steel should extend (lap length) beyond the damaged/deteriorated area in accordance with ACI 318, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete."

9.0 Final Surface Inspection

Immediately prior to placing the repair material, inspect the repair cavity to verify that all bond-inhibiting materials (dirt, concrete slurry, loosely bonded aggregates, or any material that may interfere with the bond of the repair material to the existing concrete) have been removed. If bond-inhibiting materials are present, the repair cavity should be recleaned as previously described.

To verify the adequacy of the prepared concrete surface and completeness of bond-inhibiting material removal, a tensile pull-off test (ICRI Technical Guideline No. 210.3-2004 or ASTM C1583) should be considered to evaluate the bond strength capacity and tensile strength of the existing concrete substrate. This test may also be performed after the repair is complete. The pull-off strength requirement should be established by the engineer and included as a performance specification for the repair.

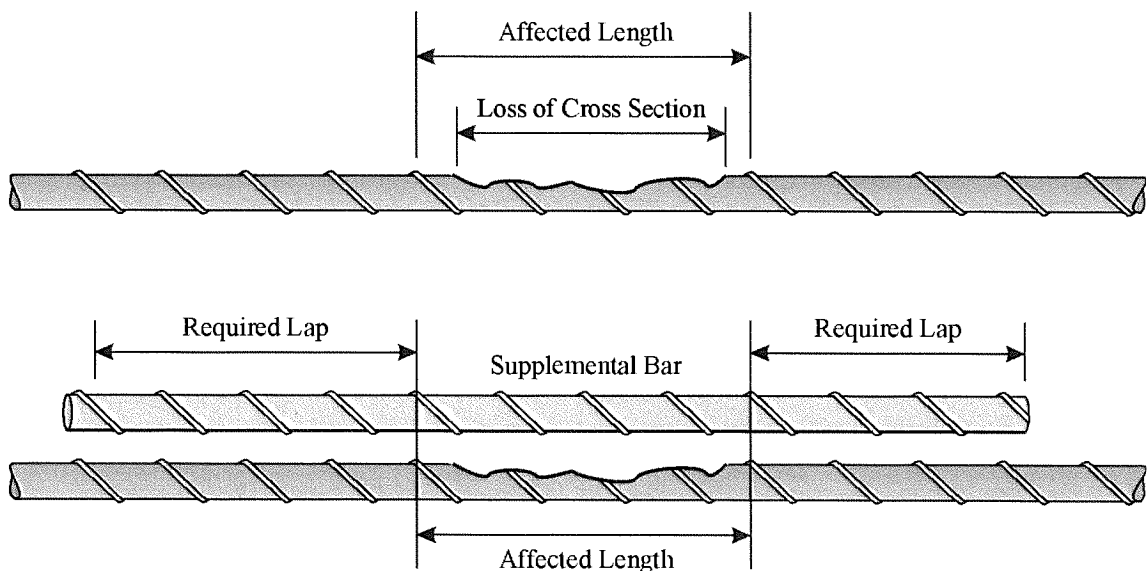


Fig. 8.1: Repair of damaged/deteriorated reinforcing

10.0 Special Condition at Columns

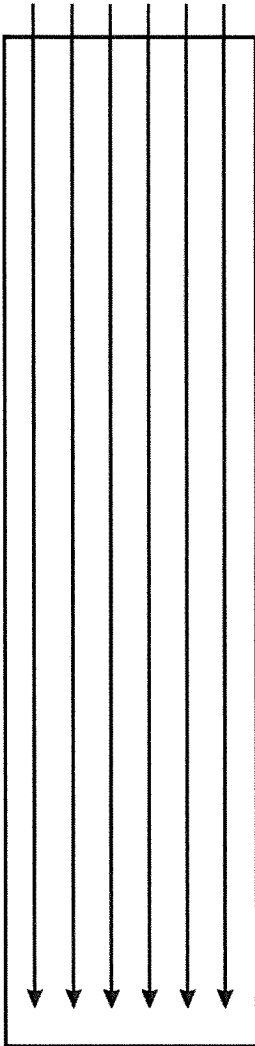


Fig. 10.1: Column load path

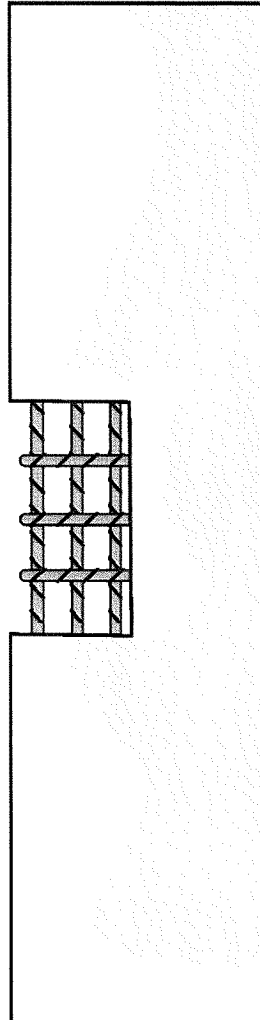


Fig. 10.2a: Column repair

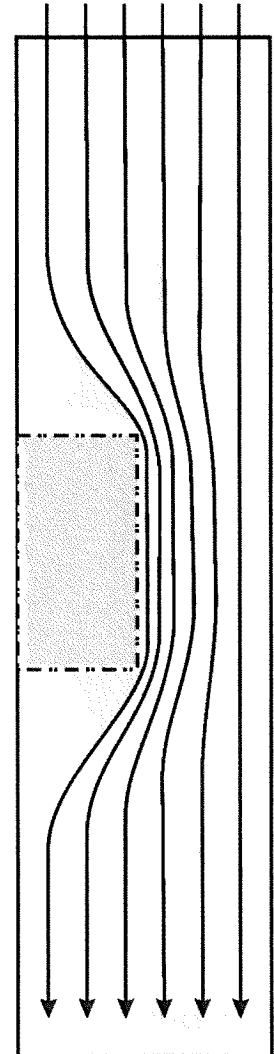


Fig. 10.3: Column load path following repair

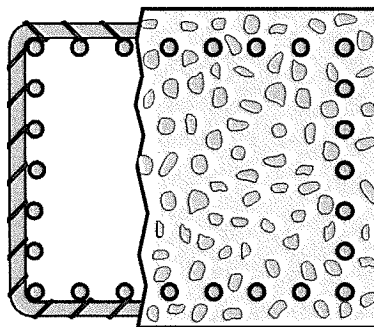


Fig. 10.2b: Column section

Undercutting of reinforcement is a best practice in tensile zones of concrete. In columns, the primary loading condition is compression. From a design perspective, the concrete section contained within the reinforcing cage is considered to carry the compressive loads (Fig. 10.1). The concrete outside of the reinforcement is considered as protective concrete cover for fire and corrosion protection of the reinforcement. Removing the concrete within the column reinforcing steel (Fig. 10.2) can greatly increase the compressive stress in the reinforcing steel and the remaining concrete. Upon concrete removal, compressive load paths redistribute around the repair (deteriorated) sections (Fig. 10.3). Depending on the size of the concrete removal area behind the column steel, buckling of the column vertical reinforcing bars can occur. In the majority of cases, shoring systems will not unload the compressive stress in the column section.

When new repair material is placed in the prepared area, the new material cures and most materials undergo drying shrinkage, which results in the new material being put into a tensile stress state. The new material will not carry compressive loads until the original concrete compresses further, forcing the repair material into compression. If further compression is beyond the capacity of the existing concrete, failure of the column may occur. This key concept affects the concrete preparation process. In normal concrete repair (other than columns), removal of the concrete surrounding the corroding reinforcement (also known as undercutting) is a normal and necessary process to provide for a long-term durable repair. To remove concrete around vertical reinforcing steel in a column (removing concrete inside the reinforcing bar cage) can cause the remaining concrete and/or reinforcement in the column to become overstressed. From a structural point of view, this condition may not be desirable. If concrete is to be removed inside the reinforcement cage, a qualified structural engineer should determine the impact of the repair on potential reinforcement buckling and overall structural capacity of the column. Note that the discussion in this section is also applicable in concept to compression zone portions of other structural members such as beams, slabs, and walls (with or without compression reinforcement) where on-going compressive stress exists and where adequate shoring cannot be installed prior to repairs to prevent displacements and corresponding stress redistributions during repairs.

11.0 Summary

The repair of deteriorated concrete resulting from reinforcing steel corrosion is necessary to extend the service life of the structure. Performing concrete repairs using industry-best practices will ensure the success and longevity of the repair. Understanding the existing conditions and cause of corrosion will assist the engineer in specifying the type and extent of the repair required, and the type of corrosion mitigation systems and/or preventative measures that should be considered to protect the structure from future deterioration.

12.0 References

12.1 Referenced Standards and Reports

The following standards and reports were the latest editions at the time this document was prepared. Because these documents are revised frequently, the reader is advised to contact the proper sponsoring group if it is desired to refer to the latest version.

American Concrete Institute (ACI)

ACI 506R, "Guide to Shotcrete"

ACI E706 (RAP 8), "Installation of Embedded Galvanic Anodes"

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM International)

ASTM C1583, "Standard Test Method for Tensile Strength of Concrete Surfaces and the Bond Strength or Tensile Strength of Concrete Repair and Overlay Materials by Direct Tension (Pull-off Method)"

International Concrete Repair Institute (ICRI)

ICRI Concrete Repair Terminology

ICRI Technical Guideline No. 130.1R-2008 (formerly No. 03735), "Guide for Methods of Measurement and Contract Types for Concrete Repair Work"

ICRI Technical Guideline No. 210.3-2004 (formerly No. 03739), "Guide for Using In-Situ Tensile Pull-Off Tests to Evaluate Bond of Concrete Surface Materials"



ICRI Technical Guideline No. 310.3–2004
(formerly No. 03737), “Guide for the Preparation
of Concrete Surfaces for Repair Using Hydro-
demolition Methods”

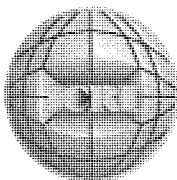
ICRI Technical Guideline No. 320.2R–2008
(formerly No. 03733), “Guide for Selecting and
Specifying Materials for Repair of Concrete
Surfaces”

**These publications may be
obtained from these organizations:**

American Concrete Institute
38800 Country Club Drive
Farmington Hills, MI 48331
www.concrete.org

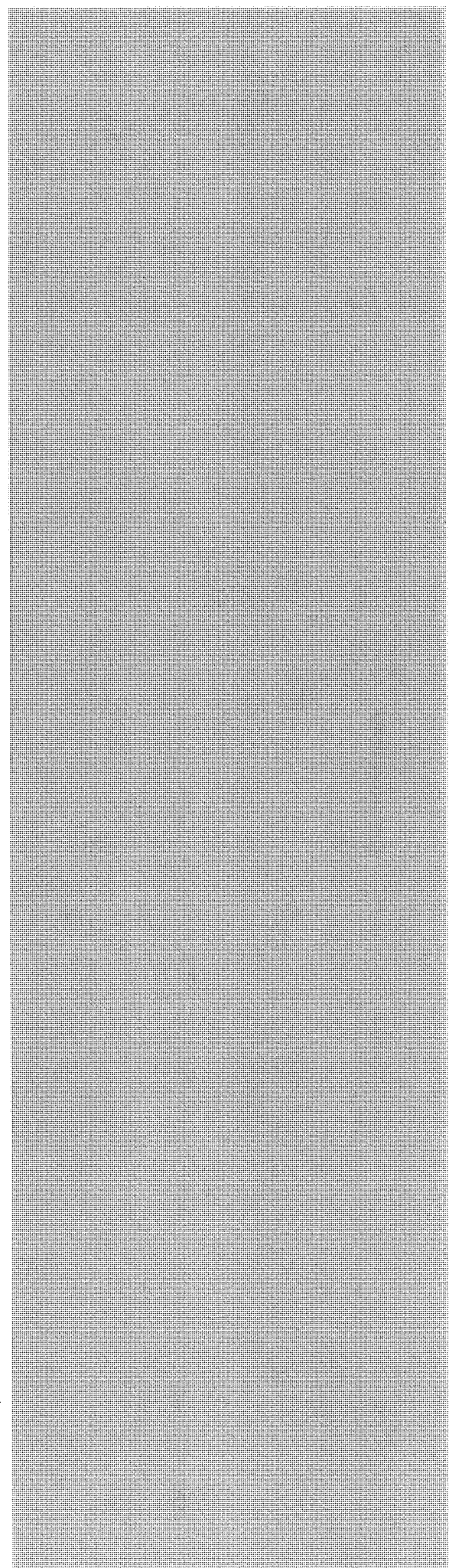
ASTM International
100 Barr Harbor Drive
West Conshohocken, PA 19428
www.astm.org

International Concrete Repair Institute
3166 S. River Road, Suite 132
Des Plaines, IL 60018
www.icri.org



INTERNATIONAL
CONCRETE REPAIR
INSTITUTE

3166 S. River Road, Suite 132
Des Plaines, IL 60018
Phone: 847-827-0830
Fax: 847-827-0832
Web site: www.icri.org
E-mail: info@icri.org



SECTION 042000

UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Concrete masonry units.
 2. Mortar and grout.
 3. Reinforcing steel, masonry joint reinforcement, ties and anchors.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 078440 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS for fire-resistive joint systems openings in masonry walls and at heads of masonry walls.
 2. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
1. Exposed concrete masonry units.
 2. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- E. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
1. Masonry units:

- a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
 3. Mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 5. Reinforcing bars.
 6. Joint reinforcement.
 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- F. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780 for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification.
 2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019 for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- G. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Preconstruction Testing Service: The Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Payment for these services will be made by the Owner. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
1. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, per ASTM C 1314.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01. Agenda shall include protection of air barrier membrane during construction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Air Barrier Membrane: During construction, protect air barrier membrane from penetrations which allow air to pass through air barrier assemblies. Engage original installer to repair damage promptly using identical materials and methods of installation, and to the satisfaction of the Architect.
- B. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
 - 2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- C. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
- D. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

- E. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
- F. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMUs)

- A. Regional Materials: Provide CMUs that have been manufactured within 500 miles of Project site, from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.
- B. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90, normal weight unless indicated otherwise manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
- C. Shapes: Provide standard shapes indicated and as required for building configuration. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
- D. Decorative Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi
 - 2. Weight Classification: Normal weight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions specified in "Concrete Masonry Units" Paragraph above.
 - 4. Pattern and Texture:
 - a. Standard pattern, ground finish.
 - 5. Colors: selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 6. Special Aggregate: Provide units made with aggregate matching aggregate in Architect's sample.
 - 7. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. A Jandris & Sons
 - b. Trenwyth Industries.
 - c. Westbrook Concrete Block Co.

2.2 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate for mortar and grout, cement, and lime that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.

- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. LanXess; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
 - b. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
 - c. Solomon Grind-Chem Services, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- G. Water: Potable.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Industry-wide EPDs for steel reinforcements (rebars) are available from the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute (CRSI).
- B. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.
 - 1. Interior Walls: Mill-galvanized, carbon steel.
 - 2. Wire Size and Spacing: As required by Code.
 - 3. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Multiwythe Masonry:
 - 1. Ladder type with 1 side rod at each face shell of hollow masonry units more than 4 inches in width, plus 1 side rod at each wythe of masonry 4 inches or less in width.

2.4 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent paragraphs that are made from materials that comply with subparagraphs below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
 - 3. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 316.
 - 4. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
 - 5. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - 6. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

- B. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structure: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - 1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Partition Top Anchors: 0.097-inch-thick metal plate with 3/8-inch-diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Anchor Bolts: L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.7 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Masonry Cleaners: Non-acidic, recommended by manufacturer based on site conditions.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
 - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
 - c. ProSoCo, Inc.

2.8 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and lime.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.

3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.

C. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed. Do not use units cut to less than one-half size.
- E. Do not install concrete masonry units with more than 5 percent damage to the face.
- F. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- G. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- H. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:

1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
2. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
3. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
4. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
5. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
6. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond pattern; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs. Prior to installation review bond pattern with Architect.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Section 078440 – FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay concrete masonry units as follows:
 - 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

3.6 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.7 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:

1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS but not less than 3/8 inch.
1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.8 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

3.9 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspectors: Engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof. Test types as determined by the independent testing and inspection agency.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, around penetrations and where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 31 - EARTHWORK.
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off the Site.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 047200

CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Cast stone trim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 042000 - UNIT MASONRY for cast stone trim installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cast Stone: Architectural precast concrete building units intended to simulate natural cut stone.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for cast stone units.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
 - 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.
 - 2. For colored mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicated types and amounts of pigments used.
- D. Mockup Samples: Furnish sample units for each color and texture of cast stone required, as indicated on Drawings for installation in mockups.
- E. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
 - 1. Include copies of material test reports for completed projects, indicating compliance of cast stone with ASTM C 1364.

- F. Quality-Control Plan: Manufacturer's written quality-control plan that includes all elements of the Cast Stone Institute's "Quality Control Procedures Required for Plant Inspection."
 - 1. Provide copies of documentation showing compliance with quality-control plan as requested by Architect.
- G. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.
 - 1. Provide test reports based on testing within previous two years.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, with sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units.
 - 1. Manufacturer is a producing member of the Cast Stone Institute or has on file and follows a written quality-control plan approved by Architect that includes all elements of the Cast Stone Institute's "Quality Control Procedures Required for Plant Inspection."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- C. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.6 TESTING

- A. Tests shall conform to methods described herein, and shall be performed by an testing laboratory selected by the manufacturer and approved by the Owner. Tests shall be made at the manufacturer's expense. Pieces of stone taken for testing shall be replaced by manufacturer without charge. The testing laboratory shall submit copies of test results to both the Architect and the manufacturer.
- B. Testing shall be done using 6 in. x 12 in. cylinders in accordance with ASTM C 31, ASTM C 39, and ASTM C 642.
- C. Testing may be performed using 2 in. x 2 in. cubes, provided that the size of the largest aggregate in the design mix is 5/8 in. or smaller, in accordance with ASTM C 170 and C 97.
- D. The Architect will select representative pieces of Cast Stone at random per each 500 cubic feet for testing.
- E. Test results shall be determined by the average of three specimens per test.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to minimize the need for on-site storage and to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
 - 1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.

2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store installation materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST STONE

- A. Basis-of-Design: RockCast Architectural Cast Stone.
- B. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:
 1. Color and Texture: Match Architect's Sample.
 2. Sizes: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Provide units with factory finish at exposed faces.
- C. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
 1. Color: White or Gray.
- D. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33; gradation as needed to produce required textures and colors as needed to produce required cast stone colors.
- E. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation as needed to produce required textures and colors as needed to produce required cast stone colors.
- F. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis. The amount of pigment shall not exceed 10% by weight of the cement used.
- G. Admixtures: Do not use admixtures unless specified or approved in writing by Architect.
- H. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.
 1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.
 2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767/A 767M.
- I. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- J. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364.
 1. Provide units that are resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.

- K. Fabricate units with sharp arris and details accurately reproduced with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
 3. Provide drips on projecting elements, unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Fabrication Tolerances:
1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
 2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
 3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
 4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.
- M. Cure units by one of the following methods:
1. Cure units with steam in enclosed curing room at temperature of 105 deg F or above and 95 to 100 percent relative humidity for 6 hours.
 2. Cure units with dense fog and water spray in enclosed warm curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity for 24 hours.
 3. Cure units to comply with one of the following:
 - a. Not less than 5 days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
 - b. Not less than 6 days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F or above.
 - c. Not less than 7 days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F or above.
 - d. Not less than 8 days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F or above.
- N. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- B. Dowels: Round stainless-steel bars complying with ASTM A 276, Type 304, and 1/2-inch (12-mm) diameter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Part of the Work of Section 042000 – UNIT MASONRY.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 051200

STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Quality Control" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
 - 2. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for loose steel bearing plates and miscellaneous steel framing.
 - 3. Division 9 Section "Painting" for surface preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- B. Seismic-Load-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SLRS" or along grid lines designated as "SLRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
 - 1. Shapes included in ASTM A 6/A 6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "Protected Zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
- E. Demand Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System and which are indicated as "Demand Critical" or "Seismic Critical" on Drawings.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Engineer structural steel connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by the fabricator to withstand design loadings indicated.
- B. Engineering Responsibility: Engage a fabricator who utilizes a qualified professional engineer to prepare calculations, Shop Drawings, and other structural data for structural steel connections.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for each type of product specified.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment Drawings.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
 - 5. Identify members and connections of the Seismic-Load-Resisting System.
 - 6. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
 - 7. Identify demand critical welds.
- D. Welding Procedure Specifications (WPSs) and Procedure Qualification Records (PQRs): Provide according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for each welded joint whether prequalified or qualified by testing, including the following:
 - 1. Power source (constant current or constant voltage).
 - 2. Electrode manufacturer and trade name, for demand critical welds.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer, licensed in the project jurisdiction, responsible for their preparation.

- F. Certification:
 - 1. Submit a letter of certification from the material fabricator sealed by a professional engineer licensed to practice in the State of Maine attesting that all shop drawings were prepared under his direct supervision.
 - 2. Submit certification that field welders are AWS certified.
- G. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- H. Mill test reports signed by manufacturers certifying that their products, including the following, comply with requirements.
 - 1. Structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
 - 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 4. Shop primers.
 - 5. Non-shrink grout.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator, shop-painting applicators, professional engineer, and testing agency.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Mill test reports for structural steel, including chemical and physical properties.
- E. Product Test Reports: For the following:
 - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 4. Shear stud connectors.
 - 5. Shop primers.
 - 6. Non-shrink grout.
- F. Survey of existing conditions.
- G. Source quality-control reports.
- H. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has completed structural steel work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Engage a firm experienced in fabricating structural steel similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to fabricate structural steel without delaying the Work.

OPTION 1 - IF STEEL FABRICATOR IS AISC CERTIFIED

For AISC Certified steel fabrication shops the in-shop review of all fabricated steel components and in-shop review of fabricator Quality Assurance/Quality Control Procedures as part of Special Inspection services shall be waived as indicated in 2018 IBC Section 1704.2.5 Special Inspection of Fabricated Items. Cost of providing remaining Structural Inspection items related to structural steel as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections shall be carried by the Owner.

OPTION 2 - IF STEEL FABRICATOR IS NOT AISC CERTIFIED

For non-AISC Certified fabricator shops, the in-shop review of all fabricated steel components and in-shop review of fabricator Quality Assurance/Quality Control Procedures mentioned in 2018 IBC Section 1704.2.5 Special Inspection of Fabricated Items to be part of Special Inspection services shall not be waived. Special inspections of all project-specific fabricated structural steel framing components shall be performed in the fabricator's shop as they are produced, along with review of steel fabricator's written procedural and quality control manuals with periodic auditing of the fabrication practices during the project-specific fabrication activities. These in-shop activities will be in addition to all remaining Structural Inspection items related to structural steel indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections. The added in-shop Special Inspection services shall be performed by an Independent Special Inspector to be approved by the Engineer-Of-Record. The cost of the added in-shop activities will be carried by the steel fabricator. The cost of the remaining Structural Inspection items related to structural steel as indicated in the Statement of Special Inspections shall be carried by the Owner.

- C. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice.
 - 2. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design."
 - 3. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members."
 - 4. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 5. ASTM A 992/A 992M "Specifications for High-Strength Low-Allow Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel"
 - 6. ASTM A 307 "Specifications for Carbon Steel Bolts and Studs, 60,000 PSI Tensile Strength"
 - 7. ASTM A 325 "Specifications for Structural Bolts, Steel Heat Treated, 120/105 ksi Minimum"
 - 8. ASTM A 1085 "Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded Carbon Steel Hollow Structural Sections (HSS)"

9. ASTM A 6 "Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use."
 10. Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
 11. Research Council on Structural Connections' (RCSC) "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally authorized to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for projects with structural steel framing that are similar to that indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- E. Welding Standards: Comply with applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code-Steel."
1. Present evidence that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
- F. Structural Steel Painting Manual: Comply with applicable provisions of the "Structural Steel Painting Manual.
- G. Structural Steel Painting Council: Comply with provisions as follows:
1. SSPC-SP3 - Power Tool Cleaning
 2. SSPC-SP6 – Commercial Blast Cleaning
- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."
- 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver structural steel to Project site in such quantities and at such times to ensure continuity of installation.
- B. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground by using pallets, platforms, or other supports. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.
1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion or damage to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- 1.10 SEQUENCING
- A. Supply anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel W (rolled wide flange) Shapes: As follows:
 - 1. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Steel: ASTM A 992, Grade 50.
- B. Structural Steel Shapes (except rolled wide flange "W" shapes), Plates, and Bars: As follows:
 - 1. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 36.
- C. Cold-Formed Structural Steel Tubing: ASTM A 1085 (Fy = 50 ksi.)
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
 - 2. Finish: Black.
- E. Anchor Rods, Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: As follows:
 - 1. Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, unless otherwise noted; carbon-steel, hex-head bolts; and carbon-steel nuts.
 - 2. Headed Bolts: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts and heavy hex carbon-steel nuts.
 - 3. Headed Bolts: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts and heavy hex carbon-steel nuts.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM A 36.
- F. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325.
 - 3. Optional: Snap off tension indicating high-strength bolts certified to provide the minimum fastener tension per AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490"
 - a. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- G. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers, uncoated.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, uncoated.
 - 2. Optional: Snap off tension indicating high-strength bolts certified to provide the minimum fastener tension per AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490"
- H. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Exterior exposed steel shall be sandblasted to SSPC-SP6 and shop painted with primer paint - TNEMEC Chem-Prime #37-78 Gray or approved equal.
- B. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, non-asphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, non-staining grout containing selected silica sands, Portland Cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, of consistency suitable for application, and a 30-minute working time.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and assemble structural steel in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate structural steel according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section and in Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Camber structural steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6 and maintain markings until steel has been erected.
 - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 4. Fabricate for delivery a sequence that will expedite erection and minimize field handling of structural steel.
 - 5. Complete structural steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
 - 6. Comply with fabrication tolerance limits of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel.
- B. Fabricate architecturally exposed structural steel with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes, including pitting, rust and scale seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
 - 1. Remove blemishes by filling, grinding, or by welding and grinding, prior to cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
 - 2. Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for architecturally exposed structural steel.
- C. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded.
- D. Finishing: Accurately mill ends of columns and other members transmitting loads in bearing.

2.5 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. Shop install and tighten high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent surface bleeding of back-side welding on exposed steel surfaces. Grind smooth exposed fillet welds 1/2 inch and larger. Grind flush butt welds. Dress exposed welds.

2.6 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed-on fireproofing.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust, loose mill scale, and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to SSPC specifications as follows:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 3 "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop inspections and tests and to prepare test reports.
 - 1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether test specimens comply with or deviate from requirements.
 - 2. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural steel Work is being fabricated or produced so required inspection and testing can be accomplished.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove and replace structural steel that inspections and test reports indicate do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.
- D. Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be inspected and tested according to AWS D1.1 and the inspection procedures listed below, at testing agency's option.
 - 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - 3. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94 and ASTM E 142; minimum quality level "2-2T."
 - 4. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Before erection proceeds, and with the steel erector present, verify elevations of concrete and masonry bearing surfaces and locations of anchorages for compliance with requirements.
- B. Do not proceed with erection until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WORKMANSHIP - GENERAL

- A. Workmanship shall be equal to the best practice in modern structural shops. Material shall be clean and straight. All holes shall be accurately drilled or punched. Burning and drifting to enlarge holes will not be permitted. Holes that must be enlarged shall be reamed. Particular care shall be taken to protect all materials from injury of any kind, either in transportation, storage or erection. Material that is damaged must be replaced by perfect material or repaired in a manner approved and accepted by the Engineer. The use of drift pins will be allowed only to bring together the several parts, and they must not be driven with such force as to distort or injure the material. Material that has been distorted by drift pins will not be accepted.
- B. All shop and field welding shall be performed by certified welders in conformance with American Welding Society's "Code for Arc and Gas Welding in Building Construction."
- C. No holes shall be burned in steel members under any circumstances without express approval and instructions from the Engineer.
- D. Bolted members shall have all parts well pinned-up and firmly drawn together. Abutting joints shall be dressed or cut true and straight and fitted closely together. In compression joints, depending upon contact bearing, the surfaces shall be truly faced so as to have even bearing after they are bolted up complete; and, when properly aligned, the several pieces forming one built-up member shall be straight and shall fit closely together. Finished members shall be free from twists, bends or open joints. Abutting joints in compression members faced for bearing shall be spliced sufficiently to hold the connecting members accurately in place. All other joints in bolted work, whether in tension or compression, shall be fully spliced.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section.
- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
 - 1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate prior to packing with grout.
 - 3. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Finish exposed surfaces, protect installed materials, and allow to cure.
 - a. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for proprietary grout materials.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 1. Maintain erection tolerances of architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or by using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- I. Protect steel embedded in concrete or gravel with a liberal brushed coat of asphalt mastic.

3.5 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. Install and tighten non-high-strength bolts, except where high-strength bolts are indicated.
- B. Install and tighten high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for procedures, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC specifications referenced in this Section for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent surface bleeding of back-side welding on exposed steel surfaces. Grind smooth exposed fillet welds 1/2 inch and larger. Grind flush butt welds. Dress exposed welds.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field inspections and tests and to prepare test reports.
 1. Testing agency will conduct and interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove and replace structural steel that inspections and test reports indicate do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional testing, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.
- D. Field-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- E. In addition to visual inspection, field-welded connections will be inspected and tested according to AWS D1.1 and the inspection procedures listed below, at testing agency's option.
 1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 3. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94 and ASTM E 142; minimum quality level "2-2T."
 4. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint to exposed areas using same material as used for shop painting.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on structural steel are included in Division 9 Section "Painting."
- C. Finish Painting: Finish painting of steel surfaces are included in Division 9 "Painting"

END OF SECTION

SECTION 052100

STEEL JOISTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Open-web K-series steel joists, 2-piece with bolted center span connections.
 - 2. KCS-type, open-web K-series steel joists.
 - 3. Joist accessories
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing bearing plates in concrete.
 - 2. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for furnishing steel bearing plates.
 - 3. Division 9 Section "Painting" for prime painting.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special "SP" joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Design Loads: As specified on structural drawings.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, mark, number, type, location, and spacing of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
 - 1. Submit a letter of certification from the material fabricator sealed by a professional engineer licensed to practice in the State of Maine attesting that all shop drawings were prepared under his direct supervision.
 - 2. Submit design calculations from the material fabricator sealed by a professional engineer licensed to practice in the State of Maine for all joist types and associated connections.
 - 3. Comprehensive engineering analysis signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.

- C. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- D. Mill certificates signed by manufacturers of bolts certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.
- E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Research/Evaluation Reports: Evidence of steel joists' compliance with building code in effect for Project, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing joists similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
 - 1. Manufacturer must be certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with SJI standard specifications and load tables.
 - 2. Assumes responsibility for engineering special joists to comply with performance requirements. This responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer licensed to practice in the State of Maine.
 - 3. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally authorized to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of joists that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- B. SJI Specifications: Comply with SJI's "Standard Specifications Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders" (hereafter, "Specifications"), applicable to types of joists indicated.
- C. Steel Structures Painting Council - SSPC-PS 14.01 - Steel Joist Shop Paint System.
- D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel"; and AWS D1.3 "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Handle, transport, and store steel joists, steel joist substitutes, at the job site in a manner to prevent permanent distortion of any part or other damages affecting their structural integrity. Replace damaged items that cannot be restored to like-new condition. Store all items off the ground in a well-drained location protected from the weather and easily accessible for inspection and handling.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
 - 1. Use ASD; data are given at service-load level.
 - 2. Design special joists to withstand design loads with live-load deflections no greater than the following:
 - a. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
- B. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for chord and web members.
- B. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A, carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- C. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts, heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- D. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, Type I, red oxide; FS TT-P-636, red oxide; or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements of either of these red-oxide primers.

2.4 OPEN-WEB K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series," in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord; of joist type indicated.
 - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- C. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."

- D. Camber: Joists shall be true flat, no camber.
- E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches.

2.5 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- C. Supply ceiling extensions, either extended bottom-chord elements or a separate extension unit of enough strength to support ceiling construction. Extend ends to within 1/2 inch of finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

2.6 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and prime steel joists, and steel joist substitutes, in accordance with SSPC-PS 14.01, Steel Joist Shop Paint System, except that paint shall conform to SJI specifications and shall be suitable for top coating. (At areas where steel joists, steel joist substitutes, are scheduled to receive a finish top coating, verify compatibility of primer.)
- B. Apply one shop coat of primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil thick.
- C. Painting of joists and joist accessories is specified in Division 9 Section "Painting."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.

1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with RCSC's "Allowable Stress Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds [and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
- C. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following procedures, as applicable:
1. Radiographic Testing: ASTM E 94 and ASTM E 142.
 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709.
 3. Ultrasonic Testing: ASTM E 164.
 4. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
- D. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
1. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Allowable Stress Design Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that inspections and test reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
 2. Apply a compatible primer of the same type as the shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, which ensure joists and accessories, are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 053100

STEEL DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Roof Deck
- 2. Composite Floor Deck

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, and deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by steel deck manufacturers certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed steel deck similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- C. AISI Specifications: Calculate structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

- D. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- E. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Design:
 - 1. Steel deck shall be designed in accordance with the AISI "Specifications for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members." Simple short spans shall be avoided, and all deck units shall extend over three or more supports unless absolutely impractical.
 - 2. Design Loads: As specified on the drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DECK MATERIALS

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653, Structural Quality, Grade 33 minimum.
 - 2. Deck Profile: Type B.
 - 3. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches
 - 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 20 gauge (0.0358 inch)
 - 5. Span Condition: Triple span.
 - 6. Field Fastening, Perimeter and Corner Zones: 5/8" puddle welds on a 36/4 pattern
 - 7. End laps occur at supports only.
- B. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 29, the minimum section properties indicated, and the following:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008-00, Grades C and D, or from A653-00, Structural Steel with a minimum yield strength of 40 KSI.
 - 2. Profile Depth: 1-1/2 inches (28 mm).
 - 3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: 22 gauge (0.0295 inch).

4. Span Condition: Triple span.
5. Side Laps: Button punched or welded at 16" o.c. spacing.
6. Slab Reinforcement: 6 x 6 xW2.1 x W2.1 WWM At 1" clear below top of slab.
7. Fastening: 5/8" puddle welds on 36/4 pattern.
8. Minimum required interior bearing length is 4". Minimum required exterior bearing length is 2".

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Adjusting Plates: Provide adjusting plates or segments of roof units in locations too narrow to accommodate full-size roof units. As far as practical, provide plates of the same gauge and configuration as the roof units. Plates of predetermined sizes shall be factory cut.
- C. Reinforcing Plates: Provide .057" thick reinforcing plates for all openings less than 12 inches in diameter. Length and width of plates as required satisfying The Steel Deck Institute requirements.
- D. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- E. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- G. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- H. Steel Sheet Accessories: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. End Closures: Provide end closures of minimum 22 gauge to close the ends at end walls, eaves, and openings through the roof.
- J. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, thickness as required by manufacturer.
- K. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch-wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2- inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 29, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate decking bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
 - 1. Exercise special care not to damage the material or overload the decking during the entire construction period. The maximum uniform distribution storage load shall not exceed the design live load.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
 - 1. Simple short spans shall be avoided, and all deck units shall extend over two or more supports unless absolutely impractical. Do not use unanchored deck units as a work or storage platform.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to decking. Reinforce and frame openings through roof in accordance with the drawings for rigidity and load-carrying capacity. Holes or other openings required for the work of other trades shall be drilled or cut and reinforced by the respective trades; the deck manufacturer and the Engineer shall approve such holes or other openings larger than 6 inches in diameter.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of decking, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Immediately after placement and alignment, and after inaccuracies have been corrected, permanently fasten steel roof deck and floor deck units in place. Clamp or weight deck units to provide firm contact between deck units and structural supports while fastening is being performed. Decking shall be fastened as recommended by the manufacturer unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.
- B. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame as per drawings or unless otherwise noted, with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum roof decks.
 - 2. End Joints at Elevator shaft roof: Continuous over single span
- C. Roof Sump Pans: Install over openings provided in roof decking and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 12 inches apart with at least 1 weld at each corner.
- D. Miscellaneous Roof Deck Accessories: finish strips, cover plates, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect the decking top surface for flatness after installation. Place a four-foot straightedge across the decking ribs over the structural supporting members at all locations. If the straightedge fails to touch the entire top surface of the decking or if top surfaces of abutting units are not in alignment, corrective measures or replacement shall be provided. After corrective measures or replacement has been performed, the decking shall be reinspected.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Engineer.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 054000

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing for ceiling and soffit.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS for masonry shelf angles and connections.
 2. Section 061600 - SHEATHING for exterior sheathing applied to cold-formed metal framing.
 3. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
 4. Section 092120 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT-WALL ASSEMBLIES for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design framing, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
1. Design Loads: As required by code.
 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads within deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing:
 - 1) Horizontal deflection of $l/240$ of the wall height for metal panel systems.
 - 2) Horizontal deflection of $1/600$ of the wall height for masonry systems.
 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.

4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load, plus superimposed dead load, deflection of primary building structure.
 5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing complies with AISI S100 and either ASTM C955, AISI S200 and ASTM C955 Section 8, or AISI S240, as required by governing Code.
- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
1. Shop drawings shall be signed and sealed by a professional engineer currently licensed in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For framing indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- F. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
1. Steel sheet.
 2. Expansion anchors.
 3. Power-actuated anchors.
 4. Mechanical fasteners.
 5. Vertical deflection clips.
 6. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing

engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

- C. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
- D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- E. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
 - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. California Expanded Metals Co. (CEMCO).
 - 2. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
 - 3. EB Metal U.S.
 - 4. Marino\WARE.
 - 5. Super Stud Building Products Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with an average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with either ASTM C955, AISI S200 and ASTM C955 Section 8, or AISI S240, as required by governing Code for conditions indicated.

- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: G90.
- D. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: G90 (Z275).

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch (16 gauge).
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
 - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
 - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
 - b. MarinoWARE, a division of Ware Industries.
 - c. The Steel Network, Inc.

2.4 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, threaded carbon-steel bolts, and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers: Kwik-Bolt 3 by Hilti, Inc., TruBolt Wedge Anchor by ITW Red Head or Power-Stud by Powers Fasteners.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
 - 1. Provide interior, field-applied primer with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
- B. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Sika; SikaGrout 212.
 - 2. VOC Content: 0 g/L.
- C. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- D. Sill Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.

- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install sill sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
- D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- G. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- H. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches.

- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 055000

METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following. Requirements for materials, hot-dip galvanizing, and shop-applied primers are included with each item as applicable.

- 1. Steel lintels with shop-applied zinc-rich primer at interior locations.
- 2. Miscellaneous steel framing and supports:
 - a. Galvanized steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
- 3. Ladders:
 - a. Alternating tread devices.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

- 1. Section 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING for structural steel items.
- 2. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for field painting work of this section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design **ladders and miscellaneous framing and supports**, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance of Ladders: Provide ladders capable of withstanding the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ANSI A14.3.
 - 1. For ladders exceeding 24 feet, include loads imposed by fall arrest system.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide exterior metal fabrications that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
 - 2. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
 - 3. Where fabrications are to receive sprayed-on fireproofing, include statement that primer is compatible with fireproofing proposed for use.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of metal fabrications that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- D. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate wall and other contiguous construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
 - 2. Provide allowance for trimming and fitting at site.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate installation of steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete that are specified in this Section but required for work of another Section. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FERROUS METALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- D. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.
- E. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot complying with MFMA-4.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Unistrut Corp.

2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36. Provide hot-dip or mechanically deposited, zinc-coated anchor bolts where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- C. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.

- D. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency. Anchors shall have an ICC-ES report with approval for use in cracked concrete.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers: Kwik-Bolt TZ by Hilti, Inc., TruBolt Wedge Anchor by ITW Red Head, Power-Stud+ by Powers Fasteners, or Strong Bolt by Simpson.
- E. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- C. Zinc-Rich Primer: Urethane zinc-rich primer compatible with topcoat Specified in Section 099000 - PAINTS AND COATINGS.
1. Available Products: Tnemec; Series 394 PerimePrime, or approved equal.
 2. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content (95% by weight) paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Duncan Galvanizing; ZiRP.
 - b. ZRC Worldwide; Galvilite Galvanizing Repair, low VOC type.
 2. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less.
- E. Isolation Coating (Bituminous Paint): ASTM D 1187, cold-applied asphalt emulsion, VOC compliant, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- F. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dayton Superior; 1107 Advantage Grout.
 - b. Sika; SikaGrout 212.
 2. VOC Content: 0 g/L.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts, unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

2.5 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive

adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.

1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
2. Furnish inserts if units are installed after concrete is placed.

2.7 ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES

- A. Alternating Tread Devices: Fabricate alternating tread devices to comply with ICC's International Building Code. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lapeyre Stair Inc.
 - b. Precision Ladders, LLC.
 - c. Vestil Manufacturing Company.
 2. Fabricate from steel and assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
- B. Galvanize exterior steel alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

2.8 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.9 STEEL PRIMERS AND FINISHES

- A. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:
1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B) and Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Urethane Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 7, "Brush Off Blast Cleaning."
 3. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be field welded, embedded in concrete or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 4. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 5. Comply with SSPC-PA 2, "Measurement of Dry Coating Thickness with magnetic Gages."
- B. Zinc-Rich Primer: Urethane zinc-rich primer compatible with topcoat Specified in Section 099000 - PAINTS AND COATINGS.

1. Available Products: Tnemec; Series 394 PerimePrime, or approved equal.
2. VOC Content: 340 g/L or less.

2.10 HOT-DIP GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: For steel exposed to the elements, weather or corrosive environments and other steel indicated to be galvanized, provide coating for iron and steel fabrications applied by the hot-dip process.

1. Basis-of-Design: Duragalv by Duncan Galvanizing.
2. Comply with ASTM A 123 for fabricated products and ASTM A 153 for hardware.
3. Provide thickness of galvanizing specified in referenced standards.
4. Galvanizing bath shall contain special high grade zinc and other earthly materials.
5. Fill vent holes after galvanizing, if applicable, and grind smooth.

2.11 HOT-DIP GALVANIZING AND FACTORY-APPLIED PRIMER

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: For steel exposed to the elements, weather or corrosive environments and other steel indicated to be galvanized, provide coating for iron and steel fabrications applied by the hot-dip process.

1. Basis-of-Design: Duragalv by Duncan Galvanizing.
2. Comply with ASTM A 123 for fabricated products and ASTM A 153 for hardware.
3. Provide thickness of galvanizing specified in referenced standards.
4. Galvanizing bath shall contain special high grade zinc and other earthly materials.
5. Fill vent holes after galvanizing, if applicable, and grind smooth.

- B. Factory-Applied Primer over Galvanized Steel: Provide factory-applied prime coat, certified OTC/VOC compliant less than 2.8 lbs/gal. and conforming to EPA and local requirements. Apply primer within 12 hours after galvanizing at the same galvanizer's plant in a controlled environment meeting applicable environmental regulations and as recommended by the primer coating manufacturer. Primer coat shall exhibit a rugosity (smoothness) not greater than 4 rug (16-20 microns of variation) when measured by a profilometer over a 1 inch straight line on the surface of architectural and structural elements that are less than 24 pounds per running foot. Profilometer shall be capable of operating in 1 micron increments. Blast cleaning of the surface is unacceptable for surface preparation. Primer shall have a minimum two year re-coat window for application of finish coat. Coatings must meet or exceed the following performance criteria as stipulated by the coatings manufacturer:

1. Basis-of-Design: Primergalv by Duncan Galvanizing.
2. Abrasion Resistance: ASTM D 4060 (CS17 Wheel, 1,000 grams load).1kg load, 200 mg loss.
3. Adhesion: ASTM D4541, 1050 psi.
4. Corrosion Weathering: ASTM D5894, 13 cycles, 4,368 hours; rating 10 per ASTM D714 for blistering and rating 7 per ASTM D610 for rusting.
5. Direct Impact Resistance: ASTM D2794, 160 in. lbs.
6. Flexibility: Method: ASTM D522, 180 degree bend, 1 inch mandrel, passes.
7. Pencil Hardness: ASTM D3363, 3B.
8. Moisture Condensation Resistance: ASTM D4585, 100 degrees F, 2000 hours; passes, no cracking or delamination.
9. Dry Heat Resistance: Method: ASTM D2485, 250 degrees F.
10. Warranty: Provide galvanizer's warranty that materials will be free from 10 percent or more visible rust for a period of 20 years.

2.12 HOT-DIP GALVANIZING AND FACTORY-APPLIED ARCHITECTURAL FINISH

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanizing: For steel exposed to the elements, weather or corrosive environments and other steel indicated to be galvanized, provide coating for iron and steel fabrications applied by the hot-dip process.
1. Basis-of-Design: Duragalv by Duncan Galvanizing.
 2. Comply with ASTM A 123 for fabricated products and ASTM A 153 for hardware.
 3. Provide thickness of galvanizing specified in referenced standards.
 4. Galvanizing bath shall contain special high grade zinc and other earthly materials.
 5. Fill vent holes after galvanizing, if applicable, and grind smooth.
- B. Architectural Finish Over Hot-Dip Galvanizing: For steel exposed to the elements, weather or corrosive environments and other steel indicated to be galvanized, provide coating over hot-dip galvanizing.
1. Basis-of-Design: Colorgalv by Duncan Galvanizing.
 2. Primer coat shall be factory-applied polyamide epoxy primer. Apply primer within 12 hours after galvanizing at the same galvanizer's plant in a controlled environment meeting applicable environmental regulations and as recommended by the primer coating manufacturer.
 3. Finish coat shall be factory-applied color-pigmented architectural finish. Apply finish coating at the galvanizer's plant, in a controlled environment meeting applicable environmental regulations and as recommended by the finish coating manufacturer. Finish coat shall exhibit a rugosity (smoothness) not greater than 4 rug (16-20 microns of variation) when measured by a profilometer over a 1 inch straight line on the surface of architectural and structural elements that are less than 24 pounds per running foot. Profilometer shall be capable of operating in 1 micron increments.
 4. Coatings shall be certified OTC/VOC compliant and conform to applicable regulations and EPA standards.
 5. Apply the galvanizing, primer, and coating within the same facility and provide single-source responsibility for galvanizing, priming and finish coating.
 6. Clean galvanized surface to create an acceptable profile for coatings. Galvanizer shall certify that performance will be met without blast cleaning and coating will be applied within 12 hours of galvanizing at the galvanizer's plant. If blasted, galvanizer shall certify that rugosity standards are met.
 7. Primer shall meet or exceed the following performance criteria:
 - a. Abrasion Resistance per ASTM D 4060 (CS17 Wheel, 1,000 grams load), 1kg Load: 200 mg loss.
 - b. Adhesion per ASTM D4541: 1050 psi.
 - c. Corrosion Weathering per ASTM D5894, 13 Cycles, 4,368 Hours: Rating 10 per ASTM D714 for blistering; Rating 7 per ASTM D610 for rusting.
 - d. Direct Impact Resistance per ASTM D2794: 160 in. lbs.
 - e. Flexibility per ASTM D522, 180° Bend, 1 in. Mandrel: Passes.
 - f. Pencil Hardness per ASTM D3363: 3B.
 - g. Moisture Condensation Resistance per ASTM D4585, 100° F, 2000 Hours: Passes, no cracking or delamination.
 - h. Dry Heat Resistance per ASTM D2485: 250° F.
 8. Topcoat shall meet or exceed the following performance criteria:
 - a. Abrasion Resistance per ASTM D 4060, CS17 Wheel, 1,000 Cycles 1kg Load: 87.1 mg loss.
 - b. Adhesion per ASTM D 4541: 1050 psi.

- c. Direct Impact Resistance per ASTM D2794: >28 in. pounds.
- d. Indirect Impact Resistance per ASTM D2794: 12-14 in. pounds.
- e. Dry Heat Resistance per ASTM D2485: 200° F.
- f. Salt Fog Resistance per ASTM B 117 9,000 Hours: Rating 10 per ASTM D714 for blistering.
- g. Flexibility per ASTM D522, 180° Bend, 1/8 in. Mandrel: Passes.
- h. Pencil Hardness per ASTM D3363: 2H.
- i. Moisture Condensation Resistance per ASTM D4585, 100° F, 1000 Hours: No blistering or delamination Xenon Arc Test per ASTM D 4798: Pass 300 hours

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of steel that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of isolation coating.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

- B. Touch-Up and Repair for Galvanized Surfaces: For damaged and field-welded metal coated surfaces, clean welds, bolted connections and abraded areas.
 - 1. For galvanized surfaces, apply organic zinc repair paint complying with requirements of ASTM A 780, modified to 95 percent zinc in dry film. Thickness of applied galvanizing repair paint shall be not less than coating thickness required by ASTM A 123 or A 153 as applicable. Touch-up of galvanized surfaces with silver paint, brite paint, or aluminum paints is not acceptable.
 - 2. For factory-applied finish coatings, field-touch-up shall be performed by factory approved personnel. Touch-up shall be such that repair is not visible from a distance of 6 feet.
 - 3. A touch-up repair kit or touchup instructions shall be provided to the Owner for each type of factory-applied finish.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061000

ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
 2. Plywood backing panels.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 042000 - UNIT MASONRY for wood nailers and blocking built into masonry.
 2. Section 061600 - SHEATHING for plywood and gypsum sheathing.
 3. Section 064020 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK for interior woodwork not specified in this Section.
 4. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for sheet metal backing.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
1. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 2. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used, net amount of preservative retained, and chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.
 3. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials, both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures when tested according to ASTM D 5516 and ASTM D 5664.
 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 - 2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
 - 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Plywood Panels:
 - 1. Plywood: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified but not less than thickness indicated.
 - 3. Factory mark panels according to indicated standard.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
 - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
 - a. Use Borate or Copper Azole treatments. Product shall not contain creosote, arsenic or pentachlorophenol.
 - 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 18 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

- C. Mark each treated item with the treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 - 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 - 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete in exterior walls.
- E. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Hoover Treated Wood Products; PyroGuard.
 - 2. Koppers Performance Chemicals; LifeWood MicroPro Treatment.
 - 3. Sustainable Northwest Wood; Pressure Treated Wood with Copper Azule.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: For fire-rated exterior walls, all interior use materials, and where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
 - 1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 - 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according to ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
 - 5. Product shall not contain creosote, arsenic or pentachlorophenol.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Technologies Boralife Inc.; Boraflame.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide FRTW lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including, but not limited to, the following: Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs, blocking, cants, nailers, furring and grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction, Stud, or No. 2 grade lumber with 15 percent moisture content.

2.5 PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Miscellaneous Concealed Plywood: Exposure 1 sheathing, span rating to suit framing in each location, and thickness as indicated but not less than 1/2 inch.
- B. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inch thick.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Wire, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5; except provide stainless steel complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2, where in contact with pressure-preservative treated wood or when exposed to exterior conditions.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive, Including Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Henkel Corp.; Loctite PL Premium Polyurethane Construction Adhesive.
 - b. Henkel Corp.; OSI SF450 Heavy Duty Subfloor Construction Adhesive.
2. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
3. VOC Content: 70 g/L or less.
4. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
5. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Discard units of material with defects that impair quality of carpentry and that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Apply field treatment complying with AWWPA M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.
- D. Securely attach carpentry work as indicated and according to applicable codes and the following:
 1. Table 2304.10.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- E. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes with wood filler.
- F. Use fasteners of appropriate type and length. Pre-drill members when necessary to avoid splitting wood.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install as required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061600

SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Gypsum sheathing attached to cold-formed metal framing members at exterior wall.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 042000 - UNIT MASONRY for masonry-veneer anchors and insulation in cavity wall construction.
 - 2. Section 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING for metal framing at exterior wall.
 - 3. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for plywood backing panels.
 - 4. Section 072700 - AIR BARRIERS for modified bituminous sheet membrane over gypsum sheathing and membrane flashing.
 - 5. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for flashing applied to gypsum sheathing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gypsum Board Construction Terminology Standard: Refer to ASTM C 11 and GA-505 for definitions of terms for gypsum sheathing board construction not defined in this Section or in other referenced standards.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each gypsum sheathing product through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Where gypsum sheathing boards are part of fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide assemblies as follows:
 - 1. Assemblies comply with requirements of fire-response-tested assemblies indicated by GA File Numbers in GA-600, "Fire Resistance Design Manual"; or by design designations

in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or in certification listings of another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Fire-resistance ratings were determined by fire-response testing assemblies according to ASTM E 119.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, or bundles, each bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer.
- B. Store materials protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, or other causes. Neatly stack gypsum sheathing board flat on leveled supports off the ground, under cover, and fully protected from weather.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Sequence installing sheathing with installing exterior cladding to comply with requirements indicated below:
 1. Do not leave glass-mat gypsum sheathing board exposed to weather for more than 180 days.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEATHING BOARD

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Dens-Glass Gold.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond, e²XP.
 - d. USG Corporation; Securock.
 2. Type and Thickness: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 3. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.

2.2 FASTENERS

- A. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
 1. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gypsum sheathing to comply with GA-253 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Cut boards at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of the work; fit tightly against abutting construction, except provide a 3/8-inch setback where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
- C. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint sealant installation so these materials are installed in the sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed exterior wall assembly.
- D. Apply fasteners so screw heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints with sheathing; cut and space edges to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Vertical Installation: Install 48-inch- wide gypsum sheathing boards vertically with vertical edges centered over flanges of steel studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Screw-attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud:
 - 1. Perimeter: 6 inches on center.
 - 2. Field: 8 inches on center.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 064020

INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:

1. **Wood casework.**
2. **Architectural linear grille.**
3. **Plastic-laminate casework.**
4. **Plastic-laminate countertops and sink aprons.**
5. **Solid-surfacing-material countertops.**
6. **Closet and utility shelving.**
7. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
2. Section 064200 - PANELING for wood paneling.
3. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for field finishing work of this Section.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified, including casework hardware and accessories, and finishing materials and processes.

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - a. Provide schedule of blocking required to support the Work of this Section.
2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, electrical components and other items installed in architectural woodwork.

3. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
 - a. Submit step-type range sample sets of factory finished plywood and factory finished solid wood in size illustrating wood grain and specified finish, including edge banding detail and any veneer or solid edge glue joints.
 - b. Submit one leaf for every 1000 gross square foot of veneer required.
3. Lumber and panel products with shop-applied opaque finish, 5 inches wide by 12 inches long for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels, for each finish system and color, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished.
4. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with 1 sample applied to core material, and specified edge material applied to 1 edge.
5. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches square.

D. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with blueprint-matched wood veneers and components.
- C. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards," latest edition, including errata, for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
 1. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics of Upholstery Fabric and Padding: Comply with California Technical Bulletin 117-2013 Update, with no chemical flame retardants.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

- 1. The HVAC systems as specified elsewhere may not provide for humidity controls. The expected ranges of relative humidity are expected to be as high as 55% to a low of uncontrolled during the heating system. Comply with AWS Section 2, Care and Storage.

- B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

- 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS-OF-DESIGN

- A. Basis-of-Design Products: Refer to the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Wood Veneers and Lumber: Provide AWI Custom Grade materials and workmanship, unless otherwise indicated. For species not listed in the AWS comply with the following:

1. Provide AWI Lumber Grade 1 and AWI Grade A Veneer, book-matched, minimum 6 inch face veneer width. Kiln dry to 6-8 percent moisture content. Components shall be free of defects and sapwood. Match adjacent pieces for color and grain pattern.
 2. Single-Source Requirement for Wood Veneers and Solids: Intent is to provide wood which matches as closely as possible throughout the project. Provide wood veneers and solids from the same distributor, and from the same flitches and solids sources to the greatest extent possible.
- C. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: As selected by the Architect.
1. Architect's control samples for transparent finish, veneer grain and figure characteristics are available for review at the office of the Architect.
 2. Veneer Matching Requirements:
 - a. Matching Between Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book match and architectural end match.
 - b. Matching Within Individual Panel Faces: Balance and Center Match.
 - c. Method of Matching Panels: Blueprint-matched panels and components.
- D. Composite Wood Products: Comply with the following:
1. Composite Wood, General: CARB II compliant or made with binder containing no added formaldehyde (NAF).
 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade MD.
 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 4. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay (MDO).
 5. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.
 - a. Resin impregnated paper backs are not permitted. Backs shall be of compatible hardwood species and cut. Contact adhesive is not permitted.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering high-pressure decorative laminates that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
 - b. Arborite; a division of Wilsonart.
 - c. Formica Corporation.
 - d. Lamin-Art; a division of Wilsonart.
 - e. Nevamar, Panolam, and Pionite; divisions of Panolam Surface Systems.
 - f. Wilsonart LLC.
- F. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISFA-2.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces; Aristech Surfaces.
 - b. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company; Corian.

- c. Formica Corporation.
- d. LG Hausys; Hi-Macs.
- e. Wilsonart LLC.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this Article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.
 - 1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
 - 2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
 - 3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
 - 1. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
 - 2. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
 - 3. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.
- C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels complying with the following requirements, made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
 - 1. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard and Particleboard: Provide five ply construction with crossbands to prevent any ammonia fuming from the core to the face veneers.

2.4 CASEWORK HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide casework hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural casework, except for items specified in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011. Provide DP128/6 - 6-11/16" Round Top Pull-Matte Black or comparable product.
- D. Catches: Push-in magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03131.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081 or BHMA A156.9, B04102; with shelf brackets, B04112.

- F. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091; side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer; full-extension type; epoxy-coated-steel with steel ball-bearings; of the following grades:
 - 1. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1.
 - 2. File Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100.
 - 3. Pencil Drawer Slides: Grade 2.
 - 4. Keyboard Slides: Grade 1.
 - 5. Trash Bin Slides: Grade 1HD-100.
- G. Aluminum Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063.
- H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- J. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: Molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
- K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
 - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
 - 2. Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized: BHMA 628.
- L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
- C. Installation Adhesives and Wood Glues: Formulations approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
 - 1. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. VOC Limits: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content:
 - a. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
 - b. Contact Adhesives: Not permitted on the Project without Architect's prior approval.
 - 3. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
 - 4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.
- D. Casework Support: Provide Softforms; Model # SKB knee brace kit.

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- B. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- C. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Corners of Casework and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch.
- D. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- E. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
 - 1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
- F. Install glass to comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 - GLAZING and in GANA's "Glazing Manual." For glass in wood frames, secure glass with removable stops.

2.7 WOOD CASEWORK FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. AWI Type of Casework Construction: Flush overlay.
- C. Wood Species and Cut for Exposed Surfaces: As specified hereinabove.
 - 1. Grain Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.
 - 2. Matching of Veneer Leaves: Book match.
 - 3. Vertical Matching of Veneer Leaves: End match.
 - 4. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: Running match.
 - 5. Veneer Matching within Room: Provide casework veneers in each room or other space from a single flitch with doors, drawer fronts, and other surfaces matched in a sequenced set with continuous match where veneers are interrupted perpendicular to the grain.
- D. Semiexposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Compatible species to that indicated for exposed surfaces, stained to match.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber, stained to match species indicated for exposed surfaces.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.

- E. Architectural Linear Grille: Provide Architectural Grille; AG10 Bar Grille or comparable grille as approved by Architect.

2.8 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CASEWORK

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. AWI Type of Casework Construction: Flush overlay.
- C. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
 - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
 - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS.
 - 4. Edges: Grade HGS.
- D. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
 - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC tape, 0.018-inch minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
 - b. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, Grade VGS.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
- E. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.
- F. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range.

2.9 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS AND SINK APRONS

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate Grade: HGS.
- C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Edge Treatment: As indicated.
- E. Core Material: Exterior-grade plywood.
- F. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet, Grade BKL, on underside of countertop substrate.

2.10 SOLID-SURFACING-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors of solid-surfacing material complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Fabricate tops in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
 - 1. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges of materials and configuration indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate tops with loose backsplashes for field application.
- D. Drill holes in countertops for plumbing fittings and soap dispensers in shop.

2.11 CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Shelf Material: 1-inch plastic laminate-faced panel product with solid-lumber edge.
- C. Cleats: 3/4-inch solid lumber.
- D. Standards for Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04102; powder-coat-finished steel.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04112; powder-coat-finished steel.
- F. Clothes Rods: 1-5/16-inch-diameter, chrome-plated-steel tubes.
 - 1. Rod Flanges: Chrome-plated steel.

2.12 SHOP FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for factory finishing.
 - 1. Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.
- C. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for opaque-finished items specified to be field finished. Refer to Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for material and application requirements.

- D. Transparent Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, staining, and sheen with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523:
1. Grade: Same as item to be finished.
 2. AWS Finish System 5: Conversion varnish.
 3. Washcoat for Closed-Grain Woods: Apply washcoat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing
 4. Staining: Match approved sample for color.
 5. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
 6. Sheen: Satin, 30-50 gloss units.
 7. Effect: Partially filled pore.
- E. Opaque Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, color, effect, and sheen, with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.
1. Grade: Same as item to be finished.
 2. AWS Finish System 5: Conversion varnish.
 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Sheen: Satin, 30-50 gloss units.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- F. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.

- G. Casework: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 1. Install casework with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
- H. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base casework or other supports into underside of countertop.
 - 1. Align adjacent countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
 - 2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 3. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches and to walls with adhesive.
 - 4. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.
- I. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 064200

PANELING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Board paneling.
 - 2. Flush wood paneling.
 - 3. Resin paneling.
 - 4. Shop finishing work of paneling.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.
 - 2. Section 064020 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK for trim at wood paneling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Paneling includes wood furring, blocking, and shims for installing paneling, unless concealed within other construction before paneling installation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified, including cabinet hardware and accessories, and finishing materials and processes.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of paneling, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components. Include dimensioned plans and elevations.
 - 1. Show details full size.
 - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring and blocking, including concealed blocking specified in other Sections.
 - 3. For paneling produced from premanufactured sets, show finished panel sizes, set numbers, sequence numbers within sets, and method of cutting panels to produce indicated sizes.

4. For paneling veneered in fabrication shop, show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.

C. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than 5 inches wide by 12 inches long, for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished paneling.
3. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, 12 by 24 inches, for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

- B. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers.

- C. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.

- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver paneling until painting and similar operations that could damage paneling have been completed in installation areas. If paneling must be stored in other than installation areas,

store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install paneling until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where paneling is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support paneling by field measurements before being enclosed and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating paneling without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that paneling can be installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's quality standard for quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Wood Veneers and Lumber: Provide AWI Custom Grade materials and workmanship, unless otherwise indicated. For species not listed in the AWS comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide AWI Lumber Grade 1 and AWI Grade A Veneer, book-matched, minimum 6 inch face veneer width. Kiln dry to 6-8 percent moisture content. Components shall be free of defects and sapwood. Match adjacent pieces for color and grain pattern.
 - 2. Single-Source Requirement for Wood Veneers and Solids: Intent is to provide wood which matches as closely as possible throughout the project. Provide wood veneers and solids from the same distributor, and from the same flitches and solids sources to the greatest extent possible.
- C. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: As selected by the Architect.
 - 1. Architect's control samples for transparent finish, veneer grain and figure characteristics are available for review at the office of the Architect.
 - 2. Veneer Matching Requirements:
 - a. Matching Between Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book match and architectural end match.
 - b. Matching Within Individual Panel Faces: Balance and Center Match.

- c. Method of Matching Panels: Blueprint-matched panels and components.
- D. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: Any closed-grain hardwood.
- E. Composite Wood Products: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Composite Wood, General: CARB II compliant or made with binder containing no added formaldehyde (NAF).
 - 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade MD.
 - 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
 - 4. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay (MDO).
 - 5. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1.
 - a. Resin impregnated paper backs are not permitted. Backs shall be of compatible hardwood species and cut. Contact adhesive is not permitted.
- F. Resin Panel Material:
 - 1. Provide one of the following polyethylene terephthalate glycol-modified (PETG) resin materials, or Architect approved equal:
 - a. 3form; Varia.
 - b. Armstrong World Industries; Infusions.
 - c. KnollTextiles; Imago.
 - d. Sheffield Plastics; Vivak.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance: Panels shall comply with the following:
 - a. Smoke Density Rating: 3 to 33% per ASTM D 2843.
 - b. Combustion Rating: CC-1 rating per ASTM D 635.
 - c. Self-Ignition Temperature: 850°F per ASTM D 1929.
 - 3. Fasteners: Provide fasteners as recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 4. Adhesives: Silicone as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Installation Adhesives and Wood Glues: Formulations approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
 - 1. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. VOC Content: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits:
 - a. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
 - b. Contact Adhesives: Not permitted on the Project without Architect's prior approval.
 - 3. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
 - 4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and that comply with requirements in this Article and with fire-test-response characteristics specified.
1. Do not use treated materials that do not comply with requirements of referenced woodworking standard or that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
 2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
 3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Comply with performance requirements of AWWPA C20 (lumber) and AWWPA C27 (plywood). Use the following treatment type:
1. Exterior Type: Organic-resin-based formulation thermally set in wood by kiln drying.
 2. Interior Type A: Low-hygroscopic formulation.
 3. Mill lumber after treatment, within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking plant certified by testing and inspecting agency.
 4. Mill lumber before treatment and implement special procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of treated woodwork.
 5. Kiln-dry materials before and after treatment to levels required for untreated materials.
- C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Panels complying with the following requirements, made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
1. For panels 3/4 inch thick and less, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-2 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1600 psi; modulus of elasticity, 300,000 psi; internal bond, 80 psi; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 225 lbf, respectively.
 2. For panels 13/16 to 1-1/4 inches thick, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-1 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1300 psi; modulus of elasticity, 250,000 psi; linear expansion, 0.50 percent; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 175 lbf, respectively.
- D. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: Medium-density fiberboard panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less per ASTM E 84.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

- B. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- C. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Paneling Grade: Provide Custom grade paneling complying with referenced quality standard.
- B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- D. Arrange paneling in shop or other suitable space in proposed sequence for examination by Architect. Mark units with temporary sequence numbers to indicate position in proposed layout.
 - 1. Lay out one elevation at a time if approved by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the date and time when layout will be available for viewing.
 - 3. Provide lighting of similar type and level as that of final installation for viewing layout, unless otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 4. Rearrange paneling as directed by Architect until layout is approved.
 - 5. Do not trim end units and other nonmodular size units to less than modular size until after Architect's approval of layout. Indicate trimming by masking edges of units with nonmarking material.
 - 6. Obtain Architect's approval of layout before start of assembly. Mark units and Shop Drawings with assembly sequence numbers based on approved layout.
- E. Complete fabrication, including assembly and finishing, to maximum extent possible, before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times paneling fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on approved Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- F. Shop cut openings, to maximum extent possible, to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

2.5 BOARD PANELING FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.
- C. Pattern: As indicated.
- D. Shop fabricate board paneling in lengths to provide pieces that are uninterrupted by joints. Machine edges of boards to provide joint profiles indicated.
- E. Shop fabricate board paneling from boards of standard random lengths, complying with applicable grading rules. Machine edges and ends of boards to provide joint profiles indicated.
- F. Preassemble board paneling into largest units that can be delivered into installation areas using permanent or temporary backing members as indicated. To maximum extent possible, fabricate units in sizes determined by field measurements of existing conditions and that will avoid fitting in the field; make provision for separate scribing pieces to be fitted to adjoining finished surfaces. Provide shop-prepared detachable pieces for forming joints with other units at Project site and with other types of architectural woodwork.

2.6 FLUSH WOOD PANELING FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Custom.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.
 - 1. Lumber Trim and Edges: At paneling fabricator's option, trim and edges indicated as solid wood (except moldings) may be either lumber or veneered construction of same species and cut as panel faces and compatible with grain and color of panel faces.
- C. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book **Slip** match.
- D. Matching within Panel Face: Running **Balance** match.
- E. Panel-Matching Method: No matching is required between panels. Select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.
- F. Panel-Matching Method: Made-to-order, sequence-matched panels [**Premanufactured panel sets used full width**] [**Premanufactured panel sets selectively reduced in width**] [**Made-to-order, blueprint-matched panels and components**] within each separate area.
- G. Panel Core Construction: Hardwood veneer-core plywood.
- H. Exposed Panel Edges: Solid wood or wood veneer matching faces.
- I. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of wood-veneer and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant, medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have a flame-spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.
- J. Provide paneling of thickness shown or, if not shown, 3/4-inch minimum thickness. Assemble by gluing and concealed fastening.

2.7 SHOP FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for factory finishing.
 - 1. Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- B. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces.
- C. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for opaque-finished items specified to be field finished. Refer to Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for material and application requirements.
- D. Transparent Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, staining, and sheen with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523:
 - 1. Grade: Same as item to be finished.
 - 2. AWS Finish System 5: Conversion varnish.
 - 3. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
 - 4. Staining: Match approved sample for color.
 - 5. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
 - 6. Sheen: Satin, 30-50 gloss units.
- E. Opaque Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, color, effect, and sheen, with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.
 - 1. Grade: Same as item to be finished.
 - 2. AWS Finish System 5: Conversion varnish.
 - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Sheen: Satin, 30-50 gloss units.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition paneling to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing paneling, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install paneling to comply with requirements for same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of paneling involved.

- B. Install paneling level, plumb, true, and straight with no distortions. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches. Install with no more than 1/16 inch in 96-inch vertical cup or bow and 1/8 inch in 96-inch horizontal variation from a true plane.
 - 1. For flush paneling with revealed joints, install with variations in reveal width, alignment of top and bottom edges, and flushness between adjacent panels not exceeding 1/32 inch.
- C. Scribe and cut paneling to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- D. Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips. Do not use face fastening unless covered by trim.
- E. Complete finishing work specified in this Section to extent not completed at shop or before installation of paneling. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed. Apply specified finish coats, including stains and paste fillers if any, to exposed surfaces where only sealer/prime coats are applied in shop.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective paneling, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace paneling. Adjust for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean paneling on exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 070150

MODIFICATIONS TO EXISTING ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Modify existing roofing systems as required to accommodate new construction or equipment removal.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 075300 - EPDM ROOFING for new roof system.
 - 3. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.
 - 4. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealants.
 - 5. Division 22 - PLUMBING for roof drains.
 - 6. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING for roof curbs for HVAC equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide installed roofing membrane and base flashings that remain watertight; do not permit the passage of water; and resist specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Roofing system shall be designed to withstand Code required loads and wind speeds.
- D. Flashings: Provide base flashings, perimeter flashings, detail flashings and component materials that comply with requirements and recommendations in FMG 1-49 Loss Prevention

Data Sheet for Perimeter Flashings; FMG 1-29 Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Above Deck Roof Components; NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual (Fourth Edition) for Construction Details and SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (Fifth Edition) for Construction Details, as applicable.

- E. Certification: Upon completion of work of this Section, submit certification by existing roof manufacturer acknowledging that all work performed is acceptable and that the entire roof remains under warranty.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
 - 3. Insulation attachment patterns.
 - 4. Details of special conditions and connections to adjoining work.
 - 5. Proposed temporary, watertight, tie-off details for each substrate type.
- C. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Membrane Roofing: 12 by 12 inch size, of each color, where exposed in finished work.
- D. Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install roofing system.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
 - 1. Installer Certificates: Signed by roofing system manufacturer certifying that Installer is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install roofing system.
- F. Inspection Report: Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report of completed roofing installation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from or approved by roofing system manufacturer.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Comply with requirements in Division 01. Review methods and procedures related to roofing system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Meet with the Architect, Owner, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing Contractor's Warranty: The roofing subcontractor shall supply Owner with a minimum two-year workmanship warranty for each roof. In the event any work related to the roofing, flashing, or metalwork is found to be defective within two years of substantial completion, the roofing contractor shall remove and replace such at no additional cost to the Owner. A copy of the roofing signed warranty shall be sent to the roofing system's manufacturer.
 1. The duration of the Roofing Contractor's two-year warranty shall run concurrent with the roofing system's manufacturer's existing warranty.
- B. Roofing Systems Manufacturer's Warranty: Maintain existing warranties. Coordinate with Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide products recommended by manufacturers to be fully compatible with indicated substrates. Provide separation materials as required to eliminate contact between incompatible materials.
 - 1. Furnish specific product acceptable to manufacturer of roofing membrane which will not compromise the roofing manufacturer's warranty.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 4. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck comply with requirements in Section 053100 - STEEL DECKING.
 - 5. Verify damaged sections of wood deck have been repaired or replaced, and adjacent panels are vertically aligned to within 1/8 inch at top surface.
 - 6. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored; and that provision has been made for flashings and penetrations through roofing.
 - 7. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- D. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so underlayment, vapor retarder, insulation, and cover boards are not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with installation requirements as specified within applicable roofing specifications for this project. Where there are no other roofing specifications, comply with installation requirements hereinbelow.

3.4 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Install underlayment board in a single layer over area to roof deck substrate with mechanical fasteners.

3.5 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Install laminated-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches and 6 inches respectively. Stagger joints from underlayment board layer below. Bond vapor retarder to underlayment board as follows:
 - 1. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

3.6 INSULATION AND COVERBOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- B. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- C. Install layers of insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Install 2 or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- D. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- E. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- F. Adhesively Applied Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using adhesive specifically designed and sized for adhering specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 - 1. Adhere insulation according to requirements in FMG's "Approval Guide" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
 - 2. Adhere insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
- G. Install cover board in a single layer over area to roof deck substrate as indicated. Stagger joints from insulation layer below.

3.7 ADHERED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roofing membrane over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, details, SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Unroll roofing membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Accurately align roofing membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply solvent-based bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of roofing membrane at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roofing membrane. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of roofing membrane.
- F. Mechanically or adhesively fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- G. Apply roofing membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- H. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roofing membrane according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roofing membrane.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing membrane that does not meet requirements.
- I. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.8 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply solvent-based bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings.

3.9 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports. Manufacturer's Technical Representative: Engage a qualified manufacturer's technical representative to perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Engage roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Architect.
 - 1. Notify Architect and the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.11 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and the Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072100

THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Rigid XPS insulation.
 - 2. Mineral-wool blanket and board insulation.
 - 3. Spray polyurethane foam insulation.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE for underslab vapor barrier.
 - 2. Section 072700 - AIR BARRIERS for air and vapor barrier membrane.
 - 3. Section 075300 - EPDM ROOFING for roofing insulation.
 - 4. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for acoustic insulation in gypsum board assemblies.
 - 5. Division 22 - PLUMBING for plumbing insulation.
 - 6. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING for mechanical insulation.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer product data, installation instructions, performance criteria, and product limitations for each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified as a "Certified Infrared Thermographer" per ASNT SNT-TC-1A guidelines, Level I certification minimum.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry and secure location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAVITY WALL INSULATION (NOT FOR USE BEHIND METAL WALL PANEL)

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. DuPont; Reduced GWP Styrofoam series (gray color).
 - 2. Kingspan; Greenguard XPS LG series.
 - 3. Owens Corning; Foamular NGX (Next Generation Extruded) series.
- B. Extruded-Polystyrene (XPS) Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type X, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, and ASTM D 1621 compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch minimum.
 - 1. Thermal Resistivity (R-value): 5.0 per inch.
 - 2. Blowing Agent: Honeywell; Solstice Liquid Blowing Agent, low global warming potential (GWP) hydrofluoro-olefin (HFO), or approved equal.
 - a. Other insulation manufacturers may be considered, if they have adopted the HFO blowing agents by start of construction.
 - 3. Recycled Content: 20 percent min.
- C. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.2 BLANKET INSULATION, MINERAL-WOOL BATTS AND BLANKET

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Owens Corning; Thermafiber UltraBatt FF.
 - 2. Isolatek International.
 - 3. Rockwool.
- B. Mineral-Wool Batts and Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
 - 1. Recycled Content: 70 percent min.
 - 2. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 - 3. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification, formaldehyde-free.

2.3 OPEN-CELL SPRAY POLYURETHANE FOAM INSULATION

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Carlisle SealTite Pro
 2. BASF Corporation; ENERTITE.
 3. Johns Manville; JM Corbond ocSPF.
 4. Huntsman; Sealection 500.
- B. Open-Cell Polyurethane Foam Insulation:
1. Minimum density of 0.4 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 3.6 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
 2. Fire Resistance: ASTM E 84, Flame Spread 75 max., and Smoke Developed 450 max.
 3. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Industry-wide EPD.
 4. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.

2.4 SPRAYED-FOAM INSULATION, AT GAPS AND VOIDS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Dow Chemical; GreatStuff Pro.
 2. ICP Adhesives and Sealants (formerly Fomo Products): Handi-Foam products.
 3. Approved equal.
- B. Sprayed-Foam Insulation: Water-cure closed cell polyurethane containing no urea-formaldehyde and no CFCs.
1. Minimum density of 0.4 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
 2. Fire Resistance: UL 723, Flame Spread 25 max., and Smoke Developed 50 max.
 3. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Industry-wide EPD.
 4. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.

2.5 SPRAYED-FOAM INSULATION, LOW EXPANSION AT WINDOWS AND DOORS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Dow Chemical; GreatStuff Window and Door Insulating Foam Sealant.
 2. ICP Building Solutions Group: HandiFoam Window and Door low-pressure, one-component, polyurethane foam sealant.
 3. Approved equal.
- B. Sprayed-Foam Insulation: Water-cure closed cell polyurethane containing no urea-formaldehyde and no CFCs.
1. Minimum density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

2. Fire Resistance: ASTM E84/UL 723, Flame Spread 25 max., and Smoke Developed 50 max.

2.6 THERMAL AND IGNITION BARRIERS

- A. Thermal Barrier for Foam Plastic Insulation at Occupied Spaces: Provide thermal barrier recommended by foam plastic manufacturer and tested with the specific product. Product shall have an active building code evaluation report that lists report number and effective dates of product acceptance.
- B. Ignition Barrier for Foam Plastic Insulation at Attic and Crawl Spaces, including Areas not Separated from Occupied Spaces by a Thermal Barrier: Provide ignition barrier recommended by foam plastic manufacturer and tested with the specific product. Product shall have an active building code evaluation report that lists report number and effective dates of product acceptance.

2.7 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.
 1. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide interior adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 2. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
 3. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.
- B. Masonry and Concrete Fasteners:
 1. Hardened nails, pneumatically-driven fasteners or other anchors recommended by insulation manufacturer, sufficient to penetrate substrate and permanently retain insulation.
 2. Self-adhering insulation stick pins: Galvanized steel plate welded to projecting steel spindle; capable of holding insulation thicknesses indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking galvanized steel washer in place. Backseal fastener penetrations.
- C. Tape: Adhesive tape recommended by insulation manufacturer, to tape joints and tears in faced insulation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Spray Polyurethane Foam: Comply with recommendations of the American Chemistry Council, "Health and Safety Product Stewardship Workbook for High-Pressure Application of Spray Polyurethane Foam (SPF)."

- 1. Spray Polyurethane Foam: Spray insulation no greater than 1-1/2 inch thickness per layer. Allow each layer to fully cure before spraying additional thickness.
- 2. Contain and fully ventilate the area being sprayed with negative air machines, venting directly to the exterior. Do not operate permanent building HVAC system during installation. Continue ventilation during curing process.
- 3. Install spray polyurethane foam insulation with uniform full thickness and with density which will not displace adjacent materials.
- 4. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

- E. Miscellaneous Voids: Install spray polyurethane foam insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation.

- 1. Cure insulation with continuous natural or mechanical ventilation.
- 2. Remove and dispose of over-spray.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL WOOL BOARD INSULATION

- A. Install mineral wool board cavity insulation per manufacturer's instructions. Fit insulation with edges butted tightly in both directions. Do not compress insulation. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated between insulation and cladding material.
 - 1. Masonry Veneers: Secure with clips installed over masonry anchors. Provide at least 6 clips per mineral wool board.
 - 2. Panel Veneers: Secure with adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
- B. Spray-Applied Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports.
- B. Infrared Camera Survey: Perform an infrared camera scan of walls, floors, and ceilings to determine where insulation and air barrier are not continuous, after insulation has been installed, but prior to plaster patching or new gypsum board installation.
 1. Provide complete digital report with images of test results with recommendations for repairs.
- C. Repair or replace work where test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072419

EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:

1. Polymer-based exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) including, but not limited to, the following components:
 - a. Water-resistive, water-vapor-impermeable air barrier applied over sheathing.
 - b. Flexible flashing.
 - c. Adhesive; vertically "channeled" to permit water drainage.
 - d. Rigid insulation.
 - e. Reinforcing mesh.
 - f. Finish coat.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 061600 - SHEATHING for sheathing substrate.
2. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for metal flashing.
3. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of EIFS with related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wall assemblies, including sheathing, flashing, trim, joint sealants, windows, and doors, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, moisture, and other causes. Do not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and barrier coating of EIFS.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.
- B. Water-Drainage EIFS: EIFS with a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:

1. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
2. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish.

B. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:

1. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
2. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per ASTM E 2485.
3. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ASTM E 2568 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153, ASTM G 154 or ASTM G 155.
4. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
5. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ASTM E 2568.
6. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per ASTM E 2134.
7. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch- thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded-polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per International Building Code.
8. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch- thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
9. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per ASTM E 2486; and meeting or exceeding the following:
 - a. Standard Impact Resistance: 25 to 49 inch-lb.
 - b. Medium Impact Resistance: 50 to 89 inch-lb.
 - c. High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb.
 - d. Ultra-High Impact Resistance: More than 150 inch-lb.
10. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall be tested per ASTM E 330.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of joint sealants and exposed accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: 24-inch- square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work including custom trim, each profile, an aesthetic reveal, a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected.
 - 1. Include sealants and exposed accessory Samples to verify color selected.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- F. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that EIFS comply with requirements.
- G. Material or Product Certificates: For each insulation and joint sealant, from manufacturer.
- H. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each insulation, reinforcing mesh, and coating.
- I. Field quality-control reports.
- J. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers. Installer shall possess a current manufacturer's certificate of education and be experienced and competent in installation of plaster-like materials.
 - 1. Fabricator/Erector Qualifications: Certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to fabricate and erect manufacturer's prefabricated panel system using skilled and trained workers.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Insulation Board must be produced and labeled under a third party quality program as required by applicable building codes.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system

components per test method indicated below by IBC. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable code.

1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119.
 2. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation.
 3. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
- B. Store materials in a cool location, inside and under cover and at a temperature above 40°F (4°C) and below 110°F (43°C); keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes, and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
 2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.
- 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Dryvit Systems Inc.
 2. Parex USA, Inc.
 3. Senergy, BASF Wall Systems
 4. Sto Corp.
 5. Greenmaker Industries.
- B. Basis of Design: Sto Corp; StoTherm ci XPS.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide water-resistive coating, adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
- B. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water/weather-resistive barriers, compatible with substrate, and complying with physical and performance criteria of ICC-ES AC209.
1. Sheathing Joint Compound and Tape: Type recommended by EIFS manufacturer for sealing joints between and penetrations through sheathing.
- C. Primer/Sealer: Provide Sto Primer/Adhesive-B or EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
- D. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- E. Insulation Adhesive: Provide Sto TurboStick single component polyurethane foam adhesive or EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate.
- F. Insulation
1. Basis of Design and as approved by EIFS system manufacturer.
 - a. DuPont; Styrofoam Brand Panel ST-100.
 2. Extruded-Polystyrene (XPS) Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type X, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, and ASTM D 1621 compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch minimum.
 - a. Thermal Resistivity (R-value): 5.0 per inch.
 - b. Blowing Agent: Honeywell; Solstice Liquid Blowing Agent, low global warming potential (GWP) hydrofluoro-olefin (HFO), or approved equal.

- 1) Other insulation manufacturers may be considered, if they have adopted the HFO blowing agents by start of construction.
- c. Recycled Content: 20 percent min.
 3. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.
 4. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches and in thickness indicated, but not more than allowed in the EIFS manufacturer's current ICC Evaluation Service Report.
 5. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
- G. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. per ASTM E 2098; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
1. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.5 oz./sq. yd.
 2. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 12.0 oz./sq. yd.
 3. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 15 oz./sq. yd.
 4. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.2 oz./sq. yd.
 5. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 9.0 oz./sq. yd.
- H. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with the following:
1. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
- I. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation and complying with the following:
1. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
 2. Project Locations: Provide for base coat over foundations, parapets, splash areas trim and other projecting features.
- J. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- K. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance, complying with the following:
1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
 2. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- L. Water: Potable.
- M. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.

1. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
2. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
3. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
4. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

- A. Refer to Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

2.4 MIXING

- A. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of EIFS.
- B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

1. Concrete Substrates: Provide clean, dry, neutral-pH substrate for insulation installation. Verify suitability of substrate by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by EIFS manufacturer.

3.3 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

3.4 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing CMU, or concrete substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.

- B. Water-Resistive Coatings: Apply over substrates to protect substrates from degradation and to provide water-/weather-resistive barrier and air barrier.

1. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.5 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.

1. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
2. Windowsill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
3. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
4. Parapet Cap Flashing: Where indicated on Drawings.
5. Other Trim: Use where indicated on Drawings.

3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:

1. Apply adhesive to in vertical "channels" in accordance with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to permit drainage to base flashing. Apply adhesive channels in thickness as recommended by the manufacturer for application.
2. Press and slide insulation into place to provide uniform contact with all adhesive channels while maintaining space between channels to permit drainage.
3. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.

4. Apply insulation over dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
 5. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
 6. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches from aesthetic reveals.
 - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches from horizontal and 4 inches from vertical joints in sheathing.
 7. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
 8. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
 9. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
 10. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm). Prevent airborne dispersal and immediately collect insulation raspings or sandings. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch.
 11. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
 12. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 13. After installing insulation and before applying reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges with strip reinforcing mesh. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
 14. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
 - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
 - b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
 15. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS protective-coating lamina.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:
1. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
 2. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
 3. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
 4. Where wall height or building shape changes.

5. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.

3.7 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces, window sills, parapets, and where indicated on Drawings to protect substrates from degradation.
- B. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- C. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
- D. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
- E. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch-wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.
 1. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches wide.
 2. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
- F. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.
- G. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

3.8 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
 1. Texture: As indicated by manufacturer's designations on approved Shop Drawings.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Refer to Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. As stipulated in Ch. 17 of the IBC.
- B. Testing Agency for Field Testing: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. EIFS Tests and Inspections: According to ASTM E 2273 "Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies."
- D. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072700

AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Self-adhering, vapor-retarding, modified bituminous sheet air barrier.
 - 2. Transition strips to adjacent and penetrating materials.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 042000 - UNIT MASONRY for substrate for air and vapor barrier system.
 - 2. Section 061600 - SHEATHING for sheathing substrate for air and vapor barrier system.
 - 3. Section 075300 - EPDM ROOFING for roof air and vapor barrier.
 - 4. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for joint sealant requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air Barrier Assembly: The collection of air barrier materials and auxiliary materials applied to an opaque wall or soffit, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-retarding air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Not to exceed 0.03 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., ASTM E 2357.

1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Mockup Testing: Air barrier assemblies shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on mockup testing by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. The Owner may engage a qualified testing agency.

2. Quantitative Air Leakage Testing: Testing of the mockup for air leakage will be conducted not to exceed the test pressure differential, positive and negative, indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article for air barrier assembly air leakage when tested according to ASTM E 783.
3. Notify Architect and the Owner a minimum of seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockup testing will take place.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of air barrier.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strip, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
 1. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.
 2. Include details of mockups.
- C. Product Certificates: For air barriers, certifying compatibility of air barrier and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with air barrier; signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for air barriers.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying air barrier materials similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Before beginning installation of air barrier, build mockups of exterior wall assembly 150 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, door frame and sill, insulation, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air barrier membrane.
 1. Coordinate construction of mockup to permit inspection by Owner's testing agency of air barrier before external insulation and cladding is installed.
 2. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, and foundation wall intersection.
 3. If the Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Include installers of other construction connecting to air barrier, such as roofing, waterproofing, architectural precast concrete, masonry, joint sealants, windows, glazed curtain walls, and door frames.
2. Review air barrier requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum substrate curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, mockups, installation procedures, sequence of installation, testing and inspecting procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged packages in a clean, dry, protected location and within temperature range required by air barrier manufacturer.
- B. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- C. Store rolls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect performance of air barrier. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SELF-ADHERING SHEET MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

- A. Self-Adhering, Vapor-Retarding Modified Bituminous Sheet: Rubberized asphalt laminated to cross-laminated polyethylene film with release liner on adhesive side and formulated for application with primer that complies with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705.
 - b. GCP Applied Technologies (formerly W.R. Grace); Perm-A-Barrier.
 - c. Henry Co.; Blueskin SA.
 - d. Rubber Polymer Corporation; Rub-R-Wall SA.
 - e. Tremco, Inc.; ExoAir 110.
 - f. W.R. Meadows; SealTight Air-Shield.
 2. Thickness: 40 mils minimum.
 3. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Membrane Air Permeance: Not to exceed 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Tensile Strength: 250 psi minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - c. Ultimate Elongation: 200 percent minimum; ASTM D 412, Die C, modified.
 - d. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 20 deg F, ASTM D 1970.
 - e. Crack Cycling: Unaffected after 100 cycles of 1/8-inch movement; ASTM C 836.

- f. Puncture Resistance: 40 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154.
- g. Water Absorption: 0.15 percent weight-gain maximum after 48-hour immersion at 70 deg F; ASTM D 570.
- h. Vapor Permeance: 0.05 perms, ASTM E 96, Water Method.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by air barrier manufacturer for intended use and compatible with air barrier. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - B. Primer: Liquid waterborne or solvent-borne primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of air barrier material.
 - C. Counterflashing Strip: Modified bituminous 40-mil-thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 32 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to an 8-mil-thick, crosslaminated polyethylene film with release liner backing.
 - D. Butyl Strip at Termination with EPDM or TPO Roofing Membrane: Vapor-retarding, 30- to 40-mil-thick, self-adhering; polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl adhesive, with release liner backing.
 - E. Modified Bituminous Strip To Cover Cracks and Joints and Terminate Air Barrier to Compatible Roofing Membrane: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil-thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- polyethylene film with release liner backing.
 - F. Termination Mastic: Cold fluid-applied elastomeric liquid; trowel grade.
 - G. Substrate Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.
 - H. Adhesive and Tape: Air barrier manufacturer's standard adhesive and pressure-sensitive adhesive tape.
 - I. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.0187 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
 - J. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam Sealant to Fill Gaps at Penetrations and Openings: one- or two-component, foamed-in-place, polyurethane foam sealant, 1.5 to 2.0 lb/cu. ft. density; flame spread index of 25 or less according to ASTM E 162; with primer and noncorrosive substrate cleaner recommended by foam sealant manufacturer.
 - K. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip to Seal Air Barrier Terminations with Glazing Systems: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil-thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil-thick polyethylene or aluminum film with release liner backing.
 - L. Preformed Silicone-Sealant Extrusion to Seal Air Barrier Terminations with Glazing Systems: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of cured low-modulus silicone extrusion, sized to fit opening widths, with a single-component, neutral-curing, Class 100/50 (low-modulus) silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal.
 - b. Elbex Corp: Transition Silicone Sheeting.
 - c. GE Silicone; UltraSpan US1100.
 - d. Tremco; approved equal.
- M. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, single-component, neutral-curing silicone; Class 100/50 (low-modulus), Grade NS, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, Use O. Comply with Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 2. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by air barrier manufacturer.
 3. Verify that concrete is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
 5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching membrane.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. Prepare, fill, prime, and treat joints and cracks in substrates. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
1. Install modified bituminous strips and center over treated construction and contraction joints and cracks exceeding a width of 1/16 inch.
- G. Bridge and cover isolation joints expansion joints and discontinuous deck-to-wall and deck-to-deck joints with overlapping modified bituminous strips.
- H. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.

- I. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

3.3 TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION

- A. Install strips, transition strips, and auxiliary materials according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.
 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 2. Install butyl or modified bituminous strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- C. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- D. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- E. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- F. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 2. Elastomeric Flashing Sheet: Apply adhesive to wall, frame, and flashing sheet. Install flashing sheet and termination bars, fastened at 6 inches o.c. Apply lap sealant over exposed edges and on cavity side of flashing sheet.
 3. Preformed Silicone-Sealant Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and membrane.
- G. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant.
- H. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- I. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, modified bituminous strip.

- J. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- K. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SELF-ADHERING SHEET MEMBRANE

- A. Install modified bituminous sheets according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions and according to recommendations in ASTM D 6135.
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperatures range between 25 and 40 deg F, install self-adhering, modified bituminous air barrier sheets produced for low-temperature application. Do not use low-temperature sheets if ambient or substrate temperature is higher than 60 deg F.
- B. Corners: Prepare, prime, and treat inside and outside corners according to ASTM D 6135.
 - 1. Install modified bituminous strips centered over vertical inside corners. Install 3/4-inch fillets of termination mastic on horizontal inside corners.
- C. Prepare, treat, and seal vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations with termination mastic and according to ASTM D 6135.
- D. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- E. Apply and firmly adhere modified bituminous sheets horizontally or vertically over area to receive air barrier sheets. Accurately align sheets and maintain a uniform 2-1/2-inch-minimum lap widths and end laps. Overlap and seal seams and stagger end laps to ensure airtight installation.
 - 1. Apply sheets in a shingled manner to shed water without interception by any exposed sheet edges.
 - 2. Roll sheets firmly to enhance adhesion to substrate.
 - 3. Apply termination mastic on any horizontal, field-cut or non-factory edges.
- F. Apply continuous modified bituminous sheets over modified bituminous strips bridging substrate cracks, construction, and contraction joints.
- G. Seal top of non-metallic through-wall flashings to air barrier sheet with an additional 6-inch-wide strip.
- H. Seal exposed edges of metallic sheets at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- I. Install air barrier sheets and auxiliary materials to form a seal with adjacent construction and to maintain a continuous air barrier.

1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 2. Install compatible strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates.
- J. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings using accessory materials.
- K. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply membrane specified below so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
1. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 2. Elastomeric Flashing Sheet: Apply adhesive to wall, frame, and flashing sheet. Install flashing sheet and termination bars, fastened at 6 inches o.c. Apply lap sealant over exposed edges and on cavity side of flashing sheet.
 3. Preformed Silicone-Sealant Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and membrane.
- L. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant.
- M. At end or each working day, seal top edge of membrane to substrate with termination mastic.
- N. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- O. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in air barrier. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with air barrier sheet extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in all directions.
- P. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by Owner's testing agency.
- Q. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
1. Continuity of air barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 2. Continuous structural support of air barrier system has been provided.
 3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.

4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
6. Surfaces have been primed.
7. Laps in sheet materials have complied with the minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
8. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
9. Air barrier has been firmly adhered to substrate.
10. Compatible materials have been used.
11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
12. Connections between assemblies (membrane and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, preparation, and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
13. All penetrations have been sealed.

C. Tests:

1. Qualitative Testing: Air barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186.
2. Quantitative Air Leakage Testing: Testing not to exceed the test pressure differential, positive and negative, indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article for air barrier assembly air leakage according to ASTM E 783.

D. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace air barrier exposed to these conditions for more than 30 days.
 2. Protect air barrier from contact with creosote, uncured coal-tar products, TPO, EPDM, flexible PVC membranes, and sealants not approved by air barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from adjacent construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074200

METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING for secondary support framing supporting metal wall panels.
 - 2. Section 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION for insulation behind metal wall panels.
 - 3. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for copings, flashings, and other sheet metal work not part of metal wall panel assemblies.
 - 4. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for field-applied sealants not otherwise specified in this Section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. General: Provide metal wall panel assemblies that comply with performance requirements specified as determined by testing manufacturers' standard assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project, by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- C. Structural Performance: Provide metal wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592 and ASTM E 330 as applicable.
 - 1. Wind Loads: As required by Code.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Engineer metal wall panel assemblies to withstand test pressures with deflection no greater than 1/180 of the span and no evidence of material failure, structural distress, or permanent deformation exceeding 0.2 percent of the clear span, at code required loading.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal wall panel accessories. Include 4-way joint for composite panels.
 - 2. Exposed Sealants: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of metal wall panels adjacent to joint sealants.
- E. Qualifications: Qualifications of professional engineer and qualifications of installer as specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the state the project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of panels that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - 1. Installer's responsibilities include fabricating and installing metal wall panel assemblies and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Fabricator Qualifications: Certified by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer to fabricate and install manufacturer's wall panel system.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel through one source from a single manufacturer.
- F. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

1. Use manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Meet with The Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, metal wall panel Installer, metal wall panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal wall panels including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and testing and inspecting if applicable.
 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
 8. Review wall panel observation and repair procedures after metal wall panel installation.
 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.
- H. Mockups: Provide mock-ups as specified in Section 014330, Mock-Ups, coordinate with other trades as required.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
 - B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
 - C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - D. Store metal-faced composite wall panels vertically, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal-faced composite wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal-faced composite wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Do not allow storage space to exceed 120 deg F.
 - E. Protect strippable protective covering on metal wall panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal wall panel installation.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, either establish framing and opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal wall panels without field measurements, or allow for field trimming of panels. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual building dimensions, locations of structural members, and openings correspond to established dimensions.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of girts, studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- 1. Basis of Design: ATAS International, Inc.; Versa-Seam Reveal.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ATAS International, Inc.
 2. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
 3. Englert, Inc.
 4. Fabral.
 5. MBCI Metal Roof and Wall Systems, Division of NCI Group.
 6. McElroy Metal, Inc.
 7. Morin, a Kingspan Company
- C. Basis of Design
1. Metal Siding Panels: ATAS Versa-Seam Reveal (VSR) system and trim pieces. Size as indicated.
 2. Metal Soffit Panels: ATAS ¾" profile Opaline 060 system and trim pieces.
- D. General: Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- E. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
1. Thickness: 0.040 inch.
 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1) Available Products: Sherwin-Williams Coil Coatings; Valspar Fluropon Pure; approved equal.
 - 2) Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Declare product label.
 4. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Trim: Formed from 0.040-inch-thick, aluminum sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.3 METAL FRAMING

- A. Steel Sheet Components, General: Complying with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal and with ASTM A 653, G90, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
- B. U-Shaped Girts: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-7/16 inches wall attachment flange and depth as indicated. System shall be engineered for design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
 - 1. Form panel lines, breaks, and angles to be sharp and true, with surfaces free from warp and buckle.
 - 2. Fabricate wall panels with panel stiffeners as required to maintain fabrication tolerances and to withstand design loads.
- B. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a stripplable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Examine primary and secondary wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine solid wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 3. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.
- B. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorage according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install metal wall panels in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts, unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Field cutting of metal wall panels by torch is not permitted.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
 - 3. Rigidly fasten base end of metal wall panels and allow eave end free movement due to thermal expansion and contraction. Predrill panels.

4. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
 5. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 6. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 7. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
 8. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 9. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 10. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 11. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners, Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet nonaccumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 075300

EPDM ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Adhered membrane roofing system.
 2. Cover board.
 3. Roof insulation.
 4. Substrate Board (thermal barrier).
 5. Vapor retarder.
 6. Flashing for equipment mounted on roofing and roofing penetrations.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 2. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings, and counterflashings.
 3. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealants.
 4. Division 22 - PLUMBING for roof drains.
 5. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING for roof curbs for HVAC equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide installed roofing membrane and base flashings that remain watertight; do not permit the passage of water; and resist specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure.
1. Accelerated Weathering: Roofing system shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
 2. Impact Resistance: Roofing system shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746 or ASTM D 4272.

- B. **Material Compatibility:** Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. **Roofing System Design:** Roofing system shall be designed to withstand loads indicated on Drawings, but not less than loads required by Code.
- D. **Flashings:** Provide base flashings, perimeter flashings, detail flashings and component materials that comply with requirements and recommendations in FMG 1-49 Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Perimeter Flashings; FMG 1-29 Loss Prevention Data Sheet for Above Deck Roof Components; NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual (Fifth Edition) for Construction Details and SMACNA Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (Seventh Edition) for Construction Details, as applicable.
- E. **Energy Performance:** Provide roofing system with Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) not less than the following when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency:
 - 1. Low-sloped roof (less than or equal 2:12) - 82 minimum (initial): 64 (3-year aged).
 - 2. Steep-sloped roof (greater than 2:12) - 39 minimum (initial); 32 (3-year aged).
- F. **Energy Star Listing:** Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- G. **Exterior Fire-Test Exposure:** ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **Product Data:** For each type of product indicated.
- B. **Shop Drawings:** For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
 - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
 - 3. Walkway pad plan and detail, as required.
 - 4. Insulation fastening patterns.
- C. **Qualification Data:** From Installer and manufacturer stating that the roof installer is acceptable to the manufacturer to install the specified system.
- D. **Manufacturer Certificates:** Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- E. **Product Test Reports:** For components of roofing system, tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- F. **Inspection Report:** Copy of roofing system manufacturer's inspection report of completed roofing installation.
- G. **Maintenance Data:** For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from or approved by roofing system manufacturer.
- B. Roofing Inspector: Owner may engage a full-time roofing inspector during installation of the deck, insulation assembly, membrane, flashing and other appurtenances, and when a survey of the roof and roof drains is conducted. Cooperate with Owner's roofing inspector and allow unlimited access to roofing during construction.
- C. Roofing Signage: At entry points to roof, provide signage-listing type of roofing system, manufacturer, date installed, and holder of the warranty.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Comply with requirements in Division 01. Review methods and procedures related to roofing system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Meet with the Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable; testing and inspecting agency representative; roofing Installer; roofing system manufacturer's representative; deck Installer; and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
 - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
 - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
 - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
 - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
 - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Roofing Contractor's Warranty: The roofing subcontractor shall supply Owner with a minimum two-year workmanship warranty for each roof. In the event any work related to the roofing, flashing, or metalwork is found to be defective within two years of substantial completion, the roofing contractor shall remove and replace such at no additional cost to the Owner. The roofing subcontractor's warranty obligation shall run directly to the Owner, and a copy the roofing signed warranty shall be sent to the roofing system's manufacturer.

- 1. The duration of the Roofing Contractor's two-year warranty shall run concurrent with the roofing system's manufacturer's 20-year warranty.

- B. Roofing Systems Manufacturer's Warranty: The roofing manufacturer shall guarantee roof areas to be in a watertight condition, for a period of 20 years, from the date of final acceptance of the roofing system. The warranty shall be a 20-year no dollar limit (NDL), non-prorated total system labor and material warranty, for wind speed as required by Code or as indicated on the Drawings. Total system warranty shall include all roofing materials, related components and accessories including, but not limited to the substrate board, vapor retarder, insulation board, cover board, roofing membrane, membrane flashings, fasteners, adhesives, metal roof copings, metal roof edges and termination metals and roof drain assemblies. The manufacturer shall repair defects in materials and workmanship as promptly after observation as weather and site conditions permit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EPDM ROOFING MEMBRANE

- A. EPDM Roofing Membrane: ASTM D 4637, Type I, nonreinforced uniform, flexible sheet made from EPDM, and as follows:

- 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. Firestone Building Products Company.
 - c. Johns Manville International, Inc.
 - d. Mule-Hide Products Co., Inc.
 - e. Versico Inc.

- 2. Thickness: 60 mils (1.5 mm) nominal.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: Black.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.

1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall meet VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:
 - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - e. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - f. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 - g. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 - h. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - i. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 - j. Other Adhesives and Sealants: 250 g/L.
- B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil-thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard bonding adhesive.
- D. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- wide minimum with cover strip or 6-inch-wide, butyl splice tape with release film.
- E. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard single-component sealant, color to match roofing membrane.
- F. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.
- G. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.
- I. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.
- 2.3 VAPOR RETARDER
- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum 40-mil- thick film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm; cold-applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- 2.4 ROOF INSULATION
- A. General: Provide preformed roof insulation boards that comply with requirements and referenced standards, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes and of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.6-lb/cu. ft. minimum density, square edged and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company.
 - c. Pactiv/Greenguard
 - d. Owens Corning.
- C. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Atlas Roofing Corporation.
 - b. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - c. Firestone Building Products Company.
 - d. GAF Materials Corp.
 - e. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 - f. Johns Manville International Inc.
- D. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatible with membrane roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Cold Fluid-Applied Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard cold fluid-applied adhesive formulated to adhere roof insulation to substrate.
 1. Cover Board Adhesive: Manufacturer's cold fluid-applied adhesive formulated to adhere cover board to insulation substrate.
- D. Cover Board: Provide the following, as required by roofing manufacturer to comply with performance requirements and provide specified warranty.
 1. Cover Board: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, cellulosic-fiber reinforced, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 1/2 or 5/8 inch thick.
- E. Substrate Board (Thermal Barrier): ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, Type X, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick, factory primed.

2.6 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, solid-rubber, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls approximately 3/16 inch thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

2.7 ELECTRIC LEAK DETECTION

A. Testing Source:

- 1. Acceptable Sources: Employ electrical conduction methods from one of the following, as approved by waterproofing system manufacturer:
 - a. Axis Leak Detection.
 - b. Detec Systems.
 - c. Infrared Analyzers.

- B. Conductive medium for Electronic Leak Detection: Install conductive medium directly below the membrane to enable ELD quality control testing. Placement below the coverboard is not acceptable. Conductive medium must be approved by the membrane manufacturer for proper placement directly below the membrane. ELD testing must comply with ASTM D7877 and ASTM D8231.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and set and braced and that roof drains are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck comply with requirements in Section 053100 - STEEL DECKING.
 - 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
 - 5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 - 6. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
 - 7. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.3 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 1. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions and as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side, and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches and 6 inches, respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at side laps, end laps, terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

3.5 INSULATION AND COVERBOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install one or more layers of insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Install 2 or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- G. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 - 1. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
 - 2. For insulation applied in multiple layers, loose-lay first layer and mechanically fasten top layer.

- H. Mechanically Fastened Cover Boards: Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together and mechanically fasten to roof deck.
 - 1. Mechanically fasten cover boards, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

3.6 ADHERED ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roofing membrane over area to receive roofing according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Unroll roofing membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- B. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align roofing membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of roofing membrane at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roofing membrane. Do not apply bonding adhesive to splice area of roofing membrane.
- E. Mechanically or adhesively fasten roofing membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply roofing membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roofing membranes according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing membrane terminations.
- H. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not meet requirements.
- I. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck drain flange at deck drains and securely seal roofing membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.7 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply bonding adhesive to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.

- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings.

3.8 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products in locations indicated. Adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative: Engage a qualified manufacturer's technical representative to perform roof tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Engage roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion and submit report to Architect.
 - 1. Notify Architect and the Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

- D. **Electronic Leak Detection (ELD): Confirm integrity of installed roofing membrane by testing the membrane for holes, open seams and capillary defects that will allow water intrusion. ELD testing is to be performed in accordance with ASTM D7877 and ASTM D8231.**

- 1. **ELD testing of conventional roofing requires the addition of a conductive medium. The conductive medium must be installed directly below the membrane to enable testing. Placement below the coverboard is not acceptable.**
- 2. **Test 100% of the exposed membrane including horizontals, verticals, transitions and details. ELD testing must be performed in accordance with ASTM D7877 and ASTM D8231.**
- 3. **Perform ELD just prior to the placement of overburden. Repeat ELD testing if the membrane is left exposed to trade traffic.**
- 4. **Record each day's test results with a written description and photographs of all breaches and any corrections made.**

- E. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where test results or inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and the Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 076200

SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:

1. Sheet metal flashing and trim for the following applications:
 - a. Through-wall flashing.
 - b. Formed wall flashing and trim.
 - c. Formed low-slope roof flashing and trim.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
2. Section 072700 - AIR BARRIERS for perimeter terminations at air and vapor barrier assembly.
3. Section 074200 - METAL WALL PANELS for factory-formed metal wall panels and flashing and trim not part of sheet metal flashing and trim.
4. Section 075300 - EPDM ROOFING for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing membrane.
5. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for field-applied sheet metal flashing and trim sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- B. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting Wind Zone forces required by Code according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of sheet metal and trim thermal movements. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.
- D. Water Infiltration: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that do not allow water infiltration to building interior.
- E. Interface with Other Systems:
1. Do not proceed with installation of flashing and sheet metal until completion of curb and substrate construction, cants, blocking, reglets and other construction required to receive flashing.
 2. Coordinate flashing with other Work for correct sequencing of items comprising entire membrane or system of roofing or waterproofing and rain drainage.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans and elevations. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
1. Identify material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
 3. Details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring sheet metal flashing and trim, including fasteners, clips, cleats, and attachments to adjoining work.
 4. Details of expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
 2. Trim: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
 3. Accessories: Full-size Sample.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.
1. Meet with the Owner, Architect and Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal flashing and trim including installers of roofing materials, roof accessories, unit skylights, and roof-mounted equipment.
 2. Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal flashing and trim.
 3. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.

4. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver sheet metal flashing materials and fabrications undamaged. Protect sheet metal flashing and trim materials and fabrications during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and install sheet metal flashing materials and fabrications in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack materials on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sheet metal flashing and trim with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3004, 3105, or 5005. Thickness as specified in this Section. Temper suitable for forming and structural performance required, but not less than H14, finished as follows:
 1. High-Performance Organic Finish (3-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2605 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, with No. 2D dull, cold-rolled finish. Thickness as specified in this Section.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized paper, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
 - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
 - 2. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex washer head.
 - 3. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets.
- C. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
- D. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- G. Isolation Coating: ASTM D 1187, cold-applied asphalt emulsion, VOC compliant, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Shop fabricate items where practicable. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
- C. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 1. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength. Provide 2 in. min. end dams at terminations (riveted and sealed watertight).
 - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 3. Soldered Seams in Stainless Steel: Prefabricated inside and outside corners and 2 in. min. end dams at terminations (riveted and soldered watertight).
- D. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA recommendations.

- E. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in the Work cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with elastomeric sealant concealed within joints.
- F. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible on exposed-to-view sheet metal flashing and trim, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
 - 1. Thickness: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Caps: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 10-foot-long, sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide joint cover plates.
 - 1. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch-wide concealed backup plate.
 - 2. Fabricate from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 10-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder or weld watertight.
 - 1. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch-wide concealed backup plate.
 - 2. Fabricate copings from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
- C. Roof and Roof to Wall Transition Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick.
- D. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
- E. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.
- G. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
- H. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch thick.

2.6 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing, Typical: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12 foot long, sections, under copings, at shelf angles, and where indicated. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings. Form with 2-inch-high end dams. Fabricate from the following material:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system. Unless otherwise indicated, install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, manufacturer installation instructions, and SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual". Anchor units work of work securely in place by methods indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints and seams that will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.
 1. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.

1. Coat side of stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with isolation coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip-sheet or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.
- C. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
- D. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and elastomeric sealant.
- E. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
1. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
- F. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with elastomeric sealant concealed within joints.
- G. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
1. Aluminum: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners.
 2. Stainless Steel: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- H. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required for watertight construction.
1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F set joint members for 50 percent movement either way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.
- I. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tem edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches except where pre-tinned surface would show in finished Work.
1. Do not solder aluminum sheet.
 2. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Pre-tem edges of uncoated sheets to be soldered using solder recommended for stainless steel and phosphoric acid flux. Promptly wash off acid flux residue from metal after soldering.
 3. Do not use open-flame torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joints. Fill joints completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

- J. Aluminum Flashing: Rivet or weld joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

3.3 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions,] and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight.
- B. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.
- C. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with elastomeric sealant.
 - 1. Secure in a waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Install flashing as follows:
 - 1. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes penetrating roof except for flashing on vent piping.

3.4 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 077100

ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Roof-edge drainage systems.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
 - 1. Details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 2. Pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 - 3. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.

4. Details of special conditions.

C. Samples for Verification: For roof-edge drainage systems made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical roof edge, including gutter and downspout approximately 10 feet long, including supporting construction, seams, attachments, and accessories.
2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPOSED METALS

A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3004, 3105, or 5005. Thickness as specified in this Section. Temper suitable for forming and structural performance required, but not less than H14, finished as follows:

1. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Fluoropolymer 3-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 1.5 mil; complying with AAMA 2605.

- 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, cold-rolled copper sheet, H00 or H01 temper.
1. Non-Patinated Exposed Finish: Mill.
- C. Zinc Alloy Sheet/Coils:
1. Titanium Zinc Alloy whose base is electrolytic high grade fine zinc (DIN EN1179) with a 99.995 % Zn degree of purity and alloying additives of + 0.1% copper and + 0.1% titanium in accordance with DIN EN 988.
 - a. Pre-Weathered: pickling process (no phosphating)
 - 1) Blue-Gray
 2. Pre-Weathered Roofing: Backside coated zinc by manufacturer.
- 2.2 CONCEALED METALS
- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
 2. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated Copper Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- D. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
- 2.4 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ATAS International, Inc.
 2. Berger Building Products, Inc.
 3. Cheney Flashing Company.
 4. Hickman Company, W. P.
 5. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
 6. Metal-Era, Inc.
 7. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
 8. MM Systems Corporation.

- B. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
 - 1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
 - 2. Gutter Profile: As indicated according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
 - 3. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered.
 - 4. Gutter Supports: As indicated with finish matching the gutters.
 - 5. Gutter Accessories: Bronze wire ball downspout strainer,
- C. Downspouts: Plain round complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.
- D. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads, each with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated, complete with outlet tube that nests into upper end of downspout.
 - 1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
 - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
 - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F
- F. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

3.3 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-edge drainage system.
- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 24 inches apart. Attach ends with rivets and solder to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
 - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion joint caps.

- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c.

- 1. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.

- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch below gutter discharge.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 077200

ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Roof hatches
 - 2. Safety railing systems.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches, and from roof to roof.
 - 2. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood cants and wood nailers
 - 3. Section 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM for shop- and field-fabricated metal flashing and counterflashing, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roof accessories. Show layouts of roof accessories including plans and elevations. Indicate dimensions, weights, loadings, required clearances, method of field assembly, and components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Pack, handle, and ship roof accessories properly labeled in heavy-duty packaging to prevent damage.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify required openings for each type of roof accessory by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: Type L-50TB Roof Hatch by The BILCO Company, P.O. Box 1203, New Haven, CT 06505, 1-800-366-6530, Fax: 1-203-535-1582, Web: www.BILCO.com.

1.2 ROOF HATCH

- A. Performance characteristics:
1. Cover and curb shall be thermally broken to prevent heat transfer between interior and exterior surfaces.
 2. Cover shall be reinforced to support a minimum live load of 40 psf (195kg/m²) with a maximum deflection of 1/150th of the span or 20 psf (97kg/m²) wind uplift.
 3. Operation of the cover shall be smooth and easy with controlled operation throughout the entire arc of opening and closing.
 4. Operation of the cover shall not be affected by temperature.
 5. Entire hatch shall be weather tight with fully welded corner joints on cover and curb.
- B. Cover: Shall be 11 gauge (2.3mm) aluminum with a 5" (127mm) beaded flange with formed reinforcing members. Interior and exterior surfaces shall be thermally broken to minimize heat transfer and to resist condensation. Cover shall have a heavy extruded EPDM rubber gasket bonded to the cover interior to assure a continuous seal when compressed to the top surface of the curb.
- C. Cover insulation: Shall be 3" (75mm) thick polyisocyanurate with an R-value = 20.3 (U=0.279 W/m²K), fully covered and protected by an 18 gauge (1mm) aluminum liner.
- D. Curb: Shall be 12" (305mm) in height and of 11 gauge (2.3mm) aluminum. Interior and exterior surfaces shall be thermally broken to minimize heat transfer and to resist condensation. The curb shall be formed with a 5-1/2" (140mm) flange with 7/16" (11mm) holes provided for securing to the roof deck. The curb shall be equipped with an integral metal capflashing of the same gauge and material as the curb, fully welded at the corners, that features the Bil-Clip® flashing system, including stamped tabs, 6" (153mm) on center, to be bent inward to hold single ply roofing membrane securely in place.
- E. Curb insulation: Shall be 3" (75mm) thick polyisocyanurate with an R-value = 20.3 (U=0.279 W/m²K).
- F. Lifting mechanisms: Manufacturer shall provide compression spring operators enclosed in telescopic tubes to provide, smooth, easy, and controlled cover operation throughout the entire

arc of opening and closing. The upper tube shall be the outer tube to prevent accumulation of moisture, grit, and debris inside the lower tube assembly. The lower tube shall interlock with a flanged support shoe welded to the curb assembly.

G. Hardware

1. Heavy stainless steel pintle hinges shall be provided
2. Cover shall be equipped with an enclosed two-point spring latch with interior and exterior turn handles.
3. Roof hatch shall be equipped with interior and exterior padlock hasps.
4. The latch strike shall be a stamped component bolted to the curb assembly.
5. Cover shall automatically lock in the open position with a rigid hold open arm equipped with a 1" (25mm) diameter red vinyl grip handle to permit easy release for closing.
6. All hardware shall be zinc plated and chromate sealed. [For installation in highly corrosive environments or when prolonged exposure to hot water or steam is anticipated, specify Type 316 stainless steel hardware].
7. Cover hardware shall be bolted into heavy gauge channel reinforcing welded to the underside of the cover and concealed within the insulation space.

H. Finishes: Factory finish shall be mill finish aluminum.

1.3 SAFETY RAILING SYSTEMS

A. Basis of Design: Safety Railing Company; Hatchguard free standing system.

B. Provide Safety Rail Company roof hatch guarding including railings and self-closing gate.

1. Roof Hatch Size: As Specified by Architect.
2. OSHA-compliant fall protection per 29 CFR 1910.2928, CFR 1910.29, 29 CFR 1926.501(b) (4) and 29 CFR 1926.502.
3. One-piece, welded design.
4. Drilling into hatch or roof not permitted
5. Tighten elastomeric tipped compression bolts against the curb of the roof hatch.
6. 24 inch (610 mm) safe landing zone.
7. Built-in grab bars.
8. Finish:
 - a. Hot Dip Zinc Galvanized and factory finished powder coat paint.
 - b. Color: Safety Yellow.

C. Accessories:

1. Roof Pads: Provide the following pad under each base to protect roof membrane.
 - a. Approved Product: Part#150142 Roof Pad.
2. Base Mover: Provide two-wheeled steel cart to transport one base unit.
 - a. Approved Product: Part#400062 Safety Rail Company Base Mover

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.

- B. Isolation Coating: ASTM D 1187, cold-applied asphalt emulsion, VOC compliant, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- C. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners.
- D. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, polyurethane sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored and is ready to receive roof accessories.
 - 2. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof accessories securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for completing roof accessory installation. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- B. Install roof accessories to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof accessories with isolation coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip-sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
 - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by roof accessory manufacturers for waterproof performance.
- D. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.

E. Roof Hatch Installation:

1. Check roof hatch for proper operation. Adjust operating mechanism as required. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware.
2. Attach safety railing system to roof hatch curb.
3. Attach ladder safety post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by manufacturer of roof accessories.

3.3 TOUCH UP

- A. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting in accordance with Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 078410

PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and will be performed under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 078440 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS for fire-resistive joint sealers.
 - 2. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for standard joint sealers.
 - 3. Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION for cutting penetrations for fire-suppression piping and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.
 - 4. Division 22 - PLUMBING for cutting penetrations for plumbing piping and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.
 - 5. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING for cutting penetrations for ductwork and HVAC piping and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.
 - 6. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL for cutting penetrations for cable and conduit and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.
 - 7. Division 27 - COMMUNICATIONS for cutting penetrations for cable and conduit and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.
 - 8. Division 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY for cutting penetrations for cable and conduit and providing firestopping complying with requirements in this Section.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Jobsite conditions of each through-penetration firestop system must meet all details of the UL-Classified System selected. If jobsite conditions do not match any UL-classified systems, contact firestop manufacturer for alternative systems or Engineer Judgment Drawings.
- B. Coordinate work with other trades to assure that penetration-opening sizes are appropriate for penetrant locations.
- C. Verify that the schedule is current at the time of construction, and that each referenced system is suitable for the intended application.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: For penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire walls, fire-barrier walls, smoke-barrier walls and fire partitions.
 2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
1. Horizontal assemblies include floors, floor/ceiling assemblies and ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies.
 2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
 3. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.025 cu. m/s per sq. m) of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping:
1. Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
 2. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
 - a. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems demonstrating no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
 - b. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
- F. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
 - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
- C. Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule: Indicate locations of each through-penetration firestop system, along with the following information:
 - 1. Types of penetrating items.
 - 2. Types of constructions penetrated, including fire-resistance ratings and, where applicable, thicknesses of construction penetrated.
 - 3. Through-penetration firestop systems for each location identified by firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Either a firm that has been approved by FMG according to FMG 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors" or a firm experienced in installing through-penetration firestop systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction of a minimum of five projects with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements.
- B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
 - 1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed in the UL "Fire Resistance Directory."
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, through-penetration firestop systems that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Hilti, Inc.
 - 2. BioFireShield; RectorSeal Corporation.
 - 3. Specified Technologies, Inc. (STI).
 - 4. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING MATERIALS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. VOC Content: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:

1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.
- C. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- D. Materials: Provide through-penetration firestop systems containing primary materials and fill materials which are part of the tested assemblies indicated in the approved Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule submittal. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of referenced testing and inspecting agencies as "fill," "void," or "cavity" materials.
1. Available Products:
 - a. BioFireShield; RectorSeal Smoke and Acoustic Sealant.
 - b. Hilti; CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant.
 - c. Hilti; CP 653 BA Firestop Speed Sleeve.
 - d. Hilti; FS-ONE Intumescent Firestop Sealant.
- E. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated.
- F. Endothermic Mats: 3M Interam Endothermic Mats by 3M Fire Protection Products; located in rated walls behind cabinet unit heaters, fire extinguisher cabinets and electrical panels where there are space limitations to maintain the wall rating.

2.3 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing through-penetration firestop systems to comply with firestop system manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of through-penetration firestop systems.
 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with through-penetration firestop systems. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent through-penetration firestop systems from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and with firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
- C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports, as required by 2015 IBC 1705.17 and 1705.17.1. Independent inspecting agency shall comply with ASTM E 2174 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports
- B. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 078440

FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the Work of this Section, including but not limited to fire-resistive joint systems for the following:
 - 1. Floor-to-floor joints.
 - 2. Floor-to-wall joints.
 - 3. Head-of-wall joints.
 - 4. Wall-to-wall joints.
 - 5. Perimeter fire-resistive joint systems consisting of floor-to-wall joints between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and will be performed under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 078410 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING for firestopping.
 - 2. Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION for fire-protection piping penetrations.
 - 3. Division 22 - PLUMBING for piping penetrations.
 - 4. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING for duct and piping penetrations.
 - 5. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL for cable and conduit penetrations.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly in which fire-resistive joint systems are installed.
- B. For fire-resistive systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each fire-resistive joint system, show each kind of construction condition in which joints are installed; also show relationships to adjoining construction. Include fire-resistive joint system design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to

authorities having jurisdiction that demonstrates compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.

1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each fire-resistive joint system configuration for construction and penetrating items.

C. Fire-Resistive Joint Systems Schedule: For each fire-resistive joint system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing agency.

1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular fire-resistive joint system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of fire-resistive joint system, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Qualification Data: For Installer.

F. Field quality-control test reports.

G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fire-resistive joint system.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing through-penetration fire stop systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction of a minimum of five projects with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Evidence of FMG 4991 approval is acceptable for installer qualifications, but not mandatory.

B. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-resistive joint systems, for each kind of joint and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:

1. Fire-resistance tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for fire-resistive joint systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per methods indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and comply with the following:
 - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by referencing system designations of the qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fire-resistive joint system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project and with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for fire-resistive joint systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, if this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.
- C. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, fire-resistive joint systems that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 - 1. Hilti, Inc.
 - 2. BioFireShield; RectorSeal Corporation.
 - 3. Specified Technologies, Inc. (STI).
 - 4. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.

2.2 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Fire-resistive joint system sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. VOC Content: Provide fire-resistive joint system sealants that comply with the following limits for VOC content:

1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.
- C. General: Where required, provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- D. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
- E. Joints at Exterior Curtain-Wall/Floor Intersections: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with rating determined by ASTM E 119 based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa) or ASTM E 2307.
1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.
- F. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per UL 2079.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft (0.00775 cu. m/s x m) of joint at 0.30 inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- G. Compatibility: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are compatible with joint substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- H. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for systems indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from fire-resistive joint system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates or damaging adjoining surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/packing/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings and forming/packing/backing materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports, as required by 2015 IBC 1705.17 and 1705.17.2. Independent inspecting agency shall comply with ASTM E 2393 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Inspecting of completed installations of fire-resistive joint systems shall take place in successive stages as installation of fire-resistive joint systems proceeds. Do not proceed with installation of joint systems for the next area until inspecting agency determines completed work shows compliance with requirements.
1. Inspecting agency shall state in each report whether inspected fire-resistive joint systems comply with or deviate from requirements.
- C. Remove and replace fire-resistive joint systems where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

- D. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- E. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and fire-resistive joint systems comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 079200

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Joint sealants and fillers.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 088000 - GLAZING for glazing sealants.
 - 2. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
 - 3. Section 093000 - TILING for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
 - 4. Section 095100 - ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS for sealing edge moldings at perimeters of acoustical ceilings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.
- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.

- D. Qualification Data: For Installer and qualified testing agency.
 - E. Product Test Reports: Based on comprehensive testing of product formulations performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
 - F. Preconstruction Field Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on preconstruction testing specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - G. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
 - H. Field Test Report Log: For each elastomeric sealant application.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.
 - B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
 - C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - D. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use manufacturer's standard test method to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - a. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C 794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - b. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C 1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with joint sealant backing and glazing and gasket materials.
 - 2. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 3. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 4. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
 - E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:

1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
 - a. Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
 - b. Each type of nonelastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
4. Report whether sealant in joint connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
5. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Interior sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. VOC Content: Provide interior sealants and sealant primers that comply with the following limits for VOC content:
 - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 - 4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.
- D. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: Provide colors as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard and custom colors; maximum of five colors, three standard colors and two custom colors.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Elastomeric sealants shall be nonstaining to porous substrates. Provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600 or ANSI/NSF Standard 51.
- D. Exterior Silicone Sealant, Single-Component Neutral-Curing Type:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
 - b. GE Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 864.
 - d. Tremco Inc.; Spectrem 1.
 2. Extent of Use: Exterior joints in vertical and soffit surfaces.
 - E. Exterior Urethane Sealant, Multicomponent Pourable (Self-Leveling) Type for Pedestrian Traffic: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Use T, M, & O.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; POURTHANE.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-200.
 - c. Sika; Sikaflex-2c SL.
 - d. Tremco Inc.; THC-901.
 2. Extent of Use: Exterior joints in horizontal surfaces.
 - F. Interior Sanitary Silicone Sealant, Single-Component Mildew-Resistant, Acid-Curing (Acetoxy) Type: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT, G, A, and O.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Bostik; Pure Silicone.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
 - c. GE Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.
 - d. Pecora; 898NST.
 - e. Sika; Sikasil GP.
 - f. Tremco; Tremsil 200.
 2. Extent of Use: Interior sanitary joints at toilet rooms, kitchens, and other wet areas.
 - G. Interior Acrylic Latex Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Henkel Corp.; Loctite Polyseamseal Acrylic Caulk with Silicone.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
 - c. Tremco Inc.; Tremflex 834.
 2. Extent of Use: Interior non-moving joints.
- 2.3 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING
- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or other type, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

- 1. Availavle Products: Armacell Canada Inc.; ITP Standard Backer Rod; or approved equal.

- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include concrete, masonry, unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile, and exterior insulation and finish systems.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following metal, glass, porcelain enamel, and glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates, where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081110

HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Standard hollow-metal steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE for door hardware for steel doors.
 - 2. Section 088000 - GLAZING for glazed lites.
 - 3. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for insulation.
 - 4. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for field painting steel doors and frames.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, fire-resistance rating, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes for each type of steel door and frame specified.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Elevations of each door design.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive fire tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of standard steel door and frame.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain standard steel doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide an assembly with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
 - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Fire door assemblies in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise of not more than 450 degrees F (250 degrees C) above ambient at the end of 30 minutes of standard fire test exposure. Exception: The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with IBC Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
- D. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Assemblies (Including Sidelights and Transoms): Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
 - 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. CURRIES Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group Company.
 - 2. de LaFontaine
 - 3. Philipp Manufacturing Company.
 - 4. Steelcraft; an Allegion (formerly Ingersoll-Rand) company.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Provide products with average recycled content of steel products so post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content is not less than 25 percent.
- B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- C. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- D. Metallic-Coated, (Galvanized/Galvannealed) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60/A60 metallic coating.
- E. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- F. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- G. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
- H. Insulation: Comply with requirements in Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 - GLAZING.
- J. Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Product-specific Type III EPDs for hollow metal doors and frames are available from manufacturers listed herein.

- K. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide building products in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.3 STANDARD STEEL DOORS

- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI A250.8.
 - 1. Design: Flush panel.
 - 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core that produces doors complying with ANSI A250.8.
 - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 - b. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Exterior Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 2.5 when tested according to ASTM C 1363.
 - 3. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch-thick end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
 - 4. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated (galvanized/galvannealed) steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI A250.4 for physical-endurance level:
 - 1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Seamless), 1-3/4 inches thick.
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI A250.4 for physical-endurance level:
 - 1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Seamless), 1-3/4 inches thick.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

2.4 STANDARD STEEL FRAMES

- A. General: Comply with ANSI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
- B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated (galvanized/galvannealed) steel sheet.
 - 1. Fabricate frames with full profile welded joints.
 - 2. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.067-inch-thick steel sheet.

- C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Fabricate frames with full profile welded joints.
 - 2. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch-thick steel sheet.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 - 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
 - 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
 - 3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
 - 4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch (1.0 mm) thick, and as follows:
 - 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
 - 2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

2.6 HOLLOW METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as specified for adjoining hollow metal work.

2.7 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

2.8 LOUVERS

- A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, that comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch-thick steel frame.
 - 1. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted V-shaped or Y-shaped blades.

2. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link, and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 1/4-inch-thick by 1-inch-wide steel.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors:
 1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
 2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
 3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
- D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
 1. Full Profile Welded Frames: Weld joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and not visible.
 2. Full Profile Welded Frames at Fire-Rated Doors and Exterior Doors: Weld joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and not visible.
 3. Interlocking (Knock-Down) Frames at 20-Minute-Rated Doors and Non-Rated Doors: Interlocking with visible seams.
 4. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as doorframe. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 5. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
 7. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
 - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.

- 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
 - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
 - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
 - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
 - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
 - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.
 - 5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
 - c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each jamb.
 - d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
8. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
 1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
 3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
 4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 - ELECTRICAL.
- G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
 1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings, so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

2.11 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard epoxy primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
 - 2. Refer to Section 099000 – PAINTING AND COATING for field-applied coating.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
 - 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.

1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
 - d. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - e. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack insulation behind frames.
 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for filling space between frames and masonry with insulation.
 5. Concrete Walls: Solidly fill space between frames and concrete with insulation.
 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 7. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 8. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
 9. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
 - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
 - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.

- d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
 - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
 - D. Glazing: Comply with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
 - B. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - C. Metallic-Coated (Galvanized/Galvannealed) Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081210

INTERIOR ALUMINUM FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Interior aluminum framing system including doors and glazing.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 081400 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS for doors installed into aluminum frames.
 - 2. Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE for door hardware.
 - 3. Section 088000 - GLAZING for glazed lites.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 2. Locations of reinforcements and preparations for hardware.
 - 3. Details of each different wall-opening condition.
 - 4. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 5. Details of accessories.
 - 6. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 7. Details of conduits and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Samples for Verification: For interior aluminum frames, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Framing Member: 12 inches long.
 - 2. Corner Fabrication: 12-by-12-inch-long, full-size window corner, including full-size sections of extrusions with factory-applied color finish.
- D. Schedule: For interior aluminum frames. Use same designations indicated on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule and glazing.

- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of interior aluminum frame.
- F. Maintenance Data: For interior aluminum frames to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain interior aluminum frames from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver interior aluminum frames palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic. Store interior aluminum frames under cover at Project site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Avalon International.
 - 2. RACO Interior Products, Inc.
 - 3. Spaceworks Aluminum Frames.
 - 4. Western Integrated Materials, Inc.
 - 5. Wilson Partitions, a division of Arcadia Inc.

2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Aluminum Framing: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or alloy and temper required to suit structural and finish requirements, not less than 0.062 inch thick.
- B. Door Frames: Extruded aluminum, reinforced for hinges, strikes, and closers.
 - 1. 90-Minute Fire-Protection Rating: Fabricate aluminum frame assemblies with a cold-formed, primed, interior steel liner.
- C. Glazing Frames: Extruded aluminum, for glazing thickness indicated.
- D. Ceiling Tracks: Extruded aluminum.
- E. Trim: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.062 inch thick, with removable snap-in casing trim glazing stops and door stops without exposed fasteners.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic, stainless-steel or other noncorrosive metal fasteners compatible with frames, stops, panels, reinforcement plates, hardware, anchors, and other items being fastened.
- B. Door Silencers: Manufacturer's standard continuous mohair, wool pile, or vinyl seals.
- C. Smoke Seals: Intumescent strip or fire-rated gaskets.
- D. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard extruded or molded plastic, to accommodate glazing thickness indicated.
- E. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 - GLAZING.
- F. Hardware: Comply with requirements in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Provide concealed corner reinforcements and alignment clips for accurately fitted hairline joints at butted or mitered connections.
- B. Factory prepare interior aluminum frames to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcements, mortising, drilling, and tapping, according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
 - 1. Locate hardware as required by fire-rated label for assembly.
- C. Fabricate frames for glazing with removable stops to allow glazing replacement without dismantling frame.
 - 1. Locate removable stops on the inside of spaces accessed by keyed doors.
- D. Fabricate components to allow secure installation without exposed fasteners.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
 - 1. Color: Black.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, floors, and ceilings, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that wall thickness does not exceed standard tolerances allowed by throat size indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install interior aluminum frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and plumbed, aligned, and securely anchored to substrates.
 - 1. At fire-protection-rated openings, install interior aluminum frames according to NFPA 80 and NFPA 105.
- C. Install frame components in the longest possible lengths; components up to 96 inches long must be one piece.
 - 1. Fasten to suspended ceiling grid on maximum 48-inch centers, using sheet metal screws or other fasteners approved by frame manufacturer.
 - 2. Use concealed installation clips to produce tightly fitted and aligned splices and connections.
 - 3. Secure clips to extruded main-frame components and not to snap-in or trim members.
 - 4. Do not leave screws or other fasteners exposed to view when installation is complete.
- D. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 - GLAZING.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed frame surfaces promptly after installation, using cleaning methods recommended by frame manufacturer and according to AAMA 609 & 610.
- B. Touch up marred frame surfaces so touchup is not visible from a distance of 48 inches. Remove and replace frames with damaged finish that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081400

FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Solid-core flush wood doors for transparent and opaque finishes.
 2. Factory finishing for wood doors with transparent finish.
 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.
 4. Louvers and glass lites for flush wood doors.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 064020 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK for wood door frames.
 2. Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE for hardware for wood doors.
 3. Section 088000 - GLAZING for glass and glazing requirements.
 4. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for field finishing of opaque wood doors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
1. Door core and edge construction, face type, louvers, and trim for openings.
 2. Factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
1. Door schedule indicating door and frame location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
 3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
 4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
 5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
 6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 7. Clearances and undercuts.
 8. Requirements for veneer matching.
 9. Doors to be factory primed or finished and application requirements.

C. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of finish color, sheen, and grain to be expected in finished work.
2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."

1. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.

C. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

D. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies shall comply with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:

E. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
2. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

F. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.

C. Mark each door on top rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that are defective in materials or workmanship, have warped (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section, or show telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
1. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 2. Warranty shall include hardware installation and replacement of glass and glazing.
 3. Warranty shall be in effect during the following period of time from date of Substantial Completion:
 - a. Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Lambton Doors; EnviroDesign Series.
 2. Masonite Architectural; Aspiro and Graham Series (formerly Algoma and Marshfield).
 3. Oregon Doors; Architectural Series.
 4. VT Industries Inc.; Eggers and Heritage collections.

2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Doors for Transparent Finish:
1. Grade: AWI Premium, with AWI Grade AA faces, 4 inch veneer width.
 2. Species and Cut: Birch, plain sawn/sliced.
 3. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
 4. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance.
 5. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
 6. Transom Match: Continuous match.
 7. Stiles: Same species as face.
 8. Cross-Banding: 1/8 in. high density fiberboard, no added formaldehyde (NAF).
 9. Adhesives: WDMA T.M.-6, Type I.
- B. Doors for Opaque Finish:
1. Grade: Premium.

2. Faces for Interior Doors: Either medium-density overlay (MDO) or high-density fiberboard (HDF).
3. Stiles: Match face.
4. Cross-Banding: 1/8 in. high density fiberboard, no added formaldehyde (NAF).
5. Adhesives: WDMA T.M.-6, Type I.
6. Factory Primer: Manufacturer's standard water-based low VOC primer.

2.3 SOLID-CORE DOORS

A. Cores: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Composite Wood, General: CARB II compliant or made with binder containing no added formaldehyde (NAF).
2. Particle Core: ANSI A 208.1, Grade 1-LD-2.
3. Agrifiber Core: ANSI A 208.1, Grade 1-LD-2.
4. Structural Composite Lumber Core: WDMA I.S.10, Timberstrand LSL.
5. Provide doors with structural composite lumber cores instead of particleboard cores at locations where exit devices are indicated or where light or louver cutouts exceed 40% of the door area.

B. Interior Veneer-Faced Doors:

1. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed, with stiles and rails bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

C. Fire-Rated Doors:

1. Construction: Construction and core specified above for type of face indicated or manufacturer's standard mineral-core construction as needed to provide fire rating indicated.
 - a. Fire Retardant Mineral Core, with no added formaldehyde cross-banding.
2. Blocking: For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.
 - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.
4. Pairs: Provide fire-rated pairs with fire-retardant stiles matching face veneer that are labeled and listed for kinds of applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals.

2.4 LOUVERS AND LIGHT FRAMES

A. Wood Louvers: Door manufacturer's standard solid-wood louvers, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Flat.

- B. Fire Door Louvers (not required on 20 min. doors): Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire rating of one and one-half hours and less.
 - 1. Metal and Finish: Galvanized steel, 0.0396 inch thick, hot-dip zinc coated and factory primed for paint finish.
- C. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
 - 2. Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.
 - 3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
- D. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire rating indicated.

2.5 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: Provide factory installed glass products in accordance with requirements in Section 088000 - GLAZING.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA/DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
 - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining. Drill pilot holes for screws for butt hinges and lock fronts at the factory.
 - 2. Metal Astragals: Factory prime and premachine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors to receive concealed vertical rod exit devices.
- C. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
 - 1. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal doorframes.
- D. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
 - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
 - 2. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

3. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 - GLAZING.

2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated" for factory finishing.
- B. Doors for Opaque Finish: Factory prime faces and edges of doors, including cutouts, with one coat of wood primer specified in Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING.
- C. Doors for Transparent Finish: Factory finish doors that are indicated to receive transparent finish. Finish faces and edges of doors, including cutouts.
- D. Transparent Finish:
 1. Grade: Premium.
 2. Finish: AWS System-9, UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester or Urethane.
 3. Staining: None required.
 4. Staining: Provide water-based stain, custom color as selected by Architect.
 5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
 2. Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Inspections:

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.

C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Protection: Provide temporary protection to ensure work being without damage or deterioration at time of final acceptance. Remove protections and reclean as necessary immediately before final acceptance.

C. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 083110

ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 033000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE for blocking out openings for access doors and frames in concrete.
 - 2. Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE for rim cylinder locks and master keying.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each door face material, at least 3 by 5 inches in size, in specified finish.
- D. Access Door and Frame Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.
- E. Ceiling Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including access doors and frames, lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and special trim are shown and coordinated with each other.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following

test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

1. NFPA 252 for vertical access doors and frames.
2. ASTM E 119 for horizontal access doors and frames.

- C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Steel Sheet: Electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Steel Finishes: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation for Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 - a. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
 2. Factory-Primed Finish: Apply shop primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
- D. Drywall Beads: Edge trim formed from 0.0299-inch zinc-coated steel sheet formed to receive joint compound and in size to suit thickness of gypsum board.

2.2 STAINLESS-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793, manufacturer's standard finish.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 316. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
1. Finish: Directional Satin Finish, No. 4.

2.3 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Activar Construction Products Group
 2. Acudor Products, Inc.
 3. Babcock-Davis.
 4. Dur-Red Products.
 5. JL Industries (a division of Activar Construction Products Group).
 6. Karp Associates, Inc.
 7. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 8. Milcor Inc.
 9. Nystrom, Inc.
- B. Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel sheet at typical areas and from stainless-steel sheet at toilet and wet areas.
1. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal, set flush with surrounding finish surfaces.
 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal with drywall bead flange.
 4. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 5. Lock: Cylinder.
 - a. Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Section 087100, DOOR HARDWARE.
- C. Recessed Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel sheet at typical areas and from stainless-steel sheet at toilet and wet areas.
1. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal in the form of a pan recessed 5/8 inch for gypsum board infill.
 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal with drywall bead for gypsum board surfaces.
 4. Hinges: Concealed pivoting rod hinge.
 5. Lock: Cylinder.
 - a. Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Section 087100, DOOR HARDWARE.
- D. Fire Rated, Uninsulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel at typical areas and from stainless-steel sheet at toilets and wet areas.
1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
 3. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal, flush construction.
 4. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick sheet metal with 1-inch-wide, surface-mounted trim.
 5. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 6. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
 7. Lock: Self-latching device with cylinder lock.
 - a. Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Section 087100, DOOR HARDWARE

- E. Exterior insulated stainless steel access panel with expanded plaster mesh and screed edge.
 - 1. Frame: 16 ga. Stainless Steel Frame
 - 2. Door: 2" Thick Polyisocyanurate insulation, 20 ga. Stainless steel door with continuous hinge and R value of 13.0
 - 3. Gaskets: Adhesive backed EPDM foamed silicone rubber seal on frame and door
 - 4. Finish: 304 Stainless No. 4 Finish
 - 5. Handles: (F4) Lockable compression paddle latch, black

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
 - 1. For trimless frames with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum board and gypsum base securely attached to perimeter of frames.
 - 2. For trimless frames with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
 - 3. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
 - 4. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
 - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
 - 1. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
 - 2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 084110

ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Exterior and interior aluminum-framed storefronts.
 - 2. Exterior and interior manual-swing aluminum doors.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for installation of joint sealants installed with aluminum-framed systems and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.
 - 2. Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE for lock cylinders and keying.
 - 3. Section 088000 - GLAZING for glazing requirements to the extent not specified in this Section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design entrance and storefront system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. General: Provide aluminum-framed systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding, without failure, the effects of the following:
 - 1. Structural loads.
 - 2. Thermal movements.
 - 3. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
 - 4. Failure includes the following:
 - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - b. Thermal stresses transferred to building structure.
 - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements, to glazing.
 - d. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - e. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - f. Sealant failure.
 - g. Failure of operating units to function properly.

- C. Structural Loads: Wind and seismic loads as indicated on the Structural Drawings, but not less than that required by Code.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches (and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to 1/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller, amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components directly below to less than 1/8 inch and clearance between members and operable units directly below to less than 1/16 inch.
- E. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide doors and storefront which comply with the following. Test unit in accordance with ASTM E 283.
 - 1. Swinging Entrance Doors, ASHRAE Requirement: 1.0 cfm/sf maximum air leakage at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf.
 - 2. Storefront, ASHRAE Requirement: 0.06 cfm/sf maximum air leakage at a pressure differential of 1.57 psf or higher.
- G. Water Leakage Test: Test fixed framing system in accordance with ASTM E 331.
 - 1. Test Pressure: 8 psf.
 - 2. Performance: No leakage as defined in test method at specified test pressure. No uncontrolled water penetrating system or appearing on normally exposed interior surfaces.
- H. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient: Provide units with a whole-unit SHGC maximum as required by Code, determined according to NFRC 200 procedures. Submit proof of compliance with submittals as specified.
- I. Thermal Transmittance: Provide window units that have a U-value as required by Code rated in BTU/hour/sq. ft./degrees F at 15-mph exterior wind velocity, when tested in accordance with AAMA 1503.1. Test unit to be 4 ft. x 6 ft. Submit proof of compliance with submittals as specified.
- J. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 65 for fixed storefront units and not less than 55 for doors when tested according to AAMA 1503.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. **Product Data:** Include installation instructions, construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of product indicated. Indicate special procedures and perimeter conditions requiring special attention.
- B. **Shop Drawings:** Prepared under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems. For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Include structural analysis of story drift and deflection from anticipated live loads, and determination whether head receptors are required.
 - 3. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the system to the exterior.
 - 4. For entrances, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
 - 5. Wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 6. Activation and safety devices.
 - 7. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of storefronts, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions
 - d. Glazing
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
 - 8. Include details showing interface with perimeter conditions to depict interface with adjacent thermal, weather, air and vapor barriers, and adjacent flashings.
 - 9. Shop drawings must be signed and stamped by a professional engineer.
- C. **Delegated-Design Submittal:** For entrance and storefront systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Show structural testing for attachment of the storefront to the existing structure. Contractor should survey slab edge locations and conditions of the embeds to develop the attachment details.
- D. **Samples for Verification:** For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. **Qualification Data:** For Installer.
- F. **Product Test Reports:** Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems.
- G. **Performance Reports:** Based on systems, components and glazing methods proposed for use on this Project, proof that units as glazed for this Project meet or exceed Code requirements for the following:
 - 1. U-value.
 - 2. Solar heat-gain coefficient.

- H. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.
- I. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of entrance and storefront systems that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Capable of assuming engineering responsibility and performing work of this Section and who is acceptable to manufacturer.
- D. Accessible Entrances: Comply with authorities having jurisdiction, local state building code and the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)."
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site. Review methods and procedures related to storefront system, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review structural load limitations.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review required testing, inspection, and certifying procedures.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating aluminum-framed systems without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes fail within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Faulty operation of operators, controls, and hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Storefront, Thermal Break, 2 inch by 4-1/2 inch profile:

- a. EFCO Corporation, 403X.
- b. Kawneer North America, 451UT.
- c. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope, 3000XT.
- d. Tubelite Inc., TU24000.
- e. YKK AP America Inc., YES 45 XT.

2. Storefront, 1-3/4 inch by 4-1/2 inch profile:

- a. EFCO Corporation, 401 NT.
- b. Kawneer North America, Trifab 400.
- c. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope, FG-1000.
- d. Tubelite Inc., INT45.
- e. YKK AP America Inc., YES 40 FS.

3. Doors, Medium Stile:

- a. EFCO Corporation, D-300.
- b. Kawneer North America, 350.
- c. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope, MS-375.
- d. Tubelite Inc., Medium.
- e. YKK AP America Inc., 35D.

4. Doors, Medium Stile, Thermally-Broken:

- a. EFCO Corporation, D-302.
- b. Kawneer North America, Insulpour 350T.
- c. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope, MS-375TC.
- d. Tubelite Inc., Medium Thermal Block.
- e. YKK AP America Inc., 35XT.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.

3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

B. Steel Reinforcement: With manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: Dual thermal-break.

B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self-locking devices.
2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.

D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

E. Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials. Form exposed flashing from sheet aluminum finished to match framing and of sufficient thickness to maintain a flat appearance without visible deflection.

F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

A. Glazing: As specified in Section 088000 - GLAZING.

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types, replaceable, molded or extruded, that maintain uniform pressure and watertight seal.

C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric types.

2.5 DOORS

- A. Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed doors, for manual swing operation.
 - 1. Door Construction: Mechanical clip fastening, SIGMA deep penetration plus welds and 1-1/8 inch long fillet welds inside and outside of all four corners. Glazing stops shall be hook-in type and EPDM glazing gaskets reinforced with non-stretchable cord.

2.6 DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide heavy-duty units in sizes and types recommended by entrance system and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated.
 - 1. Opening-Force Requirements:
 - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 30 lbf required to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbf required to open door to minimum required width.
 - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf.
- B. Hardware Sets: Provide as specified in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
- C. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
- D. Locking Devices, General: Do not require use of key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
 - 1. Opening-Force Requirements:
 - a. Delayed-Egress Locks: Lock releases within 15 seconds after applying a force of not more than 15 lbf (67 N) for not more than 3 seconds.
 - b. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to release latch.
- E. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- F. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
 - 1. Standard: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
- G. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE.
- H. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- I. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- J. Closers: With accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use, and adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
 - 1. Standard: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
- K. Concealed Overhead Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- L. Surface-Mounted Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

- M. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- N. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
 - 1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
- O. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- P. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- Q. Thresholds: Raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - 1. Standard: BHMA A156.21.
- R. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Insulating Materials: As specified in Section 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION.
- B. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
 - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing (without projecting stops).

- E. Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
 - 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- F. Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding weather stripping retained in adjustable strip mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. Hardware Installation: Factory install hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish (3-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Coatings shall be fluorosurfactant free Kynar 500 by Arkema or fluorosurfactant-compliant Hylar 5000 by Solvay; or equal. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2605 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

2. Do not install damaged components.
 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
 6. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
- D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS and to produce weathertight installation.
- E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, without warp or rack.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 - GLAZING.
1. Structural-Sealant Glazing:
 - a. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
 - b. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- G. Entrances: Install to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
1. Exterior Entrances: Install to produce tight fit at weather stripping and weathertight closure.
 2. Field-Installed Hardware: Install surface-mounted hardware according to hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
- H. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
 2. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.
 3. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurement to 1/8 inch.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive stages as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.
 - 1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing under Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum cyclic static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure difference specified for laboratory testing under Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 4.18 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - 3. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, a minimum area of 75 feet by 1 story of aluminum-framed systems designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
- C. Repair or remove work where test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Entrances: Adjust operating hardware for smooth operation according to hardware manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1. For doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch measured to the leading door edge.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 085110

ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Fixed and operable aluminum-framed windows with factory-installed glass and glazing.
 2. Extended sills, jambs, and headers.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 084110 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
 2. Section 088000 - GLAZING for requirements for glass and glazing.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide aluminum windows capable of complying with performance requirements indicated, based on testing manufacturer's windows that are representative of those specified and that are of test size indicated below:
1. Minimum size required by AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.
- B. AAMA/NWWDA Performance Requirements: Provide aluminum windows of the performance class and grade indicated that comply with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.
1. Performance Class: Architectural Grade AW.
 2. Performance Grade: Minimum for performance class indicated.
 3. Exception to AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2: In addition to requirements for performance class and performance grade, design glass framing system to limit lateral deflections of glass edges to less than 1/175 of glass-edge length or 3/4 inch whichever is less, at design pressure based on the following:
- C. Structural Performance: Provide aluminum windows capable of withstanding the following, including wind loads based on passing AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2, Uniform Load Structural Test, at basic wind speed indicated and as required by Code:
1. Deflection: Design glass framing system to limit lateral deflections of glass edges to less than 1/175 of glass-edge length or 3/4 inch, whichever is less, at design pressure based on structural computations.

2. Wind and Seismic Loads: As indicated on the Structural Drawings, but not less than that required by Code.
 3. Movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads as required by Code. Deflection may require special considerations including but not limited to head receptors.
- D. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2, Air Infiltration Test.
1. Maximum Rate: As required by Code.
- E. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/NWWDA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2, Water Resistance Test.
1. Test Pressure: 15 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. or more than 12 lbf/sq. ft.
- F. Condensation-Resistance Factor: Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 52 where windows are indicated to be "thermally improved."
- G. Thermal Transmittance: Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window U-value maximum indicated at 15-mph exterior wind velocity and winter condition temperatures when tested according to AAMA 1503.
1. U-Value: As required by Code. Submit proof of compliance with submittals as specified.
- H. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient: Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window SHGC maximum as required by Code, determined according to NFRC 200 procedures. Submit proof of compliance with submittals as specified.
- I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that accommodate thermal movements of units resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures without buckling, distortion, opening of joints, failure of joint sealants, damaging loads and stresses on glazing and connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on actual surface temperatures of materials due to solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and operating instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, attachments to other Work, operational clearances, and the following:
1. Mullion details, including reinforcement and stiffeners.
 2. Joinery details.
 3. Expansion provisions.

4. Flashing and drainage details.
 5. Weather-stripping details.
 6. Thermal-break details.
 7. Glazing details.
 8. Window cleaning provisions.
 9. Window System Operators: Show locations, mounting, and details for installing operator components and controls.
 10. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation and used to determine the following:
 - a. Structural test pressures and design pressures from basic wind speeds indicated.
 - b. Deflection limitations of glass framing systems.
- C. Samples for Verification: Full-size operable window of each type of window.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer, professional engineer and testing agency.
- E. Field Quality-Control Test Reports: From a qualified testing and inspecting agency engaged by Contractor.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed within the last four years by a qualified testing agency, for each type, grade, and size of aluminum window. Test results based on use of downsized test units will not be accepted.
- G. Performance Reports: Based on systems, components and glazing methods proposed for use on this Project, proof that windows as glazed for this Project meet or exceed Code requirements for the following:
 1. U-value.
 2. Solar heat-gain coefficient.
- H. Maintenance Data: For operable window sash, operating hardware, weather stripping, and finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- C. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the state the project is located, and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of windows that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows through one source from a single manufacturer.
- E. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aluminum windows' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance

characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

- F. Fenestration Standard: Comply with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2, "Voluntary Specifications for Aluminum, Vinyl (PVC) and Wood Windows and Glass Doors," for minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 - 1. Provide AAMA certified aluminum windows with an attached label.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- H. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup for types of windows indicated, in locations shown on Drawings.
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01. Review methods and procedures related to aluminum windows including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review required testing and inspecting procedures.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify aluminum window openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating aluminum windows without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Failure to meet performance requirements.
 - 2. Structural failures including excessive deflection.
 - 3. Water leakage, air infiltration, or condensation.
 - 4. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
 - 5. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 6. Insulating glass failure.
- B. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Warranty Period for Metal Finishes: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Warranty Period for Glass: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Quaker Windows and Doors
 - a. Series C600 Casement/Awning Outswing / Fixed Windows.
 2. Wausau Window and Wall Systems
 - a. INvent.PLUS Series – Casement/Awning Outswing / Fixed Window
 3. Schuco Aluminum Window System
 - a. AWS-65 Series – Casement/Awning Outswing / Fixed Window
 4. Peerless Aluminum Window System
 - a. G600- Series – Casement/Awning Outswing / Fixed Window
- B. Basis of Design: Quaker Windows and Doors Series C600 Casement/Awning Outswing / Fixed Windows.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum window manufacturer for strength, corrosion resistance, and application of required finish, but not less than 22,000-psi (150-MPa) ultimate tensile strength, not less than 16,000-psi (110-MPa) minimum yield strength, and not less than 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) thickness at any location for the main frame and sash members.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, epoxy adhesive, or other materials warranted by manufacturer to be noncorrosive and compatible with aluminum window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
1. Reinforcement: Where fasteners screw anchor into aluminum less than 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick, reinforce interior with aluminum or nonmagnetic stainless steel to receive screw threads, or provide standard, noncorrosive, pressed-in, splined grommet nuts.
 2. Exposed Fasteners: Unless unavoidable for applying hardware, do not use exposed fasteners. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish of member or hardware being fastened, as appropriate.
- C. Anchors, Clips, and Accessories: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or zinc-coated steel or iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.
- D. Reinforcing Members: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless steel, or nickel/chrome-plated steel complying with ASTM B 456 for Type SC 3 severe service conditions, or zinc-coated steel or

iron complying with ASTM B 633 for SC 3 severe service conditions; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressure indicated.

- E. Compression-Type Weather Stripping, typical: Provide compressible weather stripping designed for permanently resilient sealing under bumper or wiper action and for complete concealment when aluminum window is closed.
- F. Sliding-Type Weather Stripping for Double-Hung and Horizontal-Sliding Windows: Provide woven-pile weather stripping of wool, polypropylene, or nylon pile and resin-impregnated backing fabric. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
 - 1. Weather Seals: Provide weather stripping with integral barrier fin or fins of semirigid, polypropylene sheet or polypropylene-coated material. Comply with AAMA 701/702.
- G. Replaceable Weather Seals: Comply with AAMA 701/702.
- H. Sealant: For sealants required within fabricated windows, provide window manufacturer's standard, permanently elastic, nonshrinking, and nonmigrating type recommended by sealant manufacturer for joint size and movement.

2.3 GLAZING PRODUCTS

A. Insulating-Glass Units for Vertical Glazing:

- 1. Basis of Design: Cardinal Glass Industries; LoE 366.
 - a. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch. for Windows
 - b. Thickness of Each Lite:
 - 1) Outer Lite: 3/16" clear, Tempered, Loe2-272"; Cardinal on the No.2 surface
 - 2) Inner Lite: 3/16" Tempered clear, Cardinal I89 Low E No. 4 surface.
 - 3) Interspace Content: Argon.
 - 4) Performance:
 - a) U-Value: 0.19
 - b) Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.33
 - c) Daylight Transmission: 66 percent.
- 2. Viracon VE-1-2M
- 3. Guardian SN68

B. Insulated Security Glass Units:

- 1. Product: SG4 by School Guard Glass as manufactured by Laminated Technologies Inc. (844) 744-5277; Global Security Glazing, Child Guard Glass; or approved equal.
 - a. Security glazing shall have the following characteristics ^{SEP}
 - 1) No more than 3/8" nominal glass lite thickness^{SEP}
 - 2) No more than 4.16 lbs. per square foot^{SEP}
 - 3) 5-aa1 rated for a minimum of 6 minutes
 - 4) Glass clad on interior and exterior surfaces
 - 5) F1233 rated ^{SEP}
 - 6) Optical Haze of no more than 1.8%

2. Insulated Security Glass Unit Assemblies:

a. Insulating Glass Units for Vertical Glazing: Type (SG4):

- 1) Overall thickness: 1" inch thick insulating glass
- 2) Outerlite: 1/4" tempered glass, low e coating on the No. 2 surface.
- 3) Airspace: 3/8" thick argon gas filled space, and mill finish warm edge air spacer.
- 4) Innerlite: SG4 with low-e coating on the No. 2 surface and no. 5 (for triple glazed).

2.4 GENERAL GLAZING

A. Tempered glass: Condition A (uncoated surfaces), Type 1 (transparent glass, flat), class 1 (clear), quality Q3, clear, fully tempered safety glass (meet requirements of ANSI Z97.1).

1. All tempered glass shall conform to ASTM C1048, ANSI Z97.1, and CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. Tempered glass shall bear permanent monogram indicating tempered quality. Fabrication marks on tempered glass shall be located to be concealed in completed installation.

B. Insulating glass: manufacturer's standard units that comply with specified quality standards and coatings.

1. Provide preassembled units consisting of organically sealed panes of glass enclosing a hermetically sealed dehydrated air space and complying with ASTM E774 for performance classification indicated as well as with other requirements specified for glass characteristics, air space, sealing system, sealant, space material, and desiccants.

a. Insulated unit sealing system:

- 1) Thermal conductivity of insulated glass spacer shall perform in accordance with the following:
 - a) Silicone: 0.202 btu/hr-ft-f (0.350 w/m-k)
 - b) PIB 0.089 BTU/hr-ft-f (0.155 w/m-k)
 - c) Desiccant (loose fill): 0.017 BTU/hr-ft-f (0.030 w/m-k)
 - d) Spacer: 8.197 BTU/hr-ft-f (14.187 w/m-k)

C. Insulated glass unit spacer system must include a secondary dual seal. This also applied to solid foam warm edge seal glass spacer systems.

D. Glazing System: Manufacturer's factory-glazing system that meets performance requirements and produces weathertight seal.

2.5 HARDWARE

A. Hardware Requirements: Provide hardware that complies with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.

1. Hardware Finishes: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.6 INSECT SCREENS

- A. General: Design windows and hardware to accommodate screens in a tight-fitting, removable arrangement, with a minimum of exposed fasteners and latches. Provide for each operable exterior sash or ventilator.
- B. Aluminum Insect Screen Frames: Manufacturer's standard aluminum alloy complying with SMA 1004. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped joints, concealed fasteners, and removable PVC spline/anchor concealing edge of frame.
 - 1. Aluminum Tubular Framing Sections and Cross Braces: Roll formed from aluminum sheet with minimum wall thickness as required for class indicated.
 - 2. Finish: Match aluminum window members.
- C. Glass-Fiber Mesh Fabric: 18-by-16 (1.0-by-1.1-mm) mesh of PVC-coated, glass-fiber threads; woven and fused to form a fabric mesh resistant to corrosion, shrinkage, stretch, impact damage, and weather deterioration; in the following color. Comply with ASTM D 3656.
 - 1. Mesh Color: Charcoal Grey.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subsills: Thermally broken, extruded-aluminum subsills in configurations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Receptor System: Two-piece, snap-together, thermally broken, extruded-aluminum receptor system that anchors windows in place.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate aluminum windows, in sizes indicated, that comply with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2 for performance class and performance grade indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate aluminum windows with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier; located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side; in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.
- C. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash and ventilator.
- D. Weep Holes: Provide concealed weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates as shown, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections, as indicated. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design loads of window units.
- F. Factory-Glazed Fabrication: Glaze aluminum windows in the factory where practical and possible for applications indicated. Comply with AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. High-Performance Organic Finish (3-Coat Fluoropolymer): AA-C12C40R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: conversion coating; Organic Coating: manufacturer's standard 3-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight). Coatings shall be fluorosurfactant free Kynar 500 by Arkema or fluorosurfactant-compliant Hylar 5000 by Solvay; or equal. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with AAMA 2605 and with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances; rough opening dimensions; levelness of sill plate; coordination with wall flashings, vapor retarders, and other built-in components; operational clearances; and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Masonry Surfaces: Visibly dry and free of excess mortar, sand, and other construction debris.
 - 2. Metal Surfaces: Dry; clean; free of grease, oil, dirt, rust, corrosion, and welding slag; without sharp edges or offsets at joints.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components; Drawings; and Shop Drawings.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- C. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weathertight construction.
- D. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- E. Metal Protection: Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials by complying with requirements specified in "Dissimilar Materials" Paragraph in Appendix B in AAMA/NWWDA 101/I.S.2.

- F. Install window screens after final glass cleaning and prior to occupancy.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of installed windows shall take place as follows:
 - 1. Testing Methodology: Testing of windows for air infiltration and water resistance shall be performed according to AAMA 502.
 - 2. Air-Infiltration Testing:
 - a. Test Pressure: That required to determine compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 performance class indicated.
 - b. Allowable Air-Leakage Rate: 1.5 times the applicable AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 rate for product type and performance class rounded down to one decimal place.
 - 3. Water-Resistance Testing:
 - a. Test Pressure: Two-thirds times test pressure required to determine compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 performance grade indicated.
 - b. Allowable Water Infiltration: No water penetration.
 - 4. Testing Extent: Three windows of each type as selected by Architect and a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency. Windows shall be tested after perimeter sealants have cured.
 - 5. Test Reports: Prepared according to AAMA 502.
- C. Remove and replace windows where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating sashes and ventilators, screens, hardware, operators, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.

3.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. In addition, monitor window surfaces adjacent to and below exterior concrete and masonry surfaces during construction for presence of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, stains, or other contaminants. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Clean aluminum surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.

- C. Clean factory-glazed glass immediately after installing windows. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for final cleaning and maintenance. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- D. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 087100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes commercial door hardware for the following:
 - 1. Swinging doors.
- B. Door hardware includes, but is not necessarily limited to, the following:
 - 1. Mechanical door hardware.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".
 - 2. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry".
 - 3. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
 - 4. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors".
 - 5. Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts".
- D. Codes and References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 - 1. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - 2. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - 3. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 - 4. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - 5. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - 6. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
 - 7. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.
- E. Standards: All hardware specified herein shall comply with the following industry standards as applicable. Any undated reference to a standard shall be interpreted as referring to the latest edition of that standard:
 - 1. ANSI/BHMA Certified Product Standards - A156 Series.
 - 2. UL10C - Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
 - 3. ANSI/UL 294 - Access Control System Units.
 - 4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware.

5. ANSI/UL 437- Key Locks.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.
- B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing, fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final Door Hardware Schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
 1. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule."
 2. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Organize door hardware sets in same order as in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Submittals that do not follow the same format and order as the Door Hardware Sets will be rejected and subject to resubmission.
 3. Content: Include the following information:
 - a. Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
 - b. Manufacturer of each item.
 - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - d. Location of door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
 - e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - f. Mounting locations for door hardware.
 - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - h. Warranty information for each product.
 4. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final Door Hardware Schedule at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the Door Hardware Schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the Door Hardware Schedule.
- C. Keying Schedule: After a keying meeting with the owner has taken place prepare a separate keying schedule detailing final instructions. Submit the keying schedule in electronic format. Include keying system explanation, door numbers, key set symbols, hardware set numbers and special instructions. Owner must approve submitted keying schedule prior to the ordering of permanent cylinders/cores.
- D. Informational Submittals:
 1. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance with cycle testing requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency.

- E. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete door hardware installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Procedures.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum 5 years of documented experience in producing hardware and equipment similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Certified Products: Where specified, products must maintain a current listing in the Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA) Certified Products Directory (CPD).
- C. Installer Qualifications: A minimum 3 years documented experience installing both standard and electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- D. Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced commercial door hardware distributors with a minimum 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical hardware installations comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supplier recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturers of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner concerning both standard and electromechanical door hardware and keying.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware specified in this section from a single source unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
- F. Each unit to bear third party permanent label indicating compliance with the referenced testing standards.
- G. Keying Conference: Conduct conference to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings." Keying conference to incorporate the following criteria into the final keying schedule document:
 - 1. Function of building, purpose of each area and degree of security required.
 - 2. Plans for existing and future key system expansion.
 - 3. Requirements for key control storage and software.
 - 4. Installation of permanent keys, cylinder cores and software.
 - 5. Address and requirements for delivery of keys.
- H. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct coordination conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier(s),

Installer(s), and Contractor(s) to review proper methods and the procedures for receiving, handling, and installing door hardware.

1. Prior to installation of door hardware, conduct a project specific training meeting to instruct the installing contractors' personnel on the proper installation and adjustment of their respective products. Product training to be attended by installers of door hardware (including electromechanical hardware) for aluminum, hollow metal and wood doors. Training will include the use of installation manuals, hardware schedules, templates and physical product samples as required.
 2. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, power supply connections, and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 3. Review sequence of operation narratives for each unique access controlled opening.
 4. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
 5. Review the required inspecting, testing, commissioning, and demonstration procedures
- I. At completion of installation, provide written documentation that components were applied according to manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and according to approved schedule.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up and shelving for door hardware delivered to Project site. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or accessories at Project site without prior authorization.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Door Hardware Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- C. Deliver, as applicable, permanent keys, cylinders, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner shall be established at the "Keying Conference".

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing standard and electrified hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Door and Frame Preparation: Doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions

of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

- B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - 2. Faulty operation of the hardware.
 - 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 4. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.
- C. Warranty Period: Unless otherwise indicated, warranty shall be one year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in Door Hardware Sets and each referenced section that products are to be supplied under.
- B. Designations: Requirements for quantity, item, size, finish or color, grade, function, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
 - 1. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and manufacturer are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in the Door Hardware Schedule.
- C. Please note that ASSA ABLOY is transitioning the Yale Commercial brand to Arrow. This affects only the brand name; the products and product numbers will remain unchanged. The brand transition is expected to be complete in or about May of 2024, and products shipping after that time will be branded Arrow.
- D. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval for inclusive mechanical and electromechanical door hardware in compliance with the specifications must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures and time frames outlined in Division 01, Substitution Procedures. Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.

2.2 BUTT HINGES

- A. Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1 butt hinges with number of hinge knuckles and other options as specified in the Door Hardware Sets.
 - 1. Quantity: Provide the following hinge quantity:

- a. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
 - b. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.
 - c. Four Hinges: For doors with heights 91 to 120 inches.
 - d. For doors with heights more than 120 inches, provide 4 hinges, plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches of door height greater than 120 inches.
2. Hinge Size: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated, with hinge widths sized for door thickness and clearances required:
- a. Widths up to 3'0": 4-1/2" standard or heavy weight as specified.
 - b. Sizes from 3'1" to 4'0": 5" standard or heavy weight as specified.
3. Hinge Weight and Base Material: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:
- a. Exterior Doors: Heavy weight, non-ferrous, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate standard weight.
 - b. Interior Doors: Standard weight, steel, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate heavy weight.
4. Hinge Options: Comply with the following:
- a. Non-removable Pins: With the exception of electric through wire hinges, provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for the all out-swinging lockable doors.
5. Manufacturers:
- a. Hager Companies (HA) - BB Series, 5 knuckle.
 - b. McKinney (MK) - TA/T4A Series, 5 knuckle.
 - c. dormakaba Best (ST) - F/FBB Series, 5 knuckle.

2.3 DOOR OPERATING TRIM

- A. Flush Bolts and Surface Bolts: Provide products conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 and A156.16, Grade 1.
1. Flush bolts to be furnished with top rod of sufficient length to allow bolt retraction device location approximately six feet from the floor.
 2. Furnish dust proof strikes for bottom bolts.
 3. Surface bolts to be minimum 8" in length and U.L. listed for labeled fire doors and U.L. listed for windstorm components where applicable.
 4. Provide related accessories (mounting brackets, strikes, coordinators, etc.) as required for appropriate installation and operation.
 5. Manufacturers:
 - a. Burns Manufacturing (BU).
 - b. Rockwood (RO).
 - c. Trimco (TC).

2.4 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

- A. General: Cylinder manufacturer to have minimum (10) years experience designing secured master key systems and have on record a published security keying system policy.
- B. Cylinder Types: Original manufacturer cylinders able to supply the following cylinder formats and types:
 - 1. Threaded mortise cylinders with rings and cams to suit hardware application.
 - 2. Rim cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.
 - 3. Bored or cylindrical lock cylinders with tailpieces as required to suit locks.
 - 4. Tubular deadlocks and other auxiliary locks.
 - 5. Mortise and rim cylinder collars to be solid and recessed to allow the cylinder face to be flush and be free spinning with matching finishes.
 - 6. Keyway: Manufacturer's Standard.
- C. Patented Cylinders: ANSI/BHMA A156.5, Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed cylinders employing a utility patented and restricted keyway requiring the use of a patented key. Cylinders are to be protected from unauthorized manufacture and distribution by manufacturer's United States patents. Cylinders are to be factory keyed with owner having the ability for on-site original key cutting.
 - 1. Patented key systems shall not be established with products that have an expired patent. Expired systems shall only be specified and supplied to support existing systems.
 - 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin (RU) - Access 3 AP.
 - b. Sargent (SA) - Degree DG1.
 - c. Schlage (SC) - Everest 29 SL.
- D. Keying System: Each type of lock and cylinders to be factory keyed.
 - 1. Supplier shall conduct a "Keying Conference" to define and document keying system instructions and requirements.
 - 2. Furnish factory cut, nickel-silver large bow permanently inscribed with a visual key control number as directed by Owner.
 - 3. New System: Key locks to a new key system as directed by the Owner.
- E. Key Quantity: Provide the following minimum number of keys:
 - 1. Change Keys per Cylinder: Three (3).
 - 2. Master Keys (per Master Key Level/Group): Five (5).
 - 3. Construction Keys (where required): Ten (10).
- F. Construction Keying: Provide construction master keyed cylinders.
- G. Key Registration List (Bitting List):

1. Provide keying transcript list to Owner's representative in the proper format for importing into key control software.
2. Provide transcript list in writing or electronic file as directed by the Owner.

2.5 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS AND LATCHING DEVICES

- A. Cylindrical Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000, Operational Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - CLX3300 Series.
 - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 10X Line.
 - c. Schlage (SC) - ND Series.
- B. Cylindrical Indicator Locksets, Grade 1 (Commercial Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000, Operational Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed. Locksets shall have visual status indicators in the rose that displays "vacant" or "occupied" status.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Arrow, formerly known as Yale (YA) - YPL Series.

2.6 LOCK AND LATCH STRIKES

- A. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike with strike box for each latch or lock bolt, with curved lip extended to protect frame, finished to match door hardware set, unless otherwise indicated, and as follows:
1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latchbolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
 3. Aluminum-Frame Strike Box: Provide manufacturer's special strike box fabricated for aluminum framing.
 4. Double-lipped strikes: For locks at double acting doors. Furnish with retractable stop for rescue hardware applications.
- B. Standards: Comply with the following:
1. Strikes for Mortise Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.13.
 2. Strikes for Bored Locks and Latches: BHMA A156.2.
 3. Strikes for Auxiliary Deadlocks: BHMA A156.36.
 4. Dustproof Strikes: BHMA A156.16.

2.7 CONVENTIONAL EXIT DEVICES

- A. General Requirements: All exit devices specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Exit devices shall have a five-year warranty.
 2. At doors not requiring a fire rating, provide devices complying with NFPA 101 and listed and labeled for "Panic Hardware" according to UL305. Provide proper fasteners as required by manufacturer including sex nuts and bolts at openings specified in the Hardware Sets.
 3. Where exit devices are required on fire rated doors, provide devices complying with NFPA 80 and with UL labeling indicating "Fire Exit Hardware". Provide devices with the proper fasteners for installation as tested and listed by UL. Consult manufacturer's catalog and template book for specific requirements.
 4. Except on fire rated doors, provide exit devices with hex key dogging device to hold the pushbar and latch in a retracted position. Provide optional keyed cylinder dogging on devices where specified in Hardware Sets.
 5. Devices must fit flat against the door face with no gap that permits unauthorized dogging of the push bar. The addition of filler strips is required in any case where the door light extends behind the device as in a full glass configuration.
 6. Lever Operating Trim: Where exit devices require lever trim, furnish manufacturer's heavy duty escutcheon trim with threaded studs for thru-bolts.
 - a. Lock Trim Design: As indicated in Hardware Sets, provide finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets.
 - b. Where function of exit device requires a cylinder, provide a cylinder (Rim or Mortise) as specified in Hardware Sets.
 7. Vertical Rod Exit Devices: Where surface or concealed vertical rod exit devices are used at interior openings, provide as less bottom rod (LBR) unless otherwise indicated. Provide dust proof strikes where thermal pins are required to project into the floor.
 8. Narrow Stile Applications: At doors constructed with narrow stiles, or as specified in Hardware Sets, provide devices designed for maximum 2" wide stiles.
 9. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
 10. Rail Sizing: Provide exit device rails factory sized for proper door width application.
 11. Through Bolt Installation: For exit devices and trim as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- B. Conventional Push Rail Exit Devices (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed panic and fire exit hardware devices furnished in the functions specified in the Hardware Sets. Exit device latch to be stainless steel, pullman type, with deadlock feature.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - ED4000 / ED5000 Series.
 - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 80 Series.
 - c. dormakaba Best (PR) - Apex 2000 Series.

2.8 DOOR CLOSERS

- A. All door closers specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. General: Door closers to be from one manufacturer, matching in design and style, with the same type door preparations and templates regardless of application or spring size. Closers to be non-handed with full sized covers.
 2. Standards: Closers to comply with UL-10C for Positive Pressure Fire Test and be U.L. listed for use of fire rated doors.
 3. Size of Units: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sizing of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Where closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the Americans with Disabilities Act, provide units complying with ANSI ICC/A117.1.
 4. Closer Arms: Provide heavy duty, forged steel closer arms unless otherwise indicated in Hardware Sets.
 5. Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics.
 6. Closer Accessories: Provide door closer accessories including custom templates, special mounting brackets, spacers and drop plates as required for proper installation. Provide through-bolt and security type fasteners as specified in the hardware sets.
- B. Door Closers, Surface Mounted (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed surface mounted, heavy duty door closers with complete spring power adjustment, sizes 1 thru 6; and fully operational adjustable according to door size, frequency of use, and opening force. Closers to be rack and pinion type, one piece cast iron or aluminum alloy body construction, with adjustable backcheck and separate non-critical valves for closing sweep and latch speed control. Provide non-handed units standard.
1. Heavy duty surface mounted door closers shall have a 30-year warranty.
 2. Manufacturers:
 - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - DC6000 Series.
 - b. Norton Rixson (NO) - 7500 Series.
 - c. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 351 Series.

2.9 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. General: Door stops and holders to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
- B. Door Stops and Bumpers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 door stops and wall bumpers. Provide wall bumpers, either convex or concave types with anchorage as indicated, unless floor or other types of door stops are specified in Hardware Sets. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall bumpers are not appropriate, provide overhead type stops and holders.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Hiawatha, Inc. (HI).
 - b. Ives (IV).
 - c. Rockwood (RO).

- C. Overhead Door Stops and Holders: ANSI/BHMA A156.8, Grade 1 Certified Products Directory (CPD) listed overhead stops and holders to be surface or concealed types as indicated in Hardware Sets. Track, slide, arm and jamb bracket to be constructed of extruded bronze and shock absorber spring of heavy tempered steel. Provide non-handed design with mounting brackets as required for proper operation and function.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Norton Rixson (RF).
 - b. Rockwood (RO).
 - c. Sargent Manufacturing (SA).

2.10 ARCHITECTURAL SEALS

- A. General: Thresholds, weatherstripping, and gasket seals to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated. At exterior applications provide non-corrosive fasteners and elsewhere where indicated.
- B. Smoke Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.
 - 1. Provide smoke labeled perimeter gasketing at all smoke labeled openings.
- C. Fire Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL-10C.
 - 1. Provide intumescent seals as indicated to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and NPFA 252, Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Manufacturers:
 - 1. National Guard Products (NG).
 - 2. Pemko (PE).
 - 3. Reese Enterprises, Inc. (RE).

2.11 FABRICATION

- A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to manufacturers recognized installation standards for application intended.

2.12 FINISHES

- A. Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.
- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware
- C. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the door schedule, door types, drawings and scheduled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115-W series.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each item of mechanical and electromechanical hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.
 - 1. Installers are to be trained and certified by the manufacturer on the proper installation and adjustment of fire, life safety, and security products including: hanging devices; locking devices; closing devices; and seals.

- B. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - 2. DHI TDH-007-20: Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware.
 - 3. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
 - 4. Provide blocking in drywall partitions where wall stops or other wall mounted hardware is located.
- C. Retrofitting: Install door hardware to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
- D. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Storage: Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection (Punch Report): Reference Division 01 Sections "Closeout Procedures". Produce project punch report for each installed door opening indicating compliance with approved submittals and verification hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted. Include list of items to be completed and corrected, indicating the reasons or deficiencies causing the Work to be incomplete or rejected.
 - 1. Organization of List: Include separate Door Opening and Deficiencies and Corrective Action Lists organized by Mark, Opening Remarks and Comments, and related Opening Images and Video Recordings.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain mechanical and electromechanical door hardware.

3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SETS

- A. The hardware sets represent the design intent and direction of the owner and architect. They are a guideline only and should not be considered a detailed hardware schedule. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware and missing items should be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application and functionality.
 - 1. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.
 - 2. The supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products.
 - 3. Where multiple options for a piece of hardware are given in a single line item, the supplier shall provide the appropriate application for the opening.
 - 4. At existing openings with new hardware the supplier shall field inspect existing conditions prior to the submittal stage to verify the specified hardware will work as required. Provide alternate solutions and proposals as needed.
- B. Manufacturer's Abbreviations:
 - 1. MK - McKinney
 - 2. RO - Rockwood
 - 3. SA - SARGENT
 - 4. YA - Arrow, formerly known as Yale
 - 5. RF - Rixson
 - 6. PE - Pemko
 - 7. OT - Other

Hardware Sets

Set: 1.0

Doors: 1109B, 1209B, 1302B, 1303B, 1418B, S5.1B, S9.1B

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------|----|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Exit Only | DG1 16 43 8810 EO | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 1 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 2.0

Doors: 1109A, 1209A, 1211, 1216, 1302A, 1303A, 1317, 1418A, 1426, S5.1A, S6.1, S9.1A

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------|----|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Storeroom | DG1 16 43 8804 PTB | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 1 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 3.0

Doors: 1401

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---------------------|-------|----|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Classroom Lock | DG1 10XG37 LL | US26D | SA |
| 1 | Surface Closer | 351 UO | EN | SA |
| 1 | Wall Stop | 400 | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 1 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 4.0

Not used

Set: 5.0

Doors: [B101A](#)

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|----|
| 6 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Rim Exit Device, Storeroom | DG1 16 43 8804 PTB | US32D | SA |
| 1 | Dust Proof Strike | 570 | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Conc Overhead Stop | 1-X36 | 630 | RF |
| 2 | Flush Bolt | 555 | US26D | RO |
| 2 | Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 2 | Astragal | 18041CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 2 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 6.0

Doors: [1301](#)

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|----|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Classroom Lock | DG1 10XG37 LL | US26D | SA |
| 1 | Wall Stop | 400 | US26D | RO |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 1 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 7.0

Doors: [1434](#)

| | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|----|
| 3 | Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 | Classroom Lock | DG1 10XG37 LL | US26D | SA |
| 1 | Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 1 | Gasketing | 297AS | | PE |
| 1 | Sweep | 18061CNB | | PE |
| 1 | Threshold | 253x3AFG MSES25SS-2 | | PE |

Set: 8.0

Doors: [138](#)

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------|----|
| 3 Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 Classroom Lock | DG1 10XG37 LL | US26D | SA |
| 1 Wall Stop | 400 | US26D | RO |
| 3 Silencer | 608-RKW | | RO |

Set: 9.0

Doors: 1316 + 1317

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------|-------|----|
| 3 Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3386 | US32D | MK |
| 1 Push Bar | 8893 | US32D | SA |
| 1 Exit Device Trim | 810-PTB | US32D | SA |
| 1 Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 3 Silencer | 608-RKW | | RO |

*Adding auto door opener to vestibule doors

Set: 10.0

Doors: B101B

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|-------|----|
| 3 Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3786 | US26D | MK |
| 1 Rim Exit Device, Storeroom | DG1 12 43 8804 ETL | US32D | SA |
| 1 Surface Closer | 351 CPS | EN | SA |
| 1 Gasketing | S773BL | | PE |

Set: 11.0

Doors: G114

| | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------|----|
| 6 Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3786 | US26D | MK |
| 1 Dust Proof Strike | 570 | US26D | RO |
| 2 Flush Bolt | 555 | US26D | RO |
| 1 Storeroom/Closet Lock | DG1 10XG04 LL | US26D | SA |
| 1 Conc Overhead Stop | 1-X36 | 630 | RF |
| 1 Surface Closer | 351 PS | EN | SA |
| 1 Astragal | S771x6BL | | PE |
| 1 Gasketing | S773BL | | PE |

Set: 12.0

Doors: 1314

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------|-------|----|
| 3 Hinge, Full Mortise, Hvy Wt | T4A3786 | US26D | MK |
| 1 Privacy | AU YPL02 | 626 | YA |
| 1 Surface Closer | 351 UO | EN | SA |
| 1 Wall Stop | 400 | US26D | RO |
| 1 Gasketing | S773BL | | PE |

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 088000

GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:

1. Glass and glazing for the following products and applications:

- a. Steel doors, frames and sidelights specified in Section 081110 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES.
- b. Glazed entrances and storefronts specified in Section 084110 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS.
- c. Interior lites.
- d. Unframed mirrors.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 081400 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS for factory glazing.
2. Section 085100 – ALUMINUM WINDOWS for factory glazing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.
- E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions.

Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

- F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

- B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:

- a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As required by Code.
b. Specified Design Snow Loads for Sloped Glazing: As required by Code.
c. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.

1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.

- d. Probability of Breakage for Sloped Glazing: 1 lite per 1000 for lites set more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind and snow action.

1) Load Duration: 30 days.

- e. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For the following types of glass supported on all 4 edges, provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.

- 1) For monolithic-glass lites heat-treated to resist wind loads.
2) For insulating glass.
3) For laminated-glass lites.

- f. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6 mm.

- C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
 2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
 3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick and a nominal 1/2-inch-wide interspace.
 4. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 6.3 computer program for the following methodologies:
 - a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
 - c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Samples: 12-inch- square Samples for each type of glass and glass assembly, glazing sealants.
- C. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.
- E. Qualification Data: For installers.
- F. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Test Report: From glazing sealant manufacturer indicating glazing sealants were tested for adhesion to glass and glazing channel substrates and for compatibility with glass and other glazing materials.
- G. Product Test Reports: For each type of glazing products:
- H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance..
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain the following through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type: clear float glass, laminated glass and insulating glass.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass Sputter-Coated with Solar-Control Low-E Coatings: Where solar-control low-e coatings of a primary glass manufacturer that has established a certified fabricator program is specified, obtain sputter-coated solar-control low-e-coated glass in fabricated units from a manufacturer that is certified by coated-glass manufacturer.

- D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
- E. Elastomeric Glazing Sealant Product Testing: Obtain sealant test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period.
1. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
 2. Test elastomeric glazing sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
- F. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Submit to elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member that will contact or affect elastomeric glazing sealants:
1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
 2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 4. For materials failing tests, obtain sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including the use of specially formulated primers.
 5. Testing will not be required if elastomeric glazing sealant manufacturers submit data based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, glazing materials matching those submitted.
- G. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201.
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency] acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Where glazing units, including Kind FT glass and laminated glass, are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- H. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
 2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."

I. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:

1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.

J. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup for types of windows indicated, in locations shown on Drawings.

K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to the Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to the Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to the Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Insulating-Glass Units for Vertical Glazing (GL-1): 1 inch thick (25.0 mm) insulating glass consisting of two lites of 1/4 inch (6 mm) glass, low e coating on the No. 2 surface and argon gas filled. Provide one of the following or equal:

1. Guardian Industries; SN-68.
 - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 68 percent.
 - b. Reflectance Visible Light: 10 percent.
 - c. U Value (Winter): 0.25.
 - d. Shading Coefficient: 0.43.
 - e. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.38.
2. Viracon; VE1-2M.
 - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent.
 - b. Reflectance Visible Light: 11 percent.
 - c. U Value (Winter): 0.25.
 - d. Shading Coefficient: 0.43.
 - e. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.37.
3. Vitro Architectural Glass (formerly PPG Industries); Solarban 60.
 - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 70 percent.
 - b. Reflectance Visible Light: 11 percent.
 - c. U Value (Winter): 0.29.
 - d. Shading Coefficient: 0.44.
 - e. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.38.

- B. Bullet Resistant Glazing Units (GL-2):

1. Product: SG4 by School Guard Glass as manufactured by Laminated Technologies Inc. (844) 744-5277; Global Security Glazing, Child Guard Glass; or approved equal.
 - a. Security glazing shall have the following characteristics ^{[[]]}_{SEP}:
 - 1) No more than 3/8" nominal glass lite thickness^{[[]]}_{SEP}
 - 2) No more than 4.16 lbs. per square foot^{[[]]}_{SEP}
 - 3) 5-aa1 rated for a minimum of 6 minutes
 - 4) Glass clad on interior and exterior surfaces
 - 5) F1233 rated ^{[[]]}_{SEP}
 - 6) Optical Haze of no more than 1.8%
2. Insulated Security Glass Unit Assemblies:
 - a. Insulating Glass Units for Vertical Glazing: Type (SG4):
 - 1) Overall thickness: 1" inch thick insulating glass

- 2) Outerlite: 1/4" tempered glass, low e coating on the No. 2 surface.
- 3) Airspace: 3/8" thick argon gas filled space, and mill finish warm edge air spacer.
- 4) Innerlite: SG4 with low-e coating on the No. 2 surface and no. 5 (for triple glazed).

- C. Non insulated Glazing Units for Interior applications (GL-3): Tempered 1/4 inch glazing.
- D. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.
- B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
 3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).
- C. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent flat glass); Quality-Q3; Kind FT; 1/4 inch thick unless indicated otherwise.
- D. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
 1. Construction for Framed Units: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations.
 2. Construction for Units with Exposed Edges: Laminate glass with cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations.
 3. Interlayer Thickness: 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick for vertical glazing, 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick for sloped glazing.
 4. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by an argon-filled interspace, and complying with ASTM E2190 and with requirements specified in this Section.
 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" paragraph.
 2. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is indicated.

3. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
 4. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:
 - a. Manufacturer's Standard Sealants. Butyl primary and silicone secondary sealants. Secondary sealant shall cover entire spacer bar at IGU perimeter.
 5. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material. Spacer corners shall be bent, soldered, or welded. Keyed spacer corners will not be accepted. Spacer may have a mid-span spacer key located at the midpoint of the insulating glass unit head. Where a mid-span spacer key is used, the key must be fully embedded (all sides) in butyl sealant.
- F. Glass Mirrors, General: ASTM C 1503; manufactured using copper-free, low-lead mirror coating process.
1. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished edge.

2.3 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
1. Compatibility: Verify glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, interlayer of laminated glass, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. VOC Emissions: Provide sealants in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 5. VOC Content:
 - a. Structural Glazing Adhesives: 100 g/L.
 - b. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 6. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.
- B. Elastomeric Glazing Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
1. Single-Component Neutral- and Basic-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealants:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
 - b. GE Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
 - c. Tremco Inc.; Spectrem 1.

2.4 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for project conditions.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 - 1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 - 2. Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, asbestos-free, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror manufacturer and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.
 - 1. VOC Emissions: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. VOC Content: 250 g/L or less.
 - 3. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.
 - 4. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
- G. Mirror Hardware, Top and Bottom Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover bottom and top edges of each mirror in a single piece.

2.6 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of

product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with outdoor and indoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
 - 3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Wall-Mounted Mirrors: Install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
- K. Glazing Film: Apply squarely aligned to glass edges, uniformly smooth, and free from tears, air bubbles, wrinkles, and rough edges, in single sheet completely overlaying the back face of clean glass, according to manufacturer's written instructions, including surface preparation and application temperature limitations.
- 3.4 TAPE GLAZING
- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- 3.5 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)
- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092110

GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Interior gypsum wallboard.
 2. Tile backing panels.
 3. Acoustic insulation (sound attenuation batts) in gypsum wallboard assemblies.
 4. Non-load-bearing steel framing, including angles in partial-height partitions.
 5. Installation of access panels.
 6. Marking and identification for fire- and smoke-partitions.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING for load-bearing steel framing.
 2. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for plywood backing panels.
 3. Section 061600 - SHEATHING for gypsum sheathing at exterior assemblies.
 4. Section 083110 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES for furnishing access doors and frames in gypsum board assemblies.
 5. Section 092120 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES for framing, gypsum panels, other components of shaft wall assemblies, and finishing gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
 6. Section 093000 - TILING for joint compound at cementitious tile backing panels.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance:
1. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure.
 2. Provide metal framing engineered to meet code requirements, project requirements, required heights, and the following deflection criteria. For gypsum board assemblies without applied rigid finishes L/240; for gypsum board assemblies with applied rigid finishes such as tile, stone, wood paneling L/360. Lateral load 5 psf except at shafts. Lateral load at shafts shall be required based on analysis of equipment and systems using shafts.
 3. Provide fire stop tracks capable of withstanding deflection within limits and under conditions indicated.

- B. Marking and Identification for Fire- and Smoke-Partitions: Fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers, smoke partitions and other walls required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling. Such identification shall:
1. Be located in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or attic spaces; and
 2. Locate within 15 feet of end of each wall and repeat at intervals not exceeding 30 feet measured horizontally along the wall or partition; and
 3. Include lettering not less than 3 inches in height with a minimum 3/8 inch stroke in contrasting color, incorporating the suggested wording: "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," or other wording.
 4. Exception: Walls in Group R-2 occupancies that do not have a removable decorative ceiling allowing access to the concealed space.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: If materials and systems other than those specified and those indicated on the Drawings are proposed for use, submit shop drawings signed and sealed by a structural engineer licensed in the jurisdiction of the project certifying proposed systems meet code and project requirements. and specified deflection criteria.
- C. Samples: Full-size Sample in 12-inch-long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Mockups: Before beginning gypsum board installation, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Install mockups for the following:
 - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
 - b. Each texture finish indicated.
 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack panels flat to prevent sagging.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
 - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Protective Coating: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant zinc coating, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Recycled Content: Use minimum recycled content of 25%.

2.2 SUSPENSION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.0625-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.0475-inch-diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
 - 1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
 - a. Type: Postinstalled, expansion anchor.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.162-inch diameter.
- D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges with depth as required for span and loading and indicated on Drawings.

- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
- F. Grid Suspension System for Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
 - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Furring System.
 - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.
 - 2. Performance Requirements: Ceiling support system shall support a live load of 6 psf minimum at L/240.

2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. California Expanded Metals Co. (CEMCO).
 - 2. EB Metal U.S.
 - 3. Marino\WARE.
 - 4. Studco Building Systems.
- B. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
 - 1. Minimum Base-Steel (Uncoated) Thickness: 0.0296 inches (20 gage).
 - 2. Minimum Base-Steel (Uncoated) Thickness: 0.0269 inches (22 gage) (0.0190 to 0.0220 inches for embossed steel members depending on width).
 - 3. Minimum Base-Steel (Uncoated) Thickness: 0.0179 inches (25 gage) (0.0147 to 0.0155 inches for embossed steel members depending on width).
 - 4. Dimpled studs meeting performance values for equivalent standard studs are acceptable.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
 - 2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
 - 3. Deflection Track / Deflection Clip: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
 - a. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Brady Innovations; Sliptrack Systems.
 - 2) California Expanded Metals Co. (CEMCO); CST Slotted Tracks.

- 3) Clark Dietrich Building Systems; MaxTrak Slotted Deflection Track.
 - 4) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiTrack VT Series.
- D. Fire Stop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness compatible with studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. California Expanded Metals Co. (CEMCO); FAS-TRK 1000 Slotted Tracks.
 - b. Clark Dietrich Building Systems; BlazeFrame Fire Stop Deflection Track.
 - c. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak attached to studs with Fire Trak Slip Clip.
 - d. GCPAT; FlameSafe FlowTrack System.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0312 inch (20 gauge).
- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: 0.0538-inch bare-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.
1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0312 inch (20 gauge).
 2. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
- H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission. Strictly comply with manufacturer's installation instruction.
1. Basis-of-Design: ClarkDietrich RC Deluxe, asymmetrical configuration.
- I. Resilient Sound Isolation Clips: Provide galvanized steel and resilient material sound-isolation clips, equal to the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control Co.; IsoMax.
 2. PAC International, Inc.; RSIC-1.
 3. Pliteq, Inc.; GenieClip.
 4. Studco Building Systems; Resilmount A237R.
- J. Spring Isolation Hangers: Provide galvanized and coated spring hanger system, equal to the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control Co.; ICW for wood framing, ICC for metal framing.
 2. PAC International, Inc.; RSIC--SI-CRC Pro Series.
- K. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum bare-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

- L. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- M. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

2.4 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. CertainTeed Gypsum, Inc.
 - 2. Georgia-Pacific (G-P) Gypsum.
 - 3. National Gypsum Company.
 - 4. United States Gypsum Company (USG).
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396.
 - 1. Available Products: USG; SHEETROCK EcoSmart Panels.
 - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch and 5/8 inch as indicated.
 - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 4. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.
 - 5. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.
- C. Gypsum Wallboard, Fire-Resistant Type X: ASTM C 1396.
 - 1. Available Products: USG; SHEETROCK EcoSmart Panels Firecode X.
 - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 4. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.
 - 5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 - 6. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.
- D. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
 - 4. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD.
 - 5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Declare product labels.
 - 6. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.
- E. Sound-Dampening Type: QuietRock ES Type X Standard Sound Damped Gypsum Board.
- F. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Panels: ASTM C 1629. Manufactured to produce greater resistance to surface indentation and through-penetration (impact resistance) than standard, regular-type and Type X gypsum board; 5/8 inch, Type X, long edges tapered.

- G. Impact-Resistant Gypsum Wallboard, Level 2: Sheetrock Brand Mold Tough VHI Firecode X by USG, ToughRock Fireguard X Mold-Guard Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board by Georgia-Pacific, or Gold Bond Hi-Impact XP Gypsum Board by National Gypsum.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Tile Backing Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard and Wonderboard Lite.
 - b. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; Permabase Cement Board.
 - d. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
 - 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc, with flanges for mechanical fastening, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. Expansion (control) joint. For control joints in fire rated walls provide Cemco FAS 093X fire-rated control joint or equal.
 - e. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
 - b. Gordon, Inc.
 - c. Pittcon Industries.
 - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5.
 - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
 - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
 - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
 - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
 - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.
 - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.

- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Cementitious Backing Units: Thinset, nonsag mortar, as recommended by backing unit manufacturer. Refer to Section 093000 - TILING.
 - 2. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 - 1. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
 - 3. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives.
 - 4. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious tile backing units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 3. For fastening abuse-resistant gypsum panels, use Type S 'high-low' screws.
 - 4. For fastening impact-resistant gypsum panels, use Type S 'high-low' screws.

- D. Acoustic Insulation, Sound Attenuation (Batts) Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; NoiseReducer.
 - b. Johns Manville; Unfaced Formaldehyde-Free Fiber Glass Insulation.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; EcoBatt.
 - d. Owens Corning; PINK Next Gen Fiberglass Sound Attenuation Batts (SAB).
 - e. Owens Corning; Thermafiber SAFB FF.
 - f. Rockwool (formerly Roxul); AFB evo.
 2. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
 3. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD).
 4. Recycled Content: Use minimum recycled content of 25%.
 5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 6. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: GreenGuard Gold certification.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, joint sealant, recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.
1. Available Products, for Concealed and Exposed Joints: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Pecora Corp.; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
 - b. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
 - c. USG; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
 2. Available Products, for Concealed Joints Only: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. OSI (a division of Henkel); Pro-Series SC-175.
 - b. Pecora Corp.; BA-98.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical/Curtainwall Sealant.
 3. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide sealants in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 4. VOC Content, Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L or less.
 5. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.
- 2.9 IDENTIFICATION LABELS FOR FIRE- AND SMOKE-PARTITIONS
- A. Identification Labels: Self-adhesive signs, to comply with applicable local Code.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Fire Wall Signs, Inc.
- b. Marking & Identification Tape.
- c. My Safety Sign.
- d. Safety Supply Warehouse.

2. Text: "FIRE AND SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754. Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components in sizes and spacings indicated on Drawings, but not less than those required by referenced installation standards for assembly types and other assembly components indicated.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
 - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 - 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 - 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 - 5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 - 6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 - 7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 - 8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.
- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

3.5 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.

- B. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- C. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on doorframes; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings, unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
 - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
 - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
 - 6. Curved Partitions:
 - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
 - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of not less than 2 studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.
- D. Direct Furring: Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- E. Z-Furring Members:
 - 1. Erect insulation vertically and hold in place with Z-furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
 - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
 - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.

3.6 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations, and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

3.7 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels to minimize end joints.
 - 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 - 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- B. Multilayer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints 1 framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
 4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
- C. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.
- D. Curved Surfaces:
1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch-long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
 2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches o.c.

3.8 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Tile Backing Units: ANSI A108.1, at locations indicated to receive tile, with joints treated to comply with ANSI A108.11.
- B. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install at areas not subject to wetting and elsewhere as indicated with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.9 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.10 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Comply with GA-214. Finish panels to levels indicated below:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas and concealed areas not exposed to view.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 3: Not Used.
 - 4. Level 4: Panel surfaces that will be exposed to view (typical panels).
 - 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings; includes areas to receive dry erase coatings, wall graphics, and wallcoverings.
- E. Cementitious Tile Backing Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 INSTALLING IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE- AND SMOKE-PARTITIONS

- A. Marking and Identification for Fire- and Smoke-Partitions: Permanently install as required by Code.

3.12 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or exhibit mold growth. Repair of damaged panels in place is not acceptable.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092120

GYP SUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
 2. Marking and identification for fire- and smoke-partitions.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 083110 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES for installation in gypsum board assemblies.
 2. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for non-shaft-wall gypsum board assemblies.
 3. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for applying and finishing panels in gypsum board assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gypsum Board Construction Terminology: Refer to ASTM C 11 for definitions of terms for gypsum board construction not defined in this Section or in other referenced standards.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance:
1. Provide gypsum board shaft wall assemblies capable of withstanding the full air-pressure loads indicated for maximum heights of partitions without failing and while maintaining an airtight and smoke-tight seal. Evidence of failure includes deflections exceeding limits indicated, bending stresses causing studs to break or to distort, and end-reaction shear causing track (runners) to bend or to shear and studs to become crippled.
 2. Provide gypsum board shaft wall assemblies for horizontal duct enclosures capable of spanning distances indicated within deflection limits indicated.
- B. Marking and Identification for Fire- and Smoke-Partitions: Fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers, smoke partitions and other walls required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling. Such identification shall:

1. Be located in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or attic spaces; and
2. Locate within 15 feet of end of each wall and repeat at intervals not exceeding 30 feet measured horizontally along the wall or partition; and
3. Include lettering not less than 3 inches in height with a minimum 3/8 inch stroke in contrasting color, incorporating the suggested wording: "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," or other wording.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Reports: From a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency substantiating each gypsum board shaft wall assembly's required fire-resistance rating.
 1. Include data substantiating that elevator entrances and other items that penetrate each gypsum board shaft wall assembly do not negate fire-resistance rating.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Indicated by design designations from FM's "Approval Guide, Building Products," UL's "Fire Resistance Directory," or ITS's "Directory of Listed Products."
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For gypsum board shaft wall assemblies indicated to have STC ratings, provide assembly materials and construction complying with requirements of assemblies whose STC ratings were determined according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements of Division 01. Review methods and procedures for installing work related to gypsum board shaft wall assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Fasteners proposed for anchoring steel framing to building structure.
 2. Sprayed fire-resistive materials applied to structural framing.
 3. Elevator equipment, including hoistway doors, elevator call buttons, and elevator floor indicators.
 4. Wiring devices in shaft wall assemblies.
 5. Doors and other items penetrating shaft wall assemblies.
 6. Items supported by shaft wall-assembly framing.
 7. Mechanical work enclosed within shaft wall assemblies.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages, containers, and bundles bearing brand name and identification of manufacturer or supplier.
- B. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack gypsum panels flat on leveled supports off the ground to prevent sagging.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for environmental conditions, room temperatures, and ventilation specified in Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. CertainTeed Gypsum, Inc.
 - 2. National Gypsum Company.
 - 3. United States Gypsum Company (USG).

2.2 ASSEMBLY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and components complying with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated.
 - 1. Provide panels in maximum lengths available to eliminate or minimize end-to-end butt joints.
 - 2. Provide auxiliary materials complying with gypsum board shaft wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Steel Framing: ASTM C 645.
 - 1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized coating.
- C. Gypsum Liner Panels: Manufacturer's proprietary liner panels in 1-inch thickness and with moisture-resistant paper faces.
- D. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396, core type as required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Accessories: Cornerbead, edge trim, and control joints of material and shapes specified in Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES comply with gypsum board shaft wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations for application indicated.
- F. Gypsum Wallboard Joint-Treatment Materials: ASTM C 475 and as specified in Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.
- G. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Track (Runner) Fasteners: Power-driven fasteners of size and material required to withstand loading conditions imposed on shaft wall assemblies without exceeding allowable design stress of track, fasteners, or structural substrates in which anchors are embedded.
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Provide powder-actuated fasteners with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by shaft wall assemblies, as determined by testing conducted by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM E 1190.

2. Postinstalled Expansion Anchors: Where indicated, provide expansion anchors with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by shaft wall assemblies, as determined by testing conducted by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM E 488.

I. Laminating Adhesive: Comply with requirements of Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.

J. Acoustic Insulation, Sound Attenuation (Batts) Blankets: Comply with requirements of Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.

K. Acoustical Sealant: Comply with requirements of Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES.

2.3 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL

A. Basis-of-Design Product: As indicated on Drawings by design designation of a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

B. Sustained Air-Pressure Loads: 5 lbf/sq. ft.

C. Deflection Limit: L/240.

D. Studs: Manufacturer's standard profile for repetitive members and corner and end members and for fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

1. Depth: As indicated.

2. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thicknesses that comply with structural performance requirements for stud depth indicated.

E. Track (Runner): Manufacturer's standard J-profile track with long-leg length as standard with manufacturer, but at least 2 inches in depth matching studs.

1. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thicknesses that comply with structural performance requirements for stud depth indicated.

F. Jamb Struts: Manufacturer's standard J-profile strut with long-leg length of 3 inches, in depth matching studs, and not less than 0.0341 inch thick.

G. Room-Side and Shaft-Side Finish: As indicated.

H. STC Rating: As indicated.

I. Cavity Insulation: Sound attenuation blankets.

2.4 IDENTIFICATION LABELS FOR FIRE- AND SMOKE-PARTITIONS

A. Identification Labels: Self-adhesive signs, to comply with applicable local Code.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Fire Wall Signs, Inc.

- b. Marking & Identification Tape.
- c. My Safety Sign.
- d. Safety Supply Warehouse.

2. Text: "FIRE AND SMOKE BARRIER-PROTECT ALL OPENINGS"

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to which gypsum board shaft wall assemblies attach or abut, with Installer present, including hollow-metal frames, elevator hoistway doorframes, cast-in anchors, and structural framing. Examine for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials: Coordinate with gypsum shaft wall assemblies so both elements of Work remain complete and undamaged. Patch or replace sprayed fire-resistive materials removed or damaged during installation of shaft wall assemblies.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
 - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gypsum board shaft wall assemblies to comply with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and the following:
 - 1. ASTM C 754 for installing steel framing and gypsum shaft wallboard.
- B. Do not bridge building expansion joints with shaft wall assemblies; frame both sides of joints with furring and other support.
- C. Install supplementary framing in gypsum board shaft wall assemblies around openings and as required for blocking, bracing, and support of gravity and pullout loads of fixtures, equipment, services, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar items that cannot be supported directly by shaft wall assembly framing.
 - 1. At elevator hoistway doorframes, provide jamb struts on each side of doorframe.
 - 2. Where handrails directly attach to gypsum board shaft wall assemblies, provide galvanized steel reinforcing strip with 0.0312-inch minimum thickness of base (uncoated) metal, accurately positioned and secured behind at least 1 face-layer panel.

- D. Integrate stair hanger rods with gypsum board shaft wall assemblies by locating cavity of assemblies where required to enclose rods.
- E. At penetrations in shaft wall, maintain fire-resistance rating of shaft wall assembly by installing supplementary steel framing around perimeter of penetration and fire protection behind boxes containing wiring devices, elevator call buttons, elevator floor indicators, and similar items.
- F. Isolate gypsum finish panels from building structure to prevent cracking of finish panels while maintaining continuity of fire-rated construction.
- G. Install control joints to maintain fire-resistance rating of assemblies.
- H. Seal gypsum board shaft walls with acoustical sealant at perimeter of each assembly where it abuts other work and at joints and penetrations within each assembly. Install acoustical sealant to withstand dislocation by air-pressure differential between shaft and external spaces; maintain an airtight and smoke-tight seal; and comply with manufacturer's written instructions or ASTM C 919, whichever is more stringent.

3.4 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas and concealed areas not exposed to view.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 4: Panel surfaces that will be exposed to view (typical panels).
 - 4. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.

3.5 INSTALLING IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE- AND SMOKE-PARTITIONS

- A. Marking and Identification for Fire- and Smoke-Partitions: Permanently install as required by Code.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or exhibit mold growth. Repair of damaged panels in place is not acceptable.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 093000

TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Floor, wall, and base tiles.
 - 2. Setting materials and accessories.
 - 3. Surface preparation.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealing of movement joints in tile surfaces.
 - 2. Section 083110 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES for installation in tile.
 - 3. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for tile backing panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Large Format Tile: Tile with at least one edge 15 inches or longer.
- D. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wet Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: For flooring exposed as a walking surface, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ANSI/ NFSI B101.3 - 2012 Test Method for Measuring Wet DCOF of Common Hard-Surface Floor Materials, or ANSI 326.3 - American National Standard Test Method for Measuring Dynamic Coefficient of Friction of Hard Surface Materials - 2017. Testing by other methods or earlier editions of the specified test method is not acceptable.
 - 1. Wet Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.43.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of movement joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
 - 1. For feature spaces including lobbies, reception areas, corridors, and similar, include layout drawings based on field measurements.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. Make samples at least 12 inches square, but not fewer than four tiles. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed work.
 - 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
 - 3. Stone Thresholds: 6-inch lengths.
 - 4. Metal Edge Strips: 6-inch lengths.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Product Test Reports: For each tile setting product.
 - 1. Tile-setting and -grouting products.
 - 2. Certified porcelain tile.
 - 3. Slip-resistance test reports from qualified independent testing agency.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of same type and color or finish from one source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each membrane, mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section through one source from a single manufacturer for each product:
 - 1. Stone thresholds.
 - 2. Metal edge strips.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.
 - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrate flatness and for preparation by other trades.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement in ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Store liquid additives in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Tiling Contractor's Warranty: The tiling subcontractor shall supply Owner with a minimum two-year workmanship warranty for each tile area. In the event any work related to the tiling and setting materials is found to be defective within two years of substantial completion, the tiling contractor shall remove and replace such at no additional cost to the Owner. The tiling subcontractor's warranty obligation shall run directly to the Owner, and a copy the tiling signed warranty shall be sent to the tiling system's manufacturer.
 - 1. The duration of the tiling subcontractor's two-year warranty shall run concurrent with the tiling system's manufacturer's 25-year warranty.
- B. Tiling Systems Manufacturer's Warranty: The tiling systems manufacturer shall guarantee installed tile areas to be in a fully bonded, uncracked, flat, and watertight condition, for a period of 5 years, from the date of final acceptance of the tiling system. The warranty shall be a 5-year no dollar limit (NDL), non-prorated total system labor and material warranty. Total system warranty shall include tiling materials, related components and accessories including, but not limited to the substrate board, waterproofing and crack isolation membranes, mortars, grouts, adhesives, transition materials, and floor drain assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide Standard-grade tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 - 1. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.
 - 2. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD for ceramic tiles.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Tile Types: Refer to Finish Schedule.
- B. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- C. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes selected from manufacturer's standard shapes.

2.3 THRESHOLDS AND EDGE STRIPS

- A. Thresholds: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 - 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503/C 503M, with a minimum abrasion resistance of 10 according to ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241/C 241M and with honed finish.
 - 1. Description: Uniform, fine- to medium-grained white stone with gray veining.
- C. Metal Edge Strips and Flooring Transitions: Angle or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and resilient base, designed specifically for flooring applications.
 - 1. Basis of Design: Schluter Systems.
 - 2. Material: ASTM B 221, extruded aluminum, with clear anodized satin finish.

2.4 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Custom Building Products.
 - 2. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - 3. MAPEI Corporation.
- B. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds, for Concrete Substrates: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- C. Waterproofing and Crack Isolation Membrane: Manufacturer's standard product, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and ANSI A118.12 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

- D. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Waterproofing and Crack Isolation Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; 9240 Waterproofing and Anti-Fracture Membrane.
 - b. Laticrete; Hydro Ban.
 - c. MAPEI; Mapelastic AquaDefense.
 2. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 3. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Provide membranes in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - a. VOC Content, Waterproofing Sealer: 100 g/L or less.
 - b. GreenGuard Gold certification.
- E. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
 2. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD for mortar.
- F. Modified Dry-Set (formerly Latex-Portland Cement) Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.
1. For Exterior Glue Plywood (EGP) Modified Dry-Set Mortar, comply with ANSI A118.11.
 2. For Large and Heavy Tile, Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortars, comply with ANSI A118.15.
 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
 5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD for mortar.
- G. Medium-Bed, Latex-Portland Cement Mortar: Provide materials composed as follows, with physical properties equaling or exceeding those required for thin-set mortars based on testing of medium-bed specimens according to ANSI A118.4:
1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 2. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix combined with liquid-latex additive.
 3. Product: Laticrete 220 Medium Bed Mortar with 333 Superflex, or approved equal.
- H. Mesh Tape for Tile Backing Panels: Alkali-resistant type, as recommended by panel manufacturer.
- I. Tile Grout, Cementitious Type: ANSI A118.7, liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; Polyblend.
 - b. Laticrete; Permacolor Select.
 - c. MAPEI; Keracolor.
 2. Cementitious Grout Types:
 - a. Unsanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch and narrower.
 - b. Sanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch and wider.
 3. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 4. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Type III EPD for grout.
 5. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 6. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Provide membranes in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - a. VOC Content, Ceramic, Glass, Porcelain, and Stone Tile Adhesives: 65 g/L or less.
 - b. GreenGuard Gold certification.
- J. Tile Grout, Epoxy Type: ANSI A118.3, chemical resistant, water cleanable, tile grouting epoxy.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; CEG-IG.
 - b. Laticrete; SpectraLock Pro.
 - c. MAPEI; Kerapoxy.
 2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 3. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Material Ingredients: Health Product Declaration (HPD) or Declare product labels.
 4. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Provide membranes in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - a. VOC Content, Ceramic, Glass, Porcelain, and Stone Tile Adhesives: 65 g/L or less.
 - b. GreenGuard Gold certification.
- K. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

- L. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard silicone product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.
 - 1. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Provide membranes in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - a. VOC Content, Tile and Stone Sealers: 100 g/L or less.
 - b. GreenGuard Gold certification.

2.5 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants: Refer to Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.
- B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.

- B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.
 - 1. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions with trowelable leveling and patching compound according to tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions. Use product specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.
- C. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- D. Cementitious Tile Backing Panels: Treat joints to comply with ANSI A108.11.
- E. Substrate Flatness:
 - 1. For tile shorter than 15 inches, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to variation of 1/4 inch in 10 ft. from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 12 inches when measured from tile surface high points.
 - 2. For large format tile, tile with at least one edge 15 inches or longer, confirm that structure or substrate is limited to 1/8 inch in 10 ft. from the required plane, and no more than 1/16 inch in 24 inches when measured from tile surface high points.
- F. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 TILING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.
- B. Membrane Installation:
 - 1. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.
 - 2. Install crack-isolation membrane to comply ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.
 - 3. Do not install tile over membrane until membrane has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.
- C. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 - 1. Follow procedures in ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing minimum percent levels of mortar coverage.
 - 2. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
 - 3. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items

for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

- D. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - E. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
 - F. Expansion (Movement) Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Keep joints free of dirt, debris, and setting materials prior to filling with sealants. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS.
 - G. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in mortar (thinset).
 - 2. Do not extend membranes under thresholds set in mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on membrane with elastomeric sealant.
 - H. Metal Edge Strips and Flooring Transitions: Install at locations indicated and where exposed edge of tile flooring meets other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
 - I. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to grout joints according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.
- 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING
- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
 - B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal sur-

- faces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent it from clogging drains.
- C. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
 - D. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed. After seven days, cover areas subject to construction traffic with heavy cardboard.
 - E. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.5 TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. This schedule refers to Tile Installation Methods specified in the TCNA Handbook.
- B. Floor Tile Over Slab on Grade Concrete, Typical: TCNA F113 and ANSI A108.5.
 1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
 5. Crack isolation membrane, at large format tile.
- C. Floor Tile Over Concrete, at Commercial Kitchen and Servery Areas: TCNA F115 and ANSI A108.5 or ANSI A108.6.
 1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Epoxy.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
- D. Floor Tile Over Elevated Slab Concrete, at Toilet Rooms: TCNA F122 and ANSI A108.5.
 1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
 5. Waterproofing membrane.
- E. Floor Tile Over Wood Subflooring, at Bathrooms, Kitchens, and Toilet Rooms: TCNA F144 and ANSI A108.5.
 1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
 5. Waterproofing membrane.
 6. Cementitious tile backing panels.

- F. Floor Tile Over Gypsum Cement Underlayment and Wood Subflooring, at Bathrooms, Kitchens, and Toilet Rooms: TCNA F185 and ANSI A108.5.
1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
 5. Waterproofing membrane.
- G. Wall Tile, Typical Over Cementitious Tile Backing Panels: TCNA W244C and ANSI A108.5.
1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
- H. Wall Tile Over Cementitious Tile Backing Panels, at Bathtubs and Showers: TCNA B420 and ANSI A108.5.
1. Tile Type: Refer to Finish Schedule.
 2. Mortar: Thinset.
 3. Grout: Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 4. Joint Width: 1/8 inch.
 5. Waterproofing membrane.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 095100

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Acoustical ceiling tiles and panels.
 2. Suspension systems, grid systems and ceiling hangers.
 3. Acoustical sealant at edge moldings at acoustical ceilings.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for gypsum board ceilings and soffits.
 2. Division 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION for fire-suppression components located in ceilings.
 3. Division 23 - HEATING, VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING for air handling and distribution components located in ceilings.
 4. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL for light fixture and alarm system components located in ceilings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounted items. Show the following:
1. Ceiling suspension members.
 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
1. Acoustical Panel: Set of 6 inch square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
 2. Exposed Suspension System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 12 inch long Samples of each type, finish, and color.

- D. Asbestos Certification: Manufacturer's written certification that acoustical ceiling products contain no asbestos (0.0000%). Product labels indicating that it is the user's responsibility to test the products for asbestos are unacceptable and sufficient cause for rejection of the product on site.
- E. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations:
 - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 2. Suspension Systems: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 3. Seismic Performance: Acoustical ceiling shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide acoustical panel ceilings identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another testing and inspecting agency.
 - 3. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution.
 - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS-OF-DESIGN

- A. Basis-of-Design Products: Refer to the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Armstrong Ceilings.
 - 2. CertainTeed Ceilings.
 - 3. USG.

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
 - 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
 - 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
 - 4. Cap Material: Steel or aluminum cold-rolled sheet.
 - 5. Color: White, prefinished.
 - 6. Grid Face Width: As specified with ACT type.
 - 7. Recycled Content: Use minimum recycled content of 25%.
- B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency; zinc-plated for Class SC1 service.
 - a. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or

other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:

1. Zinc-Coated Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.

a. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106 diameter wire.

D. Hold-Down Clips: At vestibules and areas subject to wind uplift, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches on all cross tees.

2.4 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Roll-Formed Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.

1. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.

2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

3. For narrow-face suspension systems, provide suspension system and manufacturer's standard edge moldings that match width and configuration of exposed runners.

B. Suspension Trim: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Axiom.

2. CertainTeed Ceilings; Approved equal.

3. USG Interiors, Inc.; Compasso.

2.5 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Acoustical Sealant, for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, joint sealant, recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. OSI (a division of Henkel); Pro-Series SC-175.

b. Pecora Corp.; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.

c. Pecora Corp.; BA-98.

d. Specified Technologies, Inc. (STI); Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.

e. USG; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

2. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide adhesives and sealants in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
3. VOC Content, Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L or less.
4. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to sealants.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 6. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 7. Space hangers not more than 48 o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.

- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
 - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 - 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 - 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
 - 1. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096513

RESILIENT WALL BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Resilient wall base and accessories.
 - 2. Resilient stair accessories.
 - 3. Substrate preparation for resilient accessories.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 096800 - CARPETING for carpet accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of resilient wall base and accessories required.
 - 1. Resilient Wall Base and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 12 inches long, of each resilient product color and pattern required.
- C. Maintenance Data: For resilient products to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products identical to those tested for fire-exposure behavior per test method indicated by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store tiles on flat surfaces.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After postinstallation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor covering installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor covering installation.
- E. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESILIENT WALL BASE

- A. Resilient Wall Base: ASTM F 1861.
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Burke Flooring Products.
 - 3. Johnsonite, a division of Tarkett.
 - 4. Marley Flexco (USA), Inc.
 - 5. Nora Systems, Inc.
 - 6. Roppe Corporation.
- B. Style and Colors: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.
- C. Type (Material Requirement): TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset) or TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
- D. Shape: Straight (toeless) at carpet and coved at resilient flooring.
- E. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- F. Height: 4 inches.
- G. Lengths: Cut lengths 48 inches long or coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- H. Outside Corners: Premolded.
- I. Inside Corners: Premolded.
- J. Surface: Smooth.

2.2 RESILIENT STAIR ACCESSORIES

- A. Resilient Treads and Risers: ASTM F 2169.

1. Burke Flooring Products.
2. Endura.
3. Johnsonite, a division of Tarkett.
4. Nora Systems, Inc.
5. Roppe Corporation.

B. Style and Colors: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.

C. Material: Rubber, Composition A.

D. Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece.

E. Stringers: Of same thickness as risers, height and length after cutting to fit risers and treads and to cover stair stringers; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.

2.3 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Types Include the Following as Applicable: Cap for cove carpet, cap for cove resilient sheet floor covering, carpet edge for glue-down applications, nosing for carpet, nosing for resilient floor covering, reducer strip for resilient floor covering, joiner for tile and carpet

1. Burke Flooring Products.
2. Endura
3. Johnsonite, a division of Tarkett.
4. Mondo Rubber International, Inc.
5. Nora Systems, Inc.
6. Roppe Corporation.

B. Material: Rubber.

C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland cement based or blended hydraulic cement based formulation provided or approved by resilient product manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

- a. Cove Base Adhesives: 50 g/L.
- b. Rubber Floor Adhesives: 60 g/L.

C. Stair-Tread-Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.

D. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of width shown, of height required to protect exposed edges of tiles, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within a range on pH scale not less than 5 or more than 9 pH, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.
 - 3. Moisture Vapor Emission Testing:
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.
 - 4. Relative Humidity Testing:
 - a. Perform relative humidity test, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum relative humidity level of 75 percent, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.
 - 5. Perform tests indicated above and as recommended by flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
- D. Use trowelable leveling and patching compound to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- E. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
 - 1. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

- F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, and dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 RESILIENT WALL BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Apply wall base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- B. Install wall base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- C. Tightly adhere wall base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- D. Do not stretch wall base during installation.
- E. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of wall base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- F. Premolded Corners: Install premolded corners before installing straight pieces.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
 - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
 - 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor coverings that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
 - a. Do not wash surfaces until after time period recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 1. Cover products installed on horizontal surfaces with undyed, untreated building paper until Substantial Completion.

2. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over surfaces. Place hardboard or plywood panels over flooring and under objects while they are being moved. Slide or roll objects over panels without moving panels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096800

CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Carpet tile.
 2. Carpet accessories.
 3. Substrate preparation for carpet and accessories.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 096510 - RESILIENT FLOORING AND ACCESSORIES for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate required.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet.
 2. Existing flooring materials to be removed.
 3. Existing flooring materials to remain.
 4. Carpet type, color, and dye lot.
 5. Seam locations, types, and methods.
 6. Type of subfloor.
 7. Type of installation.
 8. Pattern type, repeat size, location, direction, and starting point.
 9. Pile direction.
 10. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
 11. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
 12. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch-long Samples.

- D. Product Schedule: Use same room and product designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- F. Maintenance Data: For carpet to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 01. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Carpeting Standard: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard," 2011 edition, formerly CRI 104 "Standard For Installation Specification Of Commercial Carpet."
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the Floor Covering Installation Board or who can demonstrate compliance with its certification program requirements.
- C. Mockups: Before installing carpet, build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 5, "Storage and Handling."
- B. Deliver carpet in original mill protective covering with mill register numbers and tags attached.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. General: Comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 7, "Site Conditions."
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- C. Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions, equipment, or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet, install carpet before installing these items.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

- B. Special Carpet Warranty: Written warranty, signed by carpet manufacturer agreeing to replace carpet that does not comply with requirements or that fails within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent loss of face fiber, edge raveling, snags, runs, and delamination.

1. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS (ATTIC STOCK)

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Carpet: Full-width rolls and tiles equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Ege Carpets.
2. InterfaceFLOR.
3. J&J Invision Carpet.
4. Milliken & Co.
5. Mohawk Group.
6. Shaw, a Berkshire Hathaway Co.
7. Tandus Centiva, a Tarkett Company.

2.2 CARPET

- A. Carpet Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1. Carpet Types (CPT-#): Refer to Finish Schedule.
2. Building Product Disclosure and Optimization, Environmental Product Declarations (EPD): Product specific Type III EPD.
3. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Carpet and Rug Institute Green Label Plus.
4. Do not permit polyvinyl chloride (PVC) or styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) carpet backing materials.

- B. Performance Characteristics:

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm according to NFPA 253.
2. Smoke Density: Not more than 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 662 or NFPA 258.
3. Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 3.5 kV according to AATCC 134.

2.3 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided by or recommended by the carpet manufacturer.

- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet and that is recommended by carpet manufacturer.
 - 1. Low-Emitting Materials, General Emissions Evaluation: Provide adhesives in compliance with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. VOC Content: Not more than 50 g/L.
 - 3. Methylene chloride and perchloroethylene may not be intentionally added to adhesives. Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
- C. Adhesive Film, for Carpet Tiles: Pressure sensitive adhesive, applied on one side of a polyester film, recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. InterfaceFLOR; TacTiles.
 - b. Shaw; LokDots Adhesive.
 - c. Tandus Centiva; TandusTape+

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for carpet installation and comply with requirements specified.
- B. Examine carpet for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Subfloors: Comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 9, "Testing Concrete Substrates." Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
 - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by the carpet manufacturer.
 - 2. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 7.3, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet installation.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within a range on pH scale not

less than 5 or more than 9 pH, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.

3. Moisture Vapor Emission Testing:

a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.

4. Relative Humidity Testing:

a. Perform relative humidity test, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum relative humidity level of 75 percent, or as otherwise required in writing by manufacturer of flooring.

5. Perform tests indicated above and as recommended by flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.

C. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.

D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, or dust. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Carpet Tile: Comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 18, "Modular Carpet," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.

1. Installation Method, for Adhesive: Partial glue down; install periodic tiles with releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.

2. Installation Method, for Adhesive Film: Free lay; apply adhesive film squares at corners of tiles.

a. Do not install tiles with adhesive film at stair and ramp locations.

b. Do not install tiles with adhesive film over existing carpets.

3. Installation Method, for No Adhesives: Free lay; press tiles firmly.

a. Do not install tiles without adhesive at stair and ramp locations.

b. Do not install tiles without adhesive over existing carpets.

4. Carpet Tile Pattern: As directed by Architect.

5. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.

B. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

C. Do not bridge building expansion joints with carpet.

D. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.

E. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.

- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element and HEPA filter.
- B. Protect installed carpet to comply with CRI Carpet Installation Standard, Section 20, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 097200

WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Vinyl wall covering.
 - 2. Textile wall covering.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for primers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and flame-resistance characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement, seams and termination points.
- C. Samples for Verification: Full width by 3 ft. long section of wall covering.
 - 1. Sample from same print run or dye lot to be used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat. Mark top and face of fabric.
- D. Product Schedule: For wall coverings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for wall covering.
- G. Maintenance Data: For wall coverings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows, per ASTM E 84:
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 2. Fire-Growth Contribution: Textile wall coverings tested according to NFPA 265 and complying with test protocol and criteria in the 2003 IBC.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockups for each type of wall covering on each substrate required. Comply with requirements in ASTM F 1141.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until a permanent level of lighting is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
 - C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS-OF-DESIGN PRODUCTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Products: Refer to the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Wall covering system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 VINYL WALL COVERING

- A. Vinyl Wall-Covering Standards: Provide mildew-resistant products complying with the following:
 1. ASTM F 793 for strippable wall coverings that qualify as Category V, Type II, Commercial Serviceability products.
- B. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.

2.4 TEXTILE WALL COVERING

- A. Wall-Covering Standard: Provide mildew-resistant strippable wall coverings that comply with ASTM F 793 for Category V, Type II, Commercial Serviceability products.

- B. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As indicated on the Finish Schedule.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application; as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 1. Adhesive shall have VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING and recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer for intended substrate.
- C. Wall Liner: Nonwoven, synthetic underlayment and adhesive as recommended by wall-covering manufacturer.
- D. Seam Tape: As recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for levelness, wall plumbness, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 - 2. Plaster: Allow new plaster to cure. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 3. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 4. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.
- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
- E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

- F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.
- G. Install wall liner, with no gaps or overlaps, where required by wall-covering manufacturer. Form smooth wrinkle-free surface for finished installation. Do not begin wall-covering installation until wall liner has dried.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with wall covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated except where more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- C. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
- D. Install wall covering with no gaps or overlaps, no lifted or curling edges, and no visible shrinkage.
- E. Match pattern 6 ft. above the finish floor.
- F. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 in. from outside corners and 6 in. from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. No horizontal seams are permitted.
- G. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.
- H. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without any overlay or spacing between strips.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at finished seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099000

PAINTING AND COATING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:

1. Field painting of exposed interior items and surfaces.
2. Field painting of exposed exterior items and surfaces.
3. Surface preparation for painting.

- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING for shop priming structural steel.
2. Section 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS for shop priming ferrous metal.
3. Section 064020 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK for shop priming interior architectural woodwork.
4. Section 078100 - APPLIED FIREPROOFING for intumescent fire-resistive coatings.
5. Section 081110 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES for factory priming steel doors and frames.
6. Section 081400 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS for factory finishing.
7. Section 092110 - GYPSUM BOARD ASSEMBLIES for surface preparation of gypsum board.

1.3 DEFINITIONS AND EXTENT

- A. General: Standard coating terms defined in ASTM D 16 apply to this Section.

1. Flat refers to a lusterless or matte finish with a gloss range below 15 when measured at an 85-degree meter.
2. Eggshell refers to low-sheen finish with a gloss range between 20 and 35 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
3. Semigloss refers to medium-sheen finish with a gloss range between 35 and 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.
4. Full gloss refers to high-sheen finish with a gloss range more than 70 when measured at a 60-degree meter.

- B. This Section includes surface preparation and field painting of exposed exterior and interior items and surfaces.

1. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.
- C. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted or is to remain natural. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from standard colors and finishes available.
1. Painting includes field painting of exposed bare and covered pipes and ducts (including color coding), hangers, exposed steel and iron supports, and surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment that do not have a factory-applied final finish.
- D. **Do NOT paint prefinished items, concealed surfaces, finished metal surfaces, operating parts, and labels.**
1. Prefinished items include the following factory-finished components:
 - a. Architectural woodwork.
 - b. Acoustical wall panels.
 - c. Toilet enclosures.
 - d. Metal lockers.
 - e. Kitchen appliances.
 - f. Elevator entrance doors and frames.
 - g. Elevator equipment.
 - h. Finished mechanical and electrical equipment.
 - i. Light fixtures.
 2. Concealed surfaces include walls or ceilings in the following generally inaccessible spaces:
 - a. Foundation spaces.
 - b. Furred areas.
 - c. Ceiling plenums.
 - d. Utility tunnels.
 - e. Pipe spaces.
 - f. Duct shafts.
 - g. Elevator shafts.
 3. Finished metal surfaces include the following:
 - a. Anodized aluminum.
 - b. Stainless steel.
 - c. Chromium plate.
 - d. Copper and copper alloys.
 - e. Bronze and brass.
 4. Operating parts include moving parts of operating equipment and the following:
 - a. Valve and damper operators.
 - b. Linkages.
 - c. Sensing devices.
 - d. Motor and fan shafts.

5. Labels: Do not paint over UL, FMG, or other code-required labels or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each paint system indicated. Include block fillers and primers.
 1. Material List: An inclusive list of required coating materials. Indicate each material and cross-reference specific coating, finish system, and application. Identify each material by manufacturer's catalog number and general classification.
 - a. Disclose material ingredients by name and Chemical Abstract Service (CAS) Registry Number.
 2. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each color and material to be applied, with texture to simulate actual conditions, on representative Samples of the actual substrate.
 1. Provide stepped Samples, defining each separate coat, including block fillers and primers. Use representative colors when preparing Samples for review. Resubmit until required sheen, color, and texture are achieved.
 2. Provide a list of materials and applications for each coat of each Sample. Label each Sample for location and application.
 3. Submit two 8 inch by 12 inch Samples for each type of finish coating for Architect's review of color and texture only.
- C. Qualification Data: For Applicator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in applying paints and coatings similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain block fillers and primers for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.
- C. Mockups: Provide a full-coat benchmark finish sample for each type of coating and substrate required. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P5. Duplicate finish of approved sample Submittals.
 1. Architect will select one room or surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each type of coating and substrate.
 - a. Wall Surfaces: Provide samples on at least 100 sq. ft.
 - b. Small Areas and Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
 2. Apply benchmark samples, according to requirements for the completed Work, after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated. Provide required sheen, color, and texture on each surface.

- a. After finishes are accepted, Architect will use the room or surface to evaluate coating systems of a similar nature.
 3. Final approval of colors will be from benchmark samples.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and the following information:
 1. Product name or title of material.
 2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
 3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
 4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
 5. Thinning instructions.
 6. Application instructions.
 7. Color name and number.
 8. VOC content.
 - B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain storage containers in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Apply waterborne paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 50 and 90 deg F.
 - B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when temperatures of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air are between 45 and 95 deg F.
 - C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
 1. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.
- 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS (ATTIC STOCK)
- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Paint: Furnish one unopened gallon of each type of paint and coating work, in color and gloss as used for the Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work are listed in the Finish Schedule at the end of this Section.

2.2 PAINT MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide block fillers, primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.
1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

- C. **Paint Colors (PT-#): Refer to Finish Schedule.**

- D. **Low-Emitting Materials:** Interior paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. VOC Content Limits, for Interior Paints and Coatings:

1. **Default: 50 g/L.**
2. **Dry-Fog Coatings: 50 g/L.**
3. **Flats: 50 g/L.**
4. **Floor Coatings: 50 g/L.**
5. **Industrial Maintenance (IM) Coatings: 100 g/L.**
6. **Color indicating safety coatings: 480 g/L.**
7. **Zinc rich IM primers: 100 g/L.**
8. **Metallic pigmented coatings: 150 g/L.**
9. **Multi-color coatings: 250 g/L.**
10. **Non-flat coatings: 50 g/L.**
11. **Pre-treatment wash primers: 420 g/L.**
12. **Primers, sealers and undercoaters: 100 g/L.**
13. **Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.**
14. **Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.**
15. **Specialty Primers: 100 g/L.**
16. **Stains: 100 g/L.**
17. **Stains, Interior: 250 g/L.**
18. **Wood Coatings, Varnish: 275 g/L.**
19. **Wood Coatings, Sanding Sealer: 275 g/L.**
20. **Wood Coatings, Lacquer: 275 g/L.**
21. **Wood Conditioners: 100 g/L.**
22. **Colorant Added to Architectural Coatings, excluding IM coatings: 50 g/L.**
23. **Colorant Added to Solvent Based IM: 600 g/L.**

24. Colorant Added to Waterborne IM: 50 g/L.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for paint application.
 - 1. Proceed with paint application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces receiving paint are thoroughly dry.
 - 2. Start of painting will be construed as Applicator's acceptance of surfaces and conditions within a particular area.
- B. Coordination of Work: Review other Sections in which primers are provided to ensure compatibility of the total system for various substrates. On request, furnish information on characteristics of finish materials to ensure use of compatible primers.
 - 1. Notify Architect about anticipated problems when using the materials specified over substrates primed by others.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of the item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations in each space or area, reinstall items removed using workers skilled in the trades involved.
- B. Cleaning: Before applying paint or other surface treatments, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of the various coatings. Remove oil and grease before cleaning.
 - 1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
 - 2. Use low-emitting, environmentally friendly cleaning agents and procedures, including but not limited to trisodium phosphate (TSP) diluted with warm water. Do not use ammonia-, chlorine bleach-, or solvent-based cleaners, unless authorized in writing by Architect.
- C. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions and technical bulletins for each particular substrate condition and as specified.
 - 1. Provide barrier coats over incompatible primers or remove and reprime.
 - 2. Cementitious Materials: Prepare concrete, concrete unit masonry, cement plaster, and mineral-fiber-reinforced cement panel surfaces to be painted. Remove efflorescence, chalk, dust, dirt, grease, oils, and release agents. Roughen as required to remove glaze. If hardeners or sealers have been used to improve curing, use mechanical methods of surface preparation.
 - a. Use abrasive blast-cleaning methods if recommended by paint manufacturer.

- b. Determine alkalinity and moisture content of surfaces by performing appropriate tests. If surfaces are sufficiently alkaline to cause the finish paint to blister and burn, correct this condition before application. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
 - c. Clean concrete floors to be painted with a 5 percent solution of muriatic acid or other etching cleaner. Flush the floor with clean water to remove acid, neutralize with ammonia, rinse, allow to dry, and vacuum before painting.
 3. Wood: Clean surfaces of dirt, oil, and other foreign substances with scrapers, mineral spirits, and sandpaper, as required. Sand surfaces exposed to view smooth and dust off.
 - a. Scrape and clean small, dry, seasoned knots, and apply a thin coat of recommended knot sealer before applying primer. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
 - b. Prime, stain, or seal wood to be painted immediately on delivery. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and back sides of wood, including cabinets, counters, cases, and paneling.
 - c. If transparent finish is required, backprime with clear sealer.
 - d. Backprime paneling on interior partitions where masonry, plaster, or other wet wall construction occurs on back side.
 - e. Seal tops, bottoms, and cutouts of unprimed wood doors with a heavy coat of varnish or sealer immediately on delivery.
 4. Ferrous Metals: Clean ungalvanized ferrous-metal surfaces that have not been shop coated; remove oil, grease, dirt, loose mill scale, and other foreign substances. Use solvent or mechanical cleaning methods that comply with SSPC's recommendations.
 - a. Exterior Exposed Steel: Clean steel surfaces in accordance with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 Commercial Blast Cleaning. Abrasive blast cleaned surfaces shall exhibit a uniform, angular profile of 1.5-3.0 mils. Prime cleaned surfaces within 8 hours and prior to surface rusting.
 - b. Interior Exposed Steel, in Humid Environments: Clean steel surfaces in accordance with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 Commercial Blast Cleaning. Abrasive blast cleaned surfaces shall exhibit a uniform, angular profile of 1.5-3.0 mils. Prime cleaned surfaces within 8 hours and prior to surface rusting.
 - c. Interior Exposed Steel, in Dry Environments: Clean steel surfaces in accordance with SSPC-SP2 or SP3 Hand or Power Tool Cleaning.
 5. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean galvanized surfaces in accordance with SSPC-SP16 Brush off Blast Cleaning of Galvanized Steel and NonFerrous Metals, to achieve a minimum 1 mil anchor profile.
- D. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
 3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
- E. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.
1. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
 2. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
 3. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
 4. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, grilles, convector covers, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
 5. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture the same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation of equipment, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 6. Paint interior surfaces of ducts with a flat, nonspecular black paint where visible through registers or grilles.
 7. Paint backsides of access panels and removable or hinged covers to match exposed surfaces.
 8. Finish exterior doors and doors in wet areas on tops, bottoms, and side edges the same as exterior faces.
 9. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
- B. Scheduling Painting: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
1. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
 2. Omit primer over metal surfaces that have been shop primed and touchup painted.
 3. If undercoats, stains, or other conditions show through final coat of paint, apply additional coats until paint film is of uniform finish, color, and appearance. Give special attention to ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
 4. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
- C. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
 2. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
 3. Spray Equipment: Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
- D. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.

- E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Painting of mechanical and electrical work is limited to items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces.
 - F. Mechanical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - 2. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - 3. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - 4. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
 - 5. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
 - 6. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having "all-service jacket" or other paintable jacket material.
 - 7. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
 - G. Electrical items to be painted include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Switchgear.
 - 2. Panelboards.
 - 3. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
 - H. Block Fillers: Apply block fillers to concrete masonry block at a rate to ensure complete coverage with pores filled.
 - I. Prime Coats: Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
 - J. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
 - K. Transparent (Clear) Finishes: Use multiple coats to produce a glass-smooth surface film of even luster. Provide a finish free of laps, runs, cloudiness, color irregularity, brush marks, orange peel, nail holes, or other surface imperfections.
 - 1. Provide satin finish for final coats.
 - L. Completed Work: Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. The Owner reserves the right to invoke the following test procedure at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when paint is being applied:
 - 1. The Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample paint material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in the presence of Contractor.
 - 2. Testing agency will perform appropriate tests for the following characteristics as required by the Architect.

3. The Architect may direct Contractor to stop painting if test results show material being used does not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces previously coated with the noncomplying paint. If necessary, Contractor may be required to remove noncomplying paint from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with specified paint, the two coatings are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Cleanup: At the end of each workday, remove empty cans, rags, rubbish, and other discarded paint materials from Project site.
 1. After completing painting, clean glass and paint-spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paint by washing and scraping without scratching or damaging adjacent finished surfaces.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect work of other trades, whether being painted or not, against damage from painting. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing or replacing, and repainting, as approved by Architect.
- B. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.
 1. After work of other trades is complete, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

3.7 PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Schedule: Provide products and number of coats specified. Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors, materials, generic class, standard of quality and performance criteria and is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent performing products of other manufacturers.

B. Exterior Paint Schedule:

1. Exterior Galvanized Metal (not shop-finished under Section 051200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING, Section 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS, and Section 081100 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES), Alliphatic Acrylic Polyurethane System (Solvent-Based):
 - a. Surface Preparation: SSPC-SP16 Brush-off Blast of Galvanized Steel.
 - b. One Coat: Polyamide epoxy, high solids, low VOC, intermediate coat.
 - 1) AkzoNobel; International Intergard 475 HS at 5.0-10.0 mils DFT.
 - a) VOC: 207 g/L.
 - 2) Axalta (formerly Dupont); Corlar 2.1 ST at 3.0-5.0 mils DFT.
 - a) VOC: 240 g/L.
 - 3) PPG; PMC Amerlock 400 Hi-Build Epoxy at 4.0-5.0 mils DFT.

- a) VOC: 180 g/L.
- 4) Tnemec; V69 Hi-Build Epoxoline at 3.0 mils DFT (Basis of Design).
 - a) VOC: 234 g/L.
- c. And One Coat: Aliphatic acrylic polyurethane, finish coat, semigloss.
 - 1) AkzoNobel; International Interthane 990V at 2.0-3.0 mils DFT.
 - a) VOC: 241 g/L. High gloss.
 - 2) Axalta (formerly Dupont); Imron 2.1 SG at 2.0-4.0 mils DFT.
 - a) VOC: 250 g/L. Semigloss.
 - 3) PPG; PMC Amercoat 450 HSG at 3.0 mils DFT.
 - a) VOC: 312 g/L. Semigloss.
 - 4) Tnemec; 1095 Endura-Shield at 3.0 mils DFT (Basis of Design).
 - a) VOC: 88 g/L. Semigloss.

C. Interior Paint Schedule, Typical:

1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard (GWB), Latex Paint Finish:

- a. One Coat, Primer: MPI 50 X-Green and 149 X-Green.
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer N534.
 - 2) PPG; Pure Performance Interior Latex Primer 9-900.
 - 3) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Primer 6-4900XI series.
 - 4) PPG; Speedhide Pro EV Zero VOC Interior Primer 12-900XI series.
 - 5) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Primer.
- b. And Two Coats, Flat Finish: At ceilings and elsewhere as indicated. MPI 53 X-Green.
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Flat T536.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat 6-4110XI series.
 - 3) PPG; Speedhide Pro EV Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat 12-110XI series.
 - 4) S-W; ProMar 400 HP Zero VOC Interior Flat.
- or
- c. And Two Coats, Eggshell Finish: At walls and elsewhere as indicated. MPI 144 X-Green.
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell T538.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI series.
 - 3) PPG; Speedhide Pro EV Zero VOC Interior Latex Eggshell 12-110XI series.
 - 4) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Eg-Shel.
- or

- d. And Two Coats, Semi-Gloss Finish: At toilet rooms, other wet areas, and elsewhere as indicated. **MPI 54 X-Green.**
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss T546.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss 6-4510XI series.
 - 3) PPG; Speedhide Pro EV Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss 12-110XI series.
 - 4) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Semi-Gloss.
2. Interior Architectural Woodwork, Finish Carpentry, and Wood Doors (softwoods, paint grade hardwoods, MDF, MDO, and hardwood veneers), Latex Paint Finish:
 - a. One Coat, Primer:
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer N534.
 - 2) PPG; Pure Performance Interior Latex Primer 9-900.
 - 3) PPG; Seal Grip Interior/Exterior Acrylic Universal Primer/Sealer 17-921 series.
 - 4) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Primer 6-4900XI series.
 - 5) PPG; Speedhide Pro EV Zero VOC Interior Primer 12-900XI series.
 - 6) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Primer.
 - b. And Two Coats, Semi-Gloss:
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss T546.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss 6-4510XI.
 - 3) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Semi-Gloss.
3. Interior Architectural Woodwork, Finish Carpentry and Millwork (hardwoods and hardwood veneers, except paint grade and factory-finished items), Transparent Polyurethane Finish:
 - a. Sand: 120 grit sandpaper.
 - b. Sand: 220 grit sandpaper.
 - c. **One Coat, Stain: Not Used.**
 - d. And Three Coats, Satin Finish:
 - 1) American Formulating & Manufacturing; Safecoat Polyureseal BP.
 - 2) Imperial Paints; ECOS Clear Varnish.
 - 3) Moore; Benwood Stays Clear Acrylic Polyurethane Low Lustre W423.
 - 4) PPG; DEFT water-based polyurethane 158.
 - 5) Vermont Natural Coatings; PolyWhey Natural Furniture Finish.
 - e. Sand Between Urethane Coats: 220 grit sandpaper.
4. Interior Concrete Masonry Unit (CMU), Latex Paint Finish:
 - a. One Coat, Block Filler:
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec Hi-Build Masonry Block Filler 571.
 - 2) PPG; Perma-Crete 4-603. Less than 100 g/L.
 - 3) PPG; Speedhide Interior Masonry Hi Fill Latex Block Filler 6-15XI.
 - 4) S-W; PrepRite Block Filler B25W25.

- b. And Two Coats, Eggshell Finish: At walls and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell T538.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Eggshell 6-4310XI series.
 - 3) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Eg-Shel.

- 5. Interior Metals (Not specified to receive other coating systems/not shop finished), Acrylic Paint Finish:
 - a. One Coat: Approved primer, in shop under other Sections (where specified). If not shop primed, provide primer recommended by finish coating manufacturer.
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer HP04.

 - b. And Two Coats:
 - 1) Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi-Gloss T546.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss 6-4510XI.
 - 3) S-W; ProMar 200 HP Zero VOC Interior Semi-Gloss.

- 6. Interior Exposed Steel, Joists, Ductwork, Conduit and Similar Items (where indicated), Waterborne Dry-Fall or Dry-Fog Painted System:
 - a. One Coat:
 - 1) Moore; Latex Dry Fall Flat 395 at 2.5 to 3.0 mils DFT.
 - 2) PPG; Speedhide Super Tech WB Interior Dry-Fog Latex 6-725XI Flat at 2.0 to 2.5 mils DFT.
 - 3) S-W; WB Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat B42 series at 2.5 to 3.0 mils DFT.
 - 4) Tnemec 115 WB Unibond DF at 2.5 to 3.0 mils DFT.

- 7. Interior Concrete Floor, Clear Exposed Sealer (Silicate type):
 - a. One Coat:
 - 1) Curecrete Chemical; Ashford Formula.
 - 2) Tnemec (Chem Probe); Series 629 CT Densifyer.
 - 3) WR Meadows; Liqui-Hard.
 - 4) Laticrete; L&M Seal Hard.
 - 5) Prosoco; Consolideck LS.

- D. Interior Paint Schedule, High Performance and Specialty Systems:
 - 1. Interior Concrete Masonry Units, Epoxy/Acrylic Coating:
 - a. Surface Preparation: Cured, clean and dry, free of surface contaminants.
 - b. One Coat: Tnemec 130 Envirofil at 100 sqft/gal.
 - c. And One Coat: Tnemec 27WB at 8-10 mils DFT.
 - d. And One Coat: Tnemec 1028 at 2-3 mils DFT.

 - 2. Interior Concrete Masonry Units, Epoxy/Urethane Coating:
 - a. Surface Preparation: Cured, clean and dry, free of surface contaminants.

- b. One Coat:
 - 1) Tnemec 130 Envirofil at 100 sqft/gal.
 - 2) PPG PMC Nu-Klad 965 at 100 sqft/gal.
 - 3) Dupont 25P at 100 sq/ft/gal.
 - 4) International Acrylic Cementitious Block Filler at 80 sqft/gal.
- c. And One Coat:
 - 1) Tnemec 280 Tneme-Glaze at 6.0 8.0 mils DFT.
 - 2) PPG PMC Amercoat 351 6.0 to 8.0 mils DFT.
 - 3) Dupont 100% Solids Epoxy at 7.0 to 9.0 mils DFT.
 - 4) International Interseal 670 HS at 8.0 to 10.0 mils DFT.
- d. And One Coat:
 - 1) Tnemec 1080 or 1081 EnduraShield at 3.0 to 4.0 mils DFT.
 - 2) PPG PMC AmerShield VOC at 3.0 to 4.0 mils DFT.
 - 3) Dupont Imron WB Urethane at 3.0 to 4.0 mils DFT.
 - 4) International Water Borne Urethane at 3.0 to 4.0 mils DFT.
- 3. Mechanical Room Concrete Floor System, Waterborne Urethane, dry film thickness 28 mils: Surface preparation: Grind concrete; shot-blast not required.
 - a. Primer: RD Unifix at 1.0-1.5 mils DFT.
 - b. Second Coat: RD Elastodeck Slurry with broadcast aggregate, 25 mils DFT.
 - c. Third Coat: RD Monograph pigmented topcoat, 2-3 mils DFT.
- 4. Heavy Duty Mechanical Room Concrete Floor, Epoxy Coating System:
 - a. One Coat:
 - 1) Tnemec 201 Epoxoprime at 4.0 to 6.0 mils DFT.
 - 2) Dex-O-Tex C Bond Coat at 6.0-7.0 mils DFT.
 - 3) RD Coatings Unifix at 2.0 mils DFT.
 - b. And One Coat:
 - 1) Tnemec 206 Flexible Epoxy Underlayment at 60 mils DFT.
 - 2) Dex-O-Tex Cheminert SC Membrane at 70-80 mils DFT.
 - 3) RD Coatings Elasto Deck at 50-80 mils DFT.
 - c. And Two Coats:
 - 1) Tnemec 297 at 3.0 mils DFT.
 - 2) Dex-O-Tex Quik-Glaze at 7.0-8.0 mils DFT.
 - 3) RD Coatings Muracryl at 3.0 mils DFT.
- E. Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint all exposed items throughout the project except factory finished items with factory-applied baked enamel finishes which occur in mechanical rooms or areas, and excepting chrome or nickel plating, stainless steel, and aluminum other than mill finished. Paint all exposed ductwork and inner portion of all ductwork. Same as specified for other interior metals, hereinabove.

END OF SECTION

PAINTING NOTES

1. ACCENT WALL IMPLIES FLOOR TO CEILING, CORNER TO CORNER, COMPLETE COVERAGE.
2. NEW INTERIOR HOLLOW METAL FRAMES TO BE PAINTED **[P-9]**
4. ACCENT PAINT IN QUARTER DECK 1316 - INCLUDING CEILINGS TO BE PAINTED **[P-2]. SEE A400**
5. ACCENT PAINT IN QUARTER DECK 1316 - INCLUDING ROUND SOFFIT TO BE PAINTED **[P-3]. SEE A400**
6. ACCENT PAINT IN LOBBY MEETING ROOM 138- INCLUDING CEILINGS TO BE PAINTED **[P-2]. SEE**
7. CEILING PAINT IN TOILET 1313 AND ADA TOILET 1314 TO BE PAINTED **[P-7]**
8. PAINT ALL STUD INFILL AREAS WITH **[P-8]**
10. CEILING PAINT IN ALL RESIDENT BEDROOMS AND RESTROOMS TO BE PAINTED **[P-10] U.N.O.**

SECTION 101100

VISUAL DISPLAY SURFACES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Markerboards.
 - 2. Tackboards.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 064020 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK for custom wood trim for visual display surfaces.
 - 2. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for primers under marker wall covering.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of visual display surface indicated, for units with factory-applied color finishes, and as follows:
 - 1. Actual sections of visual display surfaces.
 - 2. Fabric swatches fabric-faced tack assemblies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Show location of panel joints.
 - 2. Show location of special-purpose graphics for visual display surfaces.
 - 3. Include sections of typical trim members.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of fabrics.

- E. Maintenance Data: For visual display surfaces to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of visual display surface through one source from a single manufacturer.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver factory-built visual display boards, including factory-applied trim where indicated, completely assembled in one piece without joints, where possible. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured panel size, provide two or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to Architect. When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, prefit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site.
- B. Store visual display units vertically with packing materials between each unit.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating visual display surfaces without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
 - 2. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS-OF-DESIGN

- A. Basis-of-Design Products: Refer to the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.

2.2 MARKERBOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Glass Markerboards: 6-mm tempered glass markerboard, with smooth polished edge and eased corners; color coated on back surface.
 - 1. Clear Tempered Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Class 1, Quality Q3, with exposed edges seamed before tempering.
 - 2. Mounting: Round, stainless-steel standoffs, holding glass approximately 1 inch from wall surface; mounted in notches in standoffs at top and bottom edges of markerboard.
 - 3. Color and Surface: As selected by the Architect.
 - 4. Marker Tray: Glass, supported by stainless-steel clips.

2.3 TACKBOARD ASSEMBLIES

- A. Linoleum Resilient Tackboard: Uni-color linoleum resilient homogeneous tackable surface consisting of linseed oil, granulated cork, rosin binders and dry pigments calendared onto a natural burlap backing with integral color throughout with surface-burning characteristics indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Forbo Industries; Bulletin Board.
 - b. WallTalkers; Tac-wall.
2. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
3. Manufacturer's Standard Core: Minimum 1/4 inch thick, with manufacturer's standard backing with binder containing no added urea formaldehyde.
4. Fire Rating: ASTM E 84, Class A.
5. Colors: Refer to Finish Schedule.

B. Fabric-Wrapped Tackboard:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Claridge Products & Equipment, Inc.
 - b. Egan Visual Inc.
 - c. MooreCo; Best-Rite Manufacturing.
 - d. Peter Pepper Products.
 - e. Steelcase Company.
2. Manufacturer's Standard Core: Minimum 1/4 inch thick, with manufacturer's standard backing with binder containing no added urea formaldehyde.
3. Fire Rating: ASTM E 84, Class A.
4. Fabric Facing Material, Colors and Patterns: Refer to Finish Schedule.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Factory-applied, fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch-thick, extruded aluminum; of size and shape indicated.
 1. Chalk/Marker Tray: Manufacturer's standard, continuous tray.
- B. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining adhesive, for use with specific visual display surfaces and substrate application, as recommended in writing by visual display surface manufacturer.
 1. Adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Visual Display Assemblies: Laminate porcelain-enamel face sheet and backing sheet to core material under heat and pressure with manufacturer's standard flexible, waterproof adhesive.
- B. Factory-Assembled Visual Display Units: Coordinate factory-assembled units with trim and accessories indicated. Join parts with a neat, precision fit.
- C. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricate units straight and of single lengths, keeping joints to a minimum. Miter corners to neat, hairline closure.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- D. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove dirt, scaling paint, projections, and depressions that will affect smooth, finished surfaces of visual display boards.
- B. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, and substances that will impair bond between visual display boards and surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
 - 1. Join adjacent wall panels with concealed steel splines for smooth alignment.
 - 2. Where markerboards abut, install with clean, trimless butt joints.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean visual display surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one cleaning label to visual display surface in each room.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

- C. Cover and protect visual display surfaces after installation and cleaning.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 101400

SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Code-required interior panel signage, including but not limited to, accessibility signage, toilet room signage and mechanical and electrical room signage.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Division 26 - ELECTRICAL for illuminated exit signs.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of sign.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, and large-scale sections of typical members and other components. Show mounting methods, grounds, mounting heights, layout, spacing, reinforcement, accessories, and installation details.
 - 1. Provide message list for each sign, including large-scale details of wording, lettering, artwork, and braille layout.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign, include the following Samples to verify color selected:
 - 1. Panel Signs: Full-size Samples of each type of sign required.
 - 2. Approved samples will not be returned for installation into Project.
- D. Maintenance Data: For signage cleaning and maintenance requirements to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each sign type through one source from a single manufacturer.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the Massachusetts Architectural Access Board, Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and with code provisions as adopted by authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where sizes of signs are determined by dimensions of surfaces on which they are installed, verify dimensions by field measurement before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. For signs supported by or anchored to permanent construction, advise installers of anchorage devices about specific requirements for placement of anchorage devices and similar items to be used for attaching signs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL SIGNS

- A. General: Provide signs that comply with requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes, and details of construction as indicated. Produce smooth panel sign surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch measured diagonally. Provide the following:

- 1. Code-Required Signs for Certificate of Occupancy:

- a. Type: Photopolymer on acrylic or printed acrylic / aluminum as applicable.
- b. Color: Selected from manufacturer's standard colors including metallic silver, off white, champagne, light gray, dark red, dark green, dark blue, dark bronze, charcoal.
- c. Color: Custom color as selected.
- d. Type Size: As selected.
- e. Typeface: As selected.

- 2. Interior Signs Based on Owner's Requirements:

- a. Type: Photopolymer on acrylic or printed acrylic as applicable.
- b. Color: Selected from manufacturer's standard colors including metallic silver, off white, champagne, light gray, dark red, dark green, dark blue, dark bronze, charcoal.
- c. Color: Custom color as selected.
- d. Type Size: As selected.
- e. Typeface: As selected.

- 3. Exterior Signs AT Canopy:

- a. Type: As indicated on the Drawings.

- B. Tactile and Braille Copy: Manufacturer's standard process for producing copy complying with ADA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square cut edges free from burrs and cut marks.

1. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch

C. Symbols of Accessibility: Provide 6-inch- high symbol fabricated from opaque nonreflective vinyl film, 0.0035-inch nominal thickness, with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing suitable for both exterior and interior applications.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Mounting Methods: Use double-sided vinyl tape fabricated from materials that are not corrosive to sign material and mounting surface.

B. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Verify that items provided under other sections of Work are sized and located to accommodate signs.

C. Examine supporting members to ensure that surfaces are at elevations indicated or required to comply with authorities having jurisdiction and are free from dirt and other deleterious matter.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion and other defects in appearance.

2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.

B. Wall-Mounted Panel Signs: Attach panel signs to wall surfaces using methods indicated below:

1. Vinyl-Tape Mounting: Use double-sided foam tape to mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102800
TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Toilet accessories as scheduled on the Drawings. Coordinate with Owner for accessories provided by Owner.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for blocking.
 2. Section 088000 - GLAZING for frameless mirrors.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
1. Construction details and dimensions.
 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 3. Material and finish descriptions.
 4. Features that will be included for Project.
 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
1. Identify locations using room designations indicated on Drawings.
 2. Identify products using designations indicated on Drawings.

- C. Maintenance Data: For toilet accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same articles in Part 2, provide products of same manufacturer unless otherwise approved by Architect.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
 - 2. American Specialties, Inc.
 - 3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 4. Bradley Corporation.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.0312-inch minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.0359-inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Galvanized Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- D. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to the Owner.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102819

SHOWER ENCLOSURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Solid surface shower units.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY for wood nailers and blocking.
 - 2. Section 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS for sealants.
 - 3. Division 22 - PLUMBING for unit showers, fixtures and shower drain connections.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for shower enclosures.
- B. Shop Drawings: For tub and shower doors and enclosures.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: For tub and shower doors and enclosures.
 - 1. Each type of mounting and operating hardware; full size.
 - 2. Glass and glazing; 12 inches square.
 - 3. Trim; 12-inch lengths.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.
- F. Maintenance Data: For tub and shower doors and enclosures to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of tub and shower doors and enclosure as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate on Shop Drawings.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace aluminum extrusions, vinyl extrusions, and hardware components of tub and shower doors and enclosures that fail in materials within specified warranty period, without monetary limitation.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - c. Exclusions: Damage due to incorrect installation.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products manufactured by Endurant Washroom Systems a subsidiary of Inpro Corporation.
 - 1. Contact: Travis Aldridge, (262) 679-9010 taldrige@inprocorp.com

2.2 SOLID SURFACE PRODUCTS

- A. See Plumbing Drawings for fittings and other components fittings required for complete, functioning units.
- B. ADA Units: Prism Solid Surface Custom Center Drain unit, 36-inch x 36-inch, ADA Threshold-Modular cast shower receptor assembly.
 - 1. Shower receptor, with maximum 2-degree positive slope toward drain, double water barrier and ADA compliant threshold with integral non-skid surface in the floor of the shower.
 - 2. Oatey 42150 brass, no caulk drain with custom offset drain outlet locations to accommodate the existing drain locations.

3. Solid Surface Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard solid surface 96 inch tall wall panel system matched to the receptor size having an eased finished edge on all exposed edges. All wall panels shall have manufacturers Decorative Panel Treatment, tile pattern TBD. Also include two DSICP196 wedge inside corner trim per shower. Any cutouts in the wall panels will have rounded corners, no exceptions.
 4. Color: To be selected from manufacturers standard Group A/A1 color selection
- C. Non-ADA Units: Prism Solid Surface Custom Center Drain unit, 32-inch x 32-inch, (verified in field), Narrow Full Threshold- Modular cast shower receptor assembly.
1. Shower receptor, with maximum 2-degree positive slope toward drain, double water barrier and narrow(2" wide) full threshold with integral non-skid surface in the floor of the shower.
 2. Oatey 42150 brass, no caulk drain with custom offset drain outlet locations to accommodate the existing drain locations.
 3. Solid Surface Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard solid surface 96 inch tall wall panel system matched to the receptor size having an eased finished edge on all exposed edges. All wall panels shall have manufacturers Decorative Panel Treatment, tile pattern TBD. Also include two DSICP196 wedge inside corner trim per shower. Any cutouts in the wall panels will have rounded corners, no exceptions.
 4. Color: To be selected from manufacturers standard Group A/A1 color selection
- D. Non-ADA Units: Prism Solid Surface Custom Center Drain unit, 35-inch x 35-inch, (verified in field), Narrow Full Threshold- Modular cast shower receptor assembly.
1. Shower receptor, with maximum 2-degree positive slope toward drain, double water barrier and narrow(2" wide) full threshold with integral non-skid surface in the floor of the shower.
 2. Oatey 42150 brass, no caulk drain with custom offset drain outlet locations to accommodate the existing drain locations.
 3. Solid Surface Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard solid surface 96 inch tall wall panel system matched to the receptor size having an eased finished edge on all exposed edges. All wall panels shall have manufacturers Decorative Panel Treatment, tile pattern TBD. Also include two DSICP196 wedge inside corner trim per shower. Any cutouts in the wall panels will have rounded corners, no exceptions.
 4. Color: To be selected from manufacturers standard Group A/A1 color selection
- E. Non-ADA Units: Prism Solid Surface Custom Center Drain unit, 32-inch x 34-inch, (verified in field), Narrow Full Threshold- Modular cast shower receptor assembly.
1. Shower receptor, with maximum 2-degree positive slope toward drain, double water barrier and narrow(2" wide) full threshold with integral non-skid surface in the floor of the shower.
 2. Oatey 42150 brass, no caulk drain with custom offset drain outlet locations to accommodate the existing drain locations.
 3. Solid Surface Wall Panels: Manufacturer's standard solid surface 96 inch tall wall panel system matched to the receptor size having an eased finished edge on all exposed edges. All wall panels shall have manufacturers Decorative Panel Treatment, tile pattern TBD. Also include two DSICP196 wedge inside corner trim per shower. Any cutouts in the wall panels will have rounded corners, no exceptions.
 4. Color: To be selected from manufacturers standard Group A/A1 color selection
- F. Materials:

1. Provide shower receptors and shower systems that conform to ANSI Z124.1.2-2005 when tested for workmanship and finish, structural integrity and material characteristics.
 - a. Solid Surface: Shower wall panels shall be manufactured from polyester/acrylic blended resins with natural filler material.
 2. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
 - a. Sealant to have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 3. Solid Surface Bonding Adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
- G. Accessories: Provide manufacturer's standard recommended trim accessories as required for a complete installation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates, removing projections, filling voids, and sealing joints.
- B. Priming
 1. Certain colors may have translucent or semi-transparent properties which will require the substrate to be primed with latex primer to prevent dark areas from showing through the sheet. The following primers are recommended by Inpro Corporation when adhering Prism™ using BOSS 385, 100% silicone adhesive for Prism™ Solid Surface vertical wall applications.
 - a. Sherwin Williams PrepRite® Pro Block® Interior /Exterior, Latex Primer /Sealer
 - b. Sherwin Williams ProMar® 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Primer
 - c. KILZ Clean Start® Primer/Sealer/Stain blocker.
 2. Using other paints or primers may cause discoloration or adhesion problems. Coordinate products with the approved manufacturer.
- C. Liquid Water Proofing Membranes and Waterproofing Membrane Films - Not all waterproofing membranes will work with silicone sealants/adhesives. It is the installers' responsibility to confirm that the silicone sealant/adhesive will adhere to the waterproof membrane.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Prepare and install per manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Set units level, plumb, and true to line, without warp or rack of frames and panels, and anchor securely in place.
- C. Fasten components securely in place, with provisions for thermal movement. Install with concealed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install components to drain and return water to tub or shower.

- E. Repair, refinish, or replace components damaged during installation.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove labels, and clean surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 104400

FIRE-PROTECTION SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Portable fire extinguishers.
 - 2. Fire-protection cabinets for portable fire extinguishers.
 - 3. Mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 099000 - PAINTING AND COATING for field painting fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Division 21 - FIRE PROTECTION for fire hose valves and standpipes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each item.
 - 1. Fire Extinguishers: Include rating and classification.
 - 2. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.
- B. Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers and fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers and fire-protection cabinets through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- C. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- D. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements of ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. General: Provide fire extinguishers of type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. JL Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 - 3. Nystrom Building Products.
 - 4. Potter Roemer; Div. of Smith Industries, Inc.
- B. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- C. Cabinet Material: Enameled-steel sheet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.
 - 1. Trimless with Plaster Stop: Surface of surrounding wall finishes flush with exterior finished surface of cabinet frame and door, without overlapping trim attached to cabinet. Provide recessed flange, of same material as box, attached to box to act as plaster stop. If wall condition does not allow for trimless with plaster stop, provide flat 5/16 inch trim of same material as the cabinet box.
- E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
- F. Door Material: Steel sheet with baked enamel finish, color as selected.
- G. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Tempered glass.

- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
- J. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 - 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 - 2. Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick, fire-barrier material.
 - a. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
 - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are

acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging. Contractor shall be responsible for fire extinguisher tagging by a certified service technician located within 75 miles of the project.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged units.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection specialties in locations and at mounting heights indicated on the Drawings and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten fire-protection cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.
- D. Identification: Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-RATED CABINETS

- A. Install cabinet with not more than 1/16-inch tolerance between pipe OD and knockout OD. Center pipe within knockout.
- B. Seal through penetrations with firestopping sealant as specified in Section 078410 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection specialties are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet manufacturer.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 122400

SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Roller shades with manual shade operators.
- B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:
 - 1. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Include styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of roller shades. Include elevations, sections, details, and dimensions not shown in Product Data. Show installation details, mountings, attachments to other work, operational clearances, and relationship to adjoining work.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension system members and attachment to building structure.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted or penetrating items including light fixtures, air outlets and inlets, speakers, sprinklers, recessed shades, and special moldings at walls, column penetrations, and other junctures of acoustical ceilings with adjoining construction.
 - 3. Shade mounting assembly and attachment.
 - 4. Size and location of access to shade operator and adjustable components.
 - 5. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each colored component of each type of shade indicated.

1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Complete, full-size operating unit not less than 16 inches wide for each type of roller shade indicated.
2. For the following products:
 - a. Shade Material: Not less than 12-inch- square section of fabric, from dye lot used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat. Mark top and face of material.
 - b. Valance: Full-size unit, not less than 12 inches long.

F. Window Treatment Schedule: For roller shades. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of roller shade, signed by product manufacturer.

H. Qualification Data: For Installer.

I. Product Test Reports: For each type of roller shade.

J. Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining roller shades and finishes.
2. Precautions about cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to fabrics, finishes, and performance.
3. Operating hardware.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roller shade band materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

1. Flame-Resistance Ratings: Passes NFPA 701.

D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, fire-test-response characteristics, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings and in a window treatment schedule.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Architect of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Draper Inc.
 - 2. Hunter Douglas Contract; Nysan Shading Systems.
 - 3. MechoShade Systems, Inc.
- B. Basis-of-Design: MechoShade; Mecho/5 Manual Shade System.

2.2 ROLLER SHADES

- A. Shadecloth: Light blocking, 100% polyester or PLA biopolymer fabric, PVC-free.
 - 1. Basis of Design:
 - a. MechoShade; EcoVeil Sheer, 6850 and 6750 Series.
 - b. M+N Textiles; Revolution.
 - 2. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Passes NFPA 701, with no chemical flame retardants.
 - 3. Bottom Hem: Straight.
 - 4. Colors: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Rollers: Electrogalvanized or epoxy primed steel or extruded-aluminum tube of diameter and wall thickness required to support and fit internal components of operating system and the weight and width of shade band material without sagging; designed to be easily removable from support brackets; with removable spline fitting integral channel in tube for attaching shade material.
 - 1. Direction of Roll: Regular, from back of roller

- C. Mounting Brackets: Galvanized or zinc-plated steel.
- D. Fascia: L-shaped, formed-steel sheet or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; continuous panel concealing front and bottom of shade roller, brackets, and operating hardware and operators; length as indicated on Drawings removable design for access.
- E. Top/Back Cover: L-shaped; material and finish to match fascia; combining with fascia and end caps to form a six-sided headbox enclosure sized to fit shade roller and operating hardware inside.
- F. Pocket-Style Headbox: U-shaped, formed-steel sheet or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; with a bottom cover consisting of slot opening of minimum dimension to allow lowering and raising of shade and a removable or an openable, continuous metal access panel concealing shade roller, brackets, and operating hardware and operators within.
- G. Bottom Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum. Provide concealed, by pocket of shade material, internal-type bottom bar with concealed weight bar as required for smooth, properly balanced shade operation.
- H. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings, mounting permitting easy removal and replacement without damaging roller shade or adjacent surfaces and finishes.
- I. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard for anchoring roller shade bottom in place and keeping shade band material taut.

2.3 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Description: Roller shade consisting of a roller, a means of supporting the roller, a flexible sheet or band of material carried by the roller, a means of attaching the material to the roller, a bottom bar, and an operating mechanism that lifts and lowers the shade.
- B. Concealed Components: Noncorrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
 - 1. Lifting Mechanism: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- C. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Shade Units Installed between (Inside) Jambs: Edge of shade not more than 1/4 inch from face of jamb. Length equal to head to sill dimension of opening in which each shade is installed.
 - 2. Shade Units Installed Outside Jambs: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- D. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of shade, for supporting fascia, roller, and operating hardware and for hardware position and shade mounting method indicated.

- E. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to shade hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting shades and accessories under conditions of normal use.
- F. Color-Coated Finish: For metal components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

2.4 MANUALLY OPERATED SHADES WITH SINGLE ROLLERS

- A. Chain-and-Clutch Operating Mechanisms: With continuous-loop bead chain and clutch that stops shade movement when bead chain is released; permanently adjusted and lubricated.
 - 1. Bead Chains: Manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Loop Length: Full length of roller shade.
 - b. Limit Stops: Provide upper and lower ball stops.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions, and located so shade band is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 124810

ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

- A. Attention is directed to the CONTRACT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS and all Sections within DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

- A. Work Included: Provide labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the work of this Section, including but not limited to the following:
 - 1. Surface mounted carpet-type matting.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Floor Mat: 12-inch- square sections of floor mat.
- C. Maintenance Data: For floor mats to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain floor mats through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Provide installed floor mats that comply with Section 4.5 in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)" and the Massachusetts Architectural Access Board.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR MATS

- A. Entrance Mat Tiles: Diagonal Tile by Mats Inc or equal.
 - 1. Material: 100% solution-dyed UV stabilized polypropylene fibers with post-consumer recycled content.
 - 2. Size: 11-9/16 inches square nominal, 3/8 inch thick.

3. Installation Pattern: Quarter-turn tiles (parquet pattern).
 4. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
 5. Warranty: Manufacturer's standard limited 3 year warranty.
- B. Adhesives: Manufacturer's recommended water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrate for compliance with requirements for proper installation of floor mats. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install mats in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, approved submittals, and in proper relationship with adjacent construction. Coordinate top of mat surfaces with bottom of doors that swing across mats to provide clearance between door and mat.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Defer installation of floor mats until Project is near Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220700

PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Refer to Section 230700 for plumbing insulation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220800

COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. If the Contractor discovers any ambiguity, error, omission, conflict, or discrepancy, Special Provision Section 101.3.6 Priority of Conflicting Contract Documents shall control.
 - 1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for Plumbing systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. Plumbing Systems: Sanitary waste and vent system, service potable and non-potable water, domestic hot water systems, and domestic water pumping systems.
- D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall comply with the requirements of the Division 1 "Submittal Procedures" and the individual sections specifying the work.
- B. Prefunctional Checklists of readiness.
- C. Prefunctional Checklists of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase coordination meetings.
- C. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- D. Participate in Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.6 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.7 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
 - 2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 - 3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for Plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
 - 4. Prefunctional Checklists certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
 - 5. Prefunctional Checklists certifying that Plumbing systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
 - 6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
 - 7. Corrective action documents.
 - 8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that Plumbing instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of Plumbing systems at the direction of the CxA.
 - 1. Failure of an item includes a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report.
 - 2. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.

- B. Scope of Plumbing testing shall include entire Plumbing installation, from service hot water systems through distribution systems to all fixtures. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA in cooperation with the Plumbing Contractor, testing and balancing Contractor, and Instrumentation and Control Contractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for Plumbing systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Plumbing system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.4 PLUMBING SYSTEMS, SUBSYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT TESTING PROCEDURES

- A. Plumbing Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Division 22 Sections with references for interconnections to Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- B. Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests, and chemical treatment requirements are specified in Division 22 piping Sections. Plumbing Contractor shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning, flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA. Plan shall include the following:
 - 1. Sequence of testing and testing procedures for each section of pipe to be tested, identified by pipe zone or sector identification marker. Markers shall be keyed to Drawings for each pipe sector, showing the physical location of each designated pipe test section. Drawings keyed to pipe zones or sectors shall be formatted to allow each section of piping to be physically located and identified when referred to in pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic testing, and chemical treatment plan.
 - 2. Description of equipment for flushing operations.
 - 3. Minimum flushing water velocity.

4. Tracking checklist for managing and ensuring that all pipe sections have been cleaned, flushed, hydrostatically tested, and chemically treated.
- C. Plumbing Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of service water distribution systems, fuel gas systems, and other distribution systems, including Plumbing equipment and fixtures.
- D. Plumbing systems are shown on the contract drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221116

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping and specialties.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For domestic water piping, fittings, valves, and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with the local building and plumbing codes.
- C. Qualify brazing processes for copper and copper alloy pipe and tube according to ANSI/AWS C3.4.
- D. Comply with NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances" and NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components-Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for combined fire-protection and domestic water service piping to building.
- E. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."
- F. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBING

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L, water tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint end. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.
 4. Copper-Tubing, Keyed Couplings: Copper-tube dimensions and design similar to AWWA C606. Include ferrous housing sections, gasket suitable for hot water, and bolts and nuts.
- B. Mechanically formed copper tee connections are not acceptable.
- C. Viega Pro Press Fittings: Copper and copper alloy press fittings shall conform to material requirements of ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 and performance criteria of IAPMO PS 117. Sealing elements for press fittings shall be EPDM. Sealing elements shall be factory installed or an alternative supplied by fitting manufacturer. Press ends shall have SC (Smart Connect) feature design (leakage path). The Smart Connect Feature shall assure leakage of liquids and/or gases from inside the system past the sealing element of an un-pressed connection. The function of this feature is to provide the installer quick and easy identification of connections which have not been pressed prior to putting the system into operation.

2.2 PEX PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following. PEX-a manufacturer system warranty shall cover tubing for a duration of 30 years from the date of installation.
1. Uponor AquaPEX (Basis of Design)
 2. Rehau
 3. Watts Radiant
 4. Viega
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty for Piping and Fittings: PEX-a manufacturer system warranty shall cover piping and fittings for a duration of 25 years from the date of installation. Piping system warranty shall apply to potable water distribution and water service systems constructed of pipe and fitting products sourced from the same manufacturer.
- C. PEX-a (Engel-Method Crosslinked Polyethylene) Piping: ASTM F 876 and F877 (CAN/CSA-B137.5).
- D. PEX-a Fittings: elbows, adapters, couplings, plugs, tees and multi-port tees (1/2 inch through 3 inch nominal pipe size): ASTM F1960 cold-expansion fitting manufactured from the following material types:
1. Lead-free (LF) Brass.
 2. 20% glass-filled polysulfone as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 3. Unreinforced polysulfone (group 01, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 4. Polyphenylsulfone (group 03, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 5. Blend of polyphenylsulfone (55-80%) and unreinforced polysulfone (rem.) as specified in ASTM D 6394.
 6. Reinforcing cold-expansion rings shall be manufactured from the same source as PEX-a piping manufacturer and marked "F1960".

- E. Multiport tees and elbows: Multiple-outlet fitting complying with ASTM F877 (CAN/CSA B137.5); with ASTM F1960 inlets and outlets.
- F. Manifolds: Multiple-outlet assembly complying with ASTM F 877 (CAN/CSA B137.5); with ASTM F 1960 outlets.
- G. PEX Transition Fittings: Provide fittings from the same manufacturer of the piping.

2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10 and Schedule 40.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.

2.4 VALVES & STRAINERS

A. Ball Valves

1. The valve body and adapter shall be constructed using Lead Free brass. Lead Free ball valves shall comply with state codes and standards, where applicable, requiring reduced lead content.
2. ½" to 2" ball valves: 2-piece full port lead-free brass ball valves: The valve must have a blowout proof pressure retaining 316 stainless steel stem, 316 stainless steel ball, virgin PTFE seats, seals, stem packing seal and thrust washer. Valve must have adjustable packing. Valves with O-ring stem seal only are not acceptable. Pressure rating no less than 600psi WOG non-shock, 150psi WSP. Valve shall be manufactured to the MSS-SP-110 standard and shall be a Watts Series LFB6080 (threaded) or LFB6081 (solder).
3. Valve sizes 2-1/2" to 4" threaded, shall be rated to 400psi WOG non-shock and 125psi WSP. Valve sizes 2-1/2" to 3" solder shall be rated to 400psi WOG non-shock and 125psi WSP. Valve shall be a Watts Series LFFBV-3C (threaded) or LFFBVS-3C (solder).
4. Provide locking handle where indicated.
5. Comply with MSS SP-110.

B. Swing check valves:

1. Construct pressure containing parts of Valves as follows: Bronze Valves: 125 or 150 psi: ANSI/ASTM B 62; Iron Body Valves: ANSI/ASTM A-126, Grade B.
2. Check valves shall be lead free.
3. Comply with the following standards for design, workmanship, material and testing: Bronze Valves: MSS SP – 80; Cast Iron Valves: MSS SP – 71
4. Construct valves of pressure casting free of any impregnating materials. Construct disc and hanger as one piece. Support hanger pins by removable side plug.
5. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, screwed cap, Teflon disc.
6. Soldered Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, screwed cap, Teflon disc.
7. Flanged Ends 2-1/2" and Larger: Class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, horizontal swing, cast-iron disc.

- C. Y-type strainer (3" and smaller) Wye-pattern Lead Free Bronze (cast copper silicon alloy strainer) shall be domestically manufactured and conform to Buy American Act standards. The

strainer must have a solid retainer cap with gasket. Strainer shall be rated to 400psi (27.6 bar) WOG @ 210°F; 125psi WSP @ 353°F for sizes 1/4"- 3". The strainer screen shall be 304 stainless steel, 30 mesh. Strainer shall be a Watts Series LF777 (threaded ends) or LFS777 (solder ends).

- D. Y-type strainer (4" and larger): A flanged, wye pattern, cast iron strainer with a double coated, heat fused, FDA approved epoxy coating on the interior and exterior surfaces for FDA sanitary applications. Flanges to conform to ANSI B16.1 Class 125, 304 stainless steel perforated screens, and a drain/blowoff connection furnished with a closure plug. Pressure rating 200psi (13.8 bar) WOG. Strainer shall be a Watts Series 77F-DI-FDA-125
- E. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
 - 3. Size: NPS 3/4.
 - 4. Body: Copper alloy.
 - 5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 - 7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
 - 8. Inlet: match piping.
 - 9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.5 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
 - 2. Cla-Val Co.
 - 3. Apollo
 - 4. Febco Backflow Preventers.
 - 5. Watts Industries, Inc.
 - 6. Ames
- B. General: ASSE standard, backflow preventers.
 - 1. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, steel, or stainless-steel body with flanged ends.
 - 3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials. AWWA C550 or FDA-approved
 - 4. Exterior Finish: manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Provide ball valves on inlet and outlet
 - 6. Provide strainer on inlet.
 - 7. All components shall be lead free.
- C. Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001, with floating disc and atmospheric vent.
- D. Double-Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies:
 - 1. Watts 007M2QT-S (2" and smaller)
 - 2. Watts LF709-OSY (2-1/2" and larger)
 - 3. ASSE 1015, suitable for continuous pressure application. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.

- E. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1013, suitable for continuous pressure application. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
 - 1. Provide air gap fitting.
 - 2. Watts 009-FS - (2" and smaller)
 - 3. Watts 957-FS-OSY (2-1/2" and larger)

2.6 THERMOSTATIC WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Armstrong International, Inc.
- 2. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 3. Leonard Valve Company.
- 4. Powers
- 5. Symmons Industries, Inc.

- B. To prevent scalding, an ASSE-1070 TMV shall be provided for hand wash sinks, lavatories, and bathtubs. A separate TMV is not required if a code compliant TMV is built-in to the faucet. Set at 110°F. Install as close as practical to the point of use.

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Zurn Industries, LLC; Wilkins; Model ZW3870XLT (Lead-Free) or Model ZW1070XL (Lead-Free).
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1070, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
- 5. Temperature Control: Adjustable 95-115°F
- 6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
- 7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
- 8. Tempered-Water Design Flow Rate: 0.35 GPM minimum.
- 9. An ASSE-1017 TMV shall be provided at the water heater (water stored at 140°F) to

2.7 DIGITAL WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Armstrong International, Inc.
- 2. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
- 3. Leonard Valve Company.
- 4. Powers
- 5. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- 6.

B. Digital Mixing Valve System – "IntelliStation"

- 1. Temperature control system shall be controlled digitally via integrated circuit board technology designed to deliver blended water economically at accurate temperature selected by user as safe and appropriate for sanitary use in facility's recirculated hot water system. The mixing valve shall be an IntelliStation LFIS150.
- 2. Construction shall be leadfree design and in compliance with lead free laws. Digital water temperature control and monitoring system shall feature full-color 3.5" touchscreen interface capable of displaying 196 combinations of critical system data in standard or

- metric measurements. Unit shall be user-configurable on location and shall not require factory pre-programming prior to shipment. Temperature adjustment shall be made locally by user at the control module and shall not require a laptop computer or special software to initiate.
3. System shall control water temperature to +/- 2°F in accordance with ASSE 1017 and during periods of low and zero demand and maintain a consistent system "idling" temperature to mitigate "temperature creep" without the use of a manual throttling device/balancing valve. The high-speed actuator shall be located external to mixing chamber where water from valve cannot affect performance as a result of faulty O-rings or seals.
 4. Maintain a minimum of 120°F throughout the distribution system, to the point of use, and in the return pipe to the water heater.
 5. System shall feature Feed Forward or Predictive Control which anticipates changes in system demand and adjusts valve pre-emptively to maintain mixed set point. Control module shall be password protected to help prevent unauthorized adjustment or tampering with settings.
 6. System shall digitally monitor and display the following without the use of an external module, laptop and special software that must be downloaded:
 - a. Hot and cold-water inlet supply pressure in °F.
 - b. Hot and cold-water inlet supply temperature in °F.
 - c. Mixed outlet temperature and mixed outlet set point in °F.
 - d. Return temperature and pressure in psi/kPa.
 - e. Highest mixed outlet temperature recorded (since last reset)
 - f. Lowest mixed outlet temperature recorded (since last reset)
 - g. Recirculation pump run time in hours
 - h. Energy consumed (since last reset)
 - i. Highest hot water inlet supply temperature (since last reset)
 - j. Lowest hot water inlet supply temperature (since last reset)
 - k. Highest measured load flow (since last reset)
 7. In the event of a power failure or loss of cold water, system shall close the hot water supply via an internally charged capacitor and is not reliant on batteries which must be replaced. Actuator shall also feature a manual override which can be used to set mixed outlet temperature in the event of a power loss.
 8. System shall be listed/approved to ASSE 1017, UPC, NSF, CSA 24/UL873 and BTL (BACnet Testing Laboratories) and shall be mounted on a heavy-duty welded strut with corrosion resistance coating and factory-tested as a complete unit. System shall come with a standard 5-year limited warranty.
 9. Provide BACnet Interface with the minimum points as follows:
 - a. Analog Input Objects.
 - 1) Mixed outlet temp
 - 2) Recirculation return temp
 - 3) Hot inlet supply temp
 - b. Analog Value Objects.
 - 1) Mixed outlet temp target
 - c. Binary Parameters
 - 1) Recirculation pump status
 - 2) Communication Error

10. Other specifications include:
 - a. Maximum Operating Pressure: 125 psi
 - b. Maximum Hot Water Temperature: 200°F
 - c. Minimum Hot Water Supply Temperature: 2°F above set point
 - d. Hot Water Inlet Temperature Range: 120-180°F
 - e. Cold Water Inlet Range: 39-80°F
 - f. Minimum Flow: 0.5gpm
 - g. Temperature Adjustment Range: 80-180°F (set 120°F)
 - h. Listing /Compliance: ASSE 1017, UPC, NSF372, UL873, BACnet BTL.
 - i. Pump relay: 16A @ 250 VAC
 - j. Alert relay: 5A @ 250 VAC, 5A @ 30 VDC
11. System mounted on strut, galvanized. Factory pre-assembled and tested as a complete system
12. Contractor shall provide field-required electrical connections.
13. Circulator pump shall be designed specifically for hot water recirculation applications. Pump shall be by Grundfos, Wilo, Taco, or Bell & Gossett. Provide the following features:
 - a. Refer to plumbing pump schedule on the plans.
 - b. Wet rotor design for quiet, maintenance free operation.
 - c. Stainless Steel rotor cladding and canister construction to prevent corrosion.
 - d. Composite impeller design for optimal application performance.
 - e. Built-in 6-foot, 115-volt ac line cord with a NEMA, 3 prong male plug.
 - f. UL Recognized strain relief and wire connections.
 - g. Fully UL Recognized.
 - h. Each unit shall be run and High Pot. tested.
 - i. Bronze sweat connections.
 - j. Provide circuit setter for balancing.
 - k. Pump shall be 3-speed, compatible with DHW the recirculation pump controller.

2.8 DHW RECIRCULATION BALANCING VALVES

- A. Provide as part of the potable hot water recirculation system in accordance with construction drawings and factory recommendations. Balancing valve shall be installed on domestic hot water return piping downstream of the last fixture with suitable access panel as required in non-accessible ceilings and walls.
- B. ThermOmegaTech "Circuit Solver"; Caleffi "Thermosetter", Viega, Kemper, or approved equal.
 1. Balancing valves shall be self-contained and fully automatic without additional piping or control mechanisms.
 2. Balancing valves shall regulate the flow of recirculated domestic hot water based on water temperature entering the valve regardless of system operating pressure.
 3. When fully closed valve shall bypass a minimum flow to maintain dynamic control of the recirculating loop and provide a means for system sanitizing.
 4. Valve shall be factory adjustable from 105°F to 140°F as required by project conditions. Valve shall modulate between open and closed position within a 10°F range.
 5. Provide the CSUSF model that allows for an additional balancing cycle at 170°F. The valve shall start to re-open above the low temperature balancing set point to allow the system to rebalance at the sanitizing flush temperature.

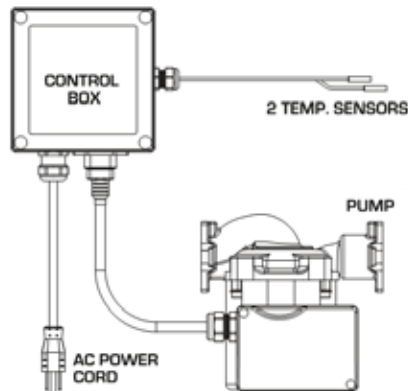
6. Valve body and all internal components shall be constructed of stainless steel with major components constructed of type 303 stainless steel.
7. Valve shall be rated to 200 PSIG maximum working pressure. Valve s shall be rated to 300°F maximum working temperature.
8. Valves shall be standard tapered female pipe thread, NPT.
9. Valve shall be ANSI/AWWA C800 compliant and shall be NSF-61 certified with zero lead content for use in all domestic water systems.
10. Thermal actuator shall be spring operated and self-cleaning, delivering closing thrust sufficient to keep orifice opening free of scale deposits. Thermal actuator shall be rated for a minimum of 200,000 cycles.

C. Provide the following with the balancing valves either built-in:

1. Upstream: shutoff valve and 20-mesh strainer.
2. Downstream: shutoff valve and threaded temperature port with threaded plug.

2.9 DHW RECIRCULATION PUMP CONTROLLER

- A. Provide the Enovative “Autohot” system, designed to control the hot water recirculation pumps used on a domestic hot water system. System shall be IECC-2021 compliant. The on-demand recirculation control reduces pump runtime by as much as 90% by activating at the time that a hot water draw, or demand is initiated in the building and turning off when there is a temperature rise or a set point achieved on the hot water return line.



- B. Recirculation Pump Control
1. Activation with hot water demand, turn off with temperature rise adjustable between 5°F and 25°F, and set lockout point. Max runtime after activation of 10 minutes.
 2. Auto-prime feature, pulses pump activation based on intervals between 10 minutes and 4 hours.
 3. Onboard dipswitches allow changes to other pump control modes. Modes include on-demand, continuous, temp based, or sensor based operation
- C. Provide recirculation pumps as scheduled on the drawings and coordinate for control as specified herein. Pump shall be compliant with NSF 61 low lead requirements.

MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

| DESCRIPTION | MATERIAL | DESCRIPTION | MATERIAL |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Inlet Cone, Bearing Plate, Bearing Retainers, Rotor Can, Rotor Cladding Shaft Retainer | 304 Stainless Steel | Pump Housing (Volute) | Silicon bronze C875 or Stainless steel 300 series |
| Stator Housing | Aluminum | O'Ring & Gaskets | EP (Ethylene Propylene Rubber) |
| Shaft, Upper & Lower Radial Bearings | Aluminum Oxide Ceramic | Impeller | PES Composite (30% Glass Filled) |
| Thrust Bearing | Carbon bearing and EPDM retainer | | |
| Check Valve | ACETAL with 302 Stainless Steel Spring & Nitrile Rubber Seats | Terminal Box | Noryl® |

- D. Provide components and installation per manufacturer's instructions, as required for a complete, functioning, IECC-2021 compliant installation.

2.10 HYDRANTS AND HOSE BIBBS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Zurn.
2. Murdock, Inc.
3. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
4. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
5. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
6. Watts Industries, Inc.; Drainage Products Div.
7. Woodford Manufacturing Co.
8. Zurn
9. Josam

B. General: ASME A112.21.3M, key-operation hydrant with pressure rating of 125 psig.

1. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 threaded or solder joint.
2. Outlet: ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads.
3. Operating Keys: One with each key-operation hydrant.

C. Non-freeze Exposed-Outlet Wall Hydrants: , Watts HY-420, Watts HY-420 non-freeze key operated wall hydrant with chrome plated face, integral vacuum breaker, 3/4" hose connection, 3/4" female x 1" male pipe connection, all bronze head, seat casting and internal working parts, bronze wall casing, and loose key. Complies with ASME B1.20.7, and ASSE 1019-2004, UPC/IAPMO listed.

D. Non-freeze Concealed-Outlet Wall Hydrants, Watts HY-725, Watts HY-725 concealed non-freeze key operated wall hydrant with nickel bronze box and door, chrome plated hydrant face, integral vacuum breaker, 3/4" hose connection, 3/4" female x 1" male pipe connection, all bronze head, seat casting and internal working parts, bronze wall casing, and loose key. Complies with ASME B1.20.7 and ASSE 1019-2004. UPC/IAMPO listed.

E. Hose Bibbs: Zurn Z1341XL Lead Free Bronze body with replaceable seat disc complying with ASME A112.18.1M for compression-type faucets. Include NPS 1/2 threaded or solder-joint inlet, of design suitable for pressure of at least 125 psig; integral non-removable, drainable hose-connection vacuum breaker; and garden-hose threads complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

1. Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, wheel handle,
2. Finished Rooms: Chrome plated, operating key
3. Include integral wall flange with each chrome plated hose bibb.

2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Watts
 2. Oatey
 3. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 4. Sioux Chief
 5. Zurn
- B. Construction (contains less than 0.25% of lead by weight) to comply with Lead Free requirements. NPT solid hex brass adapter or solder end connection. Polypropylene piston with EPDM O-ring. ASSE® Listed 1010, ANSI A112.26.1, PDI Listed WH-201. The device shall be pre-charged and sealed at the factory. The Water Hammer Arrester shall be a Watts Series LFM2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Pressure Rating: Provide components having a pressure rating equal to or greater than the system operating pressure.
- B. Mechanically formed tee-branch outlets and brazed joints shall not be used.
- C. Aboveground Domestic Water or Non-Potable Water Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Type L copper. PEX-a may be used at locations where branch lines serving fixtures are required to be routed through the cores of masonry partitions where hard piping is not practical.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 to NPS 3: Type L copper.
 3. NPS 4 to NPS 6: Type L copper or stainless steel.
- D. Underground piping within the building (permitted where indicated): PEX-a, no joints below floor.

3.2 VALVES

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball valves for piping NPS 3 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged or grooved ends for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball or globe valves for piping NPS 3 and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 4 and larger.

3. Hot-Water-Piping, Balancing Duty.
 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Provide sectional valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment.
- C. Provide shutoff valve on each water supply to equipment and specialties. Provide shutoff valve on each water supply to plumbing fixtures without supply stops.
- D. Provide shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside building at each domestic water service.
- E. DHW Recirculation Balancing Valves:
1. Provide DHW recirculation balancing valves in each domestic hot water return piping branch beyond last hot water device in that branch.
 2. Provide suitable line size isolation valves, unions, and strainer.
 3. Provide suitable access panel as required in non-accessible ceilings and walls.

3.3 PIPING & SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results" for installation of:
1. Basic piping requirements.
 2. Joint construction requirements.
 3. Hanger, support, and anchor devices.
 4. Firestopping
 5. Sleeves and Escutcheons
 6. Wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall.
 7. Dielectric fittings
 8. Valves
 9. Mechanical Identification
- B. Provide underground ductile-iron piping according to AWWA C600 and NFPA 24.
- C. Provide aboveground domestic water piping level and plumb, free of sags, kinks, and bends.
- D. Provide piping with no dead legs, all sections shall see water flow.
- E. Swing Connections for Expansion: Connect hot water risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- F. Provide air vents at piping high points. Include ball valve in inlet.
- G. Provide pressure regulators with inlet strainer and shutoff valve, outlet shutoff valve and balance valve bypass. Provide pressure gages on inlet and outlet. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Water hammer arrestors shall be installed at washing machines, solenoid valves, flush valve water closets, as shown on the plans and as recommended by Plumbing & Drainage Institute Standard PDI-WH-201. Locate units at the end of branch lines, between the last two fixtures served. Size units based on fixture unit total of branch. All branch pipes serving flush valve water closets shall have water hammer arrestors.

I. Mixing Valves

1. An ASSE-1017 DMV shall be provided for the main domestic hot water distribution loop (water stored at 140°F) to reduce water temperature as shown on the construction drawings; the blended water temperature shall be high enough to maintain a minimum of 120°F throughout the distribution system, to the point of use, and in the return pipe to the water heater.
2. To prevent scalding, an ASSE-1070 TMV shall be provided for hand wash sinks, lavatories, and bathtubs. A separate TMV is not required if a code-compliant TMV is built-in to the faucet. Set at 110°F. Install as close as practical to the point of use.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide and test all systems per local code requirements.
- B. Perform the following steps before operation:
 1. Fill water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 2. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 3. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 4. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and plugs used for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
- C. Check plumbing equipment and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation. Do not operate water heaters before filling with water.
- D. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.
- E. Provide factory startup, test, and check:
 1. Digital water mixing valve.
 2. DHW recirculation pump control.
- F. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

G. Test domestic water piping as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

H. Test plumbing specialties according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Prepare test and inspection reports.

I. Adjust each backflow preventer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions, authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses. Clean and disinfect domestic water piping per code requirements or administrative authority requirements. Sample procedure as indicated:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing domestic water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if methods are not prescribed, procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or as described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following: Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours. Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221316

PLUMBING SANITARY AND STORM PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping and specialties.
 - 1. Drainage and vent piping.
 - 2. Storm-drainage piping.
 - 3. HVAC condensate waste piping.
- B. Drawings show the general layout of piping and accessories but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect piping to equipment and to coordinate with other trades. Fabricate piping based on field measurements. Provide all necessary fittings and offsets.
- C. General layout shown, provide piping to fixtures as required by the local plumbing code. A licensed master plumber shall perform or supervise the work and provide layouts, piping, and fittings as required by code.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with the utility requirements for the connection of to the municipal utility services. Obtain and pay for all necessary permits from the applicable municipal department. Obtain authority to connect to their existing mains.
- B. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with working-pressure ratings per local plumbing code.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities and shipping, installed, and operating weights. Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections.

- B. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with the local building and plumbing codes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST-IRON SOIL PIPING

- A. Hubless
 1. Hubless Cast Iron pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from gray cast iron and shall conform to ASTM A-888 and CISPI Standard 301. All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute.
 2. Hubless couplings shall conform to ASTM C-1540 heavy duty couplings.
 3. Gaskets shall conform to ASTM C-564. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and local code requirements.
 4. Couplings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's band tightening sequence and torque. Tighten bands with a properly calibrated torque limiting device.
- B. Hub and Spigot Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings:
 1. Hub and Spigot Cast Iron pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from gray cast iron and shall conform to ASTM A-74. All pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute. Pipe and fittings to be Extra Heavy (XH).
 2. Joints can be made using a compression gasket manufactured from a neoprene elastomer meeting the requirements of ASTM C-1563 or lead and oakum. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and are to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and local code requirements. The system shall be hydrostatically tested after installation to 10 ft. of head (4.3 psi maximum).

2.2 PVC DRAINAGE PIPING

- A. Pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from PVC compound with a cell class of 12454 per ASTM D-1784 and conform with National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) standard 14. Pipe shall be iron pipe size (IPS) conforming to ASTM D-1785 and ASTM D-2665. Fittings shall conform to ASTM D-2665.
- B. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and local code requirements. Solvent cements shall conform to ASTM D-2564, primer shall conform to ASTM F-656. The system to be manufactured by Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co. or approved equal; and shall be intended for non-pressure drainage applications where the temperature will not exceed 140°F.

- C. Solvent cement joints for PVC pipe and fittings shall be clean from dirt and moisture. Pipe shall be cut square and pipe shall be deburred. Where surfaces to be joined are cleaned and free of dirt, moisture, oil and other foreign material, apply primer in accordance with ASTM F656.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- C. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M, water tube, drawn temper.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
- E. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.4 PVC PRESSURE PIPING

- A. All pipe and fittings to be produced by a single manufacturer and to be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and local code requirements. Solvent cements shall conform to ASTM D-2564, primer shall conform to ASTM F-656. The system to be manufactured by Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Co. and is intended for pressure applications where the temperature will not exceed 140°F.
- B. Solid Wall: Pipe and fittings shall be manufactured from PVC compound with a cell class of 12454 per ASTM D-1784 and conform with National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) standards 14 and 61. Pipe shall be iron pipe size (IPS) conforming to ASTM D-1785. Fittings shall conform to ASTM D-2466.
- C. Single-wall pipe and fittings:
 - 1. PP Drainage Pipe and Fittings: The corrosive waste drainage system, conforming to ASTM F1412, shall be Orion's Blueline flame retardant pipe and fittings. Pipe and fittings shall be joined using the Orion socket fusion system conforming to ASTM D2657. The pipe shall be supplied in 10-ft lengths. The fittings shall meet or exceed Schedule 40 dimensions. The polypropylene material shall conform to ASTM D4101.
 - 2. Adapters and Transition Fittings: Assemblies with combination of clamps, couplings, adapters, and gaskets; compatible with piping and system liquid; made for joining different piping materials.
- D. Joining materials (socket fusion or mechanical fittings):
 - 1. Couplings: Assemblies with combination of clamps, gaskets, sleeves, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made by piping manufacturer for joining system piping.
 - 2. Adapters and Transition Fittings: Assemblies with combination of clamps, couplings, adapters, gaskets, and threaded or flanged parts; compatible with piping and system liquid; and made for joining different piping materials.
 - 3. Flanges: Assemblies of companion flanges and gaskets complying with ASME B16.21 and compatible with system liquid, and bolts and nuts.

2.5 OUTLET BOXES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Zurn.
2. Gray, Guy Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3. IPS Corporation.
4. LSP Products Group.
5. Oatey.
6. Symmons Industries, Inc.
7. Acorn.

B. General: Outlet boxes with supply fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1M. Include box with faceplate, services indicated for equipment connections, and fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking between studs.

C. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes: with hot- and cold-water hose connections, drain, and the following:

1. Box and Faceplate: White Powder Coat on Cold Rolled Steel
2. Surface-mounted for concrete or CMU walls, recess for stud walls.
3. Shutoff Fitting: Combination, single lever.
4. Supply Fittings: Two NPS 1/2 ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
5. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe, P-trap, and direct waste connection to drainage piping.

D. Lint Filter: Lint LUV-R or equal, shall remove lint and untreatable synthetic solids from washing machine discharge.

1. Filter

- a. 65% initial efficiency capture of micro plastic fibers. 100% at saturation of filter.
- b. Made of stainless steel mesh with hole diameters of 0.0625 inches (1/16" inch or 1580 microns).
- c. Backpressure is less than 5 lbs per square inch after a month of average usage (household of four).
- d. Filter action is dynamic, meaning that as the filter collects lint, it becomes more efficient. The trapped lint acts as a filter itself.
- e. Requires cleaning approximately once every 2-3 weeks (10-15 loads of laundry).

2. Filter bowl and hoses

- a. Clear for visibility.
- b. Backpressure is less than 5 lbs per square inch after a month of average usage (household of four).
- c. Inlet and outlet ports
- d. 1-inch diameter with hose barb connections.

3. Lint LUV-R comes in a kit with:

- a. 3 feet of 1-inch hose
- b. 3 stainless steel clamps
- c. 1-inch hose connector
- d. 2 U-shaped clamps
- e. screws for mounting
- f. installation instructions

4. Mounting
 - a. Approximately 16 – 18 inches above the washing machine, under a shelf or cabinet.
 - b. Provide an angle-mounting bracket is for mounting on a wall if a shelf or cabinet is not present near the washing machine.
5. Dimensions
 - a. Overall length = 12.75 inches
 - b. Overall width including fittings = 10 inches
 - c. Filter Bowl Diameter = 3.25 inches
 - d. Top Mounting Housing = 5 inches square

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Pipe fittings assembled to make a trapped receptacle similar to a floor drain but usually without a grate. They are installed with the top above the floor level, so they are not a substitute for a floor drain.
2. Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
3. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

B. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: P-traps that are made with a deeper-than-normal water seal.
2. Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
3. Size: Same as connected waste piping. NPS 2: 4-inch-minimum water seal. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch-minimum water seal.

C. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: devices for flashing around vent piping at roof penetrations.
2. Counter flashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
3. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

D. Expansion Joints: telescoping pipe fittings that permit the contraction or expansion movement of vertical stacks. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.

E. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.
3. Small AC condensate drain into sink trap: Airgap International, Inc. Drain Boa, Eco-Tech, or equal; Inlet port directly accepts 3/8" poly tubing. Dual plumbing code listed sink tailpiece fitting. Listed by NSF® and UPC®.

4. Fixed Air-Gap Fittings: Zurn Z1024/Z1025 or Precision Plumbing Products; manufactured cast-iron or bronze drainage fitting with semi-open top with threads or device to secure drainage inlet piping in top and bottom spigot or threaded outlet larger than top inlet. Include design complying with ASME A112.1.2 that will provide fixed air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.

- F. Provide backwater valves in piping subject to sewage backflow and as required by plumbing code. For interior installation, provide cleanout deck plate flush with 2 keys. Provide floor and centered over backwater valve cover, and of adequate size to remove valve cover for servicing. Watts BV-200 ASME A112.14.1, cast-iron body, hub inlet and offset spigot outlet, bolted cover with gasket, automatic bronze seat and flapper type backwater valve.

2.7 CLEANOUTS

A. Manufacturers

1. Zurn
2. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
3. Josam Co.
4. Tyler Pipe, Wade Div.
5. Watts Industries, Inc., Drainage Products Div.
6. Mifab
7. Wade

- B. Provide per plumbing code.

- C. Cleanouts shall be easily accessible and shall be gastight and watertight. Provide a minimum clearance of 24 inches for the rodding. Size of cleanout shall be same as pipe size through 4". Pipes 4" and larger shall have 4" cleanouts.

D. Basis of Design Watts CO-200-R

1. Compliance: ANSI/ASME A112.36.2M.
2. Load Rating: MD - Safe Live Load 2,000-4,999 lbs.
3. Epoxy coated cast iron floor cleanout with 5" round adjustable gasketed nickel bronze top, removable gas tight gasketed brass cleanout plug, and no hub (standard) outlet.
4. When a waterproof membrane is used in the floor system, provide clamping collars on the cleanouts.
5. In carpeted areas, provide carpet cleanout markers.
6. Round, square, or recessed for tile tops as required.
7. Provide vandal secured top when scheduled.

- E. Cleanouts shall consist of "Y" fittings and (1/8 inch) bends with brass or bronze screw plugs.

- F. Provide cleanouts at or near the base of the vertical stacks with the cleanout plug located approximately 24 inches above the floor. If there are no fixtures installed on the lowest floor, the cleanout shall be installed at the base of the stack Cleanout shall consist of sanitary tees. . Extend the cleanouts to the wall access cover; Zurn 1400 Series.

- G. In horizontal runs above grade, cleanouts shall consist of cast brass tapered screw plug in fitting or caulked/no hub cast iron ferrule. Plain end (no-hub) piping in interstitial space or above ceiling may use plain end (no-hub) blind plug and clamp.

2.8 TRAP SEAL PRIMER VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
2. Josam Co.
3. Watts.
4. Zurn
5. Mifab
6. Sioux Chief

B. Trap primer make up lines shall have a continuous slope to the floor drain and/or standpipe.

C. Electronic Trap Primer – TP-1

1. Precision Plumbing Products Model MP-500
2. Operation: A preset timer energizes a normally closed electronic solenoid valve. Potable water flows across the air gap and is distributed via trap primer feed lines. The timer then de-energizes the solenoid allowing it to close until the next operational cycle.
3. Cabinet: Surface-mounted steel box; NEMA Type 1, UL 50, 12" x 12" x 4" - 16-gauge steel w/screw on cover ANSI 61 gray polyester powder paint.
4. Electric Controls: Pre-set timer opens once for 6 seconds every 24hours. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application. 120/1/60, 0.23 Amps. Circuit Breaker, Test Switch, Timer, Solenoid Valve UL Listed. Electrical assembly listed per UL # 73.
5. Air gap fitting
6. Solenoid valve with integral strainer screen
7. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L copper water tubing. 95-5 lead-free. Containing lead not in the excess of 0.2%; Inlet: ½" NPT male; Outlet: ½" NPT female.
8. Provide a distribution unit for multiple outlet installations.
9. Standard: ASSE 1044.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SITE INTERFACE

- A. Provide piping from inside face of exterior wall to a distance of approximately 5 feet outside of building. Provide flanged and anchored connection to interior piping.
- B. Refer to Division 31 for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure ratings may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground and Underground, Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:

1. Cast iron
 - a. Risers/stacks
 - b. Exposed to finished space
 - c. Underground, Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping located in Kitchens, Boiler Rooms, or similar spaces where hot water (<140°F) may be dumped down the drain. Provide cast iron from floor drain to main.
 - d. Heat traced piping.
 2. PVC or Cast iron
 - a. Under slab
 - b. Concealed
 - c. Vents
 - d. Storm piping
 3. Vent Piping through roof/exposed above roof: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:
 - a. Cast iron
 - b. Schedule 40 PVC DWV
 - c. ABS
- C. Elevator sump pump discharge piping: Type L sweated copper or PVC pressure piping.
- D. HVAC Unit Condensate Indirect Waste: Drain Lines: $\frac{3}{4}$ " minimum diameter; PVC or DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results" for installation of:
1. Basic piping requirements.
 2. Joint construction requirements.
 3. Hanger, support, and anchor devices.
 4. Firestopping
 5. Sleeves and Escutcheons
 6. Wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall.
 7. Dielectric fittings
 8. Valves
 9. Mechanical Identification
- B. Provide cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
1. Make joints according to CISPI.
 2. Gasketed Joints: Make with rubber gasket matching class of pipe and fittings.
 3. Hubless Joints: Make with rubber gasket and sleeve or clamp.
- C. Provide PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- D. Provide underground PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.

- E. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- F. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Non-pressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve; ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
- G. Make changes in direction for drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- H. Provide drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Provide true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Provide required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- I. Provide drainage and vent piping at the minimum slopes as required by the local plumbing code.
- J. Connect HVAC drain pans per manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Piping shall be provided with a 1/8" foot minimum slope.
 - 2. Height of unit must be carefully coordinated to provide for proper condensate drainage.
 - 3. Provide each 90-degree change in direction with a Y-fitting. Install a threaded plug connection in the dormant side of fitting or future use as a service cleanout.
 - 4. Piping shall be equal to or larger than the drain pan connection size.
 - 5. If required by manufacturer for unit installation, provide a trap assembly in drain piping to prevent air circulated through unit from passing through drain piping. Comply with manufacturer's requirements.
 - 6. Route indoor unit condensate drains to sink traps, floor drains, plumbing code compliant, or other locations as indicated.
- K. Provide cleanouts at grade and extend to where building drains connect to site piping. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior drainage piping to exterior drainage piping.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to fixtures and equipment as shown on the plans.
- D. Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

- E. Provide backflow preventers in each water supply to hydronic systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Provide drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
 4. Access shall be provided for testing, maintenance and repair. Locate backflow preventer between 2 feet and 5 feet above floor.
 5. Test of Backflow Prevention Assemblies: Backflow prevention assembly shall be tested using gauges specifically designed for the testing of backflow prevention assemblies. Gauges shall be tested annually for accuracy in accordance with the University of Southern California's Foundation of Cross Connection Control and Hydraulic Research or the American Water Works Association Manual of Cross Connection (Manual M-14).
- F. Provide air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- G. Provide traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets.
- H. Provide expansion joints on vertical risers, stacks, and conductors as required by code.
- I. Cleanouts:
1. Provide cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated: Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
 2. Provide cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor, for floor cleanouts for piping below floors.
 3. Provide cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.
 4. Provide flashing flange and clamping device with each stack and cleanout passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- J. Provide floor drains in accordance with manufacturer's instructions at locations indicated on the drawings.
1. Protect installed floor drains from damage during construction.
 2. Provide floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Floor s shall be sloped to floor drains.
 3. Provide floor drains plumb, level, and to correct elevation.
 4. Ensure top of floor drains are flush with top of finished floor.
 5. Provide floor drains using manufacturer's supplied hardware.
 6. Coordinate depressed/pitched slab with concrete contractor.
 7. Provide floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 8. Provide individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

K. Trap primers:

1. Provide floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection. Primers shall be accessible for maintenance.
2. Provide trap seal primers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
3. Cycle trap seal primers a minimum of 6 times to ensure optimum performance.
4. Ensure flux and other debris is removed.
5. Do not install trap seal primers closer than 40 feet apart when using same potable water supply line.
6. Mount trap seal primers in a vertical position 1 foot above finished floor for every 20 feet of floor drain trap make-up water line.
7. Provide union connection above trap seal primers.
8. Provide line shut-off valve upstream of trap seal primers to shut off water supply when performing maintenance on trap seal primers.
9. Avoid direct installation to prevent foreign material from entering directly into trap seal primers.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Test piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch w.g. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
- C. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
- D. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.
- E. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 223500

DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Shell-and-tube, domestic-water heat exchangers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of shell-and-tube heat exchanger from manufacturer.

1. Domestic-Water, Heat-Exchanger Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic-water heat exchangers and heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

1. Pre-package skid shall have a 2 year warranty from date of installation but not longer than 27 months from date of shipment.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label heat-exchanger storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- C. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SHELL-AND-TUBE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. Manufacturers: Furnish and install Flo-Rite shell and tube domestic water heat exchanger as manufactured by Armstrong, or approved equal. Supply quantities and model numbers as indicated on the drawing schedule.
- B. Description: Factory-packaged assembly of shell, U-tube heat-exchanger coils, and specialties for heating domestic water with steam in shells.
- C. Construction:
 - 1. Fabricate and label heat exchanger to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.
- D. The assembly shall be pre-piped parallel (redundant water heater) steam to water water heater with performance matched components and pressure tested before delivery. The instantaneous water heater shall be of double wall construction with 5/8" copper inner tube, 3/4" ID grooved copper outer tube expanded into steel (steam side) and brass (water side) tube sheets. Heat exchanger will be fixed on one end of the shell, and free floating on the opposite end, designed and manufactured in accordance with ASME Code Section VIII.
- E. The Flo-Rite-Temp assembly shall comprise domestic side check valves, strainers, thermostatic diverting valve for recirculation control, thermometers, ball valves, Flo-Rite-Temp water heater all pre-piped with type L copper on a painted carbon steel frame.
- F. The pre-piped assembly shall include packaged thermostatic control of the domestic hot water temperature through the use of a three way thermostatic capsule to blend re-circulated water, cold water, and hot water from the heat exchanger in maintaining system temperature.
- G. Complete assembly to be Lead Free compliant.
- H. Water heater assembly shall have all of the following operational capabilities:
 - 1. +/- 4F water temperature control from 0 to full system demand.
 - 2. Pressure drop not to exceed 10 psi at maximum flow.
 - 3. Operational steam pressure, constant of 2-15 psig.

4. Pressure sensitive mixing valve shall fail in the cold position in the event of diaphragm failure.
5. Operational water pressure of 20-150 psig.
6. Isolation valves and clean in place connections to chemically clean the exchanger without disassembly of the exchanger.
7. ¼" domestic side pressure relief pop-off valve with 165 psig crack pressure. Self-seating.
8. Thermostatic air vent to vent exchanger air on start-up.
9. Inverted bucket steam trap for condensate return.
10. Double wall 5/8" outer, ¾" inner tubes expanded into steel/brass tube sheets.
11. Carbon steel shell with 4" 150lb flange steam inlet and 2" condensate outlet connections.
12. Pressure sensitive mixing valve integrally mounted to the shell and tube using feed-forward sensing.
13. Assembly to include vacuum breaker installed between the condensate outlet of the shell and the steam trap.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF DOMESTIC-WATER HEAT EXCHANGERS AND DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Domestic-Water Heat Exchangers and Domestic-Water Heaters Mounting: Install domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 5. Anchor heat exchangers and heaters to substrate.
- B. Install domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic cold-water supply piping to domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping," Section 220523.13 "Butterfly Valves for Plumbing Piping," and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
 2. Install shutoff valves on heating hot-water piping to domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
 3. Install shutoff valves on steam and condensate piping to domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."

- C. Install temperature- and pressure-relief valves in top portion of domestic-water storage tank shells. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into shells. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install combination temperature- and pressure-relief valves in water piping for domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- E. Install domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in domestic-water piping for heat exchangers and heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- F. Install thermometer on each domestic-water heat exchanger and domestic-water heater inlet and outlet piping, and install thermometer on each heat exchanger and heater heating-fluid inlet and outlet piping. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- G. Install pressure gauges on domestic-water heat exchanger and domestic-water heater heating-fluid piping. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges specified in Section 220500 "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- H. Fill domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters with water.
- I. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Comply with requirements for heating hot-water piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- C. Comply with requirements for steam and condensate piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping Specialties."
- D. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- E. Where installing piping adjacent to domestic-water heat exchangers and heaters, allow space for service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers and heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Domestic-water heat exchangers and domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain domestic-water heat exchangers.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 224000

PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 2. Division 22 Plumbing Sections

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes Plumbing Fixtures.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports and indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates for each type of fixture indicated.
- B. Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Comply with the local building and plumbing codes.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; about plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- E. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.

- F. Coordinate roughing-in and final plumbing fixture locations, and verify that fixtures can be installed to comply with original design and referenced standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

A. Common Plumbing Fixture Requirements

1. Vitreous china, nonabsorbent, hard-burned, and vitrified throughout the body shall be provided. Porcelain enameled ware shall have specially selected, acid-resisting enamel coating evenly applied on surfaces. No fixture will be accepted that shows cracks, crazes, blisters, thin spots, or other flaws. Fixture color shall be white except as specified herein.
2. Provide combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
3. Fixtures shall be provided appurtenances such as traps, supplies, faucets, stop valves, and drain fittings – for a complete, finished, code-compliant installation.
4. Coordinate fixture rough in dimensions for conflicts with surrounding structure, prior to submitting.
5. Each fixture and piece of equipment requiring connections to the drainage system shall be equipped with a trap.
6. Brass expansion or toggle bolts capped with acorn nuts shall be provided for supports, and polished chromium-plated pipe, valves, and fittings shall be provided where exposed to view.
7. Fixture supports for off-the-floor fixtures shall be of the chair-carrier type. The carrier shall provide the necessary means of mounting the fixture, with a foot or feet to anchor the assembly to the floor slab. Adjustability shall be provided to locate the fixture at the desired height and in proper relation to the wall. Support plates, in lieu of chair carrier, shall be fastened to the wall structure only where it is not possible to anchor a floor-mounted chair carrier to the floor slab. Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.
8. Provide access panels to concealed valves and components. All components shall have proper access in accordance with manufactures' recommendations.
9. Mounting heights: Refer to Architectural Plans.
10. Water line components shall be lead-free.

2.2 FLUSH VALVE WATER CLOSETS

A. Manufacturers:

1. American Standard
2. Kohler
3. Toto
4. Sloan

B. Water Closets - Common Requirements:

1. Comply with ASME A112.19.2 – Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures; Comply with ADA
2. Material: Vitreous china.
3. Type: Siphon jet.

4. Style: Flushometer valve.
5. Rim Contour: Elongated.
6. Support: Water-closet carrier
7. Water Consumption: 1.28 GPF.
8. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
9. Toilet Seats: Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5; solid polypropylene with special surface that inhibits the growth of stain and odor causing bacteria, mold and mildew on the surface; commercial heavy duty; Shape: Elongated rim, open front; Seat Cover: Not required. Color: White.

- C. **P-1/P-1A:** Wall mounted, top spud. American Standard Afwall; Water Closet Carrier: Standard: ASME A112.6.1M. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement; with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Mounting Height: See Architectural plan.



1. Flushometer: Lever-Handle, Exposed, Piston Flushometer Valves: Sloan Crowne
 - a. Comply with ASSE 1037 and ASME A112.19.5, and ADA. Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 - b. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components. Flushometer Finish: Chrome plated.

2.3 VITREOUS-CHINA LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory Manufacturers:

1. Zurn
2. American Standard
3. Kohler
4. Toto
5. Duravit

B. Lavatories – Common Requirements:

1. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1; ADA.
2. Faucet-Hole Punching: Match faucet, coordinate hole locations.
3. Provide a permanent surface that inhibits the growth of stain and odor causing bacteria, mold and mildew on the surface
4. Provide overflow.
5. Provide 304 stainless steel grid drain unless noted otherwise.
6. Risers: Supply line: supplied by fixture manufacturer, or by McGuire or Brasscraft. Shall be lead-free, loose key standard stop lavatory supply kit, two polished chrome, solid brass angle stops with wheel handles, two 12" flexible chrome-plated lavatory risers complete with two forged brass with set screw flanges; connections: 1/2" sweat x 3/8" OD.
7. Waste Fittings: Standard: ASME A112.18.2
8. Drain: Stainless steel grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.

9. Trap: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4; Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
10. Provide ADA trim kits for exposed piping.
 - a. Pipe covering kit equal to Dearborn Safety Series by Oatey; Cover opens 180° for easy installation, EVA foam material, sized for 1 ¼" and 1 ½" cast traps, IAPMOPS-94.
11. Faucets: See LAVATORY & SINK FAUCETS paragraph below.

- C. **P-2/P-2A: Wall Mounted:** Provide ASME A112.6.1M lavatory carrier. Lavatory mounting height: See architectural plans

American Standard "Lucerne"; Nominal Size: Rectangular, 20.5" x 18.25".



- D. Lavatory Faucets:

1. See faucet specifications in paragraphs hereinafter.

2.4 LAVATORY & SINK FAUCETS

- A. Faucet Manufacturers

1. Moen
2. Symmons
3. Delta Commercial
4. Chicago
5. Gerber
6. Zurn
7. Kohler
8. American Standard

- B. Faucets - Common Requirements:

1. Comply with ASME A112.18.1M, NSF372-2011, ADA; UL 1951
2. Body Material: Commercial, solid cast brass.
3. Lead Free: Faucet contains ≤ 0.25% total lead content by weighted average
4. Thermostatic mixing valves (TMV), as indicated: 20" flexible stainless steel inlet hoses with 3/8" compression fittings. ASSE 1070 certified down to 0.35 GPM
5. Provide antimicrobial handles: Chicago Sureshield® Technology, or equal; In a 28-day dried film fungal test (ASTM G 21-96), the untreated sample shows significant fungal growth, while the Sureshield sample remains virtually unchanged.

- C. Manual Type:

1. **P-2/P-2A:** ADA lever handle: American Standard Colony Pro Model #707 04; 4" centerset, single control lavatory faucet, 0.5 GPM pressure compensating aerator; ceramic disc valve cartridge, lead free.

2.5 **SHOWERS (ISSUED FOR REFERENCE IN DEVELOPING A UNIT COST FOR REPLACEMENT ON AN AS NEEDED BASIS – NOT INCLUDED IN BASE BID)**

A. Shower Manufacturers

- a. Freedom
- b. Aqua Bath Co., Inc.
- c. Aquarius.
- d. Aquatic
- e. Kohler Co.
- f. LASC0 Bathware

B. Faucet Manufacturers

1. Symmons
2. Moen
3. Powers
4. Leonard
5. Grohe

C. Transfer Shower (ADA Accessible)

1. Basis of Design: Aquarius Model G3698BF; 40.5" x 39.5" x 82" outside dimensions. Inside dimensions: 36" x 36".
2. Material: Polyester gelcoat
3. Color: White.
4. Drain Location: Center. Grid, NPS 2.
5. Soap tray: molded in recessed.
6. ADA Seat: None
7. ADA Grab bars: smooth radius SS; 33.5"x18"x1.5" and 24"x1.5"
8. Curtain rod: 1" OD 18-gauge SS grommet style. Provide a white, weighted shower curtain.
9. ¾" threshold, with collapsible dam. Coordinate pit for shower to achieve a ½" or less threshold above finished floor.
10. Shower Faucets: Existing head and controls shall be re-used.
11. Floor Drain: Existing drain shall be re-used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation. Use manufacturer's roughing-in data if roughing-in data are not indicated.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and cabinets for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FIXTURE INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Assemble and support fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Provide fixtures level and plumb according to manufacturers' written instructions and roughing-in drawings.
- C. Provide water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Provide stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- D. Provide traps on fixture outlets as required.
 - 1. Provide level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- E. Provide supports and connections to fixtures per manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Provide escutcheons at piping wall ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- G. Set floor mounted fixtures in a leveling bed of cement grout as per fixture manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Joint Sealing: Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and counters using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to water-closet color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 9.
- I. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation: Provide wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Provide deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.

3.3 WATER CLOSET INSTALLATION

- A. Provide accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Provide flush handle mounted on open (approach) side of fixture. Provide actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- C. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
- D. Provide toilet seats on water closets.

3.4 SINKS AND LAVATORIES

- A. Provide supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

- B. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Use chrome-plated brass or copper tube, fittings, and valves in locations exposed to view. Plain copper tube, fittings, and valves may be used in concealed locations.
- C. Supply and Waste Connections to Plumbing Fixtures: Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, risers, traps, and waste piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures. Connect to plumbing piping.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed. Check that fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components. Inspect installed fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves. Adjust set point within allowable temperature range.
- D. Operate and adjust fixtures. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- E. Adjust water pressure to produce proper flow and stream.
- F. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing fixture installation, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts. Remove sediment and debris from drains.
- C. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

- B. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless allowed in Division 1.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230500

COMMON WORK RESULTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. This section applies to Plumbing Division 22 & and HVAC Division 23 sections.

1.2 GENERAL

- A. This Section includes mechanical items common to all of this division specification sections.
- B. Provide services, skilled and common labor, and all apparatus and materials required for the complete installation as shown and within the intent of the contract documents, field conditions, and code requirements.
- C. The intention of these Contract Documents is to call for finished work, fully tested and ready for operation. Any components or labor not mentioned in the Contract Documents but required for functioning systems shall be provided. Should there appear to be any discrepancies or questions of intent, the Contractor shall refer the matter to the Architect/Engineer for a decision before start of any related work.
- D. Consistency and Completeness: The contract documents are intended to include all components; however, the contract documents may not be perfect. Repetitive, common components (such as volume dampers, thermostats, condensate drains, trap primers, vent pipes, valves, etc.) are shown throughout. If a common component is missing in from the drawings, provide as similar per other areas. There will be no change orders for missing such components, the contractor shall provide consistent, complete, functioning systems.
- E. Should the Drawings or the Specifications disagree in themselves or with each other, the Contractor shall provide the better quality or greater quantity of work and/or materials unless otherwise directed by written addendum to the Contract Documents.
- F. Materials or work described in words, which so applied, have a well-known technical or trade meaning shall be held to refer to such recognized standards. Since the plans and specifications cover the dimensions and features of the work and do not set forth the analysis of the design, it is the duty of the Contractor fulfilling them to ascertain the true intent in any case where it is doubtful.

1.3 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Provide equipment and components to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings.

- B. Follow manufacturer's instructions for inspection, start-up, calibration, commissioning, and testing.

1.4 EFFICIENCY MAINE

- A. This project intends to pursue Efficient Maine prescriptive and/or custom incentives. The contractor shall participate in the activities associated with Efficiency Maine incentive approval process including but not limited to; preparation and submission of required incentive applications and the tracking and submission of measure specific invoices to Efficiency Maine within 60 days of the completion of the work.
- B. The contractor shall become familiar with the Efficiency Maine Business Program including available incentives and the application and review process. Efficiency Maine is available to assist in the application process and can be reached at <https://www.energymaine.com/at-work/>. Contractor must contact EM prior to submittals to review the project equipment and scope.
 - 1. <https://www.energymaine.com/at-work/ci-incentive-program/>
 - 2. Review plans and specifications for compliance with Efficiency Maine standards for applicable systems and technologies.
 - 3. Review plans and specifications for incentive opportunities.
- C. The project schedule shall reflect and accommodate the time required to achieve application pre-approval from Efficiency Maine (EM). No equipment shall be purchased until pre-approval is received from EM.
- D. Invoices shall be forwarded to EM within 60 days of the completion of the work. This deliverable shall be shown on the project schedule as a milestone date and coordinated with all contractors to assure compliance with this requirement.
- E. As a minimum, obtain rebates for the following:
 - 1. VRF
 - 2. Energy Recovery Ventilators and DOAS units
 - 3. Lighting

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- B. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- C. "Shall": The word "shall" is used to indicate mandatory requirements strictly to be followed in order to conform to the standard and procedures and from which no deviation is permitted.
- D. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and attics.
- E. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

- F. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- G. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- H. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- I. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide in accordance with Division 1 of the specifications.

1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Provide in accordance with Division 1 of the specifications.
- B. Engineer will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Engineer will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - 1. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Engineer for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - 2. Requested substitution does not require revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - 3. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - 4. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - 5. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 6. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 7. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work and shall be acceptable to all contractors involved.
 - 8. Equipment electrical characteristics different than scheduled may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified at no additional cost.
 - 9. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
 - 10. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - 11. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the rules and regulations of all codes and ordinances of the local, state, and federal authorities. Such codes, when more restrictive, shall take precedence over these plans and specifications.
- B. Multiple Units: When two or more units of materials or equipment of the same type or class are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Work shall be done by skilled mechanics shall have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program.
- D. The Contractor shall hold a license to perform the work as issued by the local jurisdiction.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate use of project space and sequence of installation of work, which is indicated diagrammatically on drawings. Follow routings shown, as closely as practicable, with due allowance for available physical space; make runs parallel with lines of building. Utilize space efficiently to maximize accessibility for other installations, for maintenance, and for repairs.
- B. Coordinate use of project space and sequence of installation of work.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for installations. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels shall be provided for any item requiring inspection or maintenance. Access panels shall be of sufficient size and located so that the concealed items may be serviced, maintained, or replaced.
 - 1. Access panels and doors are specified and provided by Division 8.

1.10 TEST ADJUST AND BALANCE READINESS

- A. The Contractor shall provide and coordinate the services of qualified, responsible sub-contractors, suppliers and personnel as required to correct, repair, and/or replace deficient items or conditions found during the course of this project, including the testing, adjusting, and balancing period.
- B. In order that systems may be properly tested, balanced, and adjusted as required herein by these Specifications, the Contractor shall operate the systems at his expense for the length of time necessary to properly verify their completion and readiness for TAB. Project Contract completion schedules shall allow for sufficient time to permit the completion of TAB services prior to Owner occupancy. The Contractor shall allow adequate time for the testing and balancing activities of the Owner provided services, during the construction period, and prior to Substantial Completion as defined in the Uniform General Conditions of this Construction Document.

- C. The Drawings and Specifications indicate adjustment devices for the purpose of adjustment to obtain optimum operating conditions, and it will be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide these devices in a manner that will leave them accessible and readily adjustable. Should any such device not be readily accessible, the Contractor shall provide access as requested by the TAB Firm. Also, any malfunction encountered by TAB personnel and reported to the Contractor shall be corrected by the Contractor immediately so that the balancing work can proceed with the minimum of delays.
- D. Complete operational readiness of the HVAC systems also requires that the following be accomplished:
1. Distribution Systems:
 - a. Verify installation for conformity to design. Ducts shall be terminated and tested as required by the Specification.
 - b. Dampers shall be properly located and functional. Dampers shall have tight closure and open fully with smooth and free operation.
 - c. RGD'S and terminal devices shall be provided and secured in a fully open position.
 - d. Air handling systems and associated apparatus shall be sealed to eliminate uncontrolled bypass or leakage of air. Clean filters shall be in place, coils shall be clean with fins straightened, bearings properly greased, and the system shall be completely operational. The Contractor shall verify that systems are operating within the design pressure limits of the piping and ductwork.
 - e. Under normal operating conditions, check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning. Cooling coil drain pans have a positive slope to drain. Cooling coil condensate drain trap maintains an air seal.
 - f. Fans shall be operating and verified for freedom from vibration, proper fan rotation.
 - g.
 - h. Bearings shall be greased.
 - i. Terminal units shall be provided and functional (i.e., controls functioning).
 2. Water Circulating Systems:
 - a. Verify installation for conformity to design. Hydronic systems are pressure tested, flushed, filled, and properly vented; valves are fully open. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices are properly provided, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation
 - b. Valves shall be set to their fully open position. After the system is flushed and checked for proper operation, strainers shall be removed and cleaned. The Contractor shall repeat the operation until circulating water is clean and then the start-up strainers shall be discarded.
 - c. Record motor amperage on each phase and voltage after reaching rated speed. Readings shall not exceed nameplate rating. Thermal overload protection is in place.
 - d. In preparation of TAB, water circulating systems shall be full and free of air, expansion tanks shall be set for proper water level, and air vents shall be provided at high points of systems and operating freely. Chemicals shall be added to closed systems to treat piping and inhibit corrosion. The system static pressure shall be adequate to completely fill the system without operating the pumps.
 - e. Check and set operating parameters of the heat transfer and control devices to the design requirements.
 - f. Proper balancing devices shall be in place and located correctly. Heat transfer coils shall be checked for correct piping connections.

3. Building Automation System (BAS)

- a. The BAS Contractor shall verify that control components are provided in accordance with project requirements and are functional.
- b. The BAS Contractor shall verify that controlling instruments are calibrated and set for design operating conditions with the exception of components that require input from the TAB Agency, but a default shall be set. The Control Contractor shall cooperate with the TAB Agency and provide software and interfaces to communicate with the system.
- c. The BAS Contractor shall thoroughly check controls, sensors, operators, sequences, etc. before notifying the TAB Agency that the BAS is operational. The BAS Contractor shall provide technical support (technicians and necessary computers) to the TAB Agency for a complete check of these systems.
- d. Prior to occupancy, each ventilation system shall be tested to ensure that OA dampers operate properly in accordance with system design.
- e. Fire Alarm: Division 26 shall thoroughly check detection devices, sequences, interlocks, etc. before notifying the TAB Agency that the system is operational. Division 26 shall certify that the systems are totally operational to the Contractor prior to the TAB beginning.

1.11 RENOVATION PROJECT REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner to minimize conflicts with the Owner's operations.
- B. The Contractor shall study the drawings and specifications, visit the site, and get acquainted with the existing conditions and the requirements of the plans and specifications. No claim will be recognized for extra compensation due to the failure of the Contractor to be familiarized with the conditions and extent of the proposed work. The Contractor shall execute alterations, additions, removals, relocations, or new work, etc., as indicated, or required to provide a complete installation in accordance with the intent of the drawing and specifications.
- C. Use of Site: Limit use of premises to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated. Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances and minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- D. Follow the recommended procedures of the SMACNA IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction.
- E. Continuity of Services: The building will be in use during construction operations. Maintain existing systems in operation within rooms of building. Schedules for various phases of contract work shall be coordinated with other trades and with Owner's Representative. Provide, as part of the contract, temporary plumbing and mechanical and electrical connections and relocations as required to accomplish the above. Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services. Notify Owner at least two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions. Identify extent and duration of utility interruptions. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.
- F. Cutting And Patching: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut. Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching

operations. Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas.

1. Where existing services/systems are required to be removed relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
2. Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
3. Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original installer; comply with original installer's written recommendations.
4. Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections. Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
5. Any structural member weakened or impaired by cutting, notching, or otherwise shall be reinforced, repaired, or replaced so as to be left in safe structural condition in accordance with the local building code requirements.
6. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition.
7. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Completely remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 PRODUCT CRITERIA

- A. Any costs incurred due to deviations from basis of design unit shall be responsibility of the contractor.
- B. Material and equipment shall be the standard products of a manufacturer regularly engaged in the manufacture of the products for at least 5 years.
- C. Equipment Service: Products shall be supported by a service organization that maintains a complete inventory of repair parts and is located reasonably close to the site.
- D. Multiple Units: When two or more units of materials or equipment of the same type or class are required, these units shall be products of one manufacturer.
- E. Assembled Units: Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which use components made by others, assume complete responsibility for the final assembled product.
- F. Nameplates: Nameplate bearing manufacturer's name or identifiable trademark shall be securely affixed in a conspicuous place on equipment, or name or trademark cast integrally with equipment, stamped, or otherwise permanently marked on each item of equipment.
- G. Asbestos products or equipment or materials containing asbestos shall not be used.

2.2 PROGRAMMABLE 3-PHASE LINE VOLTAGE MONITORS

- A. Provide for all inverter-driven equipment.
- B. Provide an ICM Controls Model #ICM450A or equal, for motor protection from premature failure and damage caused by common voltage faults such as phase unbalance, over/under voltage, phase loss and phase reversal.
 - 1. Voltage: Universal, 190-600 VAC
 - 2. Simultaneous 3-phase true RMS voltage monitoring
 - 3. Factory calibrated.
 - 4. 3-phase voltages simultaneously displayed on LCD
 - 5. Fault memory
 - 6. Fault monitoring: High / low voltage, voltage unbalance, phase loss, phase reversal
 - 7. Simple configuration
 - 8. Fully adjustable variables
 - 9. Modbus RS485 communications
 - 10. LED indicators
 - 11. Common ¼" quick connect terminations.

2.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Equipment:
 - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
 - 2. Tag and description: Example: "EF-1 - Bathroom Exhaust"
 - 3. Equipment Markers: Custom Vinyl Decals with a clear polyester overlamine to endure outdoor conditions and are UV and scuff resistant. Decals shall be made of flexible vinyl with a permanent pressure-sensitive adhesive backing suitable for curved surfaces. Service temperature range of -40°F to 176°F.
 - 4. In addition to the equipment tag, equipment located above the ceiling that requires servicing shall be labeled on the ceiling grid using a labeling machine.
- B. Piping Identification Devices
 - 1. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Seton, Brady, or approved equal; preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
 - 2. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length. Size of letters and length of color field per ASME A13.1.
 - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation; Full-band snap-around pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow. Length of color field and size of letters shall be proportional to pipe OD.
 - 4. Types: Self-adhesive type: Seton Opti-Code; Snap-around type: Seton Setmark; Wrap-around type: Seton Ultra-mark; PVF over-laminated polyester construction seals in and protects graphics; suitable for outdoor or harsh environments.
- C. Concealed manual volume dampers shall be visible outside the insulation and marked with 12" orange ribbon.

D. Valve Tags & Schedules

1. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved 1-1/2" round with 1/4-inch letters for piping system legend and 1/2-inch black-filled numbers, with numbering scheme; 3/16" hole for fastener; Material: 19-gauge brass; Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
2. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on standard-size bond paper. Also save in PDF format. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses. Valve-Schedule Frames: Glazed display frame for removable mounting on masonry walls for each page of valve schedule. Include mounting screws. Frame: aluminum. Glazing: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Glazing Quality B, 2.5-mm, single-thickness glass.

- E. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags; of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum. Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER". Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

2.4 PIPE JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Provide per local code.

- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

- C. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Press Connections

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Viega LLC; ProPress, Apollo, or approved equal.
2. Press ends shall have Viega Smart Connect, Apollo Leak Before Press, or similar technology designed into the fitting itself, allowing identification of an un-pressed fitting during pressure testing. The function of this feature is to provide the installer quick and easy identification of connections which have not been pressed prior to putting the system into operation.
3. Copper and copper alloy press fittings shall conform to material requirements of ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 and performance criteria of ASME B16.51 and IAPMO PS 117. Sealing elements for press fittings shall be EPDM. Sealing elements shall be factory installed or an alternative supplied by the fitting manufacturer.
4. Steel: Cold Press Mechanical Joint Fitting shall conform to material requirements of ASTM A420 or ASME B16.3 and performance criteria ANSI/CSA LC4. Sealing elements for press fittings shall be HNBR. Sealing elements shall be factory installed or an alternative supplied by the fitting manufacturer. Piping and fittings shall comply with CSA LC-4 and local codes.

- E. Mechanical Coupling Gasket Materials: Suitable for the chemical and thermal conditions of the piping system contents and exterior environment. Gasket design shall be such that the entire

coupling housing is isolated from the system contents to prevent galvanic action and inhibit galvanic corrosion.

- F. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- H. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- J. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping: CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- K. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.
- M. Provide dielectric isolation at the connection of dissimilar metals. Provide brass ball valves or fittings; or Watts Series LF3000 (lead free) or approved equal.

2.5 SLEEVES & ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water-stop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Provide wall penetration system where service pipes penetrate through foundation wall or floor. Make installation watertight. Mechanical Sleeve Seals: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve; Thunderline Link-Seal, or approved equal.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.

2. Pressure Plates: Glass-reinforced nylon.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

G. Escutcheons shall be manufactured from nonferrous metals and shall be chrome-plated. Metals and finish shall conform to ASME A112.19.2. Escutcheons shall be one-piece type where mounted on chrome-plated pipe or tubing, and one-piece of split-pattern type elsewhere. ID shall closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers the opening. Escutcheons shall have setscrews for maintaining a fixed position against a surface.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. B-Line Systems, Inc.
2. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
3. Grinnell Corp.
4. Hubbard Enterprises/Holdrite
5. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
6. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
7. Unistrut
8. Anvil International, Inc.
9. Empire

B. Provide in accordance with MSS SP69 - Manufacturers Standardization Society: Pipe Hangers and Supports- Selection and Application. Steel pipe hangers and supports shall have the manufacturer's name, part number, and applicable size stamped on the part itself for identification.

C. The materials of pipe hanging and supporting elements shall be in accordance with MSS SP-58. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

D. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel." Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications." Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping." Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations. Provide for the following: trapeze pipe hangers, metal framing systems, pipe stands, equipment supports.

F. Hangers:

1. Uninsulated pipes 2 inch and smaller: Adjustable steel swivel ring (band type) hanger, Type 10, B-Line B3170; Adjustable steel swivel J-hanger, Type 5, B-Line B3690; Malleable iron ring hanger, Type 12, B-Line B3198R or hinged ring hanger, B3198H. Adjustable steel clevis hanger, Type 1, B-Line B3100.

2. Uninsulated pipes 2-1/2 inch and larger: Adjustable steel clevis hanger, Type 1, B-Line B3100.
 3. Insulated pipe- Hot piping: 2 inch and smaller pipes: use adjustable steel clevis with galvanized sheet metal shield. Type 1, B-Line B3100 with Type 40, B-Line B3151 series insulation protection shield. 2-1/2 inch and larger pipes: Type 41 or Type 43 with Type 39A/39B, B3160-B3165 series pipe covering protection saddle.
 4. Insulated pipe- Cold piping: use adjustable steel clevis with galvanized sheet metal shield. Type 1, B-Line B3100 with Type 40, B-Line B3151 series insulation protection shield.
- G. Pipe Clamps: When flexibility in the hanger assembly is required due to horizontal movement, use pipe clamps with weldless eye nuts, Type 4, B-Line B3140. For insulated lines use double bolted pipe clamps, Type 3, B-Line B3144.
- H. Multiple or Trapeze Hanger: Trapeze hangers shall be constructed from 12-gauge roll formed ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33 structural steel channel, 1-5/8 inch by 1-5/8-inch minimum, B-Line B22 strut or stronger as required. Mount pipes to trapeze with 2-piece pipe straps sized for outside diameter of pipe, B-Line B2000 Series.
- I. Wall Supports: Pipes 4" and smaller: Carbon steel J-hanger, B-Line B3690. Pipes larger than 4": Welded strut bracket and pipe straps, Type 31 light welded steel bracket, B-Line B3064. Provide Type 32 or Type 33 for heavier loads.
- J. Floor Supports: Hot piping under 6 inch and cold piping: Carbon steel adjustable pipe saddle and nipple attached to steel base stand sized for pipe elevation. Type 38 adjustable pipe saddle, B-Line B3093 and B3088T base stand; or Type 39, B3090 and B3088 base stand. Pipe saddle shall be screwed or welded to appropriate base stand. Hot piping 6 inch and larger: Adjustable Roller stand with base plate, Type 46, B3118SL. Adjustable roller support and steel support sized for elevation, B-Line B3124.
- K. Vertical Supports: Steel riser clamp sized to fit OD of pipe, Type 8, B-Line B3373.
- L. Copper Tubing Supports Hangers shall be sized to fit copper tubing outside diameters. Adjustable steel swivel ring (band type) hanger, Type 10, B-Line B3170CT. Malleable iron ring hanger, Type 12, B-Line B3198RCT or hinged ring hanger B3198HCT. Adjustable steel clevis hanger, Type 1, B-Line B3104CT. For supporting copper tube to strut use plastic inserted vibration isolation clamps, B-Line BVT series.
- M. Plastic Pipe Supports: V-Bottom clevis hanger with galvanized 18-gauge continuous support channel, Type 1, B-Line B3106 and B3106V plastic pipe support channel, to form a continuous support system for plastic pipe or flexible tubing.
- N. Supplementary Structural Supports: Design and fabricate supports using structural quality steel bolted framing materials as manufactured by Cooper B-Line. Channels shall be roll formed, 12 gauge ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33 steel, 1-5/8 inch by 1-5/8 inch or greater as required by loading conditions. Submit designs for pipe tunnels, pipe galleries, etc., to engineer for approval. Use clamps and fittings designed for use with the strut system.
- O. Beam Clamps shall be used where piping is to be suspended from building steel. Clamp type shall be selected on the basis of load to be supported, and load configuration. C-Clamps shall have locknuts and cup point set screws, Type 23, B-Line B351L. Refer to manufacturer's recommendation for setscrew torque. Retaining straps shall be used to maintain the clamps position on the beam where required.

- P. Concrete Inserts: Cast in place spot concrete inserts shall be used where applicable; either steel or malleable iron body, Type 18, B-Line B2500 or B3014. Spot inserts shall allow for lateral adjustment and have means for attachment to forms. Select inserts to suit threaded hanger rod sizes, B-Line N2500 or B3014N series. Continuous concrete inserts shall be used where applicable. Channels shall be 12 gauge, ASTM A1011 SS Grade 33 structural quality carbon steel, complete with Styrofoam inserts and end caps with nail holes for attachment to forms. The continuous concrete insert shall have a load rating of 2,000 lbs./ft. in concrete, B-Line B22I, 32I, or 52I. Select channel nuts suitable for strut and rod sizes.
- Q. For air conditioning and other vibrating system applications, use a clamp that has a vibration dampening insert and a nylon inserted locknut. For copper and steel tubing use B-Line BVT-Series Vibraclamps. For larger tubing or piping subjected to vibration, use neoprene or spring hangers as required. For base mounted equipment use vibration pads, molded neoprene mounts, or spring mounts as required.
- R. Accessories
1. Hanger Rods shall be threaded both ends, or continuous threaded rods of circular cross section. Use adjusting locknuts at upper attachments and hangers. No wire, chain, or perforated straps are allowed.
 2. Shields shall be 180 degree galvanized sheet metal, 12 inch minimum length, 18 gauge minimum thickness, designed to match outside diameter of the insulated pipe, B-Line B3151.
 3. Pipe protection saddles shall be formed from carbon steel, 1/8 inch minimum thickness, sized for insulation thickness. Saddles for pipe sizes greater than 12 inch shall have a center support rib.
- S. Indoor Finishes: Hangers and clamps for support of bare copper piping shall be coated with copper colored epoxy paint, B-Line Dura-Copper®. Additional PVC coating of the epoxy painted hanger shall be used where necessary. Hangers for other than bare copper pipe shall be zinc plated in accordance with ASTM B633; or shall have an electro-deposited green epoxy finish, B-Line Dura-Green®. Strut channels shall be pre-galvanized in accordance with ASTM A653 SS Grade 33 G90 OR have an electro-deposited green epoxy finish, B-Line Dura-Green®.
- T. Outdoor Finishes: Hangers and strut located outdoors shall be hot dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123. Hanger hardware shall be hot dip galvanized or stainless steel. Zinc plated hardware is not acceptable for outdoor or corrosive use.
- U. Unistrut (MFMA) Manufacturer Metal Framing System:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Unistrut Corporation
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes. Standard: MFMA-4.
 3. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with in-turned lips. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.

4. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
5. Coating: Unistrut Perma-green or similar.

- V. Roof Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping. Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration. Bases: One or more; plastic. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.

2.7 BRAIDED EXPANSION LOOPS (MANUFACTURED ONLY, NO FIELD FABRICATED)

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Metraflex Co.
 - b. Flex Hose Co., Inc.
 - c. Flexicraft
- B. Flexible loops shall consist of two flexible sections of hose and braid, two 90° elbows, and an 180° return assembled in such a way that the piping does not change direction but maintains its course along a single axis. Flexible loops shall have a factory supplied, center support nut located at the bottom of the 180° return, and a drain/air release plug. Flexible loops shall impart no thrust loads to system support anchors or building structure. Loops shall be provided in a neutral, pre-compressed or pre-extended condition as required for the application. For steam service, loops must be provided with flexible legs horizontal to prevent condensate buildup. Provide and guide per manufacturer's recommendations. Materials of construction and end fitting type shall be consistent with pipe material and equipment/pipe connection fittings. For natural gas service, connectors shall be A.G.A. certified. Basis of Design: Flexible expansion loops to be "Metraloop" as manufactured by the Metraflex Company.
- C. Loops for domestic hot water shall be NSF-372 lead free certified.
- D. For tight pipe runs, provide nested loops.
- E. Anchors: Metraflex Model PA anchor clamp or approved equal. Provide light weight anchor for low load; compatible with braided expansion loop manufactures recommendations for "no-thrust" expansion joints. Clamp to pipe.
- F. Guides: Metraflex Model PGIV shall be of the radial type employing a heavy wall guide cylinder with weld down or bolt down anchor base. A two section guide spider, having 1/8" maximum diametrical clearance with guide cylinder inside diameter, bolted or welded tight to the carrier pipe which slides through the guide cylinder I.D. Cylinder shall be of sufficient size to clear pipe insulation and long enough to prevent over travel of the spider.

2.8 THERMOMETERS AND PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ashcroft
 2. Weksler

3. Ernst Gauge Co.
 4. Trerice: H. O. Trerice Co.
 5. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. The proper range will be selected so that the operating temperature/pressure of the material being measured will fall approximately in the middle of the scale.
- C. Liquid-In-Glass Industrial Thermometers: shall be a blue reading (Fill Type Spirit: Blue colored, organic) liquid-in-glass adjustable angle type, 9" scale, cast aluminum case with cured polyester powder coating, clear acrylic window and brass separable thermowell. Thermometers will be Trerice BX9 Series or approved equal.
- D. Thermowells: Provide fitting with protective socket for installation in threaded pipe fitting to hold fixed thermometer stem. Material shall be compatible with the piping. Where insulation thickness exceeds 2", a longer stem thermometer will be used with an extension neck brass separable thermowell. The extension neck will be at least 2" long. Cap: Threaded, with chain permanently fastened to socket.
- E. Pressure gauges shall be 3½" dial size with a flangeless cast aluminum case, stainless steel friction ring and glass window. The movement will be brass with a bronze bourdon tube and brass socket. The dial face will be white with black figures; pointer will be friction adjustable type. Accuracy shall be ±1% of scale range, ASME B40.1 Grade 1A. Pressure gauges will be Trerice No. 600CB approved equal.
1. Connector: Brass, NPT 1/4.
 2. Units of Measure: PSI
 3. Provide silicone-damped movement.
 4. Provide pressure-gauge needle valve and snubber (Trerice No. 872 pressure snubbers) in piping to pressure gauges; ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.
 5. Needle Valves: Trerice 735 Series; NPS 1/4 brass or 316 stainless steel needle type.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS

- A. Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, non-shrink, and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, non-staining, non-corrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- B. Equipment shall be vibration isolated to prevent vibration transmission to the building structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DEMOLITION AND REMOVALS

- A. Refer to Division 1 for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing and mechanical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.

1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and cap and seal remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap and seal ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 5. Equipment to be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 6. Equipment to be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Work shall be conducted, installed, and completed in a neat and professional manner reflecting a minimum level of competent workmanship.
- B. The drawings show the general arrangement of systems and equipment but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect pipes and ductwork to equipment, and to coordinate with other trades. Provide necessary fittings, offsets and runs based on field measurements and at no additional cost. Coordinate with other trades for space available and relative location of equipment and accessories. Pipe and duct location on the drawings shall be altered by the contractor where necessary to avoid interferences and clearance difficulties.
- C. Fabricate based on field measurements.
- D. Corrections or comments made on the shop or coordination drawings during the review do not relieve Contractor from compliance with requirements of the drawings and specifications. The Contractor is responsible for: confirming and correcting quantities; checking electrical characteristics and dimensions; selecting fabrication processes and techniques of construction; coordinating his work with that of other trades; and performing work in a safe and satisfactory manner.
- E. Protection and Cleaning: Equipment and materials shall be carefully handled, properly stored, and adequately protected to prevent damage before and during installation, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Damaged or defective items shall be replaced. Protect finished parts of equipment. Close duct and pipe openings with caps or plugs during installation. Tightly cover and protect fixtures and equipment against dirt, water, chemical, or mechanical injury. At completion of work thoroughly clean fixtures, exposed materials, and equipment.
- F. Provide piping, ductwork, and equipment to allow maximum headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated. Provide equipment level and plumb, parallel, and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

- H. Coordinate location of piping, ductwork, sleeves, inserts, hangers, and equipment. Locate to clear other construction, services, and utilities.
- I. Provide piping and ductwork in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Provide systems above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Do not enclose, cover, or put into operation until inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- M. The contract documents indicate required valves, fittings, and accessories. If additional materials are required by code or manufacturer's instructions, they shall be provided at no cost to the owner.
- N. Any hot work operations that are performed during this project shall be permitted by use of the FM Global Hot Work Permit System. The FM Global Hot Work Permit System shall be used to supervise all hot work operations (cutting, welding, brazing, grinding, soldering, etc.) performed outside of any designated welding areas. A written policy statement shall specify who has the authority to issue permits on all shifts. In addition, a constant fire watch shall be continued for 1 hr. after work is completed and the area shall be monitored for an additional 3 hrs. after that.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Provide piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
 - 1. Provide piping to permit valve servicing.
 - 2. Provide equipment and other components to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
 - 3. Provide free of sags and bends.
 - 4. Provide unions or flanges at connections to equipment.
 - 5. Provide fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
 - 6. Make allowances for application of insulation.
- B. Provide piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials. Connect piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of unit connections.
- D. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- E. Plastic piping: Piping shall be installed to avoid damage from adjacent light fixtures. In certain construction situations, these plastic pipes may be installed near recessed light fixtures in ceilings. Light fixtures may have exterior temperatures as high as 194°F.
- F. Plumbing: General layout shown, provide piping and components as required by the local plumbing code. A licensed master plumber shall perform or supervise the work and provide layouts, piping, and fittings as required by code.

3.4 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Pipe and tube required by the applicable standard to be cleaned and capped shall be delivered to the job site with factory-applied endcaps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture. Protect stored pipe and tube from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. When stored inside, do not exceed the structural capacity of the floor. Protect fittings, flanges, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.
- B. Joints shall be fabricated, joined, and tested per the piping and fitting manufacturer's instructions. Joint preparation, setting and alignment, joining process, timing, hanger spacing, and working pressure shall be in accordance with the pipe and fitting manufacturer's specifications.
- C. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and the relevant specification section specifying piping systems.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- E. Installer Qualifications
 - 1. Pipe fitters shall be qualified in the procedure used to perform the pipe joining.
 - 2. The contractor is responsible for documenting the qualification and training records of each pipe fitter. Pipe fitters shall have current, formal training on the pipe jointing method.
 - 3. Contractor must submit documentation that lists personnel assigned to this project prior to beginning construction who have successfully completed formal training conducted by an authorized manufacturer's representative. The Contractor Training documentation shall be specific to the manufacturer of the pipe and fittings.
 - 4. Personnel's training documentation must be current and have been updated within the past two (2) years. Training received more than two years prior to operation with no evidence of activity within the past 6 months shall not be considered current.
 - 5. Piping Warranty: Contractor shall provide, and document required training and required by the piping system manufacturer in order to maintain the piping manufacturer's warranty.
- F. Provide dielectric isolation at the connection of the dissimilar piping (copper and steel).
- G. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- H. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- I. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

J. Press connections:

1. The joints shall be pressed using the tools approved by the manufacturer.
2. Always examine the pipe to ensure it is fully inserted into the fitting prior to pressing the joint.
3. Pipe ends shall be cut on a right angle (square) to the pipe.
4. Copper: The tubing shall be fully inserted into the fitting and the tubing marked at the shoulder of the fitting. The fitting alignment shall be checked against the mark on the tubing to assure the tubing is fully engaged (inserted) in the fitting. The joints shall be pressed using the tools approved by the manufacturer.
5. Steel: Pipe ends shall be reamed chamfered, and paint, lacquer, grease, oil, or dirt shall be removed from the pipe end with an abrasive cloth, or with the Rigid MegaPress pipe end prep tool. Sealing elements shall be verified for the intended use. Visually examine the fitting sealing element to ensure there is no damage. Utilizing a Viega insertion depth inspection gauge mark the tube wall, with a felt tip pen, at the appropriate location, or insert the pipe fully into the fitting and mark the pipe wall at the face of the fitting.

K. PEX Joints: Provide per manufacturer's recommendations. Use manufacturer-recommended cold-expansion tool for F1960 connections.

L. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

M. Flanged Joints: Provide appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Provide gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

N. Joint Construction for Solvent-Cemented Plastic Piping: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

3.5 PIPE PENETRATIONS, SLEEVES, & ESCUTCHEONS

A. Pipe penetrations shall be sealed, provide sealants for pipe penetrations

B. Provide allowance for thermal expansion and contraction of copper tubing passing through a wall, floor, ceiling, or partition by wrapping with an approved tape or pipe insulation or by installing through an appropriately sized sleeve.

C. Sleeve Clearance: Sleeve through floors, walls, partitions, and beams shall be one inch greater in diameter than external diameter of pipe. Sleeve for pipe with insulation shall be large enough to accommodate the insulation.

D. Provide sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry construction. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces. Provide sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed. Provide steel pipe sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Piping through concrete or masonry shall not be subject to any load from the building construction.

1. Sleeves are not required in drywall construction.
2. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes. Provide core drilling as required.

- E. To prevent accidental liquid spills from passing to a lower level, provide the following:
 - 1. For sleeves: Extend sleeve 1-1/2 inch above finished floor and provide sealant for watertight joint.
 - 2. For blocked out floor openings: Provide 1-1/2 inch angle set in silicone adhesive around opening.
 - 3. For drilled penetrations: Provide 1-1/2 inch angle ring or square set in silicone adhesive around penetration.
- F. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 7.
- G. Exterior- Pipe Penetrations: Provide sleeve-seal systems in sleeves at service piping entries into building. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and provide in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.
- H. Escutcheons:
 - 1. Provide escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 - 2. Provide escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 3. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.
- I. Plastic and copper piping penetrating framing members, and within one-inch of the framing, shall be protected with 10-gauge steel nailing plates. The steel plate shall extend along the framing member a minimum of 1.5" beyond the OD of the pipe or tubing.

3.6 PIPE HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Provide hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or provide intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Provide per manufactures recommendations and calculations.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Provide in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation: Provide powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Provide

fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Provide mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Provide fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- F. Roof Pipe Stand Installation: Provide per manufactures recommendations and calculations. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount them on a smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb.
- G. Provide hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Provide hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal or seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Provide lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Provide building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Provide additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Provide concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and provide reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Provide for expansion and contraction of the piping system. Since changes in direction in the system are usually sufficient to allow for expansion and contraction, hangers must be placed so as not to restrict this movement
- M. Pipe Slopes: Provide hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by plumbing code and ASME B31.9 for building services piping. Piping shall be supported in such a manner as to maintain its alignment and prevent sagging.
- N. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.
- O. Insulated Piping: Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - 1. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - 2. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
- P. Equipment Supports: Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.
- Q. Metal Fabrications: Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap. Remove welding flux immediately. Finish welds at exposed

connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

- R. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.
- S. Hanger and Support Schedule
1. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
 2. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
 3. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- T. Hanger Spacing
1. Support piping and tubing not listed below according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Load Distribution: Provide hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment. Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading.
 3. Space and provide hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
 4. Piping shall be supported at intervals sufficiently close to maintain correct pipe alignment and to prevent sagging or grade reversal.
 5. Pipe shall be supported at branch ends and at changes of direction.
 6. Provide hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - a. NPS ¾ to 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - b. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - c. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - d. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - e. NPS 2-1/2 to 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 - f. NPS 4 to 5: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.
 - g. NPS 6 to 8: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/4 inch.
 - h. NPS 10 to 12: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 7/8 inch.
 7. Provide hangers for copper piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - a. NPS ½ and 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - b. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - c. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - d. NPS 1-1/2 to 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - e. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - f. NPS 3: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
 - g. NPS 4: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
 - h. Maximum vertical steel and copper pipe attachment spacing: 10 feet.
 8. Provide hangers for cast-iron piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

- a. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - b. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - c. NPS 4 to 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
 - d. NPS 6 to 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
 - e. NPS 10 to 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
 - f. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
9. Piping Hangers for Plastic Piping:
- a. Hangers shall not compress, distort, cut, or abrade the piping.
 - b. Hangers shall be placed next to the pipe joint not more than 18" from the point joint.
 - c. Maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters (pipe temperature 100°F or lower).
 - d. Solvent cemented PVC
 - 1) NPS 2 and smaller: 48" with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2: 48" with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3) NPS 3: 48" with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4) NPS 4: 48" with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 5) NPS 6: 48" with 3/4-inch rod.
 - 6) NPS 8: 48" with 7/8-inch rod.
 - 7) NPS 10: 48" with 7/8-inch rod.
 - 8) NPS 12: 48" with 7/8-inch rod.
 - e. Solvent cemented CPVC
 - 1) NPS 1 and smaller: 36" with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2) NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 3: 60" with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 3) NPS 3: 60" with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 4) NPS 4: 60" with 5/8-inch rod.
 - 5) NPS 6 and 8: 60" with 3/4-inch rod.
10. Provide supports for vertical piping every 10 feet.

U. PEX Piping

1. Horizontal PEX-a Piping Hangers: Provide CTS hangers suitable for PEX-a piping in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and local codes, with the following maximum spacing:
 - a. For IPC Jurisdictions: 3 inch and below: Maximum span, 32 inches.
 - b. For UPC Jurisdictions: 1 inch and below: Maximum span, 32 inches.
 - c. For UPC Jurisdictions: 1-1/4 inch and above: Maximum span, 48 inches.
 - d. Note: The above maximum hanger spacing requirements may be extended with the use of a continuous support channel such as Uponor PEX-a Pipe Support.
2. Horizontal PEX-a Piping with PEX-a Pipe Channel: Provide hangers for PEX-a piping with horizontal support channel in accordance with local jurisdiction and manufacturer's recommendations, with the following maximum spacing:
 - a. 3/4 inch and below: Maximum span, 6 feet.
 - b. 1 inch and above: Maximum span, 8 feet.

3. Vertical PEX-a Piping: Support PEX-a piping with maximum spacing of 5 feet.
 4. PEX-a Riser Supports: Provide CTS riser clamps at the base of each floor and at the top of every other floor for domestic hot-water systems. Provide mid-story guides between each floor. Provide CTS riser clamps at the base of each floor and at the top of every fourth floor for domestic cold-water systems. Provide mid-story guides.
- V. Support vertical piping independently of connected horizontal piping. Support vertical pipes at base and at every floor. Wherever possible, locate riser clamps directly below pipe couplings or shear lugs.
- W. Place a hanger within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.

3.7 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Valves shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Provide valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Provide valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Provide valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Provide strainers on supply side of each control valve and elsewhere as indicated or recommended by component manufacturer to have strainer protection. Provide valved drain and hose connection on strainer blow down connection.
1. Provide with provisions for service clearance.
 2. Remove and clean strainer after 24 hours of operation and after 30 days of operation.
- F. Control valves shall be installed so that they are accessible and serviceable and so that actuators may be serviced and removed without interference from structure or other pipes and/or equipment.
- G. Isolation valves shall be installed so that the control valve body may be serviced without draining the supply/return side piping system. Unions shall be installed at connections to screw-type control valves.
- H. Provide check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- I. Provide hose end drain valves for equipment, at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.

3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide equipment markers on each item of scheduled equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Equipment located above the ceiling that requires servicing shall be labeled on the ceiling using a labeling machine.

1. Letters shall be ¼" high, black.
2. Label equipment above ceiling that requires servicing or access. Locate labels on the ceiling grid, adjacent to the ceiling tile that provides the best access to the valve or item that requires servicing.

B. Piping Identification:

1. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; mechanical rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - a. Near each valve and control device.
 - b. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - c. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - d. At access doors and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - e. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - f. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - g. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
2. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be provided to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
3. Apply "Electric Traced" labels to the outside of heat-traced insulation.

C. Provide tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule. Mount valve schedule on wall in accessible location in each major equipment room. Provide (2) copies of valve schedules in digital format.

D. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices.

3.9 THERMOMETERS AND PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Provide thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions. Provide thermowells with extension on insulated piping. Provide separable sockets in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Provide pressure gauges in piping tees with pressure-gauge valve located on pipe at most readable position. Provide valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- C. Calibrate according to manufacturer's written instructions, after installation.
- D. Adjust faces to proper angle for best visibility. Clean windows and clean factory-finished surfaces. Replace cracked and broken windows, and repair scratched and marred surfaces with manufacturer's touchup paint.

3.10 BRAIDED EXPANSION LOOP INSTALLATION

- A. Provide and guide per manufacturers' installation instructions and Mechanical Contractors Association of America "Guidelines for Quality Piping Installations". Flexible hose expansion loop return fittings shall be supported to allow movement.
- B. Nesting Clearance. Often several Metraloops are nested inside of each other, when this is the case, the installer shall verify that there is enough clearance between the Metraloops after insulation to allow for the full expected movement.
- C. Provide pipe anchors according to expansion fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Provide anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
 - 2. Steel Anchors: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 3. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24, U-bolts bolted to anchor.
 - 4. Concrete Anchors: Attach by fasteners, follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. A pipe guide shall be provided anywhere within 15 pipe diameters on each side of the braided expansion loop. Loops anchored on one side need only one guide on the traveling side. Attach guides to pipe and secure to building structure.

3.11 ERECTION OF SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Fasten wall-hanging items securely to supports attached to building substrate if supports are specified and to building wall construction if no support is indicated. Fasten recessed-type items to reinforcement built into walls.
- B. Wood: Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor materials and equipment. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Provide fasteners without splitting wood members. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.
- C. Metal: Provide in accordance with Division 5. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor materials and equipment. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.
- D. Grouting: Provide per manufacturer's instructions. Mix and provide grout for equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout. Provide forms as required for placement of grout. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment. Place grout around anchors. Cure placed grout.

3.12 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide through-penetration firestop systems. Refer to Division 7 for materials. Seal penetrations through fire-or smoke-rated wall, partition, ceiling, or roof assemblies with firestopping systems. Refer to Architectural plans for location of rated assemblies.

3.13 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing and mechanical systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.14 CONCRETE HOUSEKEEPING PADS

- A. Concrete pads shall be provided by Division 22 & 23, in accordance with the requirements specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate size, thickness, doweling, and reinforcing of concrete equipment housekeeping pads and piers with equipment manufacturer to ensure adequate space, embedment and prevent edge breakout failures.
- C. Construct concrete bases not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
- D. Housekeeping Pads must be adequately reinforced and adequately sized for proper installation of equipment anchors.
- E. Provide 4" high (+/-) housekeeping pads for the following:
 - 1. Base Mounted Pumps
 - 2. Glycol Feed System
 - 3. Expansion Tanks
 - 4. Steam to water/glycol heat exchanger skids
 - 5. Other base-mounted equipment.
 - 6. As noted on plans
 - 7. As recommended by Equipment manufacturer.
- F. Exterior Pads: See structural drawings.

3.15 ROOFING

- A. Refer to Division 7.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- C. Do not locate mechanical equipment within 10 feet of the roof edge.
- D. Roof Edge Fall Protection: Basis of Design: Keegard "Rooftop Guardrail for Narrow Spaces", or equal. Provide freestanding/non-penetrating roof edge protection system, including pipe railings, uprights, bases, counterweights, and fittings. Freestanding counterweighted guardrail

system with 42 inches minimum height to provide a pedestrian egress barrier on the roof to withstand a minimum load of 200 lb. in any direction to the top rail per OSHA Regulation 29 CFR 1910.23. Pipe: Steel, 1-1/2 inches schedule 40, galvanized, galvanized or stainless steel construction. Provide galvanized steel bases are galvanized with a rubber pad on underside of the component (set on roof, without disturbing existing adhered roof membrane).

3.16 PROJECT CLOSEOUT

A. Starting and Adjusting

1. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace them with new units, and retest.
2. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
3. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
4. Provide commissioning per manufacturer's instructions. This start-up shall include verification of proper installation, system initiation, adjustment, and fine tuning.
5. Start-up shall not be considered complete until the sequence of operation, including alarms, has been sufficiently demonstrated to the Owner or Owner's designated representative. This jobsite visit shall occur only after hook-ups, tie-ins, and terminations have been completed and signed-off on the manufacturer's start-up request form.

B. Follow Closeout procedures as per Division 1.

C. Provide Demonstration and Training in accordance Division 1.

D. Provide Project Record Documents in accordance with Division 1. In addition, per ASHRAE 90.1-2016: Provide record drawings of the actual installation to the building owner. Record drawings shall include, as a minimum, the location and performance data on each piece of equipment; general configuration of the duct and pipe distribution system, including sizes; and the terminal air or water design flow rates.

E. Provide Operation and Maintenance information in accordance with Division 1. In addition, per ASHRAE 90.1: Provide an operating manual and a maintenance manual to the building owner. Manuals shall include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Submittal data stating equipment size and selected options for each piece of equipment requiring maintenance.
2. Operation manuals and maintenance manuals for each piece of equipment and system requiring maintenance, except equipment not furnished as part of the project. Required routine maintenance actions shall be clearly identified.
3. Names and addresses of at least one service agency.
4. HVAC controls system maintenance and calibration information, including wiring diagrams, schematics, and control sequence descriptions. Desired or field-determined set points shall be permanently recorded on control drawings at control devices or, for digital control systems, in programming comments.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Reports:
 - 1. Deficiency Report: Following examination of installed system, prior to balancing, submit report indicating system deficiencies that would prevent proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment to meet specified performance.
 - 2. TAB Report: Submit the complete testing, adjusting, and balancing report, including any drawings indicating air outlets, thermostats, and equipment identified to correspond with data sheets.
 - 3. Reports shall be on TABB/SMACNA, AABC, or NEBB forms that indicate information addressing each of the testing methods, readings, and adjustments.
- C. Closeout Submittals: Provide complete copy of TAB report. Include report in Operation and Maintenance Manual.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Special Warranty
 - 1. Provide warranty for period of 90 days following submission of completed report, during which time Owner may request a recheck of up to 10% of total number of terminals, or resetting of any outlet, coil, or device listed in the test report.
 - 2. Warranty shall meet the requirements of the following programs:

- a. TABB – Quality Assurance Program
 - b. AABC – National Project Performance Guarantee
 - c. NEBB – Conformance Certification
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- D. TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
1. Systems are started and operating in a safe and normal condition.
 2. Temperature control systems are installed, complete, and operable.
 3. Verify HVAC control system is operating within the design limitations.
 4. Confirm that the sequences of operation comply with Contract Documents.
 5. Automatic and manual dampers are operable and fully open.
 6. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 7. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 8. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 9. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 10. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 11. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 12. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.
 13. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
 14. Thermal overload protection is in place for equipment.
 15. Start-up air filters are removed.
 16. Final filters are clean and properly installed.
 17. Duct and fan systems are clean.
 18. Fans are rotating correctly.
 19. Life safety and volume dampers are in place and open.
 20. Air coil fins are cleaned and combed.
 21. Access doors are closed, and duct end caps are in place.
 22. Air outlets are installed and connected.
 23. Hydronic systems are pressure tested, flushed, filled, and properly vented.
 24. Leak testing on duct system has been performed.
 25. Pumps are rotating correctly.
 26. Start-up/construction strainers have been removed and all permanent strainers are clean and in place.

27. Gauges and/or test ports are properly located for balancing.
28. Service and balance valves are fully open.

- B. If deficiencies are evident, submit Deficiency Report to Architect. Do not begin testing, adjusting, and balancing of environmental systems until deficiencies have been remedied.

3.2 AIR SYSTEMS PROCEDURES

- A. Adhere to the follow procedure:

1. TABB – SMACNA TAB Procedural Guide, with particular focus on the following chapters: Preliminary TAB Procedures, General Air System TAB Procedures, & TABB Procedures for Specific Air Systems.
2. AABC – National Standards for Total System Balance.
3. NEBB – Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems.

- B. Minimum air procedures shall include the following:

1. Provide TAB for all air systems and components.
2. Test and adjust fan RPM to design requirements.
3. Test and record motor full load nameplate rating and actual ampere draw.
4. Test and record system static pressures, fan suction, and discharge.
5. Adjust all main supply and return air duct to within tolerances of proper design CFM.
6. Test and adjust each diffuser, grille, and register. Reading and tests of diffusers, grilles, and registers shall include design velocity (FPM) and adjusted velocity, design CFM, and adjusted CFM.
7. Test and record outside air, mixed air, and discharge temperatures (D.B. for heating cycle, D.B. and W.B. for cooling cycle).
8. In coordination with the BAS contractor, set adjustments of automatically operated dampers to operate as specified, indicated and/or noted.
9. Test and adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required supply, return, outside, and exhaust air quantities within design tolerance.
10. Make air velocity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse across entire cross-sectional area of duct in accordance with SMACNA equal area method or Log Linear method.
11. Measure air quantities at all air inlets and outlets.
12. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to the extent that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels.
13. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes recommendations. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
14. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Make allowances for loading of filters and coils.
15. Adjust outside air automatic dampers, outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers for design conditions within specified tolerances.
16. Where modulating dampers or economizers are provided, take measurement at full return air, minimum outside air, and 100% outside air mode of operation.

- C. Set system's airflow rates within the following tolerances:
1. Air Handling Systems: Adjust to within plus 10 percent of outlet total plus allowable leakage rate.
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Adjust total to within plus or minus 10 percent of design for the space.
 3. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.3 HYDRONIC SYSTEM PROCEDURES

- A. Adhere to the follow procedure:
1. TABB – SMACNA TAB Procedural Guide, with particular focus on the following chapter: Hydronic System TAB Procedures.
 2. AABC – National Standards for Total System Balance.
 3. NEBB – Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems.
- B. Hydronic balancing shall include the following minimum data:
1. Provide TAB for all hydronic and domestic water systems and components.
 2. Prepare itemized equipment schedules listing all heating and/or cooling elements and equipment in the systems to be balanced. List in order on equipment schedules, by pump or zone according to the design, all heating and/or cooling elements, all zone balancing valves, and circuit pumps, ending with the last items of equipment or transfer element in the respective zone or circuit. Include on schedule sheet column titles listing the location, type of element or apparatus, design conditions, and measured conditions. Prepare individual pump report sheets for each zone or circuit.
 3. Adjust hydronic systems to provide plus or minus 10 percent of required design quantities.
 4. Use calibrated Venturi tubes, orifices, metered fittings, pressure gages, and direct-reading instrumentation to determine flow rates for system balance. Where flow-metering devices are not installed, flow balance on temperature difference across various heat transfer elements in the system is acceptable.
 5. Adjust systems to provide specified pressure drops and flows through heat transfer elements prior to thermal testing. Perform balancing by measurement of temperature differential in conjunction with air balancing.
 6. Effect system balance with automatic control valves fully open to heat or cooling transfer elements.
 7. Adjust hydronic distribution systems by means of balancing cocks, valves, and fittings. Do not use service or shut-off valves for balancing unless indexed for balance point.
 8. Test pumps and adjust flow. Record the following on pump report sheets:
 - a. Suction and discharge pressure.
 - b. Running amps and brake horsepower of pump motor under full flow and no flow conditions.
 - c. Pressure-drop across pump in feet of water and total GPM pump is handling under full flow conditions.
 9. Where available pump capacity is less than total flow requirements or individual system parts, proportional balancing must be performed.

- C. Set system's water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Hydronic Systems: Adjust to within 10 percent of design flow.
 - 2. Hydronic terminal devices: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design flow.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Recorded data shall represent actual measured or observed conditions.
- B. Permanently mark the setting of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing for settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.
- C. Final report to include identification of all key outlets, key branches, and key trunks in each air system that shows a critical path of no dampening from the fan to terminal device.
- D. Final report to include identification of all key terminal devices, key branches, and key trunks in each hydronic system that shows a critical path of no throttling of valves from the pump to terminal device.
- E. Leave systems in proper working order by replacing guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR EXHAUST HOODS

- A. Room Pressure: Measure and record room pressure with respect to atmosphere and adjacent space with hoods in room initially not operating and then with hoods operating.
- B. Makeup Air: Systems supplying source of makeup air to hoods shall be in operation during testing and balancing of exhaust hoods.
- C. Use simulated smoke to observe supply air-distribution air patterns in vicinity of hoods. Consult with hood manufacturer and report conditions that have a detrimental effect on intended capture, containment, and other attributes effecting proper operation.
- D. Rooms with Multiple Hoods: Test each hood separately, one at a time, and repeat tests with all hoods intended to operate simultaneously by design.
- E. Kitchen Hoods: Measure and record pressure drop and face velocity of hood filters and slots in accordance with hood manufacturer's instructions. Consult hood manufacturer to determine hood airflow using recorded information.
- F. AHJ Tests: Conduct additional tests required by authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230700

MECHANICAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 for firestopping materials and requirements for penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for Mechanical"
 - 3. Division 23 Section "Metal Ducts" for duct liner.
 - 4. Division 23 Section "Heat Tracing for Piping"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes insulation and related components for Division 22 & Division 23.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, Greenguard Certification, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated. For adhesives and sealants, provide documentation including printed a statement of VOC content.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the U.S. Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- C. Indoors: Materials shall have a flame spread index of less than 25 and a smoke developed index of less than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, latest revision.
- D. Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- E. Provide accessory materials as part of insulation work under his section shall include closure materials, adhesives, mastics, and support materials; shall be as recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.
- B. All of the insulation materials and accessories covered by this specification shall be delivered to the job site and stored in a safe, dry place with appropriate labels and/or other product identification.
- C. Store tapes, adhesives, mastics, cements, and insulation materials in ambient conditions in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.
- D. Follow manufacturer's recommended handling practices.
- E. The contractor shall use whatever means are necessary to protect the insulation materials and accessories before, during, and after installation. No insulation material shall be installed that has become damaged in any way. The contractor shall also use all means necessary to protect work and materials installed by other trades.
- F. Fiber Glass and Mold: Contractor shall take precaution to protect insulation. Any fiber glass insulation that becomes wet or torn should be replaced at no additional cost. Air handling insulation used in the air stream must be discarded if exposed to water.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields. Coordinate clearance requirements with other trades for insulation application.
- B. Schedule insulation application after testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments of systems that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Certainteed
 - 2. Knauf
 - 3. Owens-Corning
 - 4. John Mansville
 - 5. Armstrong
 - 6. Aeroflex USA
 - 7. Nomaco K-Flex
 - 8. Pabco.

2.2 PIPING INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Glass Fiber:

1. Knauf 1000° Pipe Insulation with ECOSE Technology meeting ASTM C547 Type IV Grade A, ASTM C585, and ASTM C795; rigid, molded, noncombustible per ASTM E136; k value: ASTM C335, 0.23 at 75°F mean temperature. Maximum Service Temperature: 1000°F, or Johns Manville's Micro-Lok® HP meeting ASTM C547, Type I, maximum service temperature of 850°F meeting the other requirements. Vapor Retarder Jacket: ASJ/SSL conforming to ASTM C1136 Type I, secured with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips.
2. PVC Fitting Covers: The Proto Fitting Cover System or Johns Manville Zeston® polyvinyl chloride (PVC) parts shall consist of one piece and two piece pre-molded high impact UV-resistant PVC fitting covers with fiberglass inserts and accessories, which include elbows, tee/valves, end caps, mechanical line couplings, and specialty fittings. Fittings shall be made of Zeston® or LoSMOKE® grade PVC, 25/50 rated per ASTM E-84. Thermal Value of fiberglass insert: K value of 0.26 at 75°F; resistance to fungi and bacteria. (ASTM G 21, ASTM G 22): does not promote growth of fungi or bacteria.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
3. Materials shall have a maximum thermal conductivity of 0.27 Btu-in/h-ft²- °F at a 75°F mean temperature when tested in accordance with ASTM C 177 or ASTM C 518, latest revisions.
4. Materials shall have a maximum water vapor transmission of 0.08 perm-inches when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96, Procedure-A, latest revision.
5. Provide Armaflex WB finish for outdoor exposed piping.

C. Pipe & Tank Insulation: Glass Fiber, Knauf with ECOSE Technology or equivalent; semi-rigid, limited combustibles meeting requirements of NRC 1.36; ASTM C 795 and MIL-I-24244 C; k value: ASTM C 177, 0.25 at 75°F mean temperature. Maximum Service Temperature: 850°F. Compressive Strength: not less than 150 PSF @ 10% deformation for 2 inch thickness per ASTM C 165. Vapor Retarder Jacket: ASJ conforming to ASTM C 1136 Type II.

D. Field-Applied Jackets For Piping: ASTM C 921, Type 1, unless otherwise indicated.

1. PVC: Johns Manville's Zeston® PVC fittings, jacketing, and accessories or Proto Corporation 25/50 or Indoor/Outdoor, UV-resistant fittings, jacketing and accessories, white. The fitting cover system consists of pre-molded, high-impact PVC materials with fiber glass inserts. Fiber glass insert has a thermal conductivity (k value) of 0.26 at 75° F mean temperature. Closures: stainless steel tacks, matching PVC tape, or PVC adhesive per manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Metal jackets: provide with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
3. Aluminum Jacket: Factory cut and rolled to required size. Comply with ASTM B 209, 3003 alloy, and H-14 temper. Finish and Thickness: Corrugated finish, 0.010 inch thick.

- Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and Kraft paper. Elbows: Preformed, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows; same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
4. Exterior Piping: High-performance jacketing: VentureClad-1577, Polygard-Alumagard All-Weather, or approved equal; high performance jacketing product shall perform well over a wide temperature range; -30°F to +300°F service temperature.
 - a. Zero permeability, absolute vapor barrier; High puncture and tear resistance
 - b. Contain tested and approved mold inhibiting agents.
 - c. A 5-ply self-adhesive material shall be installed easily with no off-site fabrication required. The cold weather acrylic adhesive shall apply easily at temperatures as cold as minus 10°F.
 - d. Flame spread/smoke developed: 10/20 (UL 723)
 - e. 6-mil thickness (PSTC-133); Provide in natural aluminum stucco embossed finish.
 - E. Removable/reusable Insulation Blankets: Auburn Manufacturing EverGreen Cut 'n Wrap or approved equal; engineered insulating composite with a fiberglass inner core and high-performance polymer coated woven glass fiber fabric outer layer on both sides.

2.3 DUCTWORK INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Fiber Glass Blanket: Glass Mineral Wool Blanket Insulation: Glass Mineral Wool bonded with a bio-based thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III, ASTM C 1136 Type II, and ASTM C 1290, Type III. UL/ULC Classified per UL 723 for FSK, FHC 25/50 per ASTM E 84 for PSK only.
 1. Factory-applied jacket: ASJ: White, Kraft paper, fiberglass reinforced scrim with aluminum foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Knauf Insulation; Atmosphere Duct Wrap.
 3. Density: 1.5 PCF
 4. R-Value: R6.0 minimum for 1-1/2" thick blanket (k=0.25).
- B. Rigid Fiber Glass Board: Johns Manville's 817 Series Spin-Glass® or Knauf Insulation Board with ECOSE Technology meeting ASTM C 612 Type IA and IB; rigid. Maximum Service Temperature: 450°. Density: Minimum 3.0 PCF; R4.2 per inch. Vapor Retarder Jacket: ASJ conforming to ASTM C1136 Type I, or FSK or PSK conforming to ASTM C1136 Type II in combination with protective jacket where necessary. R-Value: R6.0 minimum for 1-1/2" thick blanket (k=0.25).
- C. Exterior Ductwork:
 1. Insulation: Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials; suitable for maximum use temperature between minus 70 deg F and 220 deg F. Comply with ASTM C534, Type II for sheet materials.
 - a. Thermal Resistance: R12 Minimum.
 - b. Compressive Strength, ASTM D 1621: 16 psi or greater.
 - c. Flexural Strength, ASTM C 203: 40 psi or greater.
 - d. Water Absorption, ASTM C 209: 0.1 percent by volume.
 - e. Water Vapor Permeance, ASTM E 96, 0.05 perms.

2. High-performance jacketing: VentureClad-1577, Polygard-Alumagard All-Weather, or approved equal; high performance jacketing product shall perform well over a wide temperature range; -30°F to +300°F service temperature.
 - a. Zero permeability, absolute vapor barrier; High puncture and tear resistance
 - b. Contain tested and approved mold inhibiting agents.
 - c. A 5-ply self-adhesive material shall be installed easily with no off-site fabrication required. The cold weather acrylic adhesive shall apply easily at temperatures as cold as minus 10°F.
 - d. Flame spread/smoke developed: 10/20 (UL 723)
 - e. 6-mil thickness (PSTC-133); Provide in natural aluminum stucco embossed finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature. Insulation materials and accessories covered by this specification shall be delivered to the job site and stored in a safe, dry place with appropriate labels and/or other product identification. Store tapes, adhesives, mastics, cements, and insulation materials in ambient conditions in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer. Follow manufacturer's recommended handling practices. The contractor shall use whatever means are necessary to protect the insulation materials and accessories before, during, and after installation. No insulation material shall be installed that has become damaged in any way. The contractor shall also use all means necessary to protect work and materials installed by other trades. Contractor shall take precaution to protect insulation. Any fiber glass insulation that becomes wet or torn should be replaced at no additional cost. Air handling insulation used in the air stream must be discarded if exposed to water.
- B. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Before starting work under this section, carefully inspect the site and installed work of other trades and verify that such work is complete to the point where installation of materials and accessories under this section can begin. Ensure that pipe and fitting surfaces over which insulation is to be installed are clean and dry. Ensure that insulation is clean, dry, and in good mechanical condition with factory-applied vapor or weather barriers intact and undamaged. Wet, dirty, or damaged insulation shall not be acceptable for installation. Ensure that pressure testing of piping and fittings has been completed prior to installing insulation.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics shall have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program.
- D. Provide insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout, including the length of ducts and fittings, valves, and specialties. Provide per "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards" – MICA Manual.
- E. Provide insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- F. Provide accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service.

- G. Provide insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal pipe runs and equipment. Provide multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- H. There shall be no glass fibers exposed to the air. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- J. Jackets And Finishes: Draw jacket tight and smooth. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.
- K. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- L. Provide insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties, with continuous thermal and the least number of joints practical.
- M. Provide removable insulation covers at fittings and equipment that require servicing and locations with service requirements.
- N. Locate seams in the least visible location.
- O. Cold surfaces that may "sweat" must be insulated. Vapor barrier must be maintained, insulation shall be applied with a continuous, unbroken moisture and vapor seal.
 - 1. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
 - 2. Hangers, supports, anchors, or other projections that are secured to cold surfaces shall be insulated and vapor sealed to prevent condensation.
 - 3. Seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 4. Provide insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity.
 - 5. Extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic. Provide insert materials and provide insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following: testing agency labels and stamps, nameplates, and cleanouts.
- Q. Insulation thicknesses and installations shall meet or exceed the requirements of the local energy code, or thicknesses indicated, whichever is of superior insulating performance. If piping type is omitted from list below, provide insulation per energy code or as per similar duty.
- R. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- S. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- T. Insulate instrument connections for specialties (examples: thermometers, sensors, etc.) on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- U. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- V. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- W. Penetrations
 - 1. Division 7 for firestopping materials and requirements for penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.
 - 2. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Provide insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
 - 3. Insulation Installation at Roof or Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Provide insulation continuously through penetrations.
 - a. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - b. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof/wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, provide insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - c. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof/wall flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - d. Seal jacket to roof/wall flashing with flashing sealant.
 - 4. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Penetrations:
 - a. Fire Dampers: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 - b. Pipe or duct penetrations (no fire damper): Provide insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions. Comply with requirements in Division 7 for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PIPING INSULATION

- A. Metal shields shall be provided between hangers or supports and the piping insulation.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement and finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

2. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section close to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
3. Insulate using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
4. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
5. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Provide vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
6. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover.
7. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric, provide fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.

C. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation

1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges: Provide pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
3. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows: Provide mitered sections of pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
4. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties: Provide preformed valve covers manufactured of the same material as pipe insulation when available. When preformed valve covers are not available, provide cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. Provide insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
5. After the adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating. Prior to applying the finish, the insulation shall be wiped clean with denatured alcohol. The finish shall not be tinted. To insure good adhesion, the temperature should be above 50°F during application and drying.
6. Outdoor exposed piping shall be painted with two coats of Armaflex WB Finish. Prior to applying the Finish, the insulation shall be wiped clean with denatured alcohol. The Finish shall not be tinted. Outdoor exposed piping shall have seams located on the lower half of the pipe.

3.3 PIPE APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Application schedules identify piping system and indicate pipe size ranges and material, thickness, and jacket requirements. For piping systems not indicated, insulate to with a similar thickness and type as those specified. Insulation thicknesses and installations shall meet or exceed the requirements of the local energy code, or thicknesses indicated, whichever is of superior insulating performance.
- B. PVC jackets shall be provided with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints, for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturers recommended adhesive. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge. Provide PVC jackets in the following locations:
 - 1. For piping exposed in mechanical rooms within 6 feet above finished floor or high traffic areas.
 - 2. Exposed vertical piping in finished spaces.
- C. Outdoor Piping:
 - 1. Pipe size 2-1/2" and less: Glass Fiber, 2" thickness; Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials with high performance jacket; R12 minimum.
- D. Domestic hot water:
 - 1. Runouts and non-recirculated portions: Glass Fiber 1/2" thickness.
 - 2. Recirculating piping including the supply and return: 1-1/4" and less: Glass Fiber, 1" thickness; 1-1/2 and larger: Glass Fiber, 1.5" thickness.
 - 3. Heat traced DHW piping: 1-1/4" and less: Glass Fiber, 1" thickness; 1-1/2 and larger: Glass Fiber, 1.5" thickness.
- E. Domestic cold water: Glass Fiber, 1/2" thickness.
- F. Rainwater conductors: Glass Fiber, 1" thickness. Provide for horizontal piping and any vertical piping within 10 feet of the roof drain.
- G. Roof Drain Bodies: Flexible Elastomeric, 1/2" thickness. Alternative: Roof drain bowls may be insulated with 2" of closed-cell spray-foam provided by Division 7. Coordinate with Division 7.
- H. Rainwater conductors, heat traced: Glass Fiber, 2" thickness. Provide for horizontal piping and any vertical piping within 10 feet of the roof drain.
- I. AC pan drain or other cold drain piping: Flexible Elastomeric, 1/2" thickness.
- J. Refrigerant:
 - 1. Pipe size 1-1/4" and less: Glass Fiber, 3/4" thickness.
 - 2. Pipe size 1-1/2" and larger: Glass Fiber, 1" thickness.
 - 3. VRF: Insulate piping in accordance with VRF manufacturer's instructions.
 - 4. Ductless split: 3/4" Armaflex for liquid and gas piping; and/or insulated line kits as specified in Section 238130.

- K. Heating hot water supply and return:
1. Pipe size 1-1/4" and less: Glass Fiber; 1-1/2" thickness.
 2. Pipe size 1-1/2" and larger: Glass Fiber; 2" thickness.
 3. Insulation is not required for exposed piping through floor for convectors and radiators.
 4. Insulation is not required strainers, control valves, unions, and balancing valves associated with piping 1" or less diameter. Insulate piping to within approximately 3/4-inch of un-insulated items.
- L. Low Pressure (15 psig/250°F and cooler) steam and condensate; pumped condensate, boiler feed water, vents for PRV safety valves receivers and flash tanks, and related hot pipes.
1. Pipe size 3" and less: Glass Fiber; 2.5" thickness.
 2. Pipe size 4" and larger: Glass Fiber; 3" thickness.
 3. In hot piping: Unions, flexible connectors, control valves, PRV's, safety valves and discharge vent piping, vacuum breakers, thermostatic vent valves, steam traps 3/4 inch and smaller. Insulate piping to within approximately 1/2 inch of un-insulated items.
 4. Provide Removable/reusable Insulation Blankets for unions, flexible connectors, control valves, PRV's, safety valves and discharge vent piping, vacuum breakers, thermostatic vent valves, steam traps and similar components.
- M. High Pressure (15 psig/251°F and higher) steam and condensate:
1. Pipe size 3/4" and less: Glass Fiber; 3" thickness.
 2. Pipe size 1" to 1-1/4": Glass Fiber; 4" thickness.
 3. Pipe size 1-1/2 and larger: Glass Fiber; 4.5" thickness.
 4. Provide Removable/reusable Insulation Blankets for unions, flexible connectors, control valves, PRV's, safety valves and discharge vent piping, vacuum breakers, thermostatic vent valves, steam traps and similar components.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF DUCTWORK INSULATION

- A. Flexible Fiberglass Blanket Insulation Installation:
1. Secure with adhesive and insulation pins. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 2. Firmly butt joints.
 3. Provide either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts.
 4. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
 5. Provide insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Provide insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 2. Provide either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts.
 3. Provide insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Provide insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 4. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- C. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, provide a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Provide vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal. Provide vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50°F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
- D. Fire-rated insulation system installation: Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve the same fire rating as duct.

3.5 DUCTWORK APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. For duct systems not indicated, insulate to with a similar thickness and type as those specified. Insulation thicknesses and installations shall meet or exceed the requirements of the local energy code, or thicknesses indicated, whichever is of superior insulating performance.
- B. Application schedules identify ductwork thickness, and jacket requirements. For duct systems not indicated, insulate to with a similar thickness and type as those specified. Insulation thicknesses and installations shall meet or exceed the requirements of the local energy code, or thicknesses indicated, whichever is of superior insulating performance.
- C. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment: Flex connectors, metal ducts with duct liner, factory-insulated flexible ducts, factory-insulated plenums, casings, and access doors.
- D. Supply Ducts:
1. Concealed or Unconditioned: Flexible Fiber Glass Blanket; 1.5" thickness, R6 minimum.
 2. Exposed to heated or non-air conditioned spaces: Flexible Fiber Glass Blanket; 1.5" thickness R6 minimum.
 3. Exposed to Air-Conditioned Space: None

4. Indirectly conditioned spaces (plenum returns, crawl spaces,): R1.9 minimum.
 5. Ventilated Attic, exterior, or unconditioned spaces: R-12, 3" thickness.
- E. ERU or DOAS Ductwork:
1. SA between ERU and duct heating coil: 1.5" thickness, R6 minimum.
 2. SA after heating coil: None.
 3. RA: None
 4. EA: Yes, see below.
 5. OA: Yes, see below.
- F. Rooftop ERU or DOAS Ductwork:
1. SA-Interior Conditioned Space: None
 2. SA-Exterior: As noted below
 3. RA: None
- G. Relief, outside air, or exhaust plenums at louvers: Flexible Rigid Fiberglass Board; 2" thickness.
- H. OA ducts between the intake plenum and the air handling unit: Flexible Fiber Glass Blanket; 1.5" thickness.
- I. Relief or exhaust ducts within 20 feet of the exterior: Flexible Fiber Glass Blanket; 1.5" thickness.
- J. Return ducts within conditioned space: None required.
- K. Exterior Fresh Air, Supply Air, & Exhaust Ducts: Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell or expanded-rubber materials with high performance jacket; R12 minimum.
- L. EQUIPMENT / TANK INSULATION
1. For equipment not indicated, insulate to with a similar thickness and type as those specified.
 2. Provide insulation over the entire surface of tanks and vessels. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
 3. For below ambient services, provide a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.
 4. Fiber Glass: Apply insulation to the equipment surface with joints firmly butted and as close as possible to the equipment surface. Insulation shall be secured as required with mechanical fasteners or banding material. Fasteners shall be located a maximum of 3" from each edge and spaced no greater than 12" on center. For below ambient systems, vapor retarder jacketing shall overlap a minimum of 2" at seams and be sealed with appropriate pressure-sensitive tape or mastic. Penetrations and facing damage shall be covered with a minimum 2" overlap of tape or mastic.
 5. Flexible Elastomeric: Provide insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.
 6. Omit insulation from the following, except for cold surfaces, which shall be provided with removable covers:
 - a. Hot water expansion tanks
 - b. Hot water pumps
 - c. Vibration-control devices.

- d. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - e. Nameplates and data plates.
 - f. Manholes, hand holes, or cleanouts.
-
- 7. Removable Covers for Maintenance Access: Construct insulation on parts of equipment which must be opened periodically for maintenance or repair, so insulation can be removed and replaced without damage.
 - 8. Cooling & heating air separators, low loss headers, chemical feed tanks, buffer tanks and similar equipment: same as water piping.
 - 9. Hot equipment not factory insulated: Heating hot-water heat exchangers; steam-to-water converters; flash tanks, etc.; Insulation Material: Calcium Silicate or Pipe & Tank Insulation, 2" thickness.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230800

COMMISSIONING OF HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. If the Contractor discovers any ambiguity, error, omission, conflict, or discrepancy, Special Provision Section 101.3.6 Priority of Conflicting Contract Documents shall control.
 - 1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes commissioning process requirements for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general commissioning process requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.
- B. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- C. HVAC&R: Heating, Ventilating, Air Conditioning, and Refrigeration.
- D. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of readiness.
- B. Certificates of completion of installation, prestart, and startup activities.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Attend construction phase controls coordination meeting.
- C. Attend testing, adjusting, and balancing review and coordination meeting.
- D. Participate in HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientation and inspection as directed by the CxA.
- E. Provide information requested by the CxA for final commissioning documentation.
- F. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.

1.6 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures for actual HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be furnished and installed as part of the construction contract.
- B. Direct commissioning testing.
- C. Verify testing, adjusting, and balancing of Work are complete.
- D. Provide test data, inspection reports, and certificates in Systems Manual.

1.7 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide the following information to the CxA for inclusion in the commissioning plan:
 - 1. Plan for delivery and review of submittals, systems manuals, and other documents and reports.
 - 2. Identification of installed systems, assemblies, equipment, and components including design changes that occurred during the construction phase.
 - 3. Process and schedule for completing construction checklists and manufacturer's prestart and startup checklists for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components to be verified and tested.
 - 4. Certificate of completion certifying that installation, prestart checks, and startup procedures have been completed.
 - 5. Certificate of readiness certifying that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, equipment, and associated controls are ready for testing.
 - 6. Test and inspection reports and certificates.
 - 7. Corrective action documents.
 - 8. Verification of testing, adjusting, and balancing reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING PREPARATION

- A. Certify that HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that HVAC&R instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Certify that testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures have been completed and that testing, adjusting, and balancing reports have been submitted, discrepancies corrected, and corrective work approved.
- D. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- E. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- F. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with smoke control and life-safety systems during each mode of operation.
- G. Testing Instrumentation: Install measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

3.2 TESTING AND BALANCING VERIFICATION

- A. Prior to performance of testing and balancing Work, provide copies of reports, sample forms, checklists, and certificates to the CxA.
- B. Notify the CxA at least 10 days in advance of testing and balancing Work, and provide access for the CxA to witness testing and balancing Work.
- C. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to verify testing and balancing of HVAC&R systems at the direction of the CxA.
 - 1. The CxA will notify testing and balancing Contractor 10 days in advance of the date of field verification. Notice will not include data points to be verified.
 - 2. The testing and balancing Subcontractor shall use the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used when original data were collected.
 - 3. Failure of an item includes, other than sound, a deviation of more than 10 percent. Failure of more than 10 percent of selected items shall result in rejection of final testing, adjusting, and balancing report. For sound pressure readings, a deviation of 3 dB shall result in rejection of final testing. Variations in background noise must be considered.
 - 4. Remedy the deficiency and notify the CxA so verification of failed portions can be performed.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- B. Scope of HVAC&R testing shall include entire HVAC&R installation, from central equipment for heat generation and refrigeration through distribution systems to each conditioned space. Testing shall include measuring capacities and effectiveness of operational and control functions.
- C. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- D. The CxA along with the HVAC&R Subcontractor, testing and balancing Subcontractor, and HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control Subcontractor shall prepare detailed testing plans, procedures, and checklists for HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- E. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.
- F. Simulated conditions may need to be imposed using an artificial load when it is not practical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by the CxA and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return settings to normal operating conditions.
- G. The CxA may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is not practical.
- H. The CxA may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are not practical.
- I. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the HVAC&R system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- J. If the testing plan indicates specific seasonal testing, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.

3.4 HVAC&R systems, subsystems, and equipment Testing Procedures

- A. Boiler Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in HVAC boiler Sections. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and boiler certification to the CxA.
- B. HVAC&R Instrumentation and Control System Testing: Field testing plans and testing requirements are specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and Section 230993 "Sequence and Operations for HVAC Controls." Assist the CxA with preparation of testing plans.
- C. Pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic tests, and chemical treatment requirements are specified in HVAC piping Sections. HVAC&R Subcontractor shall prepare a pipe system cleaning, flushing, and hydrostatic testing plan. Provide cleaning, flushing, testing, and treating plan and final reports to the CxA. Plan shall include the following:

1. Sequence of testing and testing procedures for each section of pipe to be tested, identified by pipe zone or sector identification marker. Markers shall be keyed to Drawings for each pipe sector, showing the physical location of each designated pipe test section. Drawings keyed to pipe zones or sectors shall be formatted to allow each section of piping to be physically located and identified when referred to in pipe system cleaning, flushing, hydrostatic testing, and chemical treatment plan.
 2. Description of equipment for flushing operations.
 3. Minimum flushing water velocity.
 4. Tracking checklist for managing and ensuring that all pipe sections have been cleaned, flushed, hydrostatically tested, and chemically treated.
- D. Energy Supply System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of gas hot-water systems and equipment at the direction of the CxA. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- E. Refrigeration System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of split system air conditioning and other refrigeration systems. The CxA shall determine the sequence of testing and testing procedures for each equipment item and pipe section to be tested.
- F. HVAC&R Distribution System Testing: Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to test performance of air and hydronic distribution systems; special exhaust; and other distribution systems, including HVAC&R terminal equipment and unitary equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230900

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. General: The control system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of DDC controllers, a control system server, and a web-based operator interface.
- B. System software shall be based on a server/thin client architecture, designed around the open standards of web technology. The control system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over the control system network, the owner's local area network, and (at the owner's discretion) over the Internet. The intent of the thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to the control system via a Web browser. No special software other than a web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends, configure trends, configure points and controllers, or to download programming into the controllers.
- C. System shall use the BACnet protocol for communication to the operator workstation or web server and for communication between control modules. I/O points, schedules, setpoints, trends and alarms shall be BACnet objects.
- D. The Controls Contractor's work shall consist of the provision of all labor, materials, special tools, equipment, enclosures, power supplies, software, software licenses, project-specific software configurations and database entries, interfaces, wiring, tubing, installation, labeling, engineering, calibration, documentation, submittals, testing, verification, training services, permits and licenses, transportation, shipping, handling, administration, supervision, management, insurance, warranty, specified services and items required by the Contract that are required for the functional turn-key operation of the complete and fully functional Controls Systems. Documents are diagrammatic only. Equipment and labor not specifically referred to herein or on the plans, which are required to meet the functional intent, shall be provided without additional cost to the Owner.
- E. Provide all labor, materials, equipment, and service necessary for a complete and operating building automation system, configured for control as outlined in Section 230993 and inclusive of seamless integration with all package equipment controllers within the building, including but not limited to the VRF heat pumps, existing boiler plant controller, smart pump controls, package domestic water heater controls, ad DOAS unit controls.
- F. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
 - 2. Division 13 Section "Fire Alarm"
 - 3. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 4. Division 23 Sections with controller interfaces shall be integrated with the work of this Section.
 - 5. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing"
 - 6. Division 26

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data and Shop Drawings: Meet requirements of Division 1. In addition, the contractor shall provide shop drawings or other submittals on hardware, software, and equipment to be installed or provided. No work may begin on any segment of this project until submittals have been approved for conformity with design intent. Provide drawings in PDF format. When manufacturer's cutsheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product, the data specifically applicable to the project shall be highlighted or clearly indicated by other means. Each submitted piece of literature and drawing shall clearly reference the specification and/or drawing that the submittal is to cover. General catalogs shall not be accepted as cutsheets to fulfill submittal requirements. Select and show submittal quantities appropriate to scope of work. Submittal approval does not relieve Contractor of responsibility to supply sufficient quantities to complete work. Submittals shall include:

1. DDC System Hardware

- a. A complete bill of materials to be used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical data of equipment to be used.
- b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as performance curves, product specifications, and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items not listed below:
 - 1) Direct digital controllers (controller panels)
 - 2) Transducers and transmitters
 - 3) Sensors (including accuracy data)
 - 4) Actuators
 - 5) Valves
 - 6) Relays and switches
 - 7) Control panels
 - 8) Power supplies
 - 9) Batteries
 - 10) Operator interface equipment
 - 11) Wiring
- c. Wiring diagrams and layouts for each control panel. Show termination numbers.
- d. Schematic diagrams for all field sensors and controllers. Provide floor plans of all sensor locations and control hardware. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.

2. Central System Hardware and Software

- a. A complete bill of material of equipment used indicating quantity, manufacturer, model number, and relevant technical.
- b. Manufacturer's description and technical data such as product specifications and installation and maintenance instructions for items listed below and for relevant items furnished under this contract not listed below:
 - 1) Central Processing Unit (CPU) or web server
 - 2) Monitors
 - 3) Keyboards
 - 4) Power supplies
 - 5) Battery backups

- 6) Interface equipment between CPU or server and control panels
 - 7) Operating System software
 - 8) Operator interface software
 - 9) Color graphic software
 - 10) Third-party software
- c. Schematic diagrams for all control, communication, and power wiring. Provide a schematic drawing of the central system installation. Label all cables and ports with computer manufacturers' model numbers and functions. Show interface wiring to control system.
 - d. Network riser diagrams of wiring between central control unit and control panels.
3. Controlled Systems
- a. Riser diagrams showing control network layout, communication protocol, and wire types.
 - b. A schematic diagram of each controlled system. The schematics shall have all control points labeled with point names shown or listed. The schematics shall graphically show the location of all control elements in the system.
 - c. A schematic wiring diagram of each controlled system. Label control elements and terminals. Where a control element is also shown on control system schematic, use the same name.
 - d. An instrumentation list (Bill of Materials) for each controlled system. List each control system element in a table. Show element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data sheet number.
 - e. A mounting, wiring, and routing plan-view drawing. The design shall take into account HVAC, electrical, and other systems' design and elevation requirements. The drawing shall show the specific location of all concrete pads and bases and any special wall bracing for panels to accommodate this work.
 - f. A complete description of the operation of the control system, including sequences of operation. The description shall include and reference a schematic diagram of the controlled system.
 - g. A point list for each control system. List I/O points and software points specified in Section 230993. Indicate alarmed and trended points.
4. Quantities of items submitted shall be reviewed but are the responsibility of the Contractor.
 5. A description of the proposed process along with all report formats and checklists to be used in Section 230923 Article 3.16 (Control System Demonstration and Acceptance).
 6. BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for each submitted type of controller and operator interface.

B. Schedules

1. Within one month of contract award, provide a schedule of the work indicating the following:
 - a. Intended sequence of work items
 - b. Start date of each work item
 - c. Duration of each work item
 - d. Planned delivery dates for ordered material and equipment and expected lead times.
 - e. Milestones indicating possible restraints on work by other trades or situations.

2. Monthly written status reports indicating work completed and revisions to expected delivery dates. Include updated schedule of work.
- C. Project Record Documents. Upon completion of installation, submit three copies of record (as-built) documents. The documents shall be submitted for approval prior to final completion and shall include:
1. Project Record Drawings. As-built versions of submittal shop drawings provided as AutoCAD compatible files on magnetic or optical media (file format: .DWG, .DXF, .VSD, or comparable) and as 11" x 17" prints.
 2. Testing and Commissioning Reports and Checklists. Completed versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs used to meet requirements of Section 230923 Article 3.16 (Control System Demonstration and Acceptance).
 3. Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual.
 4. As-built versions of submittal product data.
 5. Names, addresses, and telephone numbers of installing contractors and service representatives for equipment and control systems.
 6. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems: logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing setpoints and variables.
 7. Programming manual or set of manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
 8. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manual or set of manuals that explains how to design and install new points, panels, and other hardware; how to perform preventive maintenance and calibration; how to debug hardware problems; and how to repair or replace hardware.
 9. Documentation of programs created using custom programming language including setpoints, tuning parameters, and object database. Electronic copies of programs shall meet this requirement if control logic, setpoints, tuning parameters, and objects can be viewed using furnished programming tools.
 10. Graphic files, programs, and database on magnetic or optical media.
 11. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
 12. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
 13. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation or web server software, and graphics software.
 14. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents for equipment and systems.
 15. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
 16. Training Materials: Provide course outline and materials for each class at least six weeks before first class. Training shall be furnished via instructor-led sessions, computer-based training, or web-based training. Engineer will modify course outlines and materials if necessary to meet Owner's needs. Engineer will review and approve course outlines and materials at least three weeks before first class.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All products used in this project installation shall be new and currently under manufacture and shall have been applied in similar installations for a minimum of two years. This installation shall not be used as a test site for any new products unless explicitly approved by the owner's

representative in writing. Spare parts shall be available for at least five years after completion of this contract.

- B. All work described in this section shall be installed, wired, circuit tested and calibrated by factory certified technicians qualified for this work and in the regular employment of the temperature control system manufacturer. Use only employees who are qualified, skilled, experienced, manufacturer trained and familiar with the specific equipment, software and configurations to be provided for this Project.
 - 1. Installer shall have an established working relationship with Control System Manufacturer.
 - 2. Installer shall have successfully completed Control System Manufacturer's control system training. Upon request, Installer shall present record of completed training including course outlines.
- C. Provide a complete, neat and workmanlike installation.
- D. All work, materials, and equipment shall comply with the rules and regulations of all codes and ordinances of the local, state, and federal authorities. Such codes, when more restrictive, shall take precedence over these plans and specifications.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems."
- G. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system control components.
- H. The contractor shall protect all work and material from damage by his/her work or employees. The contractor shall be responsible for his/her work and equipment until finally inspected, tested, and accepted. The contractor shall protect any material that is not immediately installed. The contractor shall close all open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during storage and construction to prevent entry of foreign objects.

1.4 CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATIONS

- A. It is the intent that the project scope includes a new, standalone DDC Building Automation System as furnished and installed by one of the three manufacturers/vendors currently in place and operating on the campus or by a single pre-approved BAS contractor who can offer the VRF heat pump controller as part of their package. Approved systems are as follows:
 - 1. Maine Controls - Schneider Electric
 - 2. Johnson Controls, Inc.
 - 3. Siemens
 - 4. Trane with Mitsubishi VRF
- B. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.
- C. The above list of manufacturers applies to operator workstation software, controller software, the custom application programming language, and controllers. All other products specified herein (e.g., sensors, valves, dampers, and actuators) need not be manufactured by the above manufacturers.

- D. Longevity: The Facilities Management System contractor shall have a minimum of ten years' experience installing and servicing computerized Building Automation Systems (BAS). All subcontractors utilized by the BAS contractor shall have a minimum of five-year experience within their appropriate trades.
- E. Past Projects: The BAS contractor shall have completed a minimum of ten projects within the last five years that are at least equal in dollar value and scope to this project. A list of similar projects, dollar volume, scope, contact name and contact number shall be provided by the BAS contractor if asked for by the owner.
- F. Personnel, Coverage and Response Capabilities: The BAS contractor shall have a minimum of ten full time electronic service personnel within a 120 mile radius of the project location. One of the five full time electronic service personnel must work within a 60-mile radius of the project location.
- G. The BAS contractor shall have an established 24-hour emergency service organization. A dedicated telephone number shall be provided to the owner for requesting emergency service. A maximum of four hour, electronic service technician on sight, response time shall be guaranteed by the BAS contractor.
- H. Parts Stocking: The BAS contractor shall have an independently verifiable inventory of electronic service parts. This electronic service parts inventory must have a worth of at least \$100,000 per year over the last five years.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Where the mechanical work will be installed near, or will interfere with, work of other trades, the contractor shall assist in working out space conditions to make a satisfactory adjustment. If the contractor installs his/her work before coordinating with other trades, to cause any interference with work of other trades, the contractor shall make the necessary changes in his/her work to correct the condition.
- B. Coordinate details of telephone line, internet service provider, and associated requirements.
- C. Coordinate and schedule work with all other work in the same area, or with work that is dependent upon other work, to facilitate mutual progress.
- D. Coordinate location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- E. Coordination with controls specified in other sections or divisions. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the controls system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the contractor.
- F. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to unit manufacturer.
- G. Sheet Metal Subcontractor:
 - 1. Installation of duct-mounted control devices.
 - 2. Access doors where indicated and as required for proper servicing.

H. HVAC Contractor:

1. Installation of immersion wells and sockets, along with associated shut-off cocks.
2. Installation of pipe-mounted control devices.

I. Testing and Balancing Contractor:

1. The contractor shall furnish a single set of all tools necessary to interface to the control system for test and balance purposes.
2. The contractor shall provide training in the use of these tools. This training will be planned for a minimum of 4 hours.
3. In addition, the contractor shall provide a qualified technician to assist in the test and balance process, until the first 20 terminal units are balanced.
4. The tools used during the test and balance process shall be returned at the completion of the testing and balancing.

J. Electrical Subcontractor: Complying with the principle of "unit responsibility" all electrical work for automatic controls, except as otherwise specified, or shown on the electrical drawings shall be included in Division 23. Electrical work shall, in general, comply with the following, unless otherwise directed by Division 26:

1. Power wiring.
2. All control wiring shown on electric plans such as unit heater line-voltage room thermostats.
3. Duct smoke detectors required for air handler shutdown are supplied under Division 26. Coordinate required length of sampling tube, for full span of ductwork. The contractor shall connect the DDC system to the auxiliary contacts provided on the smoke detector for system safeties and to provide alarms to the DDC system.
4. All electrical work shall comply with the N.E.C. and local electrical codes.
5. All safety devices shall be wired through both hand and auto positions of motor starting device to insure 100% safety shut-off.
6. The motor starter supplier shall provide auxiliary contacts as required for interlock by BAS Contractor; the supplier shall estimate an allowance of at least one auxiliary contract per starter.

K. Coordinate with controls specified in other sections of divisions. Other sections and/or divisions of this specification include controls and control devices that are to be part of or interfaced to the control system specified in this section. These controls shall be integrated into the system and coordinated by the BAS contractor as follows:

1. All communication media and equipment shall be provided as specified hereinafter.
2. Each supplier of a control product is responsible for the configuration, programming, start-up, and testing of that product to meet the sequences of operation described in this section.
3. The BAS contractor shall coordinate and resolve any incompatibility issues that arise between the control products provided under this section and those provided under other sections or divisions of this specification.
4. The BAS contractor is responsible for providing all controls described in the contract documents regardless of where within the contract documents these controls are described.
5. The contractor is responsible for the interface of control products provided by multiple suppliers regardless of where this interface is described within the contract documents.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.
- B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Refer to Division 1 Requirements.
- B. At the end of the final start-up, testing, and commissioning phase, if equipment and systems are operating satisfactorily to the engineer, the engineer shall sign certificates certifying that the control system's operation has been tested and accepted in accordance with the terms of this specification. The date of acceptance shall be the start of warranty. All work shall have a single warranty date, even when the owner has received beneficial use due to an early system start-up.
- C. All components, system software, and parts supplied by the BAS contractor shall be guaranteed against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from acceptance date. The BAS contractor at no charge shall furnish Labor to repair, reprogram, or replace components during the warranty period. All corrective software modifications made during warranty periods shall be updated on all user documentation and on user and manufacturer archived software disks. The Contractor shall respond to the owner's request for warranty service within 24 hours during normal business hours.
- D. Provide remote service diagnostic monitoring from the nearest service location. At the request of the owner, a service diagnostic call will be made to troubleshoot and resolve (if possible) any reported system complaints. The owner will provide a dedicated telephone line for connection to the system.
- E. Operator workstation software, project-specific software, graphic software, database software, and firmware updates that resolve known software deficiencies as identified by the contractor shall be provided at no charge during the warranty period. Any upgrades or functional enhancements associated with the above-mentioned items also can be provided during the warranty period for an additional charge to the owner by purchasing an in-warranty service agreement from the contractor. Written authorization by the owner must, however, be granted prior to the installation of any of the above-mentioned items.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.

- B. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software. System shall use the BACnet protocol for communication to the operator workstation or web server and for communication between control modules.
- C. Provide new wiring and network devices as required to provide a complete and workable control network.
- D. DDC system shall be Web based or Web compatible.
 - 1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:
 - a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
 - b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.
 - 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:
 - a. Operator workstation shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
 - b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated. System Performance Objectives:
 - 1. DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
 - 2. DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
 - 3. DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
 - 4. DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
 - 5. DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.
- B. Performance Standards. System shall conform to the following minimum standards over network connections. Systems shall be tested using manufacturer's recommended hardware and software for operator workstation (server and browser for web-based systems).
 - 1. Graphic Display. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall display with current data within 10 sec.

2. Graphic Refresh. A graphic with 20 dynamic points shall update with current data within 8 sec. and shall automatically refresh every 15 sec.
 3. Configuration and Tuning Screens. Screens used for configuring, calibrating, or tuning points, PID loops, and similar control logic shall automatically refresh within 6 sec.
 4. Object Command. Devices shall react to command of a binary object within 2 sec. Devices shall begin reacting to command of an analog object within 2 sec.
 5. Alarm Response Time. An object that goes into alarm shall be annunciated at the workstation within 45 sec.
 6. Program Execution Frequency. Custom and standard applications shall be capable of running as often as once every 5 sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
 7. Performance. Programmable controllers shall be able to completely execute DDC PID control loops at a frequency adjustable down to once per sec. Select execution times consistent with the mechanical process under control.
 8. Multiple Alarm Annunciation. Each workstation on the network shall receive alarms within 5 sec of other workstations.
 9. Reporting Accuracy. System shall report values with minimum end-to-end accuracy listed in Table 1.
 10. Control Stability and Accuracy. Control loops shall maintain measured variable at setpoint within tolerances listed below.
 11. Measured Variable and Reported Accuracy
 - a. Space Temperature: $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - b. Ducted Air: $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - c. Outside Air: $\pm 1.0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 2^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - d. Dew Point: $\pm 1.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 3^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - e. Water Temperature: $\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - f. Delta-T: $\pm 0.15^{\circ}$ ($\pm 0.25^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - g. Relative Humidity: $\pm 5\%$ RH
 - h. Water Flow: $\pm 2\%$ of full scale
 - i. Airflow (terminal): $\pm 10\%$ of full scale; Accuracy applies to 10%–100% of scale
 - j. Airflow (measuring stations): $\pm 5\%$ of full scale
 - k. Airflow (pressurized spaces): $\pm 3\%$ of full scale
 - l. Air Pressure (ducts): ± 25 Pa (± 0.1 in. w.g.)
 - m. Air Pressure (space): ± 3 Pa (± 0.01 in. w.g.)
 - n. Water Pressure: $\pm 2\%$ of full scale
 - o. Electrical: $\pm 1\%$ of reading, Not including utility-supplied meters
 - p. Carbon Monoxide (CO): $\pm 5\%$ of reading
 - q. Carbon Dioxide (CO₂): ± 50 ppm
 12. Control Stability and Accuracy
 - a. Air Pressure: ± 50 Pa (± 0.2 in. w.g.); Range of Medium: 0–1.5 kPa (0–6 in. w.g.)
 - b. Air Pressure: ± 3 Pa (± 0.01 in. w.g.); Range of Medium: 25 to 25 Pa (-0.1 to 0.1 in. w.g.)
 - c. Airflow: $\pm 10\%$ of full scale
 - d. Space Temperature: $\pm 1.0^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 2.0^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - e. Duct Temperature: $\pm 1.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($\pm 3^{\circ}\text{F}$)
 - f. Humidity: $\pm 5\%$ RH
 - g. Fluid Pressure: ± 10 kPa (± 1.5 psi); Range of Medium: 1–150 psi
- C. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, Routers, Instruments and Actuators: Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated

and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application. Products shall be protected with NEMA enclosures suitable for the location where installed.

- D. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption: Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.3 COMMUNICATION

- A. Control products, communication media, connectors, repeaters, hubs, and routers shall comprise a BACnet internetwork. Controller and operator interface communication shall conform to ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet.
- B. Provide new wiring and network devices as required to provide a complete and workable control network.
- C. Each controller shall have a communication port for temporary connection to a laptop computer or other operator interface. Connection shall support memory downloads and other commissioning and troubleshooting operations.
- D. Internetwork operator interface and value passing shall be transparent to internetwork architecture.
- E. An operator interface connected to a controller shall allow the operator to interface with each internetwork controller as if directly connected. Controller information such as data, status, and control algorithms shall be viewable and editable from each internetwork controller.
- F. Inputs, outputs, and control variables used to integrate control strategies across multiple controllers shall be readable by each controller on the internetwork. Program and test all cross-controller links required to execute control strategies specified in Section 23 09 93. An authorized operator shall be able to edit cross-controller links by typing a standard object address or by using a point-and-click interface.
- G. Workstations, Building Control Panels, and Controllers with real-time clocks shall use the BACnet Time Synchronization service. System shall automatically synchronize system clocks daily from an operator-designated device via the internetwork. The system shall automatically adjust for daylight saving and standard time as applicable.
- H. System shall be expandable to at least twice the required input and output objects with additional controllers, associated devices, and wiring.

2.4 DDC EQUIPMENT

- A. The Operator Workstation or server shall conform to the BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS), or BACnet Advanced Workstation (B-AWS) device profile as specified in ASHRAE/ANSI 135 BACnet Annex L.

- B. Operator Interface. Web server shall reside on high-speed network with building controllers. Each standard browser connected to server shall be able to access all system information.
- C. Communication. Web server or workstation and controllers shall communicate using BACnet protocol. Web server or workstation and control network backbone shall communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) Data Link/Physical layer protocol and BACnet/IP addressing as specified in ANSI/ASHRAE 135, BACnet Annex J.
- D. Operator Workstation-Not required-system shall be web-based on the owner's network, accessible from any secure connection to the network.
- E. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
 - 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
 - d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
 - e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
 - 3. Standard Application Programs:
 - a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, anti-short-cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
 - b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
 - c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
 - d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
 - e. Remote communications.
 - f. Maintenance management.
 - g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
 - 4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
- F. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.
 - 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.

2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
 3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
- G. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
 2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
 3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
 4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
 5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).
 6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
 7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.
- H. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
 2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
 3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
- I. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
 2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
 3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
 4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.
- 2.5 UNITARY CONTROLLERS
- A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.

1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72-hour battery backup.
2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform scheduling with real-time clock. Perform automatic system diagnostics, monitor system and report failures.
3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
4. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.

2.6 SENSING DEVICES

- A. Where feasible, provide the same sensor type throughout the project. Avoid using transmitters unless absolutely necessary.
- B. Thermistors: Precision thermistors may be used in applications below 200°F. Sensor accuracy over the application range shall be 0.36°F or less between 32 to 150°F. Stability error of the thermistor over five years shall not exceed 0.25°F cumulative. A/D conversion resolution error shall be kept to 0.1°F. Total error for a thermistor circuit shall not exceed 0.5 °F.
- C. Resistance Temperature Detectors (RTDs): Provide RTD sensors with platinum elements compatible with the digital controllers. Encapsulate sensors in epoxy, series 300 stainless steel, anodized aluminum, or copper. Temperature sensor accuracy shall be 0.1 percent (1 ohm) of expected ohms (1000 ohms) at 32 °F. Temperature sensor stability error over five years shall not exceed 0.25°F cumulative. Direct connection of RTDs to digital controllers without transmitters is preferred. When RTDs are connected directly, lead resistance error shall be less than 0.25 °F. The total error for a RTD circuit shall not exceed 0.5°F.
- D. Per ASHRAE 90.1-2016: Outdoor air, return air, mixed air, and supply air sensors shall be calibrated within the following accuracies:
 1. Dry-bulb and wet-bulb temperatures shall be accurate to $\pm 2^\circ\text{F}$ over the range of 40°F to 80°F.
 2. Enthalpy and the value of a differential enthalpy sensor shall be accurate to ± 3 Btu/lb. over the range of 20 to 36 Btu/lb.
 3. Relative humidity shall be accurate to $\pm 5\%$ over the range of 20% to 80% RH.
- E. Temperature Sensor Details
 1. Room Type: Provide the sensing element components within a decorative protective cover suitable for surrounding decor.
 - a. Provide room temperature sensors with:
 - 1) Timed override button
 - 2) Setpoint adjustment lever or knob.
 - 3) Override switch.
 - 4) Digital temperature display.
 - 5) Insulating Bases: For temperature sensors/thermostats located on exterior walls.

- 6) Guards: Locking; heavy-duty, transparent plastic; mounted on separate base.
 - b. Provide a communication port or 802.11x wireless support for a portable operator interface like a notebook computer or PDA.
 2. Duct Probe Type: Ensure the probe is long enough to properly sense the air stream temperature.
 3. Duct Averaging Type: Continuous averaging sensors shall be one foot in length for each 4 square feet of duct cross-sectional area, and a minimum length of 6 ft.
 4. Pipe Immersion Type: Provide minimum three-inch immersion. Provide each sensor with a corresponding pipe-mounted sensor well, unless indicated otherwise. Sensor wells shall be stainless steel when used in steel piping, and brass when used in copper piping. Provide the sensor well with a heat-sensitive transfer agent between the sensor and the well interior.
 5. Outside Air Type: Provide the sensing element on the building's north side with a protective weather shade that positions the sensor approximately 3 inches off the wall surface, does not inhibit free air flow across the sensing element, and protects the sensor from snow, ice, and rain.
- F. Occupancy Sensor: Passive infrared, with time delay, daylight sensor lockout, sensitivity control, and 180-degree field of view with vertical sensing adjustment; for flush mounting.
- G. Transmitters: Provide transmitters with 4 to 20 mA or 0 to 10 VDC linear output scaled to the sensed input. Transmitters shall be matched to the respective sensor, factory calibrated, and sealed. Size transmitters for an output near 50 percent of its full-scale range at normal operating conditions. The total transmitter error shall not exceed 0.1 percent at any point across the measured span. Supply voltage shall be 12 to 24 volts AC or DC. Transmitters shall have non-interactive offset and span adjustments. For temperature sensing, transmitter drift shall not exceed 0.03 °F a year.
- H. Relative Humidity Transmitters: Provide transmitters with an accuracy equal to plus or minus 3 percent from 0 to 90% scale, and less than one percent drift per year. Sensing elements shall be the polymer type. Vaisala Model HMD50U or equal.
- I. Current Transducers: Provide current transducers to monitor motor amperage, unless current switches are shown on design drawings or point tables.
- J. Shielded Space Static Pressure Sensor: The shielded space static pressure sensors shall be the S.A.P./S shielded static air probes as manufactured by Air Monitor Corporation. Shielded static pressure sensor shall be suitable for surface recessed flush mounting, complete with multiple sensing ports, pressure impulse suppression chamber, airflow shielding, all contained in an aluminum casing, with brushed finish on exposed surfaces. Probes shall be capable of sensing the static pressure in the proximity of the sensor to within 1% of the actual pressure value while being subjected to a maximum airflow of 1000 FPM from a radial source.
- K. Shielded Outside Air Static Pressure Sensor: The static outside air probe shall be the S.O.A.P. as manufactured by Air Monitor Corporation or approved equal. Outdoor static pressure sensor shall be constructed of 10-gauge Type 316 stainless steel with a 2" diameter FPT connection. The outdoor air probe shall be capable of sensing the outside atmospheric air pressure to within 2% of the actual value when subjected to radial wind velocities up to 40 miles per hour with approach angles up to 30° to the horizontal.

L. Input Switches

1. Timed Local Overrides: Provide buttons or switches to override the DDC occupancy schedule programming for each major building zone during unoccupied periods, and to return HVAC equipment to the occupied mode. This requirement is waived for zones clearly intended for 24 hour continuous operation.
2. Freeze Protection Thermostats: Provide special purpose thermostats with flexible capillary elements 20 feet minimum length for coil face areas up to 40 square feet. Provide longer elements for larger coils at 1-foot of element for every 4 square feet of coil face area or provide additional thermostats. Provide switch contacts rated for the respective motor starter's control circuit voltage. Include auxiliary contacts for the switch's status condition. A freezing condition at any 18-inch increment along the sensing element's length shall activate the switch. The thermostat shall be equipped with a manual push-button reset switch so that when tripped, the thermostat requires manual resetting before the HVAC equipment can restart.

M. Airflow Measuring Stations:

1. General

- a. Provide one thermal airflow measuring device (AMD) for each location indicated on plans, schedules and/or control diagrams. Fan inlet measurement devices shall not be substituted for duct or plenum measurement devices indicated on the plans.
- b. Each AMD shall use the principle of thermal dispersion to determine the actual or mass airflow rate of the airstream. Differential pressure-based devices, including pitot tubes, pitot arrays, piezo-rings and devices measuring the pressure drop across a louver, damper or obstruction are not acceptable.
- c. Each AMD shall be provided with one or more sensor probes having one or more sensor nodes per probe.
- d. Each sensor node shall consist of two hermetically sealed bead-in-glass thermistors. The airflow of each sensor node shall be determined using one self-heated and ambient temperature sensing thermistor. Devices using indirectly heated thermistors to determine the airflow rate are not acceptable. Devices using chip thermistors of any type or packaging are not acceptable. Devices using platinum wire RTDs, or similar "hot wire" devices are not acceptable.
- e. Thermistors shall be potted in an engineering thermoplastic assembly using waterproof, marine epoxy and shall not be damaged by moisture, direct contact with water or exposure to atmospheric acids. Provide a copy of an independent laboratory report to verify compliance with this requirement.
- f. All internal wiring in the probe tube shall be chemical and abrasion resistant Kynar® coated copper.
- g. All connections to internal wires in the probe tube shall be solder joints or welds. Connectors of any type in the probe tube are not acceptable.
- h. Each thermistor shall be independently calibrated to NIST traceable temperature standards to establish the resistance-temperature characteristics for the determination of airflow and temperature. Devices using interchangeable, curve-matched, thermistors are not acceptable.
- i. The airflow sensing thermistor of each sensor node shall be self-heated. Devices using Indirectly heated thermistors are not acceptable.
- j. Each sensor node shall be independently processed by the transmitter prior to averaging and output.
- k. The specified sensor accuracy shall include the combined uncertainty of the sensor nodes and transmitter. Devices whose overall accuracy is based on individual accuracy specifications of the sensor probes and transmitter shall

demonstrate compliance with the specified sensor accuracy over the entire operating range.

- l. Installed accuracy shall include the uncertainty of the AMD and the additional uncertainty that results from the placement of the AMD in the airstream. The specified installed accuracy is based on the AMD being installed in accordance with manufacturers published placement and installation guidelines.
 - m. Transmitters shall be microprocessor-based and operate automatically after brownouts and/or transient power interruptions.
 - n. All printed circuit boards shall have gold plated interconnects, edge fingers, and test points.
 - o. Remote transmitters shall have an LCD and four-button user interface.
 - p. Remote transmitters shall be mounted in a location protected from moisture, rain and snow with an ambient temperature between -20 and 120°F and a humidity range between 5 and 95% RH (non-condensing). Provide a weatherproof enclosure and mount away from direct sunlight when outdoor mounting is required.
 - q. Probes with remote transmitters shall be “plug and play”, not require matching to the transmitter, and be provided with a UL listed, FEP jacketed, plenum rated cable and connector plug. Devices using PVC jacketed cables to connect sensor probes to the transmitter are not acceptable.
 - r. All components of each AMD shall be RoHS2 compliant.
 - s. Each AMD shall be UL/cUL listed as a final assembly.
 - t. Each AMD shall be FCC-Part 15 compliant. Compliance shall be demonstrated by an independent test laboratory.
 - u. European shipments shall be CE marked. Compliance shall be demonstrated by an independent test laboratory.
 - v. Devices with a BACnet network connection shall be BTL tested and listed.
2. Basis of Design:
- a. Duct and plenum AMD with temperature measurement and remote transmitter: EBTRON models GTx116-P+ and GTx116e-P+.
 - b. Duct and plenum AMD with temperature and humidity measurement and remote transmitter: EBTRON model GTx116e-P+/H
 - c. Small duct and air terminal AMD with temperature measurement and remote transmitter: EBTRON model EF-x2000-T.
 - d. Small duct and air terminal AMD with temperature measurement and integral transmitter: EBTRON model EF-x1000-T.
 - e. Fan airflow and temperature measurement with remote transmitter: EBTRON models GTx108-F

N. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. General Eastern Instruments.
 - c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
 - e. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - f. Vaisala.
 - g. Kele
2. Duct Differential Pressure Transmitters: Kele M30/40 and T30/40 Series, or approved equal; reliable, stable, low-air pressure transmitters with 4-20 mA outputs.

3. Duct pressure high-limit: Kele Model 1900-5-MR manual reset pressure switch is designed to monitor duct static and shut down the blower when excess pressure occurs. The switch must be manually reset before the system can start again. Switch contacts are SPDT with solder-type connections. The Model 1900-5-MR measures static pressure only, not differential pressure.
 4. Air Differential Pressure Switches, Kele 1900 Series, are designed to monitor the differential pressure of air in HVAC applications. These automatic reset switches are available in ranges from 0.07" to 20" W.C. and shall have SPDT screw-type electrical connections.
 5. Filter pressure drop: Kele Model A-602 air filter kit includes two static pressure tips and aluminum tubing and fittings, and it allows the Kele 1900 Series to monitor filter pressure drop.
 6. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Non-directional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent. Output: 4 to 20 mA. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
 7. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
 8. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
- O. Hydronic Remote Differential Pressure Transmitters: Bell & Gossett ST Series; Setra or approved equal. Transmitter shall provide an isolated linear 4-20 mA dc output. The unit shall be accurate to $\pm 0.07\%$ of full span and shall withstand over ranges up to a static pressure of 2300 psi with negligible change in output. It shall have stainless steel wetted parts with 1/4" NPT process connection. Unit shall be protected against radio frequency interference and shall have a water tight (NEMA Type 6/6P) electrical enclosure with 1/2" NPT conduit connection.
- P. Gas Detection
1. Carbon-Dioxide (CO2) Sensor:
 - a. Manufacturers: Vaisala GMW21 and GMD20 Series, Honeywell Model C7232, MSA Airox Model 711271, GE-Telaire.
 - b. Analog and a relay output, use non-dispersive infrared (NDIR) technology, and feature a unique corrosion-free sensing chamber for accurate, stable CO2 sensing.
 - c. Gold-plated sensor for long-term calibration stability
 - d. Automatic Background Calibration (ABC) algorithm based on long-term evaluation to reduce required maintenance. Manufacturer recommended calibration interval shall not be less than five years.
 - e. Configuration as indicated: Wall mount with LCD to provide sensor readings and status information or Duct mount
- Q. Occupancy Sensors. Occupancy sensors shall utilize Passive Infrared (PIR) and/or Microphonic Passive technology to detect the presence of people within a room. Sensors shall be mounted as indicated on the approved drawings. The sensor output shall be accessible by any lighting and/or HVAC controller in the system. Occupancy sensors shall be capable of being powered from the lighting or HVAC control panel, as shown on the drawings. Occupancy sensor delay shall be software adjustable through the user interface and shall not require manual adjustment at the sensor.

R. Boiler Room Gas Detection Device type AGS Mini Merlin CH4CO:

1. The device will be 120 Vac powered, individually powered and capable of accepting the inputs of multiple devices. The unit will clearly display the condition of an alarm and provide hazardous or toxic gas levels via ppm or % of VOL. The device shall provide a re-set and test function. The device shall incorporate dual sensor technology to detect Methane and CO (Carbon Monoxide) without the requirement for additional components. The unit shall be UL certified and listed. Mount the panel per manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
2. The device panel will be capable of transmitting alarm conditions to a BMS system through its dry contact relay output. For local activation of fans or louvers (or other equipment), the relay will change state in alarm and revert back once the alarm has been removed.
3. The device panel will be capable of operating within relative humidity ranges of 5-95% non- condensing and temperature ranges of -4° F to 140° F.
4. The device will be certified and listed to ANSI/UL 61010-1 3rd edition and CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 61010-1.
5. For local activation of audible alarms, the transmitter shall have an on-board device able to generate an audible output of 85 dBA @ 10 ft.
6. The unit shall provide a traffic signal type colored TFT display, Green – all clear, Yellow – warning (low alarm) Red – Alarm.
7. Detector alarm levels are to be activated and the unit is to be installed in accordance with the following parameters:

| GASES | TDLR Code Required Limits | | | MOUNTING HEIGHT | COVERAGE RADIUS |
|----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| | 35ppm | 50ppm | | | |
| Carbon Monoxide (CO) | | | | Per Manufacturer's Instructions | 50 ft |
| | 1st ALARM SET POINT | 2nd ALARM SET POINT | 3rd ALARM SET POINT | MOUNTING HEIGHT | COVERAGE RADIUS |
| Methane | 8% of LEL 4% of VOL | 10% of LEL 5% of VOL | | Per Manufacturer's Instructions | 50 ft |

8. The sensors shall be UL listed to comply with UL2075 and incorporate filters to only look for the desired hazardous or toxic gases selected.
9. Local Building Codes recommendations take precedence over these parameters. Coverage can differ depending on application.
10. Sequence of Operation
 - a. If Methane Sensor detects 8% of LEL, the detector shall indicate Low Alarm level via TFT screen. If the hazardous gas level reaches 10% of LEL the detector shall indicate High Alarm level via TFT screen and audible alarm. The internal relay outputs shall change state communicating the alarm condition to the BMS and F.A.C.P.
 - b. If CO sensor detects Carbon Monoxide the detector shall indicate Low Alarm level via TFT screen. If CO levels continue to rise or trigger alarm thresholds as per the OSHA Dept of Labor TWA alarm thresholds the detector shall indicate High Alarm via TFT screen and audible alarm. The internal relay outputs shall change state communicating the alarm condition to the BMS and F.A.C.P.

2.7 OUTPUT HARDWARE

- A. Motorized control dampers, unless otherwise specified elsewhere, shall be as follows:
1. Submittals shall include leakage, maximum airflow and maximum pressure ratings based on AMCA Publication 500. Dampers shall meet the leakage requirements of the International Energy Conservation Code by leaking less than 3 cfm/sq. ft. at 1" of static pressure and shall be AMCA licensed as Class 1A. Dampers shall be Ruskin model CD60 or approved equal.
 2. Control dampers shall be the parallel or opposed blade type as follows: Outdoor and/or return air mixing dampers shall be parallel blade, arranged to direct airstreams toward each other. Other modulating dampers shall be the opposed blade type. Two-position shutoff dampers may be parallel or opposed blade type with blade and side seals.
 3. Frame: 5 inches x minimum 16 gage roll formed, galvanized steel hat-shaped channel, reinforced at corners. Structurally equivalent to 13 gage U-channel. Damper blades shall not exceed 8 inches in width or 48 inches in length. Blades shall be suitable for medium velocity performance 2000 fpm. Blades shall be not less than 16-gauge.
 4. Bearings shall be corrosion resistant, permanently lubricated stainless steel sleeve type turning in an extruded hole in the damper frame.
 5. All blade edges, top, and bottom of the frame shall be provided with replaceable butyl rubber or neoprene seals. Side seals shall be spring-loaded stainless steel.
 6. Individual damper sections shall not be larger than 48 in. x 60 in. Provide a minimum of one damper actuator per section.
 7. Modulating dampers shall provide a linear flow characteristic where possible.
 8. Dampers shall have exposed linkages. Dampers over 48" in applications where sectioning is not applicable shall be supplied with a jackshaft to provide sufficient force throughout the intended operating range.
- B. Electronic damper/valve actuation shall be provided.
1. Manufactured, brand labeled or distributed by BELIMO, or approved equal.
 2. Size for torque required for damper seal at load conditions.
 3. Coupling: V-bolt dual nut clamp with a V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 4. Mounting: Actuators shall be capable of being mechanically and electrically paralleled to increase torque if required.
 5. Overload protected electronically throughout rotation.
 6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism.
 7. Manual Positioning. Operators shall be able to manually position each actuator when the actuator is not powered. Non-spring-return actuators shall have an external manual gear release. Spring-return actuators with more than 60 in.-lb. torque capacity shall have a manual crank.
 8. Proportional Actuators shall be fully programmable through an EEPROM without the use of actuator mounted switches.
 9. Proportional actuators shall have an external, built-in switch to allow the reversing of direction of rotation.
 10. Proportional actuators shall accept a 0 to 10 VDC or 0 to 20 mA control signal and provide a 2 to 10 VDC or 4 to 20 mA operating range. An actuator capable of accepting a pulse width modulating control signal and providing full proportional operation of the damper is acceptable. All actuators shall provide a 2 to 10 VDC position feedback signal.
 11. Temperature Rating: -22 to +122°F -30 to +50°C [-58 to +122°F -50 to +50°C]
 12. Housing: Minimum requirement NEMA type 2 mounted in any orientation. .
 13. Agency Listings: ISO 9001, cULus, CE or CSA
 14. The manufacturer shall warrant all components for a period of 5 years from the date of production, with the first two years unconditional.

- C. Control Valves: Control valves shall be two-way or three-way type for two-position or modulating service as shown.
1. Close-off (differential) Pressure Rating: Valve actuator and trim shall be furnished to provide the following minimum close-off pressure ratings:
 - a. Two-way: 150% of total system (pump) head.
 - b. Three-way: 300% of pressure differential between ports A and B at design flow or 100% of total system (pump) head.
 - c. Steam Valves: 150% of operating (inlet) pressure.
 2. Water Valves: Body and trim style and materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service shown, with equal percentage ports for modulating service.
 - a. Sizing Criteria:
 - 1) Two-position service: Line size.
 - 2) Two-way modulating service: Pressure drop shall be equal to twice the pressure drop through heat exchanger (load), 50% of the pressure difference between supply and return mains, or 5 psi, which ever is greater.
 - 3) Three-way modulating service: Pressure drop equal to twice the pressure drop through the coil exchanger (load); 5 psi maximum.
 - b. Application:
 - 1) VAV-reheat coils: two-way floating control, non spring return.
 - 2) CUH and Convectors: two-way two position, spring open 100%.
 - 3) AHU main heating coils: two-way modulating control, spring open 100%.
 - 4) Fintube radiation: zone valves. Zone valves shall have brass bodies with female NPT or sweat ends and a stainless steel stem. Normally open zone valve actuators shall on/off and shall be available in 24VAC or 120VAC. Zone valves shall have push button for quick removal of actuator. Zone valves shall have a leakage rate of 0.1% or lower.
 - c. Valves ½ in. through 2 in. shall be bronze body or cast brass ANSI Class 250, spring-loaded, PTFE packing, quick opening for two-position service. Two-way valves to have replaceable composition disc or stainless steel ball.
 - d. Valves 2½ in. and larger shall be cast iron ANSI Class 125 with guided plug and PTFE packing.
 - e. Water valves shall fail normally open or closed, as specified.
 3. Steam valves: Body and trim materials shall be in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for design conditions and service with linear ports for modulating service. Sizing Criteria: Two-position service: pressure drop 10% to 20% of inlet psig. Modulating service: 15 psig or less; pressure drop 80% of inlet of psig. Modulating service: 16 to 50 psig; pressure drop 50% of inlet psig.
- D. Output Switches: Control Relays; Field installed and DDC panel relays shall be double pole, double throw, UL864 listed, with contacts rated for the intended application, indicator light, and dust proof enclosure. The indicator light shall be lit when the coil is energized and off when coil is not energized. Relays shall be the socket type, plug into a fixed base, and replaceable without tools or removing wiring. Encapsulated "PAM" type relays may be used for terminal control applications.

2.8 STATUS SENSORS

- A. VFD Motor Current Switches: Veris Hawkeye H614, or equal; microprocessor based, self-learning, self-calibrating current-sensitive switching device designed for use with VFD systems. At initial power-up, the H614 automatically learns the average current on the line with no action required by the installer. Once a current is learned, the switch monitors for changes in current greater than +/-20% of the learned load. When calibrated for a given VFD system, the H614 is tolerant of gradual drifts in frequency due to expected conditions, such as an accumulation of debris in a filter, while still detecting a sudden drop due to a potential abnormal system condition (e.g., belt loss or other mechanical failure).
1. Microcontroller based learning technology - automatically learns load upon initial power-up minimizes calibration labor.
 2. Automatic trip point - automatic trip point (1.5 to 150 A, 12 to 115 Hz) detect abnormal events.
 3. Under and over-load - microcontroller based learning technology automatically learns load.
 4. Saves space - small size fits easily inside small starter enclosures.
 5. 100% solid-state no. moving parts to fail.
 6. LED status
 7. Induced from monitored conductor sensor power.
- B. ECM Motor Current Switch: Veris H6ECM, or equal: current-sensitive switching device that monitors current (amperage) in the conductor passing through it. A change in amperage in the monitored conductor that crosses the switch (setpoint) causes the resistance of the FET status output to change state, similar to the action of a mechanical switch. The status output is suitable for connection to building controllers or other appropriate data acquisition equipment operating at up to 30 V. The product requires no external power supply to generate its output. The ECM is a brushless DC motor that is supplied AC power, converts that power to DC current and uses electronic switching to control the motor rotation. The ECM motor shaft speed can be reduced to save energy, resulting in lower cost and less component wear. The H6ECM is optimized to provide meaningful proof of rotation which verifies that the ECM motor is operating as expected.
1. High performance device, split-core housing.
 2. Precise current trip point setting.
 3. Small size - fits easily inside small enclosures.
 4. Self-gripping iris for easy installation.
 5. Status LEDs - for easy setup and local indication.
 6. Up to 1 A status output - increased application flexibility.
 7. Induced from monitored conductor sensor power.
- C. Electronic Valve/Damper Position Indicator: Visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
- D. Water-Flow Switches: Bellows-actuated mercury or snap-acting type with pilot-duty rating, stainless-steel or bronze paddle, with appropriate range and differential adjustment, in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER AND DISTRIBUTION

- A. Transformers: Transformers shall conform to UL 506. For control power other than terminal level equipment, provide a fuse or circuit breaker on the secondary side of each transformer.

B. Surge and Transient Protection

1. Provide each digital controller with surge and transient power protection. Surge and transient protection shall consist of the following devices, installed externally to the controllers.
2. Power Line Surge Protection: Provide surge suppressors on the incoming power at each controller or grouped terminal controllers. Surge suppressors shall be rated in accordance with UL 1449, have a fault indicating light, and conform to the following:
 - a. The device shall be a transient voltage surge suppressor, hard-wire type individual equipment protector for 120 VAC/1 phase/2 wire plus ground.
 - b. The device shall react within 5 nanoseconds and automatically reset.
 - c. The voltage protection threshold, line to neutral, shall be no more than 211 volts.
 - d. The device shall have an independent secondary stage equal to or greater than the primary stage joule rating.
 - e. The primary suppression system components shall be pure silicon avalanche diodes.
 - f. The secondary suppression system components shall be silicon avalanche diodes or metal oxide varistors.
 - g. The device shall have an indication light to indicate the protection components are functioning.
 - h. All system functions of the transient suppression system shall be individually fused and not short circuit the AC power line at any time.
 - i. The device shall have an EMI/RFI noise filter with a minimum attenuation of 13 dB at 10 kHz to 300 MHz.
 - j. The device shall comply with IEEE C62.41.1 and IEEE C62.41.2, Class "B" requirements and be tested according to IEEE C62.45.
 - k. The device shall be capable of operating between -20 °F and 122 °F.
3. Telephone and Communication Line Surge Protection: Provide surge and transient protection for DDC controllers and DDC network related devices connected to phone and network communication lines. The device shall provide continuous, non-interrupting protection, and shall automatically reset after safely eliminating transient surges. The protection shall react within 5 nanoseconds using only solid-state silicon avalanche technology. The device shall be installed at the distance recommended by its manufacturer.
4. Controller Input/Output Protection: Provide controller inputs and outputs with surge protection via optical isolation, metal oxide varistors (MOV), or silicon avalanche devices. Fuses are not permitted for surge protection.

C. Wiring: Provide complete electrical wiring for the DDC System, coordinate line of demarcation with Division 26. Unless indicated otherwise, provide all normally visible or otherwise exposed wiring in conduit. Where conduit is required, control circuit wiring shall not run in the same conduit as power wiring over 100 volts. Circuits operating at more than 100 volts shall be in accordance with Division 26. Run all circuits over 100 volts in conduit, metallic tubing, covered metal raceways, or armored cable. Use plenum-rated cable for circuits under 100 volts in enclosed spaces. Examples of these spaces include HVAC plenums, within walls, attics, or above suspended ceilings.

D. Power Wiring: The following requirements are for field-installed wiring:

1. Wiring for 24 V circuits shall be insulated copper 18 AWG minimum and rated for 300 VAC service.
2. Wiring for 120 V circuits shall be insulated copper 14 AWG minimum and rated for 600 VAC service.

- E. Analog Signal Wiring: Field-installed analog signal wiring shall be 18 AWG single or multiple twisted pair. Each cable shall be 100 percent shielded and have a 20 AWG drain wire. Each wire shall have insulation rated for 300 VAC service. Cables shall have an overall aluminum-polyester or tinned-copper cable-shield tape.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. The project plans shall be thoroughly examined for control device and equipment locations. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the architect/engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started.
- B. The contractor shall inspect the site to verify that equipment may be installed as shown. Any discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions shall be reported to the engineer for resolution before rough-in work is started. Verify that duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices and wiring are installed before proceeding with installation.
- C. The contractor shall examine the drawings and specifications for other parts of the work. If head room or space conditions appear inadequate—or if any discrepancies occur between the plans and the contractor's work of others—the contractor shall report these discrepancies to the engineer and shall obtain written instructions for any changes necessary to accommodate the contractor's work with the work of others. Any changes in the work covered by this specification made necessary by the failure or neglect of the contractor to report such discrepancies shall be provided at the expense of this contractor.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- B. Provide all components in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Perform the installation under the supervision of competent technicians regularly employed in the installation of DDC systems.
- C. Provide equipment, piping, and wiring/raceway parallel to building lines (i.e., horizontal, vertical, and parallel to walls) wherever possible.
- D. Provide sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- E. All equipment, installation, and wiring shall comply with acceptable industry specifications and standards for performance, reliability, and compatibility and be executed in strict adherence to local codes and standard practices. Contractor shall continually monitor the field installation for code compliance and quality of workmanship. Contractor shall have work inspected by local and/or state authorities having jurisdiction over the work.
- F. Temperature Sensors: Provide temperature sensors in locations that are accessible and provide a good representation of sensed media. Installations in dead spaces are not acceptable. Calibrate sensors according to manufacturer's instructions. Do not use sensors designed for one application in a different application.

- G. Room Temperature Sensors: Verify location of thermostats and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation. Mount the sensors on interior walls to sense the average room temperature at the locations indicated. Avoid locations near heat sources such as copy machines or locations by supply air outlet drafts. Mount the center of the sensor 48 inches above the floor to meet ADA requirements.
 - 1. Provide guards on room temperature sensors located in Entry Vestibules, Corridors, Recreation Rooms, Common Areas, and as otherwise shown on the plans.
- H. Duct Temperature Sensors
 - 1. Probe Type: Provide a gasket between the sensor housing and the duct wall. Seal the duct penetration air tight. Seal the duct insulation penetration vapor tight.
 - 2. Averaging Type (and coil freeze protection thermostats): Weave the capillary tube sensing element in a serpentine fashion perpendicular to the flow, across the duct or air handler cross-section, using durable non-metal supports. Prevent contact between the capillary and the duct or air handler internals. Provide a duct access door at the sensor location. The access door shall be hinged on the side, factory insulated, have cam type locks, and be as large as the duct will permit; maximum 18 x 18 inches. For sensors inside air handlers, the sensors shall be fully accessible through the air handler's access doors without removing any of the air handler's internals.
- I. Outside Air Temperature Sensors: Provide outside air temperature sensors in weatherproof enclosures on the north side of the building, away from exhaust hoods and other areas that may affect the reading. Provide a shield to shade the sensor from direct sunlight.
- J. Gas Monitor/Transmitters: Verify location of transmitter with room layout and details before installation. Do not exceed the manufactures' recommended maximum surveillance radius. Provide proper quantity as required. Mounting height shall be at manufacturer recommended height for the gas being sensed.
- K. Provide automatic dampers according to Section 233113 "Ductwork."
- L. Provide damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- M. Provide labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Section 23 05 00 "Common Work Results".
- N. Provide hydronic instrument wells, valves, and other accessories according to Section 23 21 13 "Hydronic HVAC Piping". Provide thermowells for sensors measuring piping, tank, or pressure vessel temperatures. Locate wells to sense continuous flow conditions. Do not install wells using extension couplings. Where piping diameters are smaller than the length of the wells, provide wells in piping at elbows to sense flow across entire area of well. Wells shall not restrict flow area to less than 70 percent of pipe area. Increase piping size as required to avoid restriction. Provide thermal conductivity material within the well to fully coat the inserted sensor.
- O. Provide duct volume-control dampers according to Section 23 31 13 "Ductwork"

3.3 WIRING

- A. All control and interlock wiring shall comply with national and local electrical codes, and Division 26 of this specification. Where the requirements of this section differ from Division 26, the requirements of Division 26 shall take precedence.
- B. NEC Class 1 (line voltage) wiring shall be UL listed in approved raceway according to NEC and Division 26 requirements. Low-voltage wiring shall meet NEC Class 2 requirements. Low-voltage power circuits shall be sub-fused when required to meet Class 2 current limit.
- C. Where NEC Class 2 (current-limited) wires are in concealed and accessible locations, including ceiling return air plenums, approved cables not in raceway may be used provided that cables are UL listed for the intended application.
- D. Do not install Class 2 wiring in raceways containing Class 1 wiring. Boxes and panels containing high-voltage wiring and equipment may not be used for low-voltage wiring except for the purpose of interfacing the two (e.g., relays and transformers).
- E. Where Class 2 wiring is run exposed, wiring is to be run parallel along a surface or perpendicular to it and neatly tied at 10 ft intervals.
- F. Where plenum cables are used without raceway, they shall be supported from or anchored to structural members. Cables shall not be supported by or anchored to ductwork, electrical raceways, piping, or ceiling suspension systems.
- G. All wire-to-device connections shall be made at a terminal block or terminal strip. All wire-to-wire connections shall be at a terminal block.
- H. All wiring within enclosures shall be neatly bundled and anchored to permit access and prevent restriction to devices and terminals.
- I. Maximum allowable voltage for control wiring shall be 120 V. If only higher voltages are available, the contractor shall provide step-down transformers.
- J. All wiring shall be installed as continuous lengths, with no splices permitted between termination points.
- K. Install plenum wiring in sleeves where it passes through walls and floors. Maintain fire rating at all penetrations.
- L. Size of raceway and size and type of wire type shall be the responsibility of the contractor in keeping with the manufacturer's recommendations and NEC requirements, except as noted elsewhere.
- M. Include one pull string in each raceway in 1-inch or larger.
- N. Use color-coded conductors throughout with conductors of different colors.
- O. Control and status relays are to be located in designated enclosures only. These enclosures include packaged equipment control panel enclosures unless they also contain Class 1 starters.
- P. Conceal all raceways except within mechanical, electrical, or service rooms.

- Q. Secure raceways with raceway clamps fastened to the structure and spaced according to code requirements. Raceways and pull boxes may not be hung on flexible duct strap or tie rods. Raceways may not be run on or attached to ductwork.
- R. Adhere to this specification's Division 26 requirements where raceway crosses building expansion joints.
- S. Install insulated bushings on all raceway ends and openings to enclosures. Seal top end of vertical raceways.
- T. The contractor shall terminate all control and/or interlock wiring and shall maintain updated (as-built) wiring diagrams with terminations identified at the job site.
- U. Flexible metal raceways and liquid-tight flexible metal raceways shall not exceed 3-feet in length and shall be supported at each end. Flexible metal raceway less than ½ in. electrical trade size shall not be used. In areas exposed to moisture, including chiller and boiler rooms, liquid-tight, flexible metal raceways shall be used.
- V. Raceway must be rigidly installed, adequately supported, properly reamed at both ends, and left clean and free of obstructions. Raceway sections shall be joined with couplings (according to code). Terminations must be made with fittings at boxes. Ends not terminating in boxes shall have bushings installed.

3.4 COMMUNICATION WIRING

- A. The contractor shall adhere to the items listed in the "Wiring" article in Part 3 of the specification. All cabling shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. Follow manufacturer's installation recommendations for all communication cabling
- B. Do not install communication wiring in raceways and enclosures containing Class 1 or other Class 2 wiring.
- C. Maximum pulling, tension, and bend radius for the cable installation, as specified by the cable manufacturer, shall not be exceeded during installation.
- D. Contractor shall verify the integrity of the entire network following cable installation. Use appropriate test measures for each particular cable.
- E. When a cable enters or exits a building, a lightning arrestor must be installed between the lines and ground. The lightning arrestor shall be installed according to manufacturer's instructions.
- F. All runs of communication wiring shall be unspliced length when that length is commercially available.
- G. All communication wiring shall be labeled to indicate origination and destination data.
- H. Grounding of coaxial cable shall be in accordance with NEC regulations article on "Communications Circuits, Cable, and Protector Grounding."
- I. BACnet MS/TP communications wiring shall be installed in accordance with ASHRAE/ANSI Standard 135.

- J. Fiber Optic Cable: Maximum pulling tensions as specified by the cable manufacturer shall not be exceeded during installation. Post-installation residual cable tension shall be within cable manufacturer's specifications. All cabling and associated components shall be installed in accordance with manufacturers' instructions. Minimum cable and unjacketed fiber bend radii, as specified by cable manufacturer, shall be maintained.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
 3. Test calibration of controllers by disconnecting input sensors and stimulating operation with compatible signal generator.
 4. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
 5. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
 6. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
 7. Test software and hardware interlocks.
- B. DDC Verification:
1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
 2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
 3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
 4. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
 5. Check pressure instruments, piping slope, installation of valve manifold, and self-contained pressure regulators.
 6. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
 7. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
 8. Check DDC system as follows:
 - a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
 - b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
 - c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
 - d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.
- C. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
 - a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
 - c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
 - d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
 - e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Flow:
 - a. Set differential pressure flow transmitters for 0 and 100 percent values with 3-point calibration accomplished at 50, 90, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Manually operate flow switches to verify that they make or break contact.
6. Pressure:
 - a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Calibrate pressure switches to make or break contacts, with adjustable differential set at minimum.
7. Temperature:
 - a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
 - b. Calibrate temperature switches to make or break contacts.
8. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers without positioners, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
9. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers with positioners, following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve and damper is 0, 50, and 100 percent closed.
10. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
11. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.

B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.

- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Provide a qualified instructor (or instructors) with five years minimum field experience with the installation and programming of similar BACnet DDC systems. Orient training to the specific systems installed. Coordinate training times with the Owner. Training shall take place at the job site.
- C. This training shall last 8 hours and shall be conducted at the DDC system workstation, at a notebook computer connected to the DDC system in the field, and at other site locations as necessary. Upon completion of the Training, each trainee should fully understand the project's DDC system operation. The training session shall include the following:
- D. Provide basic control system fundamentals training.
 - 1. This project's list of control system components
 - 2. This project's list of points and objects
 - 3. This project's device and network communication architecture
 - 4. This project's sequences of control, and:
 - 5. Alarm capabilities
 - 6. Trending capabilities
 - 7. Troubleshooting communication errors
 - 8. Troubleshooting hardware errors
- E. Provide additional project-specific training:
 - 1. A walk-through tour of the mechanical system and the installed DDC components (controllers, valves, dampers, surge protection, switches, thermostats, sensors, etc.)
 - 2. A discussion of the components and functions at each DDC panel
 - 3. Logging-in and navigating at each operator interface type
 - 4. Using each operator interface to find, read, and write to specific controllers and objects
 - 5. Modifying and downloading control program changes
 - 6. Modifying setpoints
 - 7. Creating, editing, and viewing trends
 - 8. Creating, editing, and viewing alarms
 - 9. Creating, editing, and viewing operating schedules and schedule objects
 - 10. Backing-up and restoring programming and data bases
 - 11. Modifying graphic text, backgrounds, dynamic data displays, and links to other graphics
 - 12. Creating new graphics and adding new dynamic data displays and links
 - 13. Alarm and Event management
 - 14. Adding and removing network devices

3.8 TEST AND BALANCE SUPPORT

- A. The controls contractor shall coordinate with and provide on-site support to the test and balance (TAB) personnel This support shall include:
 - 1. On-site operation and manipulation of control systems during the testing and balancing.
 - 2. Control setpoint adjustments for balancing all relevant mechanical systems.
 - 3. Tuning control loops with setpoints and adjustments determined by TAB personnel.

3.9 CONTROLS SYSTEM OPERATOR'S MANUALS

- A. Provide three electronic and printed copies of a Controls System Operators Manual. The manual shall be specific to the project, written to actual project conditions, and provide a complete and concise depiction of the installed work. Provide information in detail to clearly explain all operation requirements for the control system.
- B. Provide with each manual: CDs of the project's control system drawings, control programs, data bases, graphics, and all items listed below. Include gateway back-up data and configuration tools where applicable. Provide CDs in jewel case with printed and dated project-specific labels on both the CD and the case. For text and drawings, use Adobe Acrobat or MS Office file types. When approved by the Owner, AutoCAD and Visio files are allowed. Give files descriptive English names and organize in folders.
- C. Provide printed manuals in sturdy 3-ring binders with a title sheet on the outside of each binder indicating the project title, project location, contract number, and the controls contractor name, address, and telephone number. Each binder shall include a table of contents and tabbed dividers, with all material neatly organized. Manuals shall include the following:
 - 1. A copy of the as-built control system (shop) drawings set, with all items specified under the paragraph "Submittals." Indicate all field changes and modifications.
 - 2. A copy of the project's mechanical design drawings, including any official modifications and revisions.
 - 3. A copy of the project's approved Product Data submittals provided under the paragraph "Submittals."
 - 4. A copy of the project's approved Performance Verification Testing Plan and Report.
 - 5. A copy of the project's approved final TAB Report.
 - 6. Printouts of all control system programs, including controller setup pages if used. Include plain-English narratives of application programs, flowcharts, and source code.
 - 7. Printouts of all physical input and output object properties, including tuning values, alarm limits, calibration factors, and set points.
 - 8. A table entitled "AC Power Table" listing the electrical power source for each controller. Include the building electrical panel number, panel location, and circuit breaker number.
 - 9. The DDC manufacturer's hardware and software manuals in both print and CD format with printed project-specific labels. Include installation and technical manuals for all controller hardware, operator manuals for all controllers, programming manuals for all controllers, operator manuals for all workstation software, installation and technical manuals for the workstation and notebook, and programming manuals for the workstation and notebook software.
 - 10. A list of qualified control system service organizations for the work provided under this contract. Include their addresses and telephone numbers.
 - 11. A written statement entitled "Software Upgrades" stating software and firmware patches and updates will be provided upon request at no additional cost to the Owner for a minimum of two years from contract acceptance. Include a table of all DDC system software and firmware provided under this contract, listing the original release dates, version numbers, part numbers, and serial numbers.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. The contractor shall clean up all debris resulting from his/her activities daily. The contractor shall remove all cartons, containers, crates, etc., under his/her control as soon as their contents have been removed. Waste shall be collected and placed in a designated location.

- B. At the completion of work in any area, the contractor shall clean all work, equipment, etc., keeping it free from dust, dirt, and debris, etc.
- C. At the completion of work, all equipment furnished under this section shall be checked for paint damage, and any factory-finished paint that has been damaged shall be required to match the adjacent areas. Any cabinet or enclosure that has been deformed shall be replaced with new material and repainted to match the adjacent areas.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230993

SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section - Common Work Results
 - 2. Section 230900 – Direct Digital Control (DDC) System
 - 3. Other Sections – Equipment with built in DDC controllers.
 - 4. Division 23 Section - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing
 - 5. Division 26
 - 6. Division 28

1.2 GENERAL

- A. Control sequences are intended to be performance based. Implementations that provide the same functional result using different underlying detailed logic will be acceptable. As noted, control sequences shall be in accordance with ASHRAE Guideline 36-2021.
- B. All points shown in the points list or described in the sequence shall be shown on the graphics.
- C. All setpoints including setpoints internal to control algorithms shall be adjustable from all BAS operator interfaces. All commands shall be overridable from all BAS operator interfaces. All control points shall be adjustable or overridable from the same graphic page that displays the points.
- D. All points required by the sequence of operation including, but not limited to, the points listed in the sequences of operation below, as well as all of the points' associated values, shall be connected to the BAS and available to the BAS operators on all operator workstations and all operator interface devices as part of a graphical display that depicts the mechanical system controlled.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, control loops shall be enabled and disabled based on the status of the system being controlled to prevent windup.
- F. When a control loop is enabled or reenabled, it and all its constituents (such as the proportional and integral terms) shall be set initially to a neutral value.
- G. A control loop in neutral shall correspond to a condition that applies the minimum control effect, i.e., valves/dampers closed, VFDs at minimum speed, etc.
- H. When there are multiple OA temperature sensors, the system shall use the valid sensor that most accurately represents the OA conditions at the equipment being controlled.

- I. The term “control loop” or “loop” is used generically for all control loops. These will typically be PID loops, but proportional plus integral plus derivative gains are not required on all loops. Unless specifically indicated otherwise, the guidelines in the following subsections shall be followed.
 - 1. Use proportional only (P-only) loops for limiting loops (such as zone CO2 control loops, etc.). Limiting loops are used to prevent controlled variables from rising above or dropping below setpoint (depending on the application) by defining a fixed threshold at which the loop output reaches 100%. Limiting loops shall use proportional-only control to prevent integral windup from causing the controlled sensor to overshoot setpoint due to the sensor generally being far from setpoint.
 - 2. Do not use the derivative term on any loops unless field tuning is not possible without it. Use of the derivative term makes loop tuning difficult in practice. It can make loops unstable because it increases as the rate of change of the error increases, amplifying the error signal. It is used in industrial process controls and systems that have to react quickly but is rarely if ever needed in HVAC system.
- J. To avoid abrupt changes in equipment operation, the output of every control loop shall be capable of being limited by a user adjustable maximum rate of change, with a default of 25% per minute.
- K. All setpoints, timers, deadbands, PID gains, etc. listed in sequences shall be adjustable by the user with appropriate access level whether indicated as adjustable in sequences or not. Software points shall be used for these variables. Fixed scalar numbers shall not be embedded in programs except for physical constants and conversion factors.
- L. Values for all points, including real (hardware) points used in control sequences shall be capable of being overridden by the user with appropriate access level (e.g., for testing and commissioning). If hardware design prevents this for hardware points, they shall be equated to a software point, and the software point shall be used in all sequences. Exceptions shall be made for machine or life safety.
 - 1. All hardware points, not just inputs, shall be capable of being overridden for purposes of testing and commissioning. For example, the commissioning agent shall be able to command damper positions, valve positions, fan speeds, etc. directly through BAS overrides.
 - 2. The requirement to equate hardware points to software points is necessary for systems that do not allow overriding real input points.
 - 3. The user interface shall allow the user to set an expiration period that automatically releases the override after the period has expired. The system shall also keep track of who initiates each override and when.
- M. Provide Sequenced starting of HVAC equipment at initial startup, whether or not specifically mentioned in each Sequence of Operation.
- N. All setpoints shall be monitored and adjustable. Setpoints listed herein are approximate. It is the responsibility of the BAS contractor to calibrate the system and all setpoints to actual working conditions once the system is on line.
- O. BACnet
 - 1. All controllers with BACnet cards shall be integrated into the DDC system via BACnet. Provide DDC programming to define input and output information available through the boiler manufacturer’s integration data port.

2. All hardwired points and any setpoints, timers, or other control elements that are specified to be adjustable (adj.) shall be mapped as BACnet objects and be available on the user interface to be adjusted.
- P. Trends shall be provided for all hardware I/O points and integrated points listed as having trending and for analog and binary data points mapped to the user interface. Interval trending with sample intervals of 10 minutes shall be provided on analog process variables (this includes both analog inputs and calculated process variables) and process outputs. Data shall be stored at the supervisory controller or in the field controller and uploaded to the DDC system server when archiving is desired. Consult with the Owner to determine which trends should be archived. Trending shall be in place for a minimum of 24 hours prior to functional testing by the commissioning provider. The BAS shall sample and store trend data and shall be able to archive data to the hard disk.
- Q. Variable Frequency Drives (VFD) Speed Points per ASHRAE Guideline 36-2021:
1. The speed AO sent to VFDs shall be configured such that 0% speed corresponds to 0 Hz, and 100% speed corresponds to maximum speed configured in the VFD.
 2. For each piece of equipment, the minimum speed shall be stored in a single software point; in the case of a hard-wired VFD interface, the minimum speed shall be the lowest speed command sent to the drive by the BAS. The active minimum speed parameter shall be read every 60 minutes via the drive's network interface. When a mismatch between the drive's active minimum speed and the minimum speed stored in the software point is detected, the minimum speed stored in the software point shall be written to the VFD via the network interface to restore the active minimum speed parameter to its default value and generate a Level 4 alarm.
 3. Minimum speed setpoints for VFD-driven equipment shall be determined in accordance with the testing, adjusting, and balancing (TAB) specifications.
- R. Point Types
1. AO = analog output
 2. DO = digital output (also, BO = binary output)
 3. AI = analog input
 4. DI = digital input (aka BI = Binary Input)

1.3 ALARMS

- A. Provide alarms per ASHRAE Guideline 36, Paragraph 5.1.12: "Alarms".
- B. Provide at least the following requirements in the specification for the BAS graphical user interface:
1. All alarms shall include a time/date stamp using the standalone control module time and date.
 2. Each alarm can be configured in terms of level, latching (Requires Acknowledgment of a Return to
 3. Normal/Does Not Require Acknowledgment of a Return to Normal), entry delay, exit deadband, and post-suppression period.
 4. An operator shall be able to sort alarms based on level, time/date, and current status. . Alarms should be reported with the following information:
 - a. Date and time of the alarm
 - b. Level of the alarm

- c. Description of the alarm
 - d. Equipment tags for the units in alarm.
 - e. Possible causes of the alarm if provided by the fault detection routines.
 - f. The source that serves the equipment in alarm, per ASHRAE Guideline 36, Paragraph 5.1.19 "Hierarchical Alarm Suppression".
 - C. As per ASHRAE Guideline 36, there shall be 4 levels of alarm:
 - 1. Level 1: Life-safety message
 - 2. Level 2: Critical equipment message
 - 3. Level 3: Urgent message
 - 4. Level 4: Normal message
 - D. Alarms shall be reset during a power failure; the controls shall be programmed to ignore alarms that will occur upon loss of power. For example, a pump status alarm is not necessary, since it's obvious that the pump will fail upon loss of power.
 - E. Alarms associated with equipment that is disabled shall be inhibited.
 - F. Current status switches shall prove the operation of fans and pumps. Level 2 Alarm, Fans & pumps: Status point not matching it's on/off point for 3 seconds after a time delay of 15 seconds while the equipment is commanded on. The term "proven" (i.e., "prove ON"/"prove OFF") shall mean that the equipment's DI status point (current switch) matches the state set by the equipment's DO command point.
 - G. If an operating equipment has any fault condition, a Level 2 alarm shall be generated, and a response shall be triggered as defined in ASHRAE Guideline 36.
- 1.4 TRIM & RESPOND (T&R) SET-POINT RESET LOGIC
- A. Provide T&R logic per ASHRAE Guideline 36, Paragraph 5.1.14: "Trim & Respond Set-Point Reset Logic".
 - B. Trim & Respond logic shall reset the setpoint within the range minimum (SPmin) to maximum (SPmax) setpoint. When the associated device is OFF, the setpoint shall be SP0.
 - C. T&R logic resets a setpoint for pressure, temperature, or other variables. It reduces the setpoint at a fixed rate until a downstream zone is no longer satisfied and generates a request. When a sufficient number of requests are present, the setpoint is increased in response. The importance of each zone's requests can be adjusted to ensure that critical zones are always satisfied. When a sufficient number of requests no longer exist, the setpoint resumes decreasing at its fixed rate. A running total of the requests generated by each zone is kept identifying zones that are driving the reset logic.
- 1.5 EQUIPMENT STAGING AND ROTATION
- A. All parallel equipment shall be lead/lag or lead/standby rotated to maintain even wear.
 - B. Provide per ASHRAE Guideline 36, Paragraph 5.1.15: "Equipment Staging and Rotation".
 - C. Two runtime points shall be defined for each equipment:

1. Lifetime Runtime: The cumulative runtime of the equipment since equipment start-up. This point shall not be readily resettable by operators. Lifetime Runtime shall be stored to a software point on the control system server so the recorded value is not lost due to controller reset, loss of power, programming file update, etc.
 2. Staging Runtime: An operator resettable runtime point that stores cumulative runtime since the last operator reset. Staging Runtime provides a resettable runtime counter, which allows for reset of the staging runtime hours used for lead/lag or lead/standby rotation between maintenance intervals or equipment replacement while maintaining a separate log of the Lifetime Runtime.
- D. Lead/lag equipment: Unless otherwise noted, identical parallel staged equipment (e.g., pumps) shall be lead/lag alternated when more than one is off or more than one is on so that the equipment with the most operating hours as determined by Staging Runtime is made the last stage equipment and the one with the least number of hours is made the lead stage equipment.
- E. A faulted equipment is any equipment commanded to run that is either not running or unable to perform its required duty. For fans& pumps, upon identification of a fault condition:
1. The next commanded off equipment in the staging order, Equipment "B", shall be commanded on while alarming Equipment "A" remains commanded on.
 2. If Equipment "B" fails to prove status (i.e., it also goes into alarm), it shall remain commanded on and the preceding step shall be repeated until the quantity of equipment called for by the current stage has proven on, or there is no more available equipment.
 3. Set alarming equipment to the last positions in the lead/lag or lead/standby staging order sequenced reverse chronologically (i.e., the equipment that alarmed most recently is sent to last position).
 4. Staging order of non-alarming equipment shall follow the even wear logic. Equipment in alarm can only automatically move up on the staging order if another equipment goes into alarm.
 5. Equipment in alarm shall run if so called for by the lead/lag or lead/standby staging order and present stage.

PART 2 - SEQUENCES

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN

A. Design Setpoints.

| Type of Area | Winter DB | Summer DB |
|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Office | 70°F | None |
| Corridor | 70°F | None |
| Resident Room | 70°F | 75°F |
| Med/Exam Room | 70°F | None |
| Electrical Closets | 55°F | 78°F |
| Mechanical Spaces | 55°F | 95°F |
| Electrical Switchgear | 55°F | 95°F |
| Elevator Machine Room | 55°F | 100°F |
| Stairwells | 60°F | None |
| Storage Rooms | 60°F | 85°F |
| Vestibules | 60°F | 85°F |

- B. Heating systems shall be equipped with controls configured to automatically restart and temporarily operate the system as required to maintain zone temperatures above an adjustable heating setpoint down to 55°F.
- C. Cooling systems shall be equipped with controls configured to automatically restart and temporarily operate the mechanical cooling system as required to maintain zone temperatures below an adjustable cooling setpoint up to 85°F or to prevent high space humidity levels.
- D. Outside Air (OA) Conditions
 - 1. The controller shall monitor the OA temperature and humidity and calculate the OA enthalpy on a continual basis. These values shall be made available to the system at all times.
 - 2. Level 3 alarm shall be generated for Sensor Failure: Sensor reading indicates shorted or disconnected sensor. In the event of a sensor failure, an alternate OA conditions sensor shall be made available to the system without interruption in sensor readings.
 - 3. If an OA Temp Sensor cannot be read, a default value of 0°F shall be used.
 - 4. If an OA Humidity Sensor cannot be read, a default value of 50 % shall be used.

2.2 AUTOMATIC RESTART SEQUENCES / GENERATOR MODE

- A. Provide Sequenced starting of all equipment, whether or not specifically mentioned in each Sequence of Operation: At initial start-up; for automatic starting on emergency power after power blackout.
- B. The BAS contractor shall submit an automatic restart sequence of operation that prioritizes the loads to be restarted, in order of importance, when a changeover in power occurs, either from normal power to emergency power or from emergency power to normal power and when there is more than one (1) piece of mechanical equipment to start at the same time (e.g., at the beginning of a normally scheduled occupied cycle). The automatic restart sequence of operation shall also show the time delays between the startup of each piece of mechanical equipment.
- C. In addition, during emergency power mode, the BAS shall stagger HVAC loads to prevent the power demand from exceeding generator capacity.
 - 1. Heat Pumps shall be disabled in both heating and cooling mode Boilers and hot water distribution equipment shall provide heat for the facility.
 - 2. The heating coil ERU/DOAS heating coil shall modulate to maintain normal occupied discharge air temperature.
 - 3. The equipment is categorized as shown below, see Points List on the drawings for more specific information.
 - a. Equipment ON during generator mode.
 - 1) Steam Boilers
 - 2) Fuel Oil Pumps
 - 3) Boiler plant controller
 - 4) Hot water pumps
 - 5) Domestic hot water recirculation pumps
 - 6) Domestic Water Heat Exchanger Controller
 - 7) Condensate receivers
 - 8) DOAS Units
 - 9) ERU's
 - 10) BAS

b. Equipment OFF during generator mode.

1) VRF Heat Pumps

- D. Simultaneous starting of motors shall be prevented by a sequential start program in the DDC system. This program shall also provide sequential restart after power failure of motors that were running prior to power failure.
- E. Software time delay relays shall be provided in the DDC system to allow fan motors to cool down before restarting. Motors shall have both a minimum interval time (between consecutive starts) of 10 minutes and a minimum off time (between stop and start) of 3 minutes.
- F. Automatic restart of fans after a safety shutdown trip shall be software prohibited through the de-energization of the remote start/stop contact. Fan restart shall be manually initiated by the operator either locally or remotely through a computer workstation after resolving the cause for shutdown.
- G. Operator Workstation: Display the following data:
 - 1. Individual minimum interval time for each piece of mechanical equipment.
 - 2. Individual minimum off time for each piece of mechanical equipment.
 - 3. Individual motor horsepower or amps.
 - 4. Individual restart delay for each piece of mechanical equipment.

2.3 STEAM TO HOT WATER CONVERTER (TYPICAL FOR STEAM TO WATER AND STEAM TO GLYCOL CONVERTERS)

- A. Provide Temperature Setpoints per Guideline 36-2021 Paragraph 3.1.8. Hot Water Plant; also see equipment schedules.
- B. Provide temperature sensors in heating water supply and return piping near the inlet and outlet of the heat exchanger.
- C. Provide a flow switch to prove HWS flow. Whenever the pumps are not running, the steam control valves shall be fully closed.
- D. Enable converter system at 55°F (adj.) or colder OA temperature and the steam system is enabled. Enable pump, at proof of HWS flow, the 1/3 and 2/3 capacity steam control valves shall be modulated in sequence to maintain the HWS temperature.
 - 1. On a demand for heating, the small valve shall modulate open. Upon demand for steam beyond the capacity of the small valve for a period of five minutes, the small valve shall close, and the large valve shall assume the load. Upon a demand for steam beyond the capacity of the large valve for a period of five minutes, the small valve shall be re-enabled and both valves shall operate in unison.
 - 2. With both valves operating, as the total demand drops below the capacity of the large valve for five minutes, the small valve shall close. With the large valve operating, as the demand drops below the capacity of the small valve for five minutes, the large valve shall close, and the small valve shall assume the load.
 - 3. Valve timings and parameters shall be field adjustable.

- E. Guideline 36-2021 Paragraph 5.21.4. Hot Water Supply Temperature Reset, provide T&R logic. The HW supply set point is reset based on OA temperature. When the OA temperature is 0°F, the set point is 180°F and when the OA temperature is 60°F, the set point is 120°F.
- F. Secondary Hot Water Pumps – Smart Pumps: Secondary pumps shall run continuously whenever heating is requested from the system it is serving or when the system is enabled by the operator. BAS shall prove operation of the pump. The pump speed control is built into the self-sensing “smart” pumps specified in Section 232123. During operation, the pump automatically makes the necessary adjustment to the actual system characteristic. Parallel pumps shall be controlled per Paragraph 1.5 “Equipment Staging & Rotation”. Provide communication wiring between the pumps.
- G. Guideline 36 Paragraph 5.21.8. Minimum Flow Bypass Valve. Designer: Provide a bypass valve strategically provide 3-way valves in the system.
- H. Guideline 36 Paragraph 5.21.10. Alarms
 - 1. Low leaving HW temperature (more than 15°F below setpoint) for more than 15 minutes when heat has been enabled for longer than 15 minutes: Level 3.
 - 2. Provide pump fault alarms per Paragraph 1.3 “Alarms”.
 - 3. Flow switch, flow failure: Level 1 Alarm.
 - 4. If both of the pumps fail, the converter steam valves close, and a Level 1 alarm shall be generated.

2.4 STEAM TO WATER DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

- A. Integral controls furnished with the domestic water heater pre-piped skid shall maintain domestic hot water temperature at setpoint (140 deg F, adj.).
- B. BAS to monitor domestic hot water temperature at system supply, downstream of thermostatic control valve, and alarm if temperature rises 10 degrees above setpoint.
- C. DHW Temperature Monitoring: The digital mixing valve (specified in 221116) has a BACnet card. Monitor and Level 1 alarm if the HW supply temperature to the building exceeds setpoint for more than 20 minutes.
- D. Domestic Hot Water Recirculation Pumps: Pump control by Autohot system, specified in 221116.

2.5 DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM (DOAS)

- A. DOAS unit shall be enabled by the BAS.
- B. Factory DDC controller provided by DOAS unit manufacturer, coordinate with Section 237433. The factory controller includes the following:
 - 1. Supply & exhaust fan control
 - 2. Supply air temperature.
 - 3. Heating
 - 4. Cooling
 - 5. Dehumidification
 - 6. Energy Recovery Wheel

- C. Provide monitoring and alarm points as per the Points List.
- D. Duct smoke detectors shall be provided in supply & RA streams where noted on the drawings. Installation in the ductwork and connection to the control system shall be under Division 23. Detector furnished and wired to the fire alarm system by Division 26. Activated when products of combustion are detected in air stream. Smoke detector shall signal an alarm and shut down the unit when products of combustion are detected in airstream.
- E. Freeze Protection: Upon signal from the freeze-stat, or if SA temperature drops below 40°F for 5 minutes, shut down the unit.

2.6 LAUNDRY ROOM MAKEUP AIR UNIT

- 1. The OA MOD shall open, and the supply fan shall run (subject to OA damper end switch) whenever the unit is in any mode other than Unoccupied Mode.
- 2. Provide an electronic discharge air temperature sensor to control a modulating control valve for HW to maintain a "room neutral" discharge temperature setpoint (68°F, adj).
- 3. Supply fan speed modulates to maintain space pressure setpoint (.01" WC, adj.).
- 4. Provide monitoring and alarm points as follows:
 - a. Discharge air temperature setpoint
 - b. Discharge air temperature
 - c. OA damper status/command
 - d. OA damper status alarm
 - e. Supply fan status alarm
 - f. Supply fan speed/command
 - g. Space pressure setpoint
 - h. Space pressure

2.7 ENERGY RECOVERY VENTILATOR

- A. ERV with heating coil and no cooling:
 - 1. Occupied mode:
 - a. Normally closed OA and exhaust dampers shall be open.
 - b. Supply and Exhaust fans operate continuously during occupied hours, subject to damper end switches.
 - c. Provide fan fault alarms per Paragraph 1.3 "Alarms".
 - d. Hot water coil control valve shall modulate to maintain discharge air temperature at setpoint (68 deg F.).
 - 2. Unoccupied mode:
 - a. OA and EA dampers 100% closed.
 - b. Fans off.
 - 3. Economizer (Bypass/Free Cooling)
 - a. If the application requires that the unit be in economizer (bypass) mode, the controller shall enter the economizer state. During normal operation the bypass damper shall remain closed and the face damper open to allow full energy

recovery. During economizer operation the bypass damper will modulate open, and the face damper will modulate close to bypass up to 100% of the OA around the energy recovery core. The economizer state can be controlled by temperature or enthalpy and is utilized as the first stage of cooling.

- b. The economizer will be locked out when:
 - 1) The OA temperature is less than the economizer adjustable low lockout.
 - 2) The RA temperature is below the adjustable low lockout.
 - 3) Heating is enabled.
- c. Enthalpy: When the OA enthalpy is below the RA enthalpy the economizer will modulate the face and bypass dampers to control the unit SA temperature.

4. Safeties:

- a. The supply fan and all BAS Hardware control loops shall be subject to Proofs and Safeties. Safeties shall be direct-hard-wire interlocked to the fan starter circuit. BAS Hardware shall monitor all proofs and safeties and failure of any proof or activation of any safety shall result in all control loops being disabled and the AHU fan being commanded off until reset.
- b. Shall stop the supply fan; cause the system valves and dampers to return to their normal positions.
- c. BAS Hardware reset of all proofs and safeties shall be via a local binary push-button input to the BAS Hardware.
- d. Duct smoke detectors shall be provided in supply & RA stream and as indicated on the plans. Installation in the ductwork and connection to the control system shall be under Division 23. Detector furnished and wired to the fire alarm system by Division 26. Activated when products of combustion are detected in air stream. Smoke detector shall signal a Level 1 alarm, stops supply fan when products of combustion are detected in airstream. Restarting the supply fan shall require manual reset at the smoke detector.
- e. DA high temperature limit is 105°F (adj) and low temperature limit is 50°F (adj).
- f. Freeze Protection: Upon signal from the freeze-stat, or if SA temperature drops below 38°F for 15 minutes or below 34°F for 5 minutes, shut down fans, close OA/EA damper, open the coil valves to 100%, and energize the pump systems. Also send two (or more, as required to ensure that heating plant is active) heating hot-water plant requests, modulate the heating coil to maintain the higher of the SA temperature or the mixed air temperature at 80°F, and set a Level 2 alarm indicating the unit is shut down by freeze protection. If a freeze-protection shutdown is triggered by a low air temperature sensor reading, it shall remain in effect until it is reset by a software switch from the operator's workstation. (If a freeze-stat with a physical reset switch is used instead, there shall be no software reset switch.)
- g. A differential pressure sensor shall be provided across the filters. The system shall generate a Level 4 alarm the filter high limit threshold. The alarm set points shall be adjustable. The filter high limit differential pressure threshold shall be determined as the maximum recommended filter pressure drop at design airflow by the filter manufacturer.

2.8 TERMINAL UNITS – COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Each zone shall have separate occupied and unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints.
- B. The active setpoints shall be determined by the operating mode of the Zone Group. Zone scheduling groups, or Zone Groups, are sets of zones served by a single air handler that operate together for ease of scheduling and/or in order to ensure sufficient load to maintain stable operation in the upstream equipment.
 - 1. The set points shall be the occupied set points during occupied mode, warm-up mode, and cooldown mode.
 - 2. The set points shall be the unoccupied set points during unoccupied mode, setback mode, and setup mode.
- C. The software shall prevent the following:
 - 1. The heating setpoint from exceeding the cooling setpoint minus 1°F (i.e., the minimum difference between heating and cooling setpoints shall be 1°F).
 - 2. The unoccupied heating setpoint from exceeding the occupied heating setpoint.
 - 3. The unoccupied cooling setpoint from being less than the occupied cooling setpoint.
- D. The occupant shall be able to adjust the zone temperature heating and cooling setpoints at the zone sensor.
 - 1. The adjustment shall be capable of being limited in software.
 - a. As a default, the active occupied cooling setpoint shall be limited between 73°F and 80°F.
 - b. As a default, the active occupied heating setpoint shall be limited between 65°F and 72°F.
 - 2. The active heating and cooling setpoints shall be independently adjustable, respecting the limits and anti-overlap logic. If zone thermostat provides only a single set-point adjustment, then the adjustment shall move both the active heating and cooling setpoints upward or downward by the same amount.
 - 3. The adjustment shall only affect occupied setpoints in Occupied Mode, Warmup Mode, and Cooldown Mode and shall have no impact on setpoints in all other modes.
- E. Control Loops
 - 1. Two separate control loops, the Cooling Loop, and the Heating Loop, shall operate to maintain space temperature at setpoint.
 - a. The Heating Loop shall be enabled whenever the space temperature is below the current zone heating set-point temperature and disabled when space temperature is above the current zone heating setpoint temperature, and the loop output is zero for 30 seconds. The loop may remain active at all times if provisions are made to minimize integral windup.
 - b. The Cooling Loop shall be enabled whenever the space temperature is above the current zone cooling set-point temperature and disabled when space temperature is below the current zone cooling set-point temperature and the loop output is zero for 30 seconds. The loop may remain active at all times if provisions are made to minimize integral windup.

2. The Cooling Loop shall maintain the space temperature at the active cooling setpoint. The output of the loop shall be a software point ranging from 0% (no cooling) to 100% (full cooling).
3. The Heating Loop shall maintain the space temperature at the active heating setpoint. The output of the loop shall be a software point ranging from 0% (no heating) to 100% (full heating).
4. Loops shall use proportional + integral logic or other technology with similar performance. Proportional-only control is not acceptable, although the integral gain shall be small relative to the proportional gain. P and I gains shall be adjustable by the operator.
5. See other sections for how the outputs from these loops are used.

F. Zone Temperature Alarms

1. High-temperature alarm
 - a. If the zone is 3°F above cooling setpoint for 10 minutes, generate a Level 4 alarm.
 - b. If the zone is 5°F above cooling setpoint for 10 minutes, generate a Level 3 alarm.
2. Low-temperature alarm
 - a. If the zone is 3°F below the heating setpoint for 10 minutes, generate a Level 4 alarm.
 - b. If the zone is 5°F below the heating setpoint for 10 minutes, generate a Level 3 alarm.
3. Suppress zone temperature alarms as follows:
 - a. After zone setpoint is changed.
 - b. While Zone Group is in Warmup Mode or Cooldown Mode.

2.9 TERMINAL UNITS – SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

A. Terminal Heating Units, 2-position valve controlled – Fintube, convectors, radiant heating panels:

1. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor (for spaces with a heat pump in addition to fintube radiation, the heat pump shall provide first stage cooling and fintube shall provide second stage cooling, via integration with the heat pump manufacturer's controller.
2. Open/close valve to maintain temperature.
3. Heating Hot-Water Plant Requests. Send the heating hot-water plant that serves the coil a heating hot-water plant request as follows:
 - a. If the space does not heat to setpoint within 5 minutes, send 1 request.
 - b. If there are no requests for 5 minutes, send 0 requests.

B. Unit Heaters – Hydronic

1. Input Device: Electronic temperature sensor.
2. Upon a drop-in space temperature below the heating setpoint, the fan shall start, and the HW valve shall open. When the temperature rises above the setpoint, the fan shall stop, and the valve shall close. Minimum run time: 1 minute.
3. ASHRAE 90.1-2016: Heating for vestibules shall include automatic controls capable of and configured to shut off the heating system when OA temperatures are above 45°F.

4. Heating Hot-Water Plant Requests. Send the heating hot-water plant that serves the coil a heating hot-water plant request as follows:
 - a. If the space does not heat to setpoint within 5 minutes, send 1 request.
 - b. If there are no requests for 5 minutes, send 0 requests.

C. VRF:

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall integrate to the Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) main controller to allow for system scheduling, monitoring, alarming, and setpoint adjustment. The VRF system shall be controlled via its manufacturer-provided controls as required to maintain space temperature setpoints. This includes, but is not limited to indoor unit fan control, compressor staging and modulation, condenser fan operation, and heat/cool mode changeover.
2. The BAS shall send occupied and unoccupied cooling/ heating setpoints to the VRF system.
3. Provide BAS interface to the VRF controller specified in Section 238130. The BACnet interface allows for a one-to-one connection between an indoor unit and the BAS. The interface allows the BAS to monitor and control the indoor unit through BACnet. VRF system points shall be mapped to the BAS. As a minimum:
 - a. Space temperature.
 - b. Heat or cool mode
 - c. Supply temperature.
 - d. Zone scheduling.
 - e. Filter status
 - f. Drain pan overflow.
 - g. Fault
 - h. Secondary heat status
4. For rooms with both a heat pump and finned tube supplemental heat, the VRF unit space temp sensor shall stage the finned tube radiation on continued drop in space temperature below setpoint with heat pump energized in heating mode.

2.10 EXHAUST FANS

A. Fan Alarms

1. Maintenance interval alarm when fan has operated for more than 3,000 hours: Level 4. Reset interval counter when alarm is acknowledged.
2. Provide fan fault alarms per Paragraph 1.3 "Alarms".
3. Damper Failure: Commanded open, but the status is closed; Level 2.

B. Interlock: Provide factory controller, interfaced to BAS, interlocked with operation of connected appliances to provide automated draft control. The sequence applies to the following fans:

1. Dryer exhaust fans

2.11 GAS DETECTION

- A. All points shall be displayed thru the BAS.
- B. See Section 230900 for gas detectors.
- C. BAS shall have a program to schedule the sensor's replacement date (based on sensor service life for specific gas) and generate a Level 4 alarm one month prior to this date.
- D. BAS shall generate a Level 1 alarm if the limit reaches maximum setpoint.
- E. Gas Detection
 - 1. Mount sensors at 5 feet AFF.
 - 2. Normal Operation: If the monitored gas concentration level is below the field adjustable Low Alert setting, the detector will be in the Normal Operation mode. In this mode the front panel display will indicate the ambient gas concentration. The detector output control relays will be in the inactive state and only the power and active sensor front panel lamps will be illuminated.
 - 3. Locations:
 - a. Boiler Room: CO.
 - 4. Alert Operation:
 - a. If the monitored gas concentration level for a sensor reaches the Low Alert setting, the detector will flash the Low Alert indicator lamp and activate a delay timer. The duration of the delay is field adjustable from 0 to 7 minutes.
 - b. If the concentration level remains at or above the Low Alert setting for the duration of the delay period, the Low Alert relay contacts will close.
 - c. Once the monitored gas concentration level drops below the Low Alert setting, the panel will activate another delay timer. If the concentration level remains below the Low Alert setting for the duration of the delay period, the panel will revert to the Normal Operation state.
 - d. Alert Levels
 - 1) Level 2 Low Alert
 - a) CO: 35 PPM.
 - 2) Level 1 High Alert
 - a) CO High alert: 100 PPM.
 - 5. If the detector is in a Low Alert status and the monitored gas concentration reaches a factory set High Alert level, the detector will actuate its High Alert relay contacts and front panel lamp. If not already running, ERU, EF's and MUA in space shall be energized.
 - 6. Once the concentration is no longer at or above the High Alert setting, the detector will return to the Low Alert Operation mode. If the Low Alert relay is actuated, High Alert Operation will be immediate. If the detector is processing a Low Alert delay period, it will enter the High Alert Operation mode upon its completion.
 - 7. Alarm Mode Operation: If the monitored gas concentration remains at or above the factory set High Alert level longer than 15 minutes, a set of Alarm relay contacts will close, and an internal buzzer will sound. This set of contacts shall be used to alarm the

BAS. The buzzer will stay on, and the contacts will remain closed until the monitored gas concentration falls below the factory set High Alert level. The internal buzzer may be silenced by pressing a front panel mounted push-button switch.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS POINTS

- A. Glycol Feed System: BAS shall monitor feeder tank low level alarm point through BAS; Level 4 Alarm.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232113

HYDRONIC HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Hydronic Pumps" for pumps, motors, and accessories.
 - 3. Division 23 controls section for temperature-control valves and sensors.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes piping and specialties for hydronic HVAC piping.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping
 - 2. Hydronic specialties
 - 3. Chemical treatment.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: Braided Expansion Loops
 - 1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
 - 2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Qualify soldering processes, procedures, and solderers for copper and copper alloy pipe and tube in accordance with ASTM B 828.
- C. Qualify brazing processes for copper and copper alloy pipe and tube according to ANSI/AWS C3.4.
- D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.
- E. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Drawings show the general layout of piping and accessories but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect piping to equipment and to coordinate with other trades. Fabricate piping based on field measurements. Provide all necessary fittings and offsets.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of hydronic piping and suspension system components with other construction.
- C. Coordinate pipe sleeve installations and penetrations with other trades.
- D. Coordinate pipe fitting pressure classes with products specified in related Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Balancing Valves:
 - a. Griswold Controls.
 - b. ITT Bell & Gossett
 - c. Taco, Inc.
 - d. Tour & Anderson
 - e. IMI Flow Design
 - f. Griswold Controls
 - g. Watts Industries Inc.

- h. Caleffi
 - i. Nexus

- 2. Hydronic Pressure-Reducing Valves:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. ITT Bell & Gossett
 - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - f. Caleffi
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.

- 3. Safety Valves:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. ITT McDonnell & Miller.
 - e. Kunkle Valve Division.
 - f. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 - g. Caleffi
 - h. Watts Industries Inc.

- 4. Expansion Tanks, Air Separators, and Hydronic Specialties:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Woods
 - c. ITT Bell & Gossett
 - d. Taco, Inc.
 - e. Caleffi
 - f. Watts Industries Inc.
 - g. Wessels
 - h. Patterson
 - i. Thrush
 - j. Armstrong
 - k. Flamco

- 5. Air Vents and Vacuum Breakers:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Barnes & Jones, Inc.
 - c. ITT Hoffman
 - d. Caleffi
 - e. Spirotherm
 - f. Spirax Sarco, Inc.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. General: Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe and fitting materials.

2.3 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- C. Fitting Standard: Copper fittings shall conform to ASME B16.18, ASME B16.22 or ASME B16.26.
- D. Press Fitting: Viega Pro Press - Copper and copper alloy press fittings shall conform to material requirements of ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22 and performance criteria of IAPMO PS 117. Sealing elements for press fittings shall be EPDM. Sealing elements shall be factory installed or an alternative supplied by fitting manufacturer. Press ends shall have SC (Smart Connect) feature design (leakage path). Provide a smart connect feature to assure leakage of liquids and/or gases from inside the system past the sealing element of an un-pressed connection. The function of this feature shall be to provide the installer quick and easy identification of connections which have not been pressed prior to putting the system into operation.
- E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- F. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, 95-5 tin antimony.
- G. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Classification BAg-1 (silver).

2.4 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe, NPS 2 and Smaller: ASTM A-53, Type S (seamless) or Type F (furnace-butt welded), Grade B, Schedule 40 and 80, black steel, plain ends.
- B. Steel Pipe, NPS 2-1/2 and larger: ASTM A-53, Type E (electric-resistance welded), Grade B, Schedule 40 and 80, black steel, plain ends.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A-234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings: Material Group: 1.1. End Connections: Butt-welding. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Mechanically formed copper or steel tee connections are not acceptable.
- I. Welded Branch and Tap Connections: Forged steel weldolets, or branchlets and threadolets may be used for branch connections up to one pipe size smaller than the main. Forged steel half-couplings, ANSI B16.11 may be used for drain, vent and gage connections.

- J. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.
- K. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled; and design temperatures and pressures.

2.5 PEX PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following. PEX-a manufacturer system warranty shall cover tubing for a duration of 30 years from the date of installation.
 - 1. Uponor Wirsbo hePEX (Basis of Design)
 - 2. Rehau
 - 3. Watts Radiant
 - 4. Viega
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty for Hydronic Piping: Provide a 25 year warranty for PEX-a piping and ASTM F 1960 fittings. Performance Requirements: PEX-a piping and fittings shall meet the following pressure and temperature ratings:
 - 1. 200°F at 80 psi.
 - 2. 180°F at 100 psi.
 - 3. 73.4°F at 160 psi.
- C. Plastic Pipe and Fittings:
 - 1. PEX-a (Engle-method Crosslinked Polyethylene) Piping: Uponor Wirsbo hePEX, ASTM 876 with oxygen-diffusion barrier that meets DIN 4726.
 - 2. PEX-a Fittings, Elbows and Tees (1/2 inch through 3 inch nominal pipe size): ASTM F1960 cold-expansion fitting manufactured from the following material types:
 - 3. UNS No. C69300 Lead-free (LF) Brass.
 - 4. 20 percent glass-filled polysulfone as specified in ASTM D6394.
 - 5. Unreinforced polysulfone (group 01, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D6394.
 - 6. Polyphenylsulfone (group 03, class 1, grade 2) as specified in ASTM D6394
 - 7. Blend of polyphenylsulfone (55-80%) and unreinforced polysulfone (rem.) as specified in ASTM D6394.
 - 8. Reinforcing cold-expansion rings shall be manufactured from the same source as PEX-a piping manufacturer and marked "F1960".
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:
 - 1. Manufacturer: Provide fittings from the same manufacturer of the piping.
 - 2. Threaded Brass to PEX-a Transition: One-piece brass fitting with male or female threaded adapter and F1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX-a reinforcing cold-expansion ring. Typically used for PEX sizes 3 inch and below.
 - 3. Brass Sweat to PEX-a Transition: One-piece brass fitting with sweat adapter and F1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX-a reinforcing cold-expansion ring. Typically used for PEX sizes 3 inch and below.
 - 4. Dezincification-resistant (DZR) Brass to PEX-a Transition: Male NPT thread and PEX compression fitting. Editor: Typically used for PEX sizes 1 inch through 4 inch.

E. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

1. Manufacturer: Provide unions from the same manufacturer of the piping.
2. Threaded Brass to PEX-a Union: One-piece brass fitting with male or female threaded adapter and F1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX-a reinforcing cold-expansion ring. Typically used for PEX sizes 3 inch and below.
3. Brass Sweat to PEX-a Union: One-piece brass fitting with sweat adapter and F1960 cold-expansion end, with PEX-a reinforcing cold-expansion ring. Typically used for PEX sizes 3 inch and below.

2.6 HYDRONIC VALVES

A. Gate Valves

1. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, union bonnet, rising-stem, solid wedge: Hammond IB617, Nibco T-124/134, Stockham B105, Milwaukee 1152 or equal.
2. Flanged Ends 2-1/2" and Larger: Class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, bolted bonnet, rising stem, OS&Y, solid wedge: Hammond IR1140, Nibco F617-0, Stockham G623, Milwaukee F2885 or equal.
3. Solder Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, union bonnet, rising-stem, solid wedge: Hammond IB648, Nibco S134, Stockham B115, Milwaukee 1169 or equal.
4. Comply with the following standards: Cast Iron Valves: MSS SP – 70; Bronze Valves: MSS SP – 80.

B. Ball Valves

1. Threaded Ends 4" and Smaller: 150 psi WP and 600psi non-shock CWP, forged brass full-port or cast bronze two piece body, hard chrome plated forged brass ball, true adjustable packing nut ("O"-ring only type stem seal not acceptable), blow-out proof stem: Watts FBV-3C series/B6080 series, Hammond 8501, Nibco T-585-70, Milwaukee BA100, Apollo 70-Series, or approved equal.
2. Soldered Ends 3" and Smaller: 150 psi WP and 600psi non-shock CWP, full-port cast bronze or forged brass two piece body, hard chrome plated forged brass ball, true adjustable packing nut ("O"-ring only type stem seal not acceptable), blow-out proof stem: Watts FBVS-3C series/B6081 series, Hammond 8511, Nibco S-585-70, Milwaukee BA150, Apollo 70-Series, approved or equal.
3. Comply with MSS SP-110.

C. Butterfly Valves

1. Basis of Design: Center Line Series 200; Lug Type, cast iron, drilled and tapped lug body, ductile iron disc, 416SS shaft, bronze bushing, EPDM seat.
2. Valve bodies shall have extended necks to provide for 2-1/4" insulation as needed.
3. Comply with MSS SP-67.
4. Compatible with ANSI 125/150 flanges. Dead-end capacity to 200 psi.
5. Operators: 6" and smaller: handle with infinite adjustment; 8" and larger: gear w/balance-stop hand wheel. Valves located 7 feet or higher: provide gear/chain wheel.
6. Approved Manufacturers: Watts, Hammond, Nibco, Milwaukee, or approved equal.

D. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

E. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 150:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: Bronze.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

F. Iron Globe Valves, Class 125:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.

G. Iron Globe Valves, Class 250:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 500 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
- g. Operator: Handwheel or chainwheel.

H. Wafer Check valves: Provide wafer style, butterfly type, spring actuated check valves designed to be installed with gaskets between two standard Class 125 flanges. Construct iron body valves with pressure containing parts of valves with materials conforming to ANSI/ASTM A 126, Grade B. Support hanger pin by removable side plug; Class 125, cast iron body, stainless steel

trim, bronze disc, Buna-N seal.; Watts BF/DBF series, Metraflex 700 Series, Nibco W920-W, Stockham WG970, Hammond 9253, Milwaukee 1400, or approved or equal.

I. Swing check valves:

1. Construct pressure containing parts of Valves as follows: Bronze Valves: 125 or 150 psi: ANSI/ASTM B 62; Iron Body Valves: ANSI/ASTM A-126, Grade B. Comply with the following standards for design, workmanship, material and testing: Bronze Valves: MSS SP – 80; Cast Iron Valves: MSS SP – 71.
2. Construct valves of pressure casting free of any impregnating materials. Construct disc and hanger as one piece. Support hanger pins by removable side plug.
3. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, screwed cap, Teflon disc: Hammond IB904, Nibco T-413Y, Stockham B320T, Milwaukee 509 or approved equal.
4. Soldered Ends 2" and Smaller: Class 125, bronze body, screwed cap, Teflon disc: Hammond IB912, Nibco S-413-Y, Stockham B310T, Milwaukee 511 or approved equal.
5. Flanged Ends 2-1/2" and Larger: Class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, horizontal swing, cast-iron disc: Hammond IR1124, Nibco F918-B, Stockham G931, Milwaukee F2974 or approved equal.

J. Pressure-Reducing Valves: Diaphragm-operated, bronze or brass body with low inlet pressure check valve, inlet strainer removable without system shutdown, and non-corrosive valve seat and stem. Select valve size, capacity, and operating pressure to suit system. Valve shall be factory set at operating pressure and have capability for field adjustment.

K. ASME Safety Relief Valves: Bell & Gossett A-434D, or equal; diaphragm-operated, bronze or brass body with brass and rubber, wetted, internal working parts; shall suit system pressure and heat capacity and shall comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IV. The fluid shall not discharge into the spring chamber. The valve shall have a low blow-down differential. The valve seat and all moving parts exposed to the fluid shall be of non-ferrous material.

2.7 HOOKUPS AND BALANCING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.

1. Nexus (Basis of Design)
2. IMI Flow Design
3. HCI
4. Hays
5. Griswold
6. Victaulic
7. Taco
8. Bell & Gossett

B. Minimum Requirements Per Coil Installation:

1. Manual Flow Control Valve (MFCV)
2. Y-strainer.
3. Temperature Control Valve (TCV) – see 230900.
4. Union connections at coil and TCV.
5. Air vent on return side.
6. Blowdown/drain valve on supply side.

7. Pressure/temperature test plugs across coil and TCV.
 8. Full port, union end ball valves or butterfly valve for shutoff.
- C. Materials Of Construction (2½" and smaller, except as noted)
1. Brass or stainless steel metals.
 2. Teflon, EPDM or FKM seals.
- D. Installation
1. Installation shall conform to basic piping methods specifications.
 2. All components shall be isolated by shutoff valves.
 3. Flexible hoses shall be installed at coil connections as shown in the plans or at the option of the mechanical contractor.
 4. Union tailpieces may be used to reduce pipe sizes to match coil and TCV valve sizes.
 5. Pressure/Temperature test plugs shall be installed across coil.
 6. A Y-strainer or combination strainer and valve shall be installed on the supply side.
 7. Unions shall be used to isolate the coil, AFCV and TCV.
- E. Shutoff Valves (2½" and smaller) shall be forged brass ball valves, Nexus Model UX:
1. A one-piece body rated at 600 psi WP, 325° F.
 2. Interchangeable union ends with FKM O-ring seal (ground joint is not acceptable).
 3. Multiple ¼" tapped ports for test plugs, vent, and/or drain.
 4. Blowout-proof stem with dual KFM O-ring seals.
 5. Hard chrome plated stainless steel ball with Teflon seats.
- F. Shutoff Valves (2½" and larger) shall be lug pattern butterfly valves, Nexus Model BV:
1. A minimum of 225 psi WP, 250° F.
 2. 125# Class lug pattern cast or ductile iron body.
 3. EPDM cartridge seat, 416 stainless steel one-piece shaft, and 304 stainless steel disc.
 4. Top and bottom shaft bushings.
 5. Provide an infinite position chrome plated steel top plate for balancing purposes.
 6. Epoxy coated body.
- G. Manual Flow Control Valves (2½" and smaller) shall be a combination of metering/balance type of forged brass construction, Nexus Model XB:
1. A modified venturi equipped with (2) pressure/temperature ports and an ID tag.
 2. A combination shutoff and memory stop device-indicating degree of opening.
 3. A rating of 600 WOG, 325°F.
 4. An interchangeable union ends with FKM O-ring type seal.
 5. Blowout proof stem with dual FKM O-ring seals.
 6. Hard chrome plated stainless steel ball with Teflon seats.
- H. Manual Flow Control Valves (2½" and larger) shall be an instrument and metering station with integral Pitot Tube, multiple ports for instruments, accessories and drains, a butterfly throttling valve; Nexus Model NXFB:
1. The Pitot tube shall be twin tube design, of 316 stainless steel with blowout proof attachment to station body.
 2. Ports shall include ¾" port for thermometer well, ¼" ports for pressure gauge, air vent, transmitter or other accessories, and a ½" drain port.

3. The instrument station shall be 125# Class flanged (mates to 150# Class flanges) construction.
 4. The butterfly valve shall be lug pattern with a rating 225 PSIG, 250°F.
The butterfly valve shall have an infinite position operator with memory stop (6" and smaller), worm gear with memory stop (6" and larger).
- I. Temperature Control Valves, ref. Section 230900 & 230993.
- J. Combination Strainer/Ball Valves (2½" and smaller) used for supply side shutoff and strainer requirements shall be forged brass construction, Nexus Model UY:
1. A minimum rating of 600 WOG, 325° F.
 2. Interchangeable union end with FKM O-ring seal.
 3. Multiple ¼" tapped ports for test plugs, vent, or other accessories.
 4. Blowout proof stem with dual FKM O-ring seals.
 5. Hard chrome plated stainless steel ball with Teflon seats.
 6. A 20 mesh 304 stainless steel filter screen, accessible without affecting the valve piping.
 7. A port in the filter cap for a blowdown/drain valve.
- K. Combination Strainer/Butterfly Valves (2½" and larger) used for supply side shutoff and strainer requirements shall be cast or gray iron construction, Nexus Model SXFV:
1. A minimum rating of 175 psi WP, 250° F.
 2. 125# Class flanges (mates to 150# Class flanges) and lug pattern butterfly valve.
 3. Multiple ¼" tapped accessory ports across the filter screen.
 4. A flanged end cap with a ¾" port for a blowdown/drain valve standard thru 8" size.
 5. A ¾" port for thermometer well.
 6. A 304 stainless steel screen, with perforations 0.045" thru 3", and 0.125" thru 8".
- L. Y-Strainers (2½" and smaller) shall be forged brass body, Nexus Model UYX:
1. ¼" tapped accessory ports.
 2. A rating of 600 WOG, 325° F.
 3. A 20 mesh 304 stainless steel filter screen, removable without affecting the strainer piping.
 4. A port in the filter cap for a blowdown/drain valve.
- M. Y-Strainers (2½" and larger) shall be 125# Class flanged cast or ductile iron body, Nexus Model SXF:
1. Multiple ¼" tapped accessory ports across the filter screen.
 2. A flanged end cap with a ¾" port for a blowdown valve standard thru 8" size.
 3. A ¾" port for thermometer well.
 4. A 304 stainless steel screen, with perforations 0.045" thru 3", and 0.125" thru 8".
- N. Blowdown/Drain Valves shall be forged brass ball valve construction, Nexus Model BD:
1. A minimum rating of 600 WOG, 325° F.
 2. Blowout proof stem with dual FKM O-ring seals.
 3. Hard chrome plated brass ball with Teflon seats.
 4. A ¾" hose end and nylon / brass cap with retainer to protect threads.

- O. Unions (2" and smaller) shall be forged brass, Nexus Model UU:
 - 1. A minimum of 600 psi WP, 325° F.
 - 2. Multiple ¼" tapped ports for test plugs, vent and/or drain valves.
 - 3. FKM O-ring seal.

- P. Accessories to coil piping components shall conform to the following:
 - 1. Nexus PT Pressure/Temperature test plugs shall be rated for 1000 psi, 325° F, with brass body, Nordel check plugs, and sealed cap.
 - 2. Flexible hoses shall be designed for water, and fire retarding conform to ASTM codes E84-00, with stainless steel outer braid.
 - 3. Hoses (½" thru 1"), Nexus UFHF.
 - a. Shall have a Kevlar reinforced EPDM tube core, brass end fittings, and designed for a working pressure of 400 psi, 248°F.
 - b. Provide dual union or swivel end fittings.
 - 4. Hoses (1¼" thru 2"), Nexus UFHM:
 - a. Shall have Rayon reinforced EPDM tube core, brass end fittings, and designed for a working pressure of 300 psi, 248° F. The (2½") hose shall have stainless steel outer braid and carbon steel Sch. 40 fittings, and designed for a working pressure of 400 psi, 70° F.
 - b. Provide least one union or swivel end fitting
 - 5. Nexus MV Manual air vents shall be of brass construction and rated at 250 psi, 450° F.
 - 6. Shaft extensions (2" and smaller) for insulated pipe shall be at least 2¼" tall and constructed of brass
 - 7. Provide a temperature and pressure test/meter kit (Nexus #MKA) for use by MC during start-up, turn-over to Owner at project completion.

2.8 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES

- A. Manual Air Vent: Bronze body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig working pressure; 225 deg F operating temperature; manually operated with screwdriver or thumbscrew; with NPS 1/8 discharge connection and NPS 1/2 inlet connection.
- B. Automatic Air Vent: Spirotherm Spirotop, or equal; maintenance-free, designed to vent automatically with float principle; solid-brass body and nonferrous internal parts; 150-psig working pressure; 270°F maximum temperature; NPS 1/2 inlet connection; ½" male thread at vent point for pressure-testing or remote venting of unwanted gases.
- C. Expansion Tanks: Taco Model CA, or approved equal. Construction: Welded steel, designed, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME (BPV code sec VIII, div 1); supplied with National Board Form U-1, rated for working pressure of (125/150 psi), with flexible heavy duty butyl rubber bladder. Bladder shall be able to accept the full volume of the expansion tank and shall be removable and replaceable. Bladder shall be NSF 61 rated for potable water service and shall be manufactured with FDA approved materials.
- D. Expansion tank isolation valves: Provide valve lockouts: shall meet OSHA requirements to ensure ball valves are locked securely and effectively; for use on 1/4-turn valves to prevent

tampering; polypropylene material resists chemicals, solvents, cracking & rust; provide padlock locking mechanism. Seton, Brady, or approved equal.

E. Air and Dirt Separator

1. Provide air and dirt removal devices of the size and type as shown on the plans. Air and dirt separation devices shall be Taco 4900 Series or approved equal by Spirovent or Bell & Gossett.
2. Air and dirt removal device shall be constructed of steel designed and fabricated per Section VIII Division 1 of the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code with a maximum working pressure rating of 125 psi at 270°F.
3. Each air & dirt separator shall be equipped with a brass conical shaped air venting chamber designed to minimize system fluid from fouling the venting assembly. Air vent shall be furnished with a closeable port to prevent vent clogging during system fill. A brass flushing cock shall be located on the side of each separator to facilitate system fast-fill and the removal of floating impurities from the air / system fluid interface within the separator. A blowdown valve shall be provided by the unit manufacturer on the bottom of each air and dirt separator to allow cleaning as required.
4. The air & dirt separator shall employ the use of high surface area, stainless steel pall rings to achieve optimal separation of air & dirt from the system fluid. Screens made of 304-stainless steel are provided on the inlet and outlet of each separator to isolate the internals from the system. Units installed in open systems shall be provided with a removable top head for removal and cleaning of the internal coalescence media.
5. The unit shall be manufactured with a switchable on/off style Neodymium magnet assembly which does not require removal from vessel to facilitate maintenance and cleaning.
6. The supplier of the air & dirt separator shall furnish to the design engineer the results of independent air & dirt testing of a representative unit from the suppliers' standard product offering. Suppliers not providing these independent performance test results will not be accepted.

F. Y-Pattern Strainers: Strainers shall be Y-type with removable basket. Body shall have cast-in arrows to indicate direction of flow. Strainer screens shall have finished ends fitted to machined screen chamber surfaces to preclude bypass flow. Strainer element material shall be AISI Type 304 corrosion-resistant steel. Provide fine-mesh start-up strainers. Strainers in sizes 3-inch and smaller shall have screwed ends; Hammond 3010, or approved equal. Body material shall be cast bronze conforming to ASTM B584-C84400. Strainer bodies fitted with screwed screen retainers shall have straight threads and shall be gasketed with nonferrous metal. Strainer screens shall have perforations not to exceed 1/32". In sizes 4 and larger, strainers shall have flanged ends; Hammond 3030, or approved equal. Body material shall be cast iron conforming to ASTM A126 Class B. Strainer bodies fitted with bolted-on screen retainers shall have offset blowdown holes. Strainer screens shall have perforations not to exceed 1/16" (4" size); 1/8" (5" size and larger).

G. Differential Pressure Bypass Valve

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Caleffi North America; 519 Series or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Bell & Gossett (Xylem).
 - b. Taco Comfort Solutions.
2. Description: Used in systems with a fixed-speed circulating pump supplying several zones controlled by two-way zone valves. Ensures that the head pressure of the pump is proportional to the number of two-way valves being closed. It will bypass the differential

pressure created by the pump as the zone valves close, thus eliminating water hammer noise.

3. Body Material: Brass.
4. Valve Plug: Brass.
5. Valve Plug Gasket and O-ring Seals: Peroxide-cured EPDM.
6. Union Seals: Asbestos free nitrile, butadiene rubber.
7. Control Knob: ABS.
8. Spring: Stainless steel.
9. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig.
11. Connections: Union.
12. Temperature Range: 32 to 23°F.
13. Flow Rates:
 - a. Size: NPS 3/4 up to 9 GPM.
 - b. Size: NPS 1 up to 40 GPM.
 - c. Size: NPS 1-1/4 up to 45 GPM.

2.9 WATER TREATMENT FOR CLOSED LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Sentinel
2. Anderson Chemical Company.
3. Aqua-Chem, Inc.
4. Barclay Water Management, Inc.
5. General Electric Company; GE Water & Process Technologies.
6. H-O-H Water Technology, Inc.
7. Metro Group, Inc. (The); Metropolitan Refining Div.
8. Nalco; an Ecolab company.
9. Watcon, Inc.

B. Performance Requirements

1. Provide water treatment for closed-loop hydronic systems.
2. Water quality for hydronic systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of hydronic equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
3. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, hydronic system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Closed hydronic systems, including shall have the following water qualities:
 - a. pH: Maintain a value within 8.2 to 9.5.
 - b. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 500 ppm.
 - c. Total Hardness : <150 ppm as CaCO_3 .
 - d. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
 - e. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
 - f. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
 - g. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 - h. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
 - i. Microbiological Limits:

- 1) Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
- 2) Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
- 3) Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
- 4) Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
- 5) Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.

C. Bypass Chemical Feeder: Neptune Model DBF, J. L. Wingert Company, or approved equal.

1. The feeder shell shall be constructed of welded steel construction. The bypass feeder shall be rated at 200 psi and to 200°F. Capacity: 5 gallons minimum.
2. The tank shall have a wide mouth, 3-1/2" opening so that chemical addition can be performed without the need of a funnel. The bypass feeder shall have a continuous threaded closure requiring 2-1/2 turns to close and seal.
3. The cap shall be constructed of cast iron with an epoxy-coated underside to prevent corrosion and shall use a square ring gasket seal.
4. Provide a valve package with isolation valves, unions, drain tee, & miscellaneous installation nipples.

D. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

2.10 GLYCOL

A. DuPont Dowfrost HD or approved equal; the propylene glycol fluid to be used in such a system shall meet the following requirements: The fluid shall be industrially inhibited propylene glycol (phosphate-based). The fluid shall be easily analyzed for glycol concentration and inhibitor level, and easily re-inhibited using inhibitors readily available from the fluid manufacturer. The fluid shall pass ASTM D1384 (less than 0.5 mils penetration per year for all system metals). The fluid shall be dyed bright yellow to aid in leak detection

B. Glycol Feeder: Provide a completely, preassembled package Glycol Feed System, JL Wingert or Neptune G50 Series, or approved equal.

1. The pump shall be a bronze rotary gear pump with a capacity as scheduled. Pump shall be mounted below the tank.
2. The tank shall be constructed of polyethylene and be provided with a four-leg carbon steel stand with four bolt pads. The tank stand shall have upper and lower steel support banding to insure tank stability. Tank stand shall be painted with a two-coat system consisting of an oxide primer and alkyd enamel finish.
3. Piping – Pump suction piping shall be piped using PVC fittings and tubing.
4. A PVC ball valve and a cast iron "Y" strainer shall be provided in the pump suction piping.
5. Pump discharge manifold shall be piped using Schedule 40 brass fittings suitable for chilled or hot water service. A pressure switch, ball valve, brass check valve and brass relief valve shall be mounted on the pump discharge assembly manifold. Piping shall be supported at both the top and bottom of the tank frame. The brass relief valve shall be piped back to the tank using PVC tubing and fittings. A pressure gauge shall be mounted in the discharge piping.
6. Panel – A 115-volt control panel with NEMA 4X enclosure consisting of the following shall be provided:

- a. H-O-A selector switch with running light and magnetic starter for feed pump.
- b. In AUTO, the pump is operated by the skid-mounted differential (adjustable) pressure switch and interlocked to a low-level float switch mounted in the side of the tank.
- c. Pressure Switch: Cut-In Range as scheduled
- d. Level switch also energizes a low level remote dry contact.
- e. Panel shall also be equipped with an 8' power cord with grounded plug. Panel shall be mounted to the tank frame and positioned at eye level for ease of operation. Panels mounted on tank lids or mounted below the tank are unacceptable.
- f. All electrical components (pressure switch, level switch, and pump) shall be wired in conduit to control panel. Loose, exposed, unprotected wire is unacceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HYDRONIC PIPING APPLICATIONS – ABOVE GROUND

- A. Hot Water, NPS 3 and Smaller: Type L drawn-temper copper tubing with pressed or soldered joints; Schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded joints.
- B. Hot Water, NPS 4 and Larger: Schedule 40 steel pipe with welded or flanged joints.
- C. Makeup water piping: Type L copper.

3.2 HYDRONIC PIPING APPLICATIONS – BELOW GROUND

- A. Hydronic piping within slabs, use continuous PEX, no joints permitted below slab.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Hydronic Valve Applications: Shutoff Duty: Ball and butterfly valves. Throttling Duty: Globe, ball, and butterfly valves.
- B. Provide shutoff duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains, at supply connection to each piece of equipment, unless only one piece of equipment is connected in the branch line.
- C. Provide calibrated balancing valves in the return water line of terminal units, as indicated, and ass required to facilitate system balancing.
- D. Provide pressure-reducing valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required to regulate system pressure.

3.4 HYDRONIC PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results" for installation of:
 1. Basic piping requirements.
 2. Joint construction requirements.
 3. Hanger, support, and anchor devices.
 4. Firestopping

5. Sleeves and Escutcheons
 6. Dielectric fittings
 7. Valves
 8. Mechanical Identification
- B. Hydronic piping systems shall be provided to permit the system to be drained. Provide drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and hose-end fitting with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- C. Provide piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow. Pipe size at connections to equipment shall be distribution main size, not connection size. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up. Unless otherwise indicated, install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the takeoff coming out the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, install the takeoff coming out the top of the main pipe.
- D. Provide safety valves on hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Provide safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to floor. Comply with the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements. Check the settings and operation of each safety valve, including valves furnished by heater manufacturer. Record settings.
- E. Swing Connections for Expansion: Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with flexible hoses at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.
- F. Terminal Equipment Connections
1. Size for supply and return piping connections shall be same as for equipment connections.
 2. Provide control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
 3. Arrange piping with offsets to allow for expansion, as well as terminal unit removal.

3.5 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Provide manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting. For automatic air vents in ceiling spaces or other concealed locations, provide vent tubing to nearest drain.
- B. Air separator and expansion tank to be provided on the suction side of the system pumps. Expansion tank to be tied into system piping in close proximity to air separator and system fill line. Provide piping to compression tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- C. Expansion tanks: Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure tank is properly charged with air to suit system design requirements.
- D. Brazed Plate Heat Exchanger: Provide piped with counter flow direction. Provide 20-mesh strainers (confirm mesh rating, provide per manufacturers requirement's) with manual blow downs on heat exchanger inlet connections. Provide exchanger to allow removal and maintenance.

3.6 CONTROL VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Perform the following as directed by the BAS contractor:
 - 1. Provide modulating control valves with minimum of 10 pipe diameters straight pipe at inlet and 5 pipe diameters straight pipe at outlet.
 - 2. Installation of immersion wells and pressure tappings, along with associated shut-off cocks.
 - 3. Installation of flow switches.
 - 4. Setting of automatic control valves or other control devices.
- B. Valve submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, size, and piping configuration to ensure compatibility with pipe design.
- C. Slip-stem control valves shall be installed so that the stem position is not more than 60 degrees from the vertical up position. Ball type control valves shall be installed with the stem in the horizontal position.

3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the water characteristics described in Part 2.
- B. Provide bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system.
 - 1. Provide in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
 - 2. Provide feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
 - 3. Provide NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Initial flushing: Remove loose dirt, mill scale, metal chips, weld beads, rust, and like deleterious substances without damage to any system component. Provide temporary piping or hose to bypass coils, control valves, exchangers and other factory cleaned equipment unless acceptable means of protection are provided and subsequent inspection of hide-out areas takes place. Isolate or protect clean system components, including pumps and pressure vessels, and remove any component which may be damaged. Open all valves, drains, vents and strainers at all system levels. Remove plugs, caps, spool pieces, and components to facilitate early debris discharge from system. Sectionalize system to obtain debris carrying velocity of 6 feet per second, if possible. Connect dead-end supply and return headers as necessary. Flush bottoms of risers. Provide temporary strainers where necessary to protect down-stream equipment. Supply and remove flushing water and drainage by various type hose, temporary and permanent piping and Contractor's booster pumps. Flush until clean as approved by the commissioning agent.
- D. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water. Circulate systems at normal temperature to remove adherent organic soil, hydrocarbons, flux, pipe mill varnish, pipe joint compounds, iron oxide, and like deleterious substances not removed by flushing, without chemical or mechanical damage to any system component. Removal of tightly adherent mill scale is not required. Keep isolated equipment which is "clean" and where dead-end debris accumulation cannot occur. Sectionalize system if possible, to circulate at

velocities not less than 6 feet per second. Circulate each section for not less than four hours. Blow-down all strainers, or remove and clean as frequently as necessary. Drain and prepare for final flushing.

- E. Final Flushing: Return systems to conditions required by initial flushing after all cleaning solution has been displaced by clean make-up. Flush all dead ends and isolated clean equipment. Gently operate all valves to dislodge any debris in valve body by throttling velocity. Flush for not less than one hour.
- F. Close and fill system as soon as possible after final flushing to minimize corrosion. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
- G. Fill systems that glycol solutions to the concentrations indicated in the equipment schedules.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Provide blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
 - 5. Provide safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 - 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 - 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 - 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 - 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
 - 1. Open manual valves fully.
 - 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.

3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment to specified values.
7. Adjust & commission the pressure differential bypass valve.
8. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232123

HYDRONIC PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hydronic pumps and accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump.
 - 1. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated.
 - 2. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label pumps to comply with UL 778, "Motor-Operated Water Pumps," for construction requirements.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
- B. Store pumps in dry location.
- C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
- D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
- E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate electrical power with Division 26.
- B. Concrete Bases: Refer to Section 230500.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Taco
 - 2. Armstrong
 - 3. Bell & Gossett ITT
 - 4. PACO
 - 5. Grundfos
 - 6. Patterson
 - 7. Wilo

2.2 GENERAL PUMP REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pump Units: Factory assembled and tested.
- B. Motors: Include built-in, thermal-overload protection and grease-lubricated ball bearings. Select each motor to be non-overloading over full range of pump performance curve. Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Motors Indicated to be premium efficiency and shall meet or exceed all NEMA Standards Publication MG1 requirements and comply with NEMA premium efficiency levels Class B temperature rise, Class F insulation.
- D. Motors used with VFD's: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Provide AEGIS® Shaft Grounding Ring (SGR) on either DE or NDE of motor to divert current away from the bearings and protect bearings in attached equipment.
2. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.

2.3 WET ROTOR CIRCULATORS – 3-SPEED GRUNDFOS UPS

A. Description

1. Provide 3-speed pumps as per plans and pump schedule.
2. The pump shall be a standard product of a single pump manufacturer. The pump and motor shall be designed and built by the same manufacturer.
3. The wet rotor circulator pump shall be certified and listed by UL (1Z28 Water circulating pump) and/or CSA (Water Circulating Pump) for conformance to U.S. and Canadian Standards to operate at maximum 248°F and minimum 14°F water.
4. The pumps shall be capable of operating continuously at 248°F.

B. Pumps

1. The pumps shall be of the quiet wet rotor in-line design.
2. The head-capacity curve shall have a steady rise in head from maximum to minimum flow within the preferred operating region.
3. The pump housing shall be of the in-line type and have a stainless steel neck ring to minimize recirculation and increase pump efficiency.
4. The impellers shall be Composite material PES. The impellers shall be secured to the shaft with a neck ring and a nut.
5. Pumps shall have fiber optic indicator lights for operation indication and trouble shooting.
6. The pumps shall have radial tungsten carbide sleeve bearings for extended life. Metal impregnated carbon radial bearings shall not be acceptable.
7. Pump Construction.
 - a. Pump housing: Cast iron EN-GJL-200
 - b. Impellers: 304 Stainless Steel or Composite PES
 - c. Shaft: Ceramic
 - d. Bearings: Tungsten Carbide
 - e. Axial thrust bearing: Carbon MY106
 - f. Shaft journals/inner bearings: Silicon Carbide
 - g. O-rings: EPDM
 - h. Bearing plate: 304 Stainless Steel

C. Integrated Motors

1. Each motor shall be of the asynchronous squirrel cage design and tested with the pump as one unit by the same manufacturer.
2. The stator housing shall be made of pressure die cast aluminum.
3. The motor shall be cooled by the pumped fluid.
4. Motor shall be self-ventilating. The stator housing shall have nickel plated brass inspection screw.
5. Minimum insulation class for the motors shall be Class F.
6. The terminal box shall be made of black composite material. Enclosure class shall be IP44.

- 2.4 SINGLE PROPORTIONAL DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE PUMP WITH INTEGRATED VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE – GRUNDFOS CRE-DP
- A. Furnish and test a single variable speed pumping system to vary water delivery pressure based on proportional differential pressure through adaptive on-board control algorithms.
 - B. The pump system shall be a standard product of a single pump manufacturer. The entire pump system including pump, motor, differential pressure sensor(s), variable frequency drive and pump controller, shall be designed and built by the same manufacturer.
 - C. As an alternate to the specified pump the contractor may substitute a pumping system consisting of the pump, motor, differential pressure sensors, variable frequency drive, in-line flow measuring device, and pump controller with algorithm for proportional differential pressure adaptation to vary flow conditions based upon system demands.
 - D. The complete motor and drive shall be certified and listed by UL for conformance to U.S. and Canadian Standards.
 - E. Pumps
 - 1. The pumps shall be ANSI/NSF 61 approved for drinking water.
 - 2. The pumps shall have a factory installed differential pressure sensor.
 - 3. The pumps shall be of the in-line vertical multi-stage design.
 - 4. The head-capacity curve shall have a steady rise in head from maximum to minimum flow within the preferred operating region. The shut-off head shall be a minimum of 20% higher than the head at the best efficiency point.
 - F. Small Vertical In-Line Multi-Stage Pumps (12mm or 16mm shaft, Nominal flow from 3 to 125 gallons per minute) shall have the following features:
 - 1. The pump impellers shall be secured directly to the pump shaft by means of a splined shaft arrangement.
 - 2. The suction/discharge base shall have ANSI Class 250 flange or internal pipe thread (NPT) connections as determined by the pump station manufacturer.
 - 3. Pump Construction.
 - a. Suction/discharge base, pump head, motor stool: Cast iron (Class 30)
 - b. Impellers, diffuser chambers, outer sleeve: 304 Stainless Steel
 - c. Shaft: 316 or 431 Stainless Steel
 - d. Impeller wear rings: 304 Stainless Steel
 - e. Shaft journals and chamber bearings: Silicon Carbide
 - f. O-rings: EPDM
 - g. Shaft couplings shall be made of cast iron or sintered steel.
 - 4. The shaft seal shall be a balanced O-ring cartridge type with the following features:
 - a. Collar, Drivers, Spring: 316 Stainless Steel
 - b. Shaft Sleeve, Gland Plate: 316 Stainless Steel
 - c. Stationary Ring: Silicon Carbide (Graphite Imbedded)
 - d. Rotating Ring: Silicon Carbide (Graphite Imbedded)
 - e. O-rings: EPDM
 - 5. Shaft seal replacement shall be possible without removal of any pump components other than the coupling guard, shaft coupling and motor.

- G. Large In-line Vertical Multi-Stage Pumps (22mm shaft, Nominal flows from 130 to 500 gallons per minute) shall have the following features:
1. The pump impellers shall be secured directly to the smooth pump shaft by means of a split cone and nut design.
 2. The suction/discharge base shall have ANSI Class 150 or Class 300 flange connections in a slip ring (rotating flange) design as indicated in the drawings or pump schedule.
 3. Pump Construction.
 - a. Suction/discharge base, pump head: Ductile Iron (ASTM 65-45-12)
 - b. Shaft couplings, flange rings: Ductile Iron (ASTM 65-45-12)
 - c. Shaft: 431 Stainless Steel
 - d. Motor Stool: Cast Iron (ASTM Class 30)
 - e. Impellers, diffuser chambers, outer sleeve: 304 Stainless Steel
 - f. Impeller wear rings: 304 Stainless Steel
 - g. Intermediate Bearing Journals: Tungsten Carbide
 - h. Intermediate Chamber Bearings: Leadless Tin Bronze
 - i. Chamber Bushings: Graphite Filled PTFE
 - j. O-rings: EPDM
 4. The shaft seal shall be a single balanced metal bellows cartridge with the following construction:
 - a. Bellows: 904L Stainless Steel
 - b. Shaft Sleeve, Gland Plate, Drive Collar: 316 Stainless Steel
 - c. Stationary Ring: Carbon
 - d. Rotating Ring: Tungsten Carbide
 - e. O-rings: EPDM
 5. Shaft seal replacement shall be possible without removal of any pump components other than the coupling guard, motor couplings, motor, and seal cover.
- H. Integrated Variable Frequency Drive Motor
1. Each motor shall be of the Integrated Variable Frequency Drive design consisting of a motor and a Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) with a built-in pump system controller. The complete VFD/motor assembly shall be built and tested as one unit by the same manufacturer.
 2. The VFD/motor shall have an IP55 (TEFC) enclosure rating as a complete assembly. The motor shall have a standard NEMA C-Face, Class F insulation with a Class B temperature rise.
 3. The VFD shall be of the PWM (Pulse Width Modulation) design using up to date IGBT (Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor) technology.
 4. The VFD shall convert incoming fixed frequency three-phase AC power into a variable frequency and voltage for controlling the speed of the motor. The motor current shall closely approximate a sine wave. Motor voltage shall be varied with frequency to maintain desired motor magnetization current suitable for centrifugal pump control and to eliminate the need for motor de-rating.
 5. The VFD shall have, as a standard component, an RFI filter (Radio Frequency Interference) to minimize electrical noise disturbances between the power electronics and the power supply.
 6. The VFD shall have a minimum of two skip frequency bands which can be field adjustable.
 7. The VFD shall have internal solid-state overload protection designed to trip within the range of 125-150% of rated current.

8. The VFD/motor shall include protection against input transients, loss of AC line phase, over-voltage, under-voltage, VFD over-temperature, and motor over-temperature. The motor over-temperature protection shall consist of three series connected PTC thermistors, one for each motor phase.
 9. The VFD/motor shall provide full nameplate output capacity (horsepower and speed) within a balanced voltage range of 414 to 528 volts.
 10. Automatic De-Rate Function: The VFD/motor shall reduce speed during periods of overload allowing for reduced capacity pump operation without complete shut-down of the system. Detection of overload shall be based on continuous monitoring of current, voltage and temperature within the VFD/motor assembly.
 11. The VFD/motor shall have, as a minimum, the following input/output capabilities:
 - a. Speed Reference Signal: 0-10 VDC, 4-20mA
 - b. Digital remote on/off
 - c. Fault Signal Relay (NC or NO)
 - d. Fieldbus communication port (RS485)
 12. Motor drive end bearings shall be adequately sized so that the minimum L10 bearing life is 17,500 hours at the minimum allowable continuous flow rate for the pump at full rated speed.
- I. Pump System Controller And User Interface
1. The pump system controller (Proportional Differential-Integral) shall be a standard component of the integrated variable frequency drive motor developed and supported by the pump manufacturer.
 2. The pump system controller shall have an easy to use interface mounted on the VFD/motor enclosure. Pump system start/stop and set-point adjustment shall be possible through the use of two push buttons located on the drive enclosure.
 3. The VFD/motor shall be capable of receiving a remote analog set-point (4-20mA or 0-10 VDC) as well as a remote on/off (digital) signal.
 4. Pump status and alarm state shall be indicated via two LED lights located on the VFD/motor enclosure.
 5. Advanced programming and troubleshooting shall be possible via an infra-red hand held programmer or a field connected personal computer. Pump system programming (field adjustable) shall include as a minimum the following:
 - a. System Pressure set-point, psig
 - b. System start pressure, psig
 - c. System Stop pressure, psig
 - d. Minimum Pump Speed, %
 - e. Pressure Transducer supply/range
 - f. Maximum Pump Speed, %
 - g. System Time (Proportional Gain) Integral Action Time
 6. The infra-red programmer shall be capable of displaying the following status readings:
 - a. Pump Status (on, off, min., max.)
 - b. System Set-point, psig
 - c. Actual system pressure, psig
 - d. Remote set-point, %
 - e. Pump speed, rpm
 - f. VFD/Motor input power, kW
 - g. VFD/Motor total cumulative kWh
 - h. VFD/Motor total operating hours

7. The infra-red programmer shall also be capable of displaying the following alarms, with the last five alarms stored in memory:
 - a. Loss of sensor signal
 - b. Loss of external set-point signal
 - c. Under-voltage & Over-voltage
 - d. Motor overload (blocked pump)
 - e. Motor over-temperature
 - f. Drive over-temperature
 - g. Drive Over-current

J. Sequence Of Operation

1. A pressure transducer shall be factory installed on the pump head. Pressure transducers shall be made of 316 stainless steel. Transducer accuracy shall be +/- 1.0% full scale with hysteresis and repeatability of no greater than 0.1% full scale. The output signal shall be 4-20 mA with a supply voltage range of 9-32 VDC. The system controller shall receive an analog signal (4-20Ma) from the factory installed differential pressure transducer indicating the actual inlet and outlet pressures. When a flow demand is detected (system pressure drops below the start pressure) the VFD/motor shall start and increase speed until the actual system pressure matches the system set-point. As flow demand changes (increases or decreases), the speed of the pump shall be adjusted to maintain the calculated system set-point pressure and flow.
2. If a no flow shut-down is required (periods of zero demand) a bladder type diaphragm tank shall be installed. The tank shall be downstream of the pump. When zero flow is detected by the system controller, the pump shall be switched off. When the system pressure drops to the start pressure, (flow begins after shut-down), the pump shall be switched on, increasing speed to maintain the system set-point pressure. Zero flow conditions shall be detected by the system controller/factory installed pressure transmitter without the use of additional flow switches or motor current sensing devices.

2.5 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Pump Suction Diffuser: Taco RSP; full length straightening vane assembly ensures uniform flow to the suction inlet of the pump; oversized body cylinder ensures minimal pressure drop; metering port allows for the monitoring of system conditions; disposable fine mesh start-up strainer promotes cleaner, more trouble-free system; removable cover plate and reusable "O" ring allows for easy access and maintenance of permanent strainer; blow down port allows for routine maintenance and removal of sediment and debris; ductile iron body; provide the optional magnetic insert to trap small metallic particles; Class 125 flanges or grooved connections.
- B. Pumps with ECM/VFD shall have a check valve and shutoff valve instead of the multi-purpose valve.
- C. Base mounted pumps and inline pumps 5HP and larger: Provide the Flex-Hose Co.'s Flexzorber NND molded double arch spherical connector/expansion joints at the pump suction and discharge. The molded spherical body shall be manufactured using multiple plies of nylon tire cord fabric bonded within the neoprene elastomer (to avoid exposure to atmosphere or media) and must be reinforced with a spring steel wire. Floating/rotatable flanges shall be zinc-coated plate steel and must have drilled bolt holes in accordance with ANSI 150# standard. Exterior galvanized ductile iron reinforcing ring between sphere arches to maintain double profile. The rated design pressure of the molded body must have a minimum 3:1 safety factor (burst to operating pressure) based on a maximum operating temperature of 220°F and must also be capable of 26" Hg vacuum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations for compliance with requirements for installation. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Pumps and equipment shall be provided per manufacturer's recommendations and according to the standards of the Hydraulics Institute.
- B. Provide pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance, including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Pipe connections to pumps shall be made in such a manner so as not to exert any stress on pump housings. If necessary to meet this requirement, provide additional pipe supports and flex connectors.
- D. Reduction from line size to pump connection size shall be made with eccentric reducers attached to the pump with tops flat to allow continuity of flow and to avoid air pockets.
- E. Provide connector/expansion joints at the pump suction and discharge as indicated.
- F. Pumps shall **NOT** be run dry to check rotation.
- G. In-line Pumps: Provide in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
- H. Base Mounted Pumps: Set base-mounted pumps on concrete base. The pump shall be secured to a solid foundation by means of bolts through the holes in the flange or baseplate.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Provide piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Provide valves that are the same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Provide suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles. Provide fittings and specialties as detailed on the plans.
- E. Provide a single gage with three-input selector valve; locate at pump suction and discharge tappings, also strainer.
- F. Connect wiring and provide grounding in accordance with Division 26. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

3.4 COMMISSIONING

- A. Verify that pumps are installed and connected according to the Contract Documents. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions and the Contract Documents. Complete installation and startup-checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide start-up of the pumping systems. This start-up shall include verification of proper installation, system initiation, adjustment, and fine tuning. Start-up shall not be considered complete until the sequence of operation, including all alarms, has been sufficiently demonstrated to the Owner or Owner's designated representative. This jobsite visit shall occur only after all hook-ups, tie-ins, and terminations have been completed and signed-off on the manufacturer's start-up request form.
- C. Check piping connections for tightness.
- D. Clean strainers on suction piping.
- E. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - 1. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - 2. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - 3. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
- F. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, prepare pump for operation. Start motor. Open discharge valve slowly.
- G. Refer to Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" for detailed requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing hydronic systems.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps as specified below:
 - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining pumps.
 - 2. Review data in maintenance manuals.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232213

STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for LP and HP steam and condensate piping, valves, fittings, and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. HP Systems: High-pressure piping operating at more than 15 psig as required by ASME B31.1.
- B. LP Systems: Low-pressure piping operating at 15 psig or less as required by ASME B31.9.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Pressure-reducing and safety valve.
 - 2. Steam trap.
 - 3. Air vent and vacuum breaker.
 - 4. Flash tank.
 - 5. Meter.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail, 1/4 inch equals 1 foot scale, flash tank assemblies and fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, pipe, multiple pipes, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops and their attachment to the building structure. Detail locations of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For valves, safety valves, pressure-reducing valves, steam traps, air vents, vacuum breakers, and meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping" for materials, products, and installation. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label.
- D. Boiler External Piping, as defined in the ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section I, is required to be constructed and inspected in conformance with the ASME Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, plain ends, Type, Grade, and Schedule as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A106 / A106M - 10 Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service
- C. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125, 150, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- D. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3; Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- E. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles.
- F. Cast-Iron Threaded Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in Part 3 piping applications articles; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced.
- G. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- H. Wrought-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:

1. Material Group: 1.1.
2. End Connections: Butt welding.
3. Facings: Raised face.

I. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel of same Type, Grade, and Schedule as pipe in which installed.

J. Stainless-Steel Bellows, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforced, protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150-psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.

1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.

B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

E. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

F. Welding Materials: Comply with Section II, Part C, of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and for chemical analysis of pipe being welded.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.

C. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries, International Inc.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Factory-fabricated union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.

D. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Water Technologies, Inc..
2. Factory-fabricated companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
3. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

2.4 STEAM VALVES

A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of each valve.

B. Gate Valves:

1. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller, Low-Pressure Steam and condensate: Class 150, bronze body, union bonnet, rising stem, solid wedge: Hammond IB629, Nibco T-134, Stockham B120, Milwaukee 1151 or approved equal.
2. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller, High-Pressure Steam and condensate: Class 300, bronze body, union bonnet, rising stem, solid stainless wedge and stainless seat: Hammond IB654, Nibco T-174SS, Stockham B145, Milwaukee 1184 or approved equal.

3. Flanged Ends 2-1/2" and Larger, Low-Pressure Steam and condensate: Class 125, iron body, bronze mounted, bolted bonnet, rising stem, OS&Y, solid wedge: Hammond IR1140, Nibco F617-0, Stockham G623, Milwaukee F2885 or approved equal.
4. Comply with the following standards:
 - a. Cast Iron Valves: MSS SP – 70
 - b. Bronze Valves: MSS SP - 80

C. Swing check valves:

1. Construct pressure containing parts of Valves as follows:
 - a. Bronze Valves: 125 or 150 psi: ANSI/ASTM B 62
 - b. Iron Body Valves: ANSI/ASTM A-126, Grade B
2. Comply with the following standards for design, workmanship, material and testing:
 - a. Bronze Valves: MSS SP - 80
 - b. Cast Iron Valves: MSS SP – 71
3. Construct valves of pressure casting free of any impregnating materials. Construct disc and hanger as one piece. Support hanger pins by removable side plug.
4. Threaded Ends 2" and Smaller, Low Pressure Steam: Class 150, bronze body, screwed cap, Teflon disc: Hammond IB946, Stockham B316, Milwaukee 510T or approved equal.

D. Stop-Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.
 - b. Jenkins Valves; a Crane Company.
 - c. Lunkenheimer Valves.
 - d. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
2. Body and Bonnet: Malleable iron.
3. End Connections: Flanged.
4. Disc: Cylindrical with removable liner and machined seat.
5. Stem: Brass alloy.
6. Operator: Outside screw and yoke with cast-iron handwheel.
7. Packing: Polytetrafluoroethylene-impregnated packing with two-piece packing gland assembly.
8. Pressure Class: 250.

2.5 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.

4. Tapped blowoff plug.
5. CWP Rating: 250-psig working steam pressure.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B cast iron, with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for strainers NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for strainers NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 20 mesh strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 250-psig working steam pressure.

2.6 FLASH TANKS

- A. Shop or factory fabricated of welded steel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, for 150-psig rating; and bearing ASME label. Fabricate with tappings for low-pressure steam and condensate outlets, high-pressure condensate inlet, air vent, safety valve, and legs.

2.7 SAFETY VALVES

A. Bronze Safety Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Kunkle Valve; a Tyco International Ltd. Company.
 - c. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy.
3. End Connections: Threaded inlet and outlet.
4. Spring: Fully enclosed steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
5. Pressure Class: 250.
6. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and outlet with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
7. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Cast-Iron Safety Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Kunkle Valve; a Tyco International Ltd. Company.
 - c. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
 - d. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Disc Material: Forged copper alloy with bronze nozzle.
3. End Connections: Raised-face flanged inlet and threaded or flanged outlet connections.

4. Spring: Fully enclosed cadmium-plated steel spring with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff, factory set and sealed.
5. Pressure Class: 250.
6. Drip-Pan Elbow: Cast iron and having threaded inlet, outlet, and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
7. Exhaust Head: Cast iron and having threaded inlet and drain, with threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Size and Capacity: As required for equipment according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2.8 PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong International, Inc.
 2. Hoffman Specialty; Division of ITT Industries.
 3. Leslie Controls, Inc.
 4. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
 5. Spirax Sarco, Inc.
- B. Size, Capacity, and Pressure Rating: Factory set for inlet and outlet pressures indicated.
- C. Description: Pilot-actuated, diaphragm type, with adjustable pressure range and positive shutoff.
- D. Body: Cast iron.
- E. End Connections: Threaded connections for valves NPS 2 and smaller and flanged connections for valves NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- F. Trim: Hardened stainless steel.
- G. Head and Seat: Replaceable, main head stem guide fitted with flushing and pressure-arresting device cover over pilot diaphragm.
- H. Gaskets: Non-asbestos materials.

2.9 STEAM TRAPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong International, Inc.
 2. Barnes & Jones, Inc.
 3. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
 4. Hoffman Specialty; Division of ITT Industries.
 5. Spirax Sarco, Inc.

B. Thermostatic Traps:

1. Body: Bronze angle-pattern body with integral union tailpiece and screw-in cap.
2. Trap Type: Balanced-pressure.
3. Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
4. Head and Seat: Replaceable, hardened stainless steel.
5. Pressure Class: 125.

C. Thermodynamic Traps:

1. Body: Stainless steel with screw-in cap.
2. End Connections: Threaded.
3. Disc and Seat: Stainless steel.
4. Maximum Operating Pressure: 600 psig.

D. Float and Thermostatic Traps:

1. Body and Bolted Cap: ASTM A 126, cast iron.
2. End Connections: Threaded.
3. Float Mechanism: Replaceable, stainless steel.
4. Head and Seat: Hardened stainless steel.
5. Trap Type: Balanced pressure.
6. Thermostatic Bellows: Stainless steel or monel.
7. Thermostatic air vent capable of withstanding 45 deg F of superheat and resisting water hammer without sustaining damage.
8. Vacuum Breaker: Thermostatic with phosphor bronze bellows, and stainless steel cage, valve, and seat.
9. Maximum Operating Pressure: 125 psig.

E. Inverted Bucket Traps:

1. Body and Cap: Cast iron.
2. End Connections: Threaded.
3. Head and Seat: Stainless steel.
4. Valve Retainer, Lever, and Guide Pin Assembly: Stainless steel.
5. Bucket: Brass or stainless steel.
6. Strainer: Integral stainless-steel inlet strainer within the trap body.
7. Air Vent: Stainless-steel thermostatic vent.
8. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LP STEAM PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Steam Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40 steel pipe, with threaded joints using Class 125 cast-iron fittings.
- B. Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12: Schedule 40 steel pipe, with welded joints using Schedule 40 wrought-steel welding fittings and Class 150 wrought-steel flanges.
- C. Condensate Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 80 steel pipe, with threaded joints using Class 125 malleable-iron fittings.

- D. Condensate Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12: Schedule 80 steel pipe, with welded joints using Schedule 80 wrought-steel welding fittings and Class 150 wrought-steel flanges.

3.2 HP STEAM PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Steam Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 40 steel pipe, with threaded joints using Class 300 malleable-iron fittings.
- B. Steam Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12: Schedule 40 steel pipe, with welded joints using Schedule 40 wrought-steel welding fittings and Class 150 wrought-steel flanges.
- C. Condensate Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Schedule 80 steel pipe, with threaded joints using Class 300 malleable-iron fittings.
- D. Condensate Piping, NPS 2-1/2 through NPS 12: Schedule 80 steel pipe, with welded joints using Schedule 80 wrought-steel welding fittings and Class 150 wrought-steel flanges.

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff duty valves at branch connections to steam supply mains, at steam supply connections to equipment, and at the outlet of steam traps.
- B. Install safety valves on pressure-reducing stations and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install safety-valve discharge piping, without valves, to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results" for installation of:
 - 1. Basic piping requirements.
 - 2. Joint construction requirements.
 - 3. Hanger, support, and anchor devices.
 - 4. Firestopping
 - 5. Sleeves and Escutcheons
 - 6. Dielectric fittings
 - 7. Valves
 - 8. Mechanical Identification
- B. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 full port-ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- C. Install steam supply & condensate piping at a minimum uniform grade of 1/2" per 10 feet downward in direction of flow.
- D. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side down.
- E. Install branch connections to mains using tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to top of main pipe.

- F. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install strainers on supply side of control valves, pressure-reducing valves, traps, and elsewhere as indicated. Install NPS 3/4 nipple and full port ball valve in blowdown connection of strainers NPS 2 and larger. Match size of strainer blowoff connection for strainers smaller than NPS 2.
- I. Install drip legs at low points and natural drainage points such as ends of mains, bottoms of risers, and ahead of pressure regulators, and control valves.
 - 1. On straight runs with no natural drainage points, install drip legs at intervals not exceeding 300 feet.
 - 2. Size drip legs same size as main. In steam mains NPS 6 and larger, drip leg size can be reduced, but to no less than NPS 4.

3.5 STEAM-TRAP INSTALLATION

- A. Install steam traps in accessible locations as close as possible to connected equipment.
- B. Install full-port ball valve, strainer, and union upstream from trap; install union, check valve, and full-port ball valve downstream from trap unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare steam and condensate piping according to ASME B31.1, "Power Piping" and ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," and as follows:
 - 1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 - 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 - 3. Flush system with clean water. Clean strainers.
 - 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
- B. Perform the following tests on steam and condensate piping:
 - 1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 - 2. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength.
 - 3. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.

- C. Prepare written report of testing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232300
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 2. Division 23 Section – "Variable-Refrigerant-Flow HVAC Systems"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
 - 3. Refrigerants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittals: Refrigerant piping layout and design shall be by unit manufacturer. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
 - 1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
 - 2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
 - 3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 4. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping is within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K or L, ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Working Pressure Ratings and Temperatures shall be compatible with the system and refrigerant. Provide system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- B. Service Valves:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 - 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
- C. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
- D. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

- E. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
 - 1. Body: Forged brass.
 - 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 - 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
 - 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.

- F. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
 - 1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
 - 2. Filter Media: 10 microns, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 - 3. Desiccant Media.
 - 4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 - 5. End Connections: Socket.
 - 6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.

2.3 VRF SYSTEM REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Refrigerant Tubing Kits:
 - 1. Furnished by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 - 2. Factory-rolled and -bundled, soft-copper tubing with tubing termination fittings at each end.
 - 3. Standard one-piece length for connecting to indoor units.
 - 4. Pre-insulated with flexible elastomeric insulation of thickness to comply with governing energy code and sufficient to eliminate condensation.
 - 5. Factory Charge: Dehydrated nitrogen.

- B. Divided-Flow Specialty Fittings: Where required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for proper system operation, VRF HVAC system manufacturer shall furnish specialty fittings with identification and instructions for proper installation by Installer.

- C. Refrigerant Isolation Ball Valves:
 - 1. Description: Uni-body full port design, rated for maximum system temperature and pressure, and factory tested under pressure to ensure tight shutoff. Designed for valve operation without removing seal cap.
 - 2. Seals: Compatible with system refrigerant and oil. Seal service life of at least 20 years.
 - 3. Valve Connections: Flare or sweat depending on size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Provide refrigerant specialties in accordance with HVAC system manufacturers requirements.

- B. Provide thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
- C. Provide moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Provide piping layout, fittings, valves, and specialties in accordance with the outdoor unit manufacturer's instruction.
- B. Provide refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Provide piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
 - 1. In rooms without ceiling, arrange piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units to provide a neat and finished appearance. Provide piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
 - 2. In rooms with ceilings, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units above ceilings. Provide piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal. Diagonal runs are allowed to reduce refrigerant pipe length.
- D. Provide piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- E. Provide fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Provide piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- G. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Provide valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection.
- H. Metal Hangers and Supports: Refer to 230500 "Common Work Results".
- I. Provide piping free of sags and bends. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, slope refrigerant piping and tubing as follows:
 - 1. Provide horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Provide horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Provide traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- J. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- K. Provide piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

- L. Refrigerant Tubing Kits: Unroll and straighten tubing to suit installation. Deviations in straightness of exposed tubing shall be unnoticeable to observer. Prepare tubing ends and make mating connections to provide a pressure tight and leak-free installation.

3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Before installation, clean piping, tubing, and fittings to cleanliness level required by system manufacturer.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- E. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube." When brazing, remove or protect components that could be damaged by heat.

3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Provide the following pipe attachments: Adjustable steel clevis hangers. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Provide hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS less than or equal to 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod, 1/4 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.
 - 6. NPS 2: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod, 3/8 inch.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.

- a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
1. Provide core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of controllers to the system design temperature.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233113

DUCTWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 8 for Access Doors
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 3. Division 23 Section "Air Terminals"
 - 4. Division 23 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 - 5. Division 23 Control Section
 - 6. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing".

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes ductwork and accessories.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Drawings show the general layout of ductwork and accessories but do not show all required fittings and offsets that may be necessary to connect ducts and to coordinate with other trades. Fabricate ductwork based on field measurements. Provide necessary fittings and offsets. Coordinate with other trades for space available and relative location of HVAC equipment and accessories on ceiling grid. Duct sizes on the drawings are inside dimensions, which may be altered by Contractor to other dimensions with the same air handling characteristics where necessary to avoid interferences and clearance difficulties.
- B. The contractor must comply with the enclosed specification in its entirety. If on inspections, the engineer finds changes have been made without prior written approval, the contractor will make the applicable changes to comply with this specification, at the contractor's expense.
- C. At the discretion of the engineer, sheet metal gauges, and reinforcing may be randomly checked to verify duct construction is in compliance.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.

- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1. Exception: Sheet metal surfaces and fasteners.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

- 1. Liners and adhesives.
- 2. Sealants and gaskets.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
- 3. Fittings.
- 4. Reinforcement and spacing.
- 5. Seam and joint construction.
- 6. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
- 7. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
- 8. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

- 1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
- 2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
- 3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
- 4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

- D. Ductwork Specialties Product Data; provide for the following:

- 1. Sealant
- 2. Duct-mounted access doors and panels.
- 3. Flexible ducts.
- 4. Backdraft dampers.
- 5. Manual-volume dampers: Damper manufacturer's printed application and performance data including pressure, velocity and temperature limitations shall be submitted for approval.
- 6. Life Safety dampers: Provide complete submittal information (including installation instructions) and the manufacturer's certification of compliance with these specifications for approval prior to bidding. Contractor shall include damper manufacturer's Installation Instructions as part of the submittal. These instructions shall describe the applicable requirements for damper sleeve thickness, retaining angles, and methods of attachment, duct-to-sleeve connections, preparation of wall or floor openings, and all other requirements to provide an installation equivalent to that tested by the damper manufacturer during the UL Standard 555 qualification procedures. Contractor shall detail any proposed installations that deviate from these manufacturer's instructions and explain the needed deviations.
- 7. Louvers: Provide data describing design characteristics, maximum recommended air velocity, design free area, AMCA seals, materials and finishes. Provide independent agency reports showing compliance with specified performance criteria. For units with factory-applied color finishes, provide color chart.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling – examples: lighting fixtures, sprinklers, etc.
 7. Areas of building where coordination drawings are required:
 - a. All Mechanical Rooms
 - b. All ductwork 24" wide and larger.
 - c. Congested areas
- B. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Record Drawings: Indicate actual routing, fitting details, reinforcement, support, and installed accessories and devices.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.8 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
1. 90A: Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems
 2. 96: Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations
- D. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA):
1. 3rd Edition: 2005 HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible
 2. 1st Edition: 2012 ANSI/SMACNA 016-2012 HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver sealant and fire stopping materials to site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration period for use, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- B. Deliver, store and handle materials according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. All ductwork, equipment, and fittings delivered and stored on the job site must be capped to prevent the entry of moisture, construction dust or other debris.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 or G90 as indicated. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A-1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A-480/A-480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A-36/A-36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA.

- D. Cross Breaking or Cross Beading: Cross break or cross bead duct sides 19 inches and larger and 0.0359 inch thick or less, with more than 10 sq. ft. of un-braced panel area, unless ducts are lined. All large ducts must be braced as required to prevent drumming.
- E. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA.
 - 1. Fig. 2-3 Rectangular Elbows: Type RE2 square throat with vanes, Type RE1 radius (1.5W minimum), or Type RE5 dual radius. Square throat is not allowed.
 - 2. Vane support in elbows: Fig 2-4. Turning vanes shall be double wall turning vanes fabricated from the same material as the duct. Mounting rails shall have friction insert tabs that align the vanes automatically. Tab spacing shall be as specified in Figure 2-3 of SMACNA. Rail systems with non-standard tab spacing shall not be accepted. Due to tensile loading, vanes shall be capable of supporting 250 pounds when secured according to the manufacturer's instructions.
 - 3. Fig. 2-5 Rectangular Divided Flow Branches: Type 1, Type 2, Type 4A, or 4B.
 - 4. Fig. 2-6 Branch Connections: 45-degree entry, 45-degree lead-in, bell-mouth or spin-in (single diffuser supply only).
 - 5. Fig. 2-7 Offsets and Transitions. Use gradual offsets as shown, 90-degree offsets shall be avoided.
 - 6. Fig 2-9 Duct Coils: Duct coils with transitions and upstream access door as shown.

2.3 ROUND DUCT FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate supply ducts of galvanized steel according to SMACNA.
- B. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA.
 - 1. Exposed Round Ducts: Shall be Spiral Seam (RL-1 seam) at 2-inch wg construction.
 - 2. Concealed Round Ducts: Shall be longitudinal Grooved Seam Flat lock (RL-5 seam) at 2-inch wg construction.
 - 3. Snap lock seams shall not be used for this project.
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA.

2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Outdoor Environments: Electro galvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A-603. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- E. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- F. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.
- G. Supports For Roof Mounted Items:
 - 1. Equipment rails shall be galvanized steel, minimum 18-gauge, with integral baseplate, continuous welded corner seams, factory installed 2x4 treated wood nailer, 18-gauge galvanized steel counter flashing cap with screws, built-in cant-strip; minimum height 11 inches. Provide raised cant strip to start at the upper surface of the insulation.
 - 2. Roof Duct Supports: Portable Support Model number PPH-D - Enclosed style.
 - a. Engineered, portable system specifically designed for installation without the need for roof penetrations or flashings, and without causing damage to the roofing membrane.
 - b. Hot dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A 123 after fabrication.
 - c. Factory fabricated to support exact duct sizes and equipment to be installed.
 - d. Provide SS or galvanized clamps, bolts, nuts, washers, and other devices as required for a complete system.

2.5 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealant/Mastic: Shall be flexible, water-based, adhesive sealant designed for use in all pressure duct systems. After curing, it shall be resistant to ultraviolet light and shall prevent the entry of water, air and moisture into the duct system. Sealer shall be UL 723 listed; UL 181A-M or 181B-M listed; and meet NFPA 90A requirements. Pressure sensitive tape shall not be used as a sealing mechanism.
 - 1. Maximum 5 flame spread and 0 smoke-developed (ASTM E-84 Tunnel Test).
 - 2. Generally, provide liquid sealant for low clearance slip joints and heavy, permanently elastic, mastic type where clearances are larger.
 - 3. Resistance to mold, mildew and water: Excellent
 - 4. Color: Gray
 - 5. Duct sealant/mastic shall meet requirements for LEED. ITW TACC Miracle Kingco water-based sealants, or approved equal.
- B. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- C. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals: Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch w.g. and shall be rated for 10-inch w.g. static-pressure class, positive or negative. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 FITTINGS

- A. Tees, Laterals, and Conical Tees: Use 45 degree; fabricate to comply with SMACNA with metal thicknesses specified for longitudinal seam straight duct.
- B. Diverging-Flow Fittings: Fabricate with a reduced entrance to branch taps with no excess material projecting from body onto branch tap entrance.
- C. Elbows: Diameters 3 through 8 inches shall be two-section die stamped; all others shall be gored construction, maximum 18 degree angle, with all seams continuously welded or standing seam. Coat galvanized areas of fittings damaged by welding with corrosion resistant aluminum paint or galvanized repair compound.
- D. Low-point drains: Ductmate moisture drain with funnel collection design; ¾" connection with drain fitting and cap.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. McGill Air Flow LLC.
 - 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 5. Durodyne
 - 6. Cesco
 - 7. Buckley
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA; Figures 2-10, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 2-11, "Access Panels - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door: Double wall, rated for up to 4.5" static pressure. Door panel filled with 1" fiberglass insulation; ¾ lb. density. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch continuous piano hinge and cam latches. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs.
 - 3. Provide 1/8" thick neoprene gaskets.
 - 4. Locks: Access doors less than 12 sq. inches: One cam lock. Doors over 12 sq. inches shall have two locks.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Provide for all air moving equipment. General: Flame-retarded or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with NFPA 90A. Factory fabricated with a strip of fabric 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized, sheet steel or 0.032-inch aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with connected ducts. Duro-Dyne, Ductmate, Hardcast, or approved equal.
- B. Indoor Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with polychloroprene or neoprene. Minimum Weight: 26 oz. /sq. yd. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp, and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.

- C. Outdoor Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with a synthetic-rubber or hypalon, white color; weatherproof coating resistant to the sun's ultraviolet rays and ozone environment. Minimum Weight: 24 oz. /sq. yd. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch in the warp, and 440 lbf/inch in the filling.

2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. General: Comply with UL 181, Class 0 Or 1. Flame Spread: Less than 25; Smoke Developed: Less than 50.
- B. All products shall be certified by Greenguard Environmental Institute; independent testing of products for emissions of respirable particles and Volatile Organic Compounds (VOC's), including formaldehyde and other specific product-related pollutants. Greenguard provides independent, third-party certification of IAQ performance. Certification is based upon criteria used by EPA, OSHA and WHO.
- C. Rated Positive Pressure: 10" w.g. per UL-181. Maximum negative pressure: $\frac{3}{4}$ ".
- D. Flexible Ducts, Insulated: Factory-fabricated, insulated, round duct, with an outer jacket enclosing glass-fiber insulation around a continuous inner liner.
 - 1. R6 insulation, Basis of Design: Atco #86
 - 2. Reinforcement: Steel-wire helix encapsulated in inner liner.
 - 3. Jacket (inner and outer): Polyethylene film.
- E. Exhaust/Return Flexible Ducts, not insulated: Atco#50 Factory-fabricated, round duct. Reinforcement: Triple lamination of tough metallized polyester, aluminum foil and polyester encapsulates a steel wire helix. Rated for $\frac{3}{4}$ " w.g. negative pressure.
- F. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3 to 18 inches to suit duct size.
- G. Hangers shall be band type, 1" wide minimum.

2.10 MANUAL-VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manual balancing dampers meeting the following specifications shall be furnished and installed on all branch ducts and where shown on plans. Testing and ratings to be in accordance with AMCA Standard 500-D.
- B. Single-Blade Rectangular Dampers shall consist of: an 18 ga. galvanized steel frame with 3-1/2 in. depth; blades fabricated from 20 ga. galvanized steel; integral 1/2 in. diameter axles. Damper suitable for pressures to 1.0 in. wg, velocities to 2000 fpm and temperatures to 180°F. Basis of design is Greenheck model MBD-10.
- C. Multi-Blade Rectangular Dampers shall consist of: a 16 ga. galvanized steel hat channel frame with 5 in. depth; triple V type blades fabricated from 16 ga. galvanized steel; 1/2 in. dia. plated steel axles; external (out of the airstream) blade-to-blade linkage. Damper suitable for pressures to 4.0 in. w.g. (996 Pa), velocities to 2000 fpm and temperatures to 180°F. Basis of design is Greenheck model MBD15.

- D. Round dampers shall consist of: a 20 ga. galvanized steel frame with 6 in. depth; blades fabricated from 20 ga. galvanized steel; 3/8 in. square plated steel axles turning in acetal bearings. Damper suitable for pressures to 1.0 in. wg, velocities to 2000 fpm and temperatures to 180°F. Basis of design is Greenheck model MBDR50.

2.11 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Gravity: Ruskin BD2/A2.
1. Frame: 0.090-inch-thick extruded aluminum, with mounting flange.
 2. Blades: 0.025-inch-thick, roll-formed aluminum, with extruded-vinyl seals, Zytel bearings.
 3. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
 4. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- B. Counter Balanced: Ruskin CBD2; weather resistant for relief air applications; Adjustable counterbalance weights which enable the damper to operate in the range of .01" to .05" w.g.
1. Frame: 2 inches x minimum 0.090 inch 6063-T6 extruded aluminum channel and mitered corners. No flanges.
 2. Front Flange Frame: 2 inches x minimum 0.090 inch 6063-T6 extruded aluminum channel with front flange and mitered corners.
 3. Rear Flange Frame: 2 inches x minimum 0.090 inch 6063-T6 extruded aluminum channel with rear flange and mitered corners.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Style: Single-piece, overlap frame.
 - b. Action: Parallel.
 - c. Orientation: Horizontal.
 - d. Material: Minimum 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) 6063-T6 roll formed aluminum.
 - e. Width: Maximum 6 inches (152 mm).
 - f. Counterbalance weights are zinc plated steel weights attached to blades. Adjustable for final, on the job, settings.
 - g. Bearings: Corrosion-resistant, long-life, synthetic, formed as single piece with axles.
 5. Linkage: Concealed in frame.
 6. Axles: Corrosion-resistant, long-life, synthetic, locked to blade and formed as single piece with bearings.
 7. Finish: Mill aluminum.
 8. Performance Data:
 - a. Temperature Rating: Withstand -40 to 200 degrees F.
 - b. Capacity: Withstand HVAC system operating conditions.
 - c. Closed Position: Maximum back pressure of 4.5 inches w.g.
 - d. Open Position: Maximum air velocity of 1,000 feet per minute.
 - e. Operation of Blades:
 - 1) Start to Open: 0.01 inch w.g. (0.002 kPa).
 - 2) Fully Open: 0.06 inch w.g. (0.015 kPa).
 - 3) Pressure Drop: Maximum 0.04 inch w.g. (0.01 kPa) at 1,000 feet per minute (305 m/min) through 24 inch x 24 inch (610 x 610 mm) damper.

- C. Counter Balanced: Ruskin CBD4; weather resistant for relief air applications; Adjustable counterbalance weights which enable the damper to operate in the range of .01" to .05" w.g.

1. Frame: 0.081"-inch-thick 6063-T5 extruded aluminum, with mounting flange.
2. Blades: 0.070-inch-thick, roll-formed 6063-T5 aluminum, with extruded-vinyl seals, Zytel bearings.
3. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

2.12 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Air Balance Inc.
 2. Cesco Products
 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 4. Metalaire, Inc.
 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
 6. Prefco
 7. NCA
 8. Ruskin Company.
- B. Type: Static; rated and labeled according to UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream except when located behind grille where blades may be inside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch-thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-provided.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch-thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Heat-Responsive Device: Provide replaceable fusible links with a temperature approximately 50°F above the maximum temperature that would normally be encountered within the system, but not less than 165°F.
- J. Provide the grille option for curtain style fire dampers provides mounting flanges on the sleeve to ease installation of grilles in the field (Grilles specified in Section 233713). The flanges shall be made out of 20 gauge galvanized steel (3/4 inch x 2 in. long) with .149 in. diameter hole for fastening of grille. The flanges are concealed when the grille is installed.

2.13 LOUVERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ruskin Company
 2. American Warming and Ventilating, Inc.

3. Greenheck.
 4. Arrow United Industries.
 5. Cesco Products.
 6. Construction Specialties, Inc.
- B. Louvers shall be AMCA Licensed. Louvers shall comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.
- C. Louvers shall be AMCA Certified in accordance with AMCA 511.
- D. Intake Louvers: Water penetration tested in accordance with AMCA 500-L.
- E. American Warming & Ventilating Louvers Model LE-53: Drainable Wind-Driven Rain Blade: Aluminum outer frames, louver perimeter frame, non-thermally broken, air ventilator with overlapping louvers; free Area: 44.3%, minimum. Wind-Driven Rain Performance: Not less than 99.0% effectiveness when subjected to a rainfall of 3 inches per hour and a wind speed of 29 mph at a core-area intake velocity of 583 fpm. Blades: Horizontal Sight proof, Wind-driven rain. Frame: 5 inch deep, extruded aluminum.
- F. Superior Performing Organic Coatings System: Manufacturer's standard multi-coat superior performing organic coatings system complying with AAMA 2605, including at least 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin, and at least 80 percent of aluminum extrusion and panels surfaces having minimum total dry film thickness (DFT) of 1.2 mils, 0.0012 inch. Primer: Zinc chromate, alkyd type.
- G. Accessories
1. Insulated Blank-Off Panels: 0.040 aluminum sheet, 2 inches thick, aluminum skin insulated core, factory installed with removable fasteners and neoprene gaskets.
 2. Aluminum Insect Screen - 18-16 mesh, mill finish, .011-inch wire.
 3. Bird Screen: aluminum, 5/8" mesh, removable frame, re-wireable.
 4. Sealant for Setting Sills and Sill Flashing: Non-curing butyl type.

2.14 DRYER BOX

- A. IPS Corporation "Dryer Box", or equal.
1. Sturdy 22 Gauge molded aluminized steel
 2. Allows for locating the dryer right up against the wall, protecting the ductwork from getting "squished".
 3. Reduces fire hazard, lint Buildup is minimized
 4. Shall meet code requirements as a clean-out
 5. Elbow eliminator (gain 5 ft. of duct run).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide volume dampers at branch ducts to RGD's. If volume dampers are inadvertently not shown, contractor shall provide, the intent is to provide volume dampers at branches.

- B. Provide ducts and accessories according to SMACNA unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Construct and install each duct system for the specific duct pressure classification indicated.
- D. Properly seam, brace, stiffen, support and render ducts mechanically airtight. Adjust ducts to suit job conditions. Dimensions may be changed as approved, if cross sectional area is maintained.
- E. Provide ducts in lengths not less than 12 feet, unless interrupted by fittings. Provide ducts with fewest possible joints.
- F. Provide fabricated fittings for changes in directions, changes in size and shape, and connections.
- G. Provide couplings tight to duct wall surface with a minimum of projections into duct.
- H. Provide ductwork to allow maximum headroom. Provide ducts, unless otherwise indicated, vertically and horizontally, parallel and perpendicular to building lines; avoid diagonal runs. Provide ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- I. Provide ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- J. Conceal ducts from view in finished spaces. Do not encase horizontal runs in solid partitions, unless specifically indicated.
- K. Coordinate layout with suspended ceiling, lighting layouts, and similar finished work.
- L. Electrical Equipment Spaces: Route ductwork to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment spaces and enclosures.
- M. Exterior ductwork shall have a pitch of at least 3 degrees on the top, to allow water runoff, prevent ice buildup.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- C. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system. Seal duct joints to prevent dirt marks.
- D. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- E. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- F. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 MATERIALS

- A. Hangers, accessories, and dampers shall be same material as parent duct.
- B. Ducts shall be G60 galvanized steel except as follows:
 - 1. Un-insulated exterior ductwork: G90 galvanized steel.
 - 2. Exterior ductwork: Hangers and attachments shall be electro-galvanized, all-thread rod or galvanized rods with threads painted after installation. Refer to SMACNA Fig. 5-3. Ductwork shall be pitched or sloped to prevent "ponding" of water.
 - 3. Plenums at outside louvers: G90 galvanized steel; horizontal ducts connected to louver shall be water-tight and pitch to drain into the louver plenum. Louver plenum shall be water-tight, pitched to drain to exterior. Provide low-point drain fittings at low points.
 - 4. Locker Room Shower area exhaust ductwork: Aluminum
- C. Painted Exposed Ducts
 - 1. Painting shall be by Division 09.

3.4 DUCT CLASSIFICATIONS AND SEALING

- A. Static-Pressure Classifications: Unless otherwise indicated, construct ducts to the following:
 - 1. Supply Ducts: 2-inch w.g.
 - 2. Return Ducts: 2-inch w.g, negative pressure.
 - 3. Exhaust Ducts: 2-inch w.g, negative pressure.
- B. Seam And Joint Sealing:
 - 1. Ductwork and plenums with pressure class ratings shall be constructed to Seal Class A. Openings for rotating shafts shall be sealed with bushings or other devices that seal off air leakage.
 - 2. Pressure-sensitive tape shall not be used as the primary sealant unless it has been certified to comply with UL-181A or UL-181B by an independent testing laboratory, and the tape is used in accordance with that certification.
 - 3. Connections shall be sealed, including but not limited to spin-ins, taps, other branch connections, access doors, access panels, and duct connections to equipment. Sealing that would void product listings is not required.
 - 4. Spiral lock seams need not be sealed.
 - 5. Seal externally insulated ducts before insulation installation.

3.5 DUCT PENETRATIONS

- A. Fire or Smoke Rated Penetrations not requiring a fire and/or smoke damper: Where ducts pass through walls, floors, or partitions that are required to have a fire resistance rating and fire dampers are not required, the opening in the construction around the duct shall be provided in accordance with the UL listing of the penetration. Provide firestopping per Section 230500.
- B. Fire or Smoke Rated Penetrations: Provide fire and/or smoke damper.
- C. Non-Fire-Rated Exposed Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, and are exposed to view, conceal space between construction opening and duct

or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as duct. Overlap opening on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

- D. Non-Fire-Rated Concealed Penetrations: Provide insulation infill and acoustical sealant around gaps. Tightly seal to prevent sound transmission. Neatly finish.
- E. Mechanical room floor penetrations: Provide 4-inch high concrete curbs or other sealing method to prevent leakage from mechanical room into floor penetration.
- F. Roof penetrations by ducts shall use counter-flashed curbs.
- G. Flexible air ducts or connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor, or ceiling.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Comply with SMACNA Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports". Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- E. Provide upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension,

3.7 FLEXIBLE DUCT

- A. Provide in accordance with manufacturer's and SMACNA recommendations.
- B. Flexible ducts shall be supported at manufacturer's recommended intervals, but at no greater distance than 5 feet. Maximum permissible sag is 1/2" per foot of spacing between supports.
- C. Provide duct fully extended; do not install in the compressed state or use excess lengths.
- D. Avoid bending ducts across sharp corners or incidental contact with metal fixtures, pipes, conduits, or hot equipment.
- E. Bends shall be made with not less than 1 duct diameter centerline radius. Ducts shall extend a few inches beyond the end of a sheet metal connection before bending.
- F. Hanger or saddle material in contact with the duct shall be at least 1" wide.
- G. Provide at least 2 duct diameters of straight duct at the entrance to register, grilles, and diffusers.

3.8 SPECIALTY DUCTWORK

A. Clothes Dryer Exhaust

1. Clothes dryers shall be exhausted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Provide a dryer box for each dryer.
3. Ducts shall be galvanized steel.
4. Ducts shall not be connected or installed with sheet metal screws or other fasteners that will obstruct the exhaust flow. Provide riveted or welded construction, sealed 100% air-tight.
5. The male end of the duct at overlapped duct joints shall extend in the direction of airflow.
6. Each vertical riser shall be provided with a means for cleanout.
7. Terminate ductwork at building exterior with a back-draft damper. Screens shall not be installed at the duct termination.

3.9 DUCT ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Provide duct accessories according to applicable details shown in SMACNA.
- B. Provide duct transitions, offsets and connections to dampers, coils, and other equipment in accordance with SMACNA Standards
- C. Each register, grille, or diffuser shall have a means of air flow adjustment. Provide volume damper in branch duct if not furnished with the RGD.
- D. Adjust operable devices for proper action.
- E. Manual dampers shall be visible outside the insulation and marked with a 12" orange ribbon.
- F. Locate each duct smoke detector in a serviceable location, in accordance with its listing.
- G. Perform the following as directed by the controls contractor: Installation of control devices. Access doors where indicated and as required.
- H. Provide duct access panels for access components that require servicing.
 1. Provide duct access panels to allow access to interior of ducts for cleaning, inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining per equipment manufacturers' requirements.
 2. Provide access panels on side of duct where adequate clearance is available.
 3. Locate panel upstream and/or downstream as recommended by manufacturer.
 4. Locations:
 - a. Upstream side of duct coils.
 - b. At outdoor-air intakes.
 - c. Adjacent to and close enough to life safety dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links.
 - d. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - e. Elsewhere as indicated or required by duct accessory manufacturer
 5. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.

I. Control Damper Installation

1. Damper submittals shall be coordinated for type, quantity, and size to ensure compatibility with sheet metal design.
2. Duct openings shall be free of any obstruction or irregularities that might interfere with blade or linkage rotation or actuator mounting. Duct openings shall measure $\frac{1}{4}$ in. larger than damper dimensions and shall be square, straight, and level.
3. Individual damper sections, as well as entire multiple section assemblies, must be completely square and free from racking, twisting, or bending. Measure diagonally from upper corners to opposite lower corners of each damper section. Both dimensions must be within $\frac{1}{8}$ in. of each other.
4. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for field installation of control dampers. Unless specifically designed for vertical blade application, dampers must be mounted with blade axis horizontal.
5. Damper blades, axles, and linkage must operate without binding. Before system operation, cycle damper after installation to ensure proper operation. On multiple section assemblies, sections must open and close simultaneously.
6. Provide a visible and accessible indication of damper position on the drive shaft end.
7. Support ductwork in area of damper when required to prevent sagging due to damper weight.
8. After installation of low-leakage dampers with seals, caulk between frame and duct opening to prevent leakage around perimeter of damper.

J. Fire Damper Installation

1. Examine areas to receive dampers. Notify the Engineer of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent utilization of dampers. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected
2. Provide dampers in accordance with manufacturer's UL Installation Instructions, labeling, and NFPA 90A at locations indicated on the drawings. Any damper installation that is not in accordance with the manufacturer's UL Installation Instructions must be approved prior to installation.
3. Dampers must be accessible to allow inspection, adjustment, and replacement of components. The sheet metal contractor shall furnish any access doors in ductwork or plenums required to provide this access. The general contractor shall furnish any access doors required in walls, ceilings, or other general building construction.
4. Provide dampers square and free from racking.
5. The installing contractor shall provide and install bracing for multiple section assemblies to support assembly weight and to hold against system pressure.
6. Do not compress or stretch the damper frame into the duct or opening.
7. Attach multiple damper section assemblies together in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide support mullions as reinforcement between assemblies as required.
8. Handle dampers using the frame or sleeve. Do not lift or move dampers using blades, actuator or jackshaft.
9. Provide access door, properly located for serving.
10. Tests and Inspections: Operate dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.

3.10 LOUVER INSTALLATION

- A. Louvers to be furnished by Division 23; mounted and installed by the contractor responsible for the outside wall construction. Ductwork shall be connected to the louvers by Division 23.

- B. Verify louver openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. For new construction, or where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating louvers without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.
- C. Installation
 - 1. Locate and place louvers and vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
 - 2. Pitch horizontal ducts and plenums connected to louvers downward toward louvers not less than 1 inch in 10 feet. Connect to louver to allow drainage to exterior. Seal ducts water-tight.
 - 3. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weather tight connection.
 - 4. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
 - 5. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
 - 6. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
 - 7. Provide concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weather tight louver joints are required.
- D. Clean exposed surfaces of louvers and vents that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate until final cleaning. Restore louvers and vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."
 - 1. The HVAC system and ductwork shall be provided with protective coverings. The HVAC system includes any interior surface of the facility's air distribution system for conditioned spaces and/or occupied zones. This includes the entire duct from the points where the air enters the system to the points where the air is discharged from the system.
 - 2. The duct system shall be free of construction debris.
 - 3. The working area shall be clean, dry and the ductwork protected from dust.
 - 4. Protective coverings shall only be removed immediately before installation and inspected to determine if additional wipe down is necessary.
- B. Upon completion of installation duct systems and before HVAC system start-up, visually inspect the ductwork proper installation
- C. Cover supply openings with filter media prior to system start-up to catch any loose material that may remain inside the ductwork. Turn the HVAC system on and allow it to run until steady state

operation is reached. Remove the temporary filter media from supply openings and, along with it, any loose material blown downstream and caught by the filter media.

3.12 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Ducts shall be kept clean. If the contractor fails to maintain cleanliness, duct cleaning will be required, using duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233423

POWER AND GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fans and ventilators.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. System vendor shall coordinate equipment product data submittal sheets and shall provide a comprehensive set of interfaced drawings which shall serve as the basis for system evaluation by consulting engineer.
- B. Submit the following to the Owner's Representative.
 - 1. Set of mechanical exhaust calculations. Calculations must show air volumes, pressure losses, and velocity in each vent section.
 - 2. Ventilator descriptive literature, dimensional diagrams, and electrical diagrams.
 - 3. Control descriptive literature, dimensional diagrams and electrical diagrams.
 - 4. Specification review with respect to submitted equipment identifying all areas of compliance and exceptions.
 - 5. Certification of listing by nationally recognized testing laboratory.
- C. Manufacturers not named in these specifications, but those that have received prior approval by the consulting engineer as required within 10 days prior to bid date, shall be permitted one opportunity to receive formal submittal approval. If this approval is not granted by the consulting engineer, the contractor shall submit on the manufacturer name in these specifications only or the contractor will be charged for the submittal review time for alternate manufacturers.
- D. In the event the Contractor wishes to submit an alternate mechanical draft system manufacturer for consideration by the Engineer/Owner, the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer/Owner, a minimum of 14 days prior to bid date, a complete technical proposal based on the alternate system, including equipment brochures, detailed technical data sheets, detailed drawings, detailed wiring diagrams, detailed operational description, comprehensive set of mechanical exhaust calculations, evidence of manufacturing capability and evidence of third-party listing. If any of the above materials specified for the product substitution proposal are not included in the

product substitution proposal, those proposals shall be considered non-responsive and incomplete and shall be rejected by the Engineer/Owner.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All equipment and accessories to be the product of a manufacturer regularly engaged in its manufacture and shall be of a standard catalog product.
- B. Fan must conform to AMCA standard 211 and 311. Fans must be tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA standard 210-99 and AMCA Standard 300-96 in an AMCA accredited laboratory. Fans shall be certified to bear the AMCA label for sound and air performance seal.
- C. Fan complies with and meets Type B, Spark Resistant Construction per AMCA standard 99-0401
- D. Modulating dryer vent system guaranteed to operate satisfactory and efficiently and to provide a constant pressure that does not fluctuate more than +/- 0.01" W.C. under stable load conditions.
- E. Scheduled equipment performance is minimum capacity required.
- F. Scheduled electrical capacity shall be considered as maximum available.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled unit, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Common Work Results for Mechanical"
- B. Coordinate installation of support, and roof penetrations.
- C. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. All equipment is to be guaranteed against defects in materials and/or workmanship for a period of 24 months from the date of installation, or 30 months from date of shipment, whichever

occurs first. The warranty shall be provided by the equipment manufacturer and shall include the parts necessary to repair or replace all defective parts and materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MODULATING DRYER VENTING SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Enervex (Basis of Design MDVS)
2. Approved Equal

B. General Requirements:

1. The ventilator must be suitable for indoor and outdoor installation. The fan shall have a no-scroll design with inlet and outlet on the same centerline. The design of the inlet and discharge area must assure minimum lint, dust, or other particle build-up. The fan must have a service door that can be opened for easy cleaning and service.
2. The housing shall be of galvanized steel with double-wall construction completely insulated against fire, noise, condensation, and heat with 2" of fiberglass insulation. Housing must be resistant to corrosion. The ventilator must be rated for an operating exhaust temperature of 10°F (-12°C) to 400°F (200°C), and at ambient temperatures within 0°F (-30°C) and 120°F (50°C).
3. The housing design shall allow for the ventilator to be oriented in multiple positions, curb-mountable, inline, standing on a flat surface, or suspended from a ceiling. The hinge positioning to change the fan door orientation shall be field adjustable with the use of common hand tools.
4. The backward inclined impeller shall be made of aluminum and be completely in balance. The impeller must be balanced statically and dynamically, and balancing weights must be permanently attached.
5. The motor must be a TEFC, maintenance-free variable speed permanent magnet motor with pre-lubricated and sealed ball bearings. It must have an integrated insulated rotor and shaft system that protects the bearings from damages by keeping discharge voltage peaks on a bare shaft surface below 4 volts. The motor must be sensor-less and rated to IE5 with a minimum of 92% efficiency (motor and controller) and able to operate as low as 50 RPM when controlled via an externally mounted motor controller to allow operation at elevated temperatures. The motor must have integrated protection against overloading, blocking over and under voltage and over-heating.
6. The modulating fan control, EBC31, must be a true PID-based control with infinitely variable speed settings and in a NEMA 1 rated enclosure. It shall interfere with the operation of the heating appliances by preventing burner operation during emergencies where a mechanical or electrical problem occurs.
 - a. The features must be part of the compliance with UL378, Standard for Draft Equipment, UL705, Standard for Power Ventilators and UL60947, Standard for Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear:
 - b. 128 x 64 pixel LCD screen
 - c. 32-Bit microcontroller with internal 512 kB FLASH-memory, 32 MB External SPI FLASH
 - d. Two RS485 ports for expandable functionality and connectivity
 - e. Able to control three functions (Exhaust Fan, Supply Fan, and Overdraft Damper) simultaneously via a single control.

- f. Integrated BUS interface to allow for future expansion.
 - g. Programmable microprocessor for selective programming of, but not limited to, draft, intermittent vs. continuous fan operation, purge times, sensor sensitivity, alarm limits and delays, manual overrides, low/high limit fan speeds via the operating panel.
 - h. A standard board that interlocks with up to 6 appliances so a call for heat activates the power venter and releases the individual burner once the pre-set draft has been established.
 - i. "Plug-and-Play" self-check that detects connections, setting requirements and accessories during each start-up.
 - j. An integrated and programmable proven draft function that can be set for automatic and manual reset.
 - k. An integrated Operating Priority option, which allows one or more appliances to operate during electrical or mechanical failure of the fan, provided the draft requirement can be met and safe operation assured. Set up of a default Operating Priority must be possible, so the most important appliance(s) have highest priority during calls for heat. It must automatically check for fan operation every two hours and go back to normal operation if appropriate.
 - l. Bearing cycle activation every 7 days if the power venter has not been operating during the past 7 day period.
 - m. A normally open (NO) contact is available within the control to activate a visual or audible alarm (by others), or to interlock with a Building Management System.
 - n. An alarm function that will display the fault code on the LCD display and signal an audible alarm (by others). The control shall log the last 10 fault codes.
 - o. Ethernet port for TCP/IP networking
 - p. Graphical web interface for monitoring the 0-10V in/outputs, alarms, and set points.
 - q. Upgrade of firmware can be done via the web interface to ensure controller is always up to date.
 - r. Remote monitoring and management capabilities standard, including the ability to adjust system configuration remotely.
 - s. Ability to upload or download configuration file via web interface or USB.
 - t. (Relay board for additional appliances in system. Board will fit inside control housing and interlock appliances with safety features of control)
 - u. (Expansion board for MODS Damper System)
 - v. Adjustable pre-purge, so the control will allow the power venter to prime the mechanical room prior to appliance startup.
 - w. Adjustable post-purge, so the control will allow the power venter to operate for up to 3 minutes after the burner has shut down.
 - x. English, Spanish, and French Language display options
 - y. USB port for firmware upgrade and data logging
 - z. BACnet interface through RS485 module
7. The pressure sensor, XTP, shall be certified for use with oil- or gas-fired appliances and shall include a chimney probe along with tubing for installation in the chimney or stack as shown on the manufacturer's submittal and feature:
- a. The range of operation shall be -1.0 - +1.0 inWC, with a minimum accuracy of +/- 0.25% of span.
 - b. The pressure drift shall be less than +/- 0.25% full scale, the offset longtime drift (1 year) shall not exceed +/- 0.005 inWC and the sensor response time shall be less than 0.25 seconds.
 - c. Motor speed controller (MSC), ENERVEX E3 EDrive, must be factory programmed and provide with the following specifications:

- d. All features shall be included in the motor-controlled enclosure, which shall be NEMA 4X rated.
- e. Sensor-less Vector Control type that is suitable for all types of high-efficiency Permanent Magnet Motors as well as standard induction motors.
- f. Internal Category C1 EMC filter and brake chopper and have flying start capability.
- g. Analog input.
- h. Built-in keyboard and Bluetooth connectivity. Programmable via PC with OptiTools Studio.
- i. Able to operate in environments of up to (120°F)
- j. Rated for 150% overload for 60 secs and 175% for 2 secs.
- k. Able to communicate via Modbus RTU (EIA-485)

C. Performance:

1. The Modulating Dryer Venting System will ensure that the pressure set-point (in. W.C.) is reached and maintained within 20 seconds of system start-up. This can be measured with an external manometer.
2. Ramp-up and ramp-down time of the ventilator will be no more than 20 seconds.
3. The Mechanical Building Exhaust System will maintain the pressure in the exhaust system to within 0.01" W.C. of the pressure set-point (in. W.C.).

D. Sequence of Operation:

1. The EBC31 initializes when 0-220 VAC is supplied. The control goes through its start-up sequence and displays the pressure reading of the XTP.
2. The ventilator will run at the speed needed to maintain the set-point of the control.
3. If more ventilation is needed, the control will send a signal to 'ramp up' the ventilator speed. If less ventilation is needed, the control will send a signal to 'ramp down' the fan speed.
4. If proper ventilation cannot be maintained because of a mechanical or electrical failure, the control will go into alarm mode and ramp up the ventilator to 100% speed.

E. Duct Connection:

1. Furnish a roof curb, curb cap and adapter.

F. Electrical Requirements:

1. Power supply shall be:
 - a. To the EBC31 control: 1x 120V AC, 60 Hz.
 - b. To the motor speed controller (if applicable): As shown on schedule.
2. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Complete structural, mechanical and electrical connections in accordance with manufacturers' printed instructions.

- B. Installing contractor shall install all Modulating Dryer Exhaust System components as indicated on drawings, including low voltage wiring from XTP-Sensor to EBC31 Control and line voltage wiring from EBC31 to the ventilator. The following must be ensured:

- 1. Allow satisfactory arrangement in the space available.

- C. Connecting to the duct:

- 1. Install per plans in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.2 OPERATING TESTS, START-UP, AND ON-SITE SERVICES

- A. System vendor's service organization shall employ senior service technicians having experience in all aspects of troubleshooting, corrective service and preventative maintenance and O&M reporting.

- B. After installation is completed:

- 1. Test the operation of the Modulating Dryer Exhaust System and:

- a. Increase and decrease the pressure setting to verify the mechanical exhaust setting reacts as specified.
 - b. Verify that the ramp-up time during start up does not exceed 20 seconds.
 - c. Use an external manometer (pressure gauge) to verify that the exhaust does not drift more than 0.01" W.C. during a stable load.

- C. Provide services of factory representative of Modulating Dryer Venting System manufacturer to:

- 1. Confirm proper installation of ventilator and controls.
 - 2. Start up and adjust control.
 - 3. Test individual controls for proper operation.
 - 4. Set duct pressure for specified operation.

- D. Submit a written report signed by the manufacturer's authorized representative, confirming that safety and operating controls have been properly installed.

3.3 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Instruct Owner's Representative and designated personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of the packaged system.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, internally clean fans according to manufacturer's written instructions. Remove foreign material and construction debris. Vacuum fan wheel and cabinet.

- B. After completing system installation, including outlet fitting and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233424

EXHAUST CAPTURE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division Section: "230500 Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes exhaust capture systems.
- B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 1, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 26 - Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ACGIH - Industrial Ventilation, A Manual of Recommended Practice.
- B. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook.
- C. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating Purposes.
- D. AMCA 300 - Test Code for Sound Rating Air Moving Devices.
- E. AMCA 301 - Method of Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data.
- F. ASTM A 90 - Weight of Coating on Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Iron or Sheet Articles.
- G. ASTM A 653 - General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- H. AWS 9.1 - Welding of Sheet Metal.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- J. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Trade Bids for work under this Section shall be for the complete work of this Section and shall be filed under the provisions and requirements specified under Division 01 – General Requirements.
 - 1. Special attention is directed to Section 1-B – School Bid Depository Conditions and Regulations and all Sections within Division 01 – General requirements which are hereby made a part of this Section of the Specifications.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedures: Procedures for submittals.
 - 1. Product Data: Provide manufacturers literature and data sheets indicating rated capacities, dimensions, weights and point loadings, accessories, electrical characteristics and connection requirements, wiring diagrams, and location and sizes of field connections.
 - 2. Submit sound power levels for both inlet and outlet at rated capacity.
 - 3. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, sizes, weights and point loadings, and locations and sizes of field connections.
 - 4. Submit vendor ducted layout indicating all components (e.g. fans, ductwork, and equipment connections) with dimensions.
 - 5. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate assembly and installation instructions.
- B. Qualification Documentation: Submit documentation of experience indicating compliance with specified qualification requirements.
- C. Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals: Procedures for closeout submittals.
 - 1. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include instructions for fan lubrication, motor and drive replacement, spare parts list, and wiring diagrams.
 - 2. Special Warranty: Submit written special warranty with forms completed in United States Postal Service name and registered with manufacturer as specified in this Section.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters' Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- B. Job installation and dust collectors shall conform to NFPA standards 664, 68 and 650.
- C. Provide all ductwork, fittings and drops.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Division 1 - Product Requirements: Transport, handle, store, and protect products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESIDENTIAL RANGE HOODS

- A. Provide Denlar hoods, or approved equal. The hood shall be constructed of 18 & 20 gauge (type 304) polished stainless steel. Hood shall have fire suppression system factory installed into the hood system. Activation of the mechanical fire suppression system shall be by a 280°F fusible link (36" size). Fire suppression agent will be Amerex 660 Low PH wet chemical suppressant.
- B. Unit shall include centrifugal fan with air delivery of 500 CFM. Provide an ECM fan motor for adjustable speed control for odors and sound.
- C. Provide fuel shutdown for electric devices.
- D. The hood system shall have multiple alarm and monitoring contacts factory installed into the hood.
- E. Hood system shall include commercial-grade grease extractor type, high efficiency cartridge style baffle filters of adequate number and sizes to ensure optimum performance in accordance with manufacturer's published information. The filter housing shall terminate in a pitched, full-length grease trough, which shall drain into a removable grease container.
- F. Shatter proof light fixtures shall be included in the hood system. Wiring shall conform to the requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC #70).
- G. Pre-Installed Fire protection system to provide surface protection for hood system and equipment located below ventilator.
- H. System interconnected with included shunt trip breaker of equipment located below ventilator for power shutoff during system actuation.
- I. Environmental Monitoring / Internal Monitoring / Pre-Suppression
 - 1. Two temperature sensors shall be located on the inner face of the hood; one at a medium set point, the other at high. Under cooking conditions, when the medium set point is reached, the fan is turned on high. This feature dissipates the heat from the area but also draws it into the unit, past the fusible links in the system. If temperatures continue to rise and the high temperature set point is reached, the system reacts by shutting down power to the range prior to suppression system release. When this occurs, the unit's internal alarm is activated so that occupants are notified that the system is working to prevent further escalation of a potential fire. This is considered two stages of pre-suppression, where the unit is interacting with the cooking environment - working to minimize the risk of a fire event
 - 2. Should temperatures continue to rise, fire is present. The fusible links will melt, mechanically actuating the suppression system and releasing a low PH wet chemical agent across the cook-top. At actuation, the system will also make a second attempt to shut down power to the range; in the event of a flash-fire, or something that happens too quickly to register with the temperature sensors. The system will continue to sound its internal alarm while also communicating a "fire code" back to a monitored alarm panel.
 - 3. The PLC Self-Monitoring-System also monitors the entire suppression assembly for completeness and continuity. If the suppression system is ever compromised through a loss of pressure or broken connection, or tampering of any kind, the unit reacts by shutting down power to the range. In this case the suppression system is compromised therefore the range shouldn't be in use. Under this condition, the system communicates a separate

"maintenance code" saying that the unit is down and needs service. When preemptive shutdown occurs, the system and the cooking equipment will not come back on-line until the hood is reset.

J. Provide Options:

1. NFPA101 Upgrade (NFPA101) – Combines MPK, CLBX and an upgraded fan to deliver >500cfm in order to comply with the requirements of the NFPA Life Safety Code.
 - a. Manual Pull Station (MPK) – Mechanical assembly allowing the fire suppression system to be actuated manually normally located at the point of egress.
 - b. The CLOCKBOX (CLBX) – Cooking Element Time-Out System allowing for separate control functionality over when the appliance is used.
 - c. ADA accessible control box.
2. NSF (NSF) – The hood system

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Do not operate fans for any purpose until ductwork is clean, bearings lubricated, and fan has been test run under observation.
- D. Coordinate location and mounting heights of hose reel stations with mechanic work bench areas.

3.2 RESIDENTIAL RANGE HOODS

- A. Provide hood system level and plumb with access clearances required for operation, maintenance and cleaning and in accordance with the manufacturer's published documentation.
- B. Interconnect ventilators to service utilities.
- C. Functional Test: using manufacturer-supplied procedure, short internal sensors to demonstrate shutdown and communication features.
- D. Puff Test: using manufacturer supplied test cylinder, replace suppressant cylinder in system with test (nitrogen only) cylinder. Replace fusible links in line with a "test link". Cut the test link and allow the system to actuate, performing all of its standard functions.
- E. At completion of the installation, clean and adjust equipment as required to produce ready-for-use condition.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Start, test, and check equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the exhaust capture systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233713

DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"
 - 2. Division 23 Section "Ductwork"
 - 3. Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes diffusers, registers (combination grille & damper), and grilles.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Each manufacturer shall check noise level ratings for registers and diffusers to insure that the sizes selected will not produce noise to exceed 30 db, "A" scale, measured at occupant level; notify Owner's representative of problems prior to shop drawing submittal.
- B. Pressure drop, airflow and noise criteria selection are based on design equipment. Manufacturers not submitting design makes must provide written certification in front of submittal that equipment submitted has been checked against and performs equal to the design make.
- C. Product Data: For each model indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: For each type of air outlet and inlet, and accessory furnished; indicate construction, finish, and mounting details.
 - 2. Performance Data: Include throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings for each type of air outlet and inlet.
 - 3. Schedule of diffusers, registers, and grilles indicating drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
 - 4. Assembly Drawing: For each type of air outlet and inlet; indicate materials and methods of assembly of components.
- D. Coordinate locations with reflected ceiling plans and wall elevations as applicable.
- E. Coordinate mounting frame with associated mounting surface.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Install diffusers, registers, and grilles according to NFPA 90A.
- B. Sound pressure levels shall be determined by using AHRI Standard 885-2008 "Procedure for Estimating Occupied Space Sound Levels in the Application of Air Terminals and Outlets".
- C. Testing: Test performance according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Diffusers, registers, and grilles are scheduled on Drawings.
- B. Border and mounting type shall match the mounting surface. Coordinate with mounting conditions.
- C. Material shall match the specified ductwork. Coordinate with Section 233113 "Ductwork".
- D. Provide with a White Powder Coat finish, unless noted otherwise.
- E. Grille blade orientation: Vertical rectangle (wall grille with height longer than width): The blades shall run parallel to the short dimension of the grille. Horizontal rectangle: The blades shall run parallel to the long dimension of the grille.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Price
 - 2. Titus
 - 3. Metal-Aire
 - 4. Anemostat
 - 5. Nailor

2.3 RETURN OR EXHAUST

- A. Return/Exhaust Grille, 45-degree deflection
 - 1. Material: steel (Price 530 Series) or aluminum (Price 630 Series)
 - 2. Provide damper as scheduled.
 - 3. Grilles shall be 45 degree deflection fixed louver type with blades spaced 3/4" on center.

2.4 SUPPLY

A. Double-deflection Supply Register

1. Material: steel (Price 520D Series) or aluminum (Price 620D Series)
2. Registers shall be double deflection type with two sets of fully adjustable deflection blades spaced $\frac{3}{4}$ " on center.
3. The integral volume control damper shall be of the opposed blade type. Material shall match the register material. The damper shall be operable from the register face.

B. Modular Louvered Face Diffusers

1. Material: steel (Price Model SMDA)
2. Air pattern shall be 1-way, 2-way, 3-way, or 4-way as scheduled.
3. Outer frame assembly, which facilitates mounting.
4. Integral collar that allows connection to the square or rectangular duct. Provide a square to round adaptor as scheduled.
5. Inner core assembly consisting of fixed louvers capable of producing the airflow discharge pattern as indicated on the project plans and shall be fully removable from the installed diffuser frame for access to any dampers or other ductwork components located in or near the diffuser neck.
6. The inner core assemblies shall be identically constructed so that directional core assemblies providing different airflow discharge patterns may be interchanged between frames if the frame duct connections are the same size.
7. The diffuser shall be supplied with a set of pattern deflectors to allow field adjustment of the air pattern from horizontal to vertical airflow.
8. The diffuser shall be supplied with an aperture style volume flow damper. The damper shall be manually adjustable from the diffuser face.

C. Directional Louvered-face Diffusers

1. Provide PRICE model (SMD steel, AMD aluminum) directional louvered face diffusers. Diffusers shall consist of an outer frame assembly which facilitates mounting in the application shown. A collar that allows connection to the square (or rectangular) duct size indicated shall be an integral part of the frame assembly. An inner core assembly consisting of fixed louvers capable of producing the airflow discharge pattern indicated on the plans shall be fully removable from the installed diffuser frame for access to any dampers or other ductwork components located in or near the diffuser neck. The inner core assemblies shall be identically constructed so that directional core assemblies providing different airflow discharge patterns may be interchanged between frames, provided the frame duct connections are of the same size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

- B. Provide diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions, Coordination Drawings, original design, and referenced standards.
- C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practicable.
 - 1. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of the panel.
 - 2. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- D. Provide diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connection to ducts.
- E. Provide 18" minimum of vertical straight ductwork at the entrance to ceiling diffusers.
- F. Plenum boxes on grilles/registers shall be 8" minimum height.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.
- B. Adjustable outlets: adjust pattern for draft-free air distribution.

3.3 CLEANING

- A. Protect unit interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with Section 233113 "Ductwork" Paragraph: Field Quality Control.
- B. After installation of diffusers, registers, and grilles, inspect exposed finish. Clean exposed surfaces to remove burrs, dirt, and smudges. Replace diffusers, registers, and grilles that have damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235700

STEAM TO HOT WATER CONVERTERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes shell and tube heat exchangers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of heat exchanger indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of heat exchangers through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label heat-exchanger storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with Architectural and Structural Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEAM TO LIQUID HEAT EXCHANGERS

- A. General
 - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Taco
 - b. Bell & Gossett
 - c. Cemline Corporation.
 - d. Leslie Controls, Inc.
 - e. Patterson-Kelley.
2. Construction: ASME Section VIII;
- a. Shell: Steel
 - b. Heads: Cast Iron Fabricated Steel,
 - c. Tubes: $\frac{3}{4}$ x 20 BWG
 - d. Tube: Sheet Steel
 - e. Separators: Steel
 - f. Tie Rods: Copper
 - g. Nuts and: Bolts Steel
3. Shell Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with water heater shell. Attach tappings to shell before testing and labeling.
- a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HEAT-EXCHANGER INSTALLATION

- A. Install heat exchangers level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- B. Support heat exchangers on welded steel pipe and angle floor stand.
- C. Install combination temperature and pressure relief valves in water piping for heat exchangers . Extend relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge to nearest floor drain.
- D. Fill heat exchangers with water.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to heat exchangers to allow service and maintenance. Arrange piping for easy removal of heat exchangers.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, confirm proper operation.
- C. Remove and replace heat exchangers that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 237200

AIR-TO-AIR ENERGY RECOVERY EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division Section: "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Packaged Energy Recovery Units – Fixed Plate Enthalpic

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- C. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-to-air energy recovery equipment to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ARI Compliance: Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ARI 1060, "Rating Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
 - 2. Capacity ratings for air-to-air energy recovery equipment shall comply with ASHRAE 84, "Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers."
- D. UL Compliance: UL 1812.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of air-to-air energy recovery equipment and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PACKAGED ENERGY RECOVERY UNITS – FIXED PLATE ENTHALPIC

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Aldes
 - 2. Mitsubishi Electric Sales Canada Inc.
 - 3. RenewAire LLC.
- B. Quality Assurance
 - 1. The energy recovery cores used in these products shall be third party Certified by AHRI under its Standard 1060 for Energy Recovery Ventilators. AHRI published certifications shall confirm manufacture's published performance for airflow, static pressure, temperature and total effectiveness, purge air (OACF) and exhaust air leakage (EATR). Products that are not currently AHRI Certified will not be accepted.
 - 2. Manufacturer shall be able to provide evidence of independent testing of the core by Underwriters Laboratory (UL), verifying a maximum flame spread index (FSI) of 25 and a maximum smoke developed index (SDI) of 50 thereby meeting NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B requirements for materials in a compartment handling air intended for circulation through a duct system. The method of test shall be UL Standard 723.
 - 3. Unit shall be Listed under UL 1812 Standard for Ducted Air to Air Heat Exchangers. Some exceptions to UL Listing may apply. Units intended for "Outdoor Use" shall be listed using the specific UL requirements for rain penetration, corrosion protection and seal durability and shall be so labeled.
 - 4. The ERV core shall be warranted to be free of manufacturing defects and to retain its functional characteristics, under circumstances of normal use, for a period of ten years from the date of purchase. The balance-of-unit shall be warranted to be free of manufacturing defects and to retain its functional characteristics, under circumstances of normal use, for a period of two years from the date of purchase.
- C. Performance
 - 1. Energy Transfer: The ERV shall be capable of transferring both sensible and latent energy between airstreams. Latent energy transfer shall be accomplished by direct water vapor transfer from one air stream to the other, without exposing transfer media in succeeding cycles directly to the exhaust air and then to the fresh air.
 - 2. Passive Frost Control: The ERV core shall perform without condensing or frosting under normal operating conditions (defined as outside temperatures above -10°F and inside relative humidity below 40%). Occasional more extreme conditions shall not affect the

usual function, performance or durability of the core. No condensate drains will be allowed.

3. Continuous Ventilation: Unit shall have the capacity to operate continuously without the need for bypass, recirculation, pre-heaters, or defrost cycles under normal operating conditions.
4. Positive Airstream Separation: Water vapor transfer shall be through molecular transport by hygroscopic resin and shall not be accomplished by "porous plate" mechanisms. Exhaust and fresh airstreams shall travel at all times in separate passages, and airstreams shall not mix.
5. Laminar Flow: Airflow through the ERV core shall be laminar over the products entire operating airflow range, avoiding deposition of particulates on the interior of the energy exchange plate material.

D. Construction

1. The energy recovery component shall be of fixed-plate cross-flow construction, with no moving parts.
2. No condensate drain pans or drains shall be allowed and unit shall be capable of operating in both winter and summer conditions without generating condensate.
3. The unit case shall be constructed of G90 galvanized, 20-gauge steel, with lapped corners and zinc plated screw fasteners. The unit roof shall be one piece or have watertight standing seam joints and shall overlap wall panels and doors in order to positively shed water.
4. Access doors shall provide easy access to blowers, ERV cores, and filters. Doors shall have an airtight compression seal using closed cell foam gaskets rated for outdoor exposure. Pressure taps, with captive plugs, shall be provided allowing cross-core pressure measurement allowing for accurate airflow measurement.
5. Weather hoods shall be screened to exclude birds and animals. Inlet weather hoods shall be sized to maintain inlet velocities below 500 FPM and equipped with rain excluder baffles.
6. Case walls and doors shall be insulated with 1 inch, 4 pound density, foil/scrim faced, high-density fiberglass board insulation, providing a cleanable surface and eliminating the possibility of exposing the fresh air to glass fibers, and with minimum R-value of 4.3 ($\text{hr}\cdot\text{ft}^2\cdot\text{F}/\text{BTU}$).
7. The ERV cores shall be protected by a MERV-8 rated, 2" nominal, pleated, disposable filter in both airstreams.
8. Unit shall have single-point power connection and a single-point 24 VAC contactor control connection
9. Blower motors shall be Premium Efficiency, EISA compliant for energy efficiency. The blower motors shall be totally enclosed (TEFC) and shall be supplied with factory installed motor starters as noted on the schedule on the drawings. Direct drive models shall be EISA compliant for energy efficiency with open drip proof design and integral thermal protection.
10. Blowers shall be quiet running, forward curve type and be either direct drive or belt drive as scheduled. Belt drive motors shall be provided with adjustable pulleys and motor mounts allowing for blower speed adjustment, proper motor shaft orientation and proper belt tensioning.
11. The unit electrical box shall include a factory installed, non-fused disconnect switch and a 24 VAC, Class II transformer/relay package.
12. The ERV shall be provided "inverter-ready" allowing for applications of inverters supplied and installed by others

E. Options:

1. Provide unit and duct connection orientation per project schedule.
2. Provide double wall construction with 24-gauge galvanized steel liner.
3. Provide shaft grounding ring on motors with VFDs
4. Provide factory installed disconnect fuses.
5. Provide factory installed filter monitors for each airstream.
6. Provide MERV-13 filters for final installation after construction phase.
7. Provide factory installed Variable Frequency Drives where noted in the equipment schedule on the drawings allowing either preset or variable speed operation with appropriate 0-10 volt DC or DDC control signal.
8. Provide ECM controlled motors as noted in the equipment schedules allowing either preset speeds or variable speed operation with a 0-10 volt DC control signal.
9. Provide factory installed isolation dampers for either or both air streams as noted on the equipment schedules. The insulated dampers shall be of a low leakage design and shall not restrict the airstream, reducing airflow, in any way. The dampers shall be opened with a motor actuator powered by the standard unit transformer package and have a spring return for low off- position power consumption.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-to-air energy recovery equipment installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- E. Locate and orient unit to provide the shortest and most straight duct connections. Provide service clearances as indicated on the plans. Locate units distant from sound critical occupancies.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install floor-mounted air-to-air energy recovery equipment on concrete bases. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC".
- C. Suspended Units: Suspend and brace units from structural-steel support frame using threaded steel rods and spring hangers. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Division 23 Section vibration/seismic specification section.

- D. Install new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Sound Control: To control sound associated with the two blower outlets:
 - 1. Provide straight, gradual transition ductwork for a minimum of 2-1/2 duct diameters downstream from the blower outlet.
 - 2. Provide continuous acoustic insulation treatment of the duct until after the first elbow or tee.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Comply with requirements for ductwork specified in Division 23 Section "Ductwork."
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and Balancing: Test and Balancing may not begin until 100% of the installation is complete and fully functional.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- D. Air-to-air energy recovery equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-to-air energy recovery units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 237433

DEDICATED OUTDOOR-AIR UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-packaged dedicated outside air systems (DOAS).

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each dedicated outdoor-air unit.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include unit dimensions and weight.
 - 4. Include cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
 - 5. Fans:
 - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
 - c. Fan construction and accessories.
 - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
 - 6. Include certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 7. Include filters with performance characteristics.
 - 8. Include heat exchangers with performance characteristics.
 - 9. Include dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dedicated outdoor-air units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set for each unit.

1.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 920: Manufacturer to certify that performance ratings are in accordance with AHRI 920 if AHRI 920 certification program is not in place. Provide AHRI 920 certification if AHRI 920 certification program is in place.
- B. AHRI 260 or AMCA 311 Sound Performance Rating Certification: Test, rate, and label unit fan sound ratings in accordance with AHRI 260 or AMCA 311.
- C. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Test and rate fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency.
 1. Fan Aerodynamic Performance Rating: Test and rate fan performance in accordance with AMCA 210.
 2. AMCA Fan Aerodynamic Certification Rating: Test, rate, and label, in accordance with AMCA 211.
- D. Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test in accordance with AMCA 210 and rate in accordance with AMCA 99, AMCA 207, and AMCA 208.
- E. Fan Operating Limits: Classify fans in accordance with AMCA 99, Section 14.
- F. Damper Leakage and Air Performance:
 1. Damper Rating: Test and rate dampers for leakage and air performance in accordance with AMCA 510.
 2. AMCA Damper Certification: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 511.
- G. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- H. Refrigerant Coils: Factory tested to minimum 300 psig internal pressure and to minimum 300 psig internal pressure while under water, in accordance with AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an "NRTL" (nationally recognized testing laboratory) and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of units and components.
- C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 34 Compliance: For refrigeration system safety.
- E. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

- F. ASHRAE 84 Compliance: Comply with capacity ratings for energy-recovery equipment.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace components of dedicated outdoor-air units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Dedicated Outdoor-Air-Handling Units: Eighteen months from ship date.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Compressors: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Greenheck
 - 2. Trane (Basis of Design-Trane Model OAU)
 - 3. Modine
 - 4. Reznor
 - 5. Daikin
 - 6. Addison

2.2 GENERAL UNIT DESCRIPTION

- A. Unit(s) furnished and installed shall be packaged outdoor air unit(s) as scheduled on contract documents and described in these specifications. Unit(s) shall be designed for dehumidification, cooling and/or heating of 100% Outdoor Air. For dehumidification and cooling modes, the evaporator temperature shall be monitored, reported at unit controller. Compressor controls shall modulate capacity to maintain evaporator leaving set point. Hot Gas Bypass shall not be used to control compressor capacity. Compressor Hot Gas Reheat (HGRH) shall be factory installed. To prevent rehydration of evaporator condensate the reheat coil face shall be located a minimum of 6" downstream from the leaving face of the evaporator coil. Heating system shall include modulating controls. Compressor on-off only or primary heating on-off only controls shall not be acceptable control strategies.
- B. Unit(s) shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.
- C. Unit discharge airflow configuration shall be:
 - 1. Horizontal discharge through side of unit.

2.3 CABINET

- A. Cabinet panels: 2" double-wall foamed panel with thermal break construction throughout the indoor section of unit to provide nonporous, cleanable interior surfaces. All interior seams exposed to airflow shall be sealed.

- B. Insulation: 2" polyisocyanurate or 2" polyurethane injected foam metal encapsulated with no exposed edges. Initial R value of 6.6 per inch of thickness.
- C. Cabinet base shall be double wall construction designed to prevent trapping or ponding of water within the unit base. Cabinet base pan shall be insulated with 2" thick polyisocyanurate foam. Foam insulation shall be fully enclosed with galvanized steel insulation cover. Insulation shall not be applied to underside of unit base.
- D. Cabinet Base Rails: Side and end base rails shall include openings for forklift and tie-down access. To protect unit base from fork damage side rails shall include removable heavy gauge fork pockets.
- E. Shipping anchors attach to and/or through unit base rails. Straps over unit shall not be used to secure unit for shipping.
- F. Cabinet material interior and base rails: shall be G-90 zinc-coated galvanized steel. Material gauge shall be a minimum of 14-gauge for base rails, 16-gauge for structural members and 20-gauge for access doors and cabinet panels.
- G. Exterior Corrosion Protection: Exterior cabinet panels shall be a base coat of G-90 galvanized steel with both exterior and interior surfaces cleaned, phosphatized, and finished with a weather-resistant baked enamel finish. Unit's surface shall be in compliance with ASTM B117 salt spray testing at a minimum of 672-hour duration.
- H. Cabinet construction shall provide hinged panels providing easy access for all parts requiring routine service.
- I. Cabinet top cover shall be one piece construction or where seams exist, it shall be double-hemmed and gasket-sealed.
- J. Hinged Access Panels: Water- and air-tight hinged access panels shall provide access to all areas requiring routine service including air filters, heating section, electrical and control cabinet sections, optional ERV and power exhaust fan section, supply air fan section, evaporator and reheat coil sections. Insulated doors shall be constructed to allow the hinges to be reversed in the field.
- K. Hold-open devices shall be factory installed on all hinged front access doors. Chains shall not be used as hold-open devices.
- L. Latches with locking hasps or tool operated closure devices shall be factory installed on all hinged access panels.
- M. Drain Pan material shall be Type 304 Stainless steel drain and constructed to sloped in two directions to ensure positive drainage with corners exposed to standing water and drain fittings welded liquid tight to prevent leaks. Pan shall have a minimum depth of 2". Base of drain pan shall be insulated with 1" thick foam insulation.
- N. Provide openings either on side of unit or through the base for power, control, and gas connections.
- O. Cabinet shall include optional interior liner constructed of Type 304 stainless steel with sealed seams.

- P. Unit shall be equipped with a 6" filter rack upstream of the evaporator. Frame shall be field-adjustable to match any filter combination specified in the following section.

2.4 FANS AND MOTORS

- A. Indoor fans shall be high efficiency backward curved impeller.
- B. Indoor fans shall be direct drive with premium efficiency motors, statically and dynamically balanced, draw through.
- C. Outdoor fans shall be direct drive with premium efficiency motors, statically and dynamically balanced, draw through in the vertical discharge position.
- D. Provide shafts constructed of solid hot rolled steel, ground and polished, with keyway, and protectively coated with lubricating oil.

2.5 AIR FILTERS

- A. The Evaporator Inlet shall include a full complement of pleated media air filters. Filters shall be:
 - 1. 2" deep MERV 13.

2.6 DAMPERS

- A. Unit shall include a motor operated outdoor air damper constructed of galvanized steel.
- B. Damper blades shall be air foil design with rubber edge seals designed not to exceed a 4 CFM/SQ FT leakage rate exceeding ASHRAE 90.1 damper leakage requirements. Airfoil design Class 1A rated dampers are optional.
- C. Damper actuator shall be factory mounted and wired sealed spring return and either two-position or fully modulating.
- D. Dampers air velocity shall not exceed 2000 fpm.

2.7 DEHUMIDIFICATION/COOLING

A. COMPRESSORS

- 1. All units shall have direct-drive, scroll type compressors.
- 2. Digital Scroll Compressor:
 - a. Circuit One and Circuit Two
- 3. Motor shall be suction gas-cooled and shall have a voltage utilization range of plus or minus 10 percent of unit nameplate voltage.
- 4. Internal overloads shall be provided with the scroll compressors.
- 5. Each compressor shall have a crankcase heater to minimize the amount of liquid refrigerant present in the oil sump during off cycles.

6. Each compressor shall be mounted on rubber vibration isolators, to reduce the transmission of noise.
7. Provide each unit with 2 hermetically sealed refrigerant circuit(s) factory-supplied completely piped with liquid line filter-drier, liquid line charging port, suction and liquid line pressure ports, sight glass, and thermal expansion valve.
8. Provide each circuit with automatic reset high and low pressure and high temperature switches for safety control.

B. COILS

1. Evaporator, Condenser and Hot Gas Reheat coils shall be constructed with copper tubes mechanically bonded to configured aluminum plate fins.
2. Casings to be constructed with 18- or 16-gauge G90 galvanized steel or 16- or 14-gauge 304 L stainless steel.
3. Copper tube shall be C12200, ASTM B75, that is 050 light annealed tubing, with a minimum grain size of 0.015 to 0.035 mm. Tensile strength shall be a minimum of 34KSI, with a yield strength of 9-13KSI.
4. Aluminum fin shall be of the Series 1100, ASTM B209, with an H112 Temper.
5. Coils shall be factory leak tested in accordance ANSI/ASHRAE 15-1992 at a minimum pressure of 500 PSIG.
6. The condenser coil shall have a fin designed for ease of cleaning.
7. Evaporator coil shall include (six / four) rows of cooling interlaced for superior sensible and latent cooling with a maximum of 12 FPI for ease of cleaning.
8. Reheat coil shall be fully integrated into the supply airstream and be capable of delivering design supply air temperature.
9. To prevent re-hydration of condensate from evaporator coil, the evaporator coil face and the hot gas reheat coil face shall be separated by a minimum of six inches.
10. Coil Coating: Coil will have a flexible epoxy polymer e-coat uniformly applied to all coil surface areas with no material bridging between fins. The coating process will ensure complete coil encapsulation and a uniform dry film thickness from 0.6 – 1.2 mills on all surface areas including fin edges and meet 5b rating cross hatched adhesion per ASTM B3359- 93. Corrosion durability will be confirmed through testing with no less than 5,000 hours salt spray resistance per ASTM B117-90 using scribed aluminum test school coupons. The coil coating will meet the following test standards:
 - a. MIL-C-46168 Chemical Agent Resistance – DS2, HCL Gas.
 - b. CIDA-A-52474-A (GSA).
 - c. MIL-STD810F, Method 509.4 (Sand and Dust).
 - d. MIL-P-53084 (ME)-TACOM Approval.
 - e. MIL-DTL-12468 Decontamination Agent (STB).
 - f. DPG (Dugway Proving Grounds) Soil & Water Exposure Tests.
 - g. GM9540P-97 Accelerated Corrosion Test (120 cycles).
 - h. ASTMB117-G85 Modified Salt Spray (Fog) Testing-2,000 hours (tested by ARL for Lockheed Martin).
11. The unit(s) must comply per above - spray coatings not acceptable.
12. Condenser coil hail guards shall be factory installed.

C. CONDENSER SECTION

1. Outdoor Fans: Shall be direct drive vertical discharge design with low-noise corrosion resistant glass reinforced polypropylene props, powder coated wire discharge guards and electro-plated motor mounting brackets.
2. Fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced.

D. COMPRESSOR CAPACITY CONTROL

1. Electronic Control: (Requires Digital Scroll Compressor or Variable Speed Compressor be selected in compressor section of this specification). Compressor output capacity shall be controlled by the Main Control Module (refer to unit control and sequence sections of this specification).

2.8 ELECTRICAL RATINGS AND CONNECTIONS

1. All high voltage power components such as fuses, switches and contactors shall include a service personnel protection barrier or shall be a listed as touch-safe design.
2. Field wiring access to be provided thru unit base into isolated enclosure with removable cover.
3. Power wiring to be single point connection.
4. Wiring internal to the unit shall be colored and numbered for identification.
5. Unit shall be factory wired to field wiring terminal block mounted in isolated enclosure.
6. Factory wired main power disconnect and overcurrent device shall be rated for total unit connected power.
7. Unit SCCR rating shall be a minimum of 5kA.
8. Factory wired Voltage/Phase monitor shall be included as standard. In the event of any of the following, the units will be shut down and a fault code will be stored in the monitor for the most recent 25 faults. Upon correction of the fault condition the unit will reset and restart automatically.
 - a. Phase Unbalance Protection: Factory set 2% with a maximum adjustment of 3% in the field.
 - b. Over/Under/Brown Out Voltage Protection: +/-10% of nameplate voltage.
 - c. Phase Loss/Reversal.
9. Factory to mount and wire optional 120-volt convenience outlet. Field wiring of convenience outlet not acceptable.
10. All low voltage field wiring connections shall be made at factory installed low voltage terminal strip.

2.9 UNIT CONTROLS

- A. Main Control Module (MCM) shall be a microprocessor-based controller with resident control logic. Controller program logic shall include:
 1. Include single program with field selectable.
 2. Discharge Air control with unit conditioning modes enabled based on outdoor air conditions and controlled to maintain discharge air setpoints.
 3. Controller shall be integrated with BAS via Bacnet MS/TP.
- B. MCM shall:
 1. Prevent simultaneous operation of any conditioning modes.
 2. Accept separate setpoints for Occupied and Unoccupied states.
 3. Call for Dehumidification based on dew point setpoints. When no call for Dehumidification is present MCM shall control calls for Cooling, Heating and Economizer modes based on sensible or enthalpy temperature setpoints. MCM shall have an onboard clock and scheduling function for occupancy.

4. Include non-volatile memory to retain all programmed values without the use of a battery, in the event of a power failure.
5. Enable HGRH dehumidification and cooling modes and control modulation to maintain (discharge air temperature / space temperature).
 - a. Unit shall include minimum discharge air control.

C. System Sensors shall include:

1. Factory installed and wired Outdoor Air Temperature, Outdoor Air Humidity and Evaporator Leaving Air Temperature and factory furnished, field installed Discharge Air Temperature.
2. Units shall include exhaust air leaving temperature sensor.

D. System controls shall include:

1. Anti-cycle timing.
2. Minimum compressor run/off-times.
3. Smoke Detectors where scheduled on the drawings to sense (Return Air / Discharge Air / Return and Discharge Air) stream(s) shall be factory installed and wired.

2.10 OUTDOOR AIR SECTION ENERGY RECOVERY (ERV)

A. COMPOSITE ENERGY RECOVERY WHEEL

1. General Specifications:
 - a. The energy recovery cassette shall incorporate a rotary wheel in an insulated cassette frame complete with removable energy transfer media, seals, drive motor and drive belt.
 - b. Energy recovery wheel performance shall be AHRI 1060 certified and bear the AHRI certified label. Components that are independently tested or "rated in accordance with" shall not be acceptable. Manufacturer membership in AHRI is not an acceptable substitute. Certified components must be listed as active in the AHRI Directory. (www.ahridirectory.org)
 - c. The energy recovery cassette shall be an Underwriters Laboratory UR recognized component for fire and electrical safety and bear the UR symbol. Recognized components shall be listed in the UL directory. (<http://database.ul.com>)
 - d. The energy recovery cassette shall comply with NFPA 90A by virtue of UL standard 1812 and UL900 fire test for determination of flammability and smoke density.
 - e. The energy recovery cassette shall carry a 5-Year standard warranty on the entire cassette assembly (excluding the motor) from the date of shipment. Motors shall carry the manufacturer's standard 18 month warranty from the date of manufacture.
2. Cassette Frame and Wheel Construction:
 - a. Cassette frame and structural components shall be constructed of G90 galvanized steel for corrosion resistance.
 - b. Wheel structure shall consist of a welded hub, spoke and continuous rolled rim assembly of stainless steel, and shall be self-supporting without energy transfer segments present.

- c. Wheel structure shall be connected to the shaft by means of taper lock bushings.
 - d. Wheel bearings shall be permanently sealed and selected for a minimum 30-year L-10 life of 400,000 hours. Bearings requiring external grease fittings or periodic maintenance are not acceptable.
 - e. Standard cassettes may be affixed within the cabinet in any orientation without the need for factory modification.
3. Energy Transfer Media:
- a. Energy transfer media shall be constructed of a durable synthetic lightweight polymer.
 - b. Media shall be wound continuously with one flat and one structural layer in an ideal parallel plate geometry. Airflow across heat exchanger surface shall remain laminar.
 - c. Energy transfer media shall not exceed 3" in depth.
 - d. Energy transfer media shall be suitable for use in corrosive, marine or coastal environments without the need for additional coatings.
4. Coatings and Desiccant:
- a. Desiccant shall be either silica gel or molecular sieve and permanently bonded to the energy transfer media without the use of binders or adhesives, which may degrade desiccant performance. Desiccants not permanently bonded are not acceptable due to potential delamination or erosion of the desiccant from the energy transfer media.
 - b. Desiccant shall be non-migrating, nor shall it dissolve or deliquesce in the presence of water or high humidity.
 - c. Energy transfer media shall be capable of repeated washing without significant degradation of the desiccant bond as documented by an independent third party.
 - d. Removable Energy Transfer Segments.
 - e. Wheels 25" in diameter and greater shall be provided with removable energy transfer segments.
 - f. Segments shall be removable without the use of tools to facilitate maintenance and cleaning.
5. Seals:
- a. All diameter and perimeter seals shall be provided as part of the cassette assembly and shall be factory set.
 - b. Seals shall be non-contact nylon pile brush seal orientated in a labyrinth style configuration.
 - c. Diameter Seals shall be fully adjustable and easily accessible.
 - d. Perimeter seals shall be permanently mounted to the wheel rim and not require adjustment. Seals that mount to the frame are not acceptable.
6. Drive System:
- a. The wheel drive motor shall be an Underwriters Laboratory Recognized Component and shall be mounted in the cassette frame and supplied with a service connector or junction box.
 - b. Three phase motors shall be suitable for use in both standard and inverter rated applications.
 - c. Wheels 52" and smaller shall use a urethane stretch belt for wheel rim drive without the need for external tensioners.

- d. Wheels 58" and larger shall use a urethane non-stretch belt with integral cord and constant tensioner.
 - e. Wheel drive system shall not require periodic adjustment.
7. Maintenance:
- a. Energy recovery segments shall be cleanable outside of the cabinet with detergent or alkaline coil cleaner and water.
 - b. Energy transfer segments shall be capable of submersion in a cleaning solution. Submersion shall be capable of restoring latent performance to within AHRI certified performance limits.
8. Purge:
- a. A mechanical purge shall be available as an optional accessory to avoid excessive fan power.
 - b. When required the mechanical purge sector shall be factory installed and field adjustable.
 - c. Purge settings shall be calculated using AHRI certified data and adjusted per the wheel manufacturer's selection software.
 - d. Purge shall be capable of limiting Exhaust Air Transfer Ratio (EATR) values to 0.4% through proper fan and purge adjustment.

B. SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

1. Building Automation System Interface:
- a. The Building Automation System (BAS) shall send the controller Occupied Bypass, Morning Warm-up/Pre-Cool, Occupied/Unoccupied and Heat/Cool modes. The BAS shall also send the discharge air temperature setpoint and the duct static pressure setpoint. If a BAS is not present, or communication is lost with the BAS the controller shall operate using default modes and setpoints.
2. Occupied:
- a. During occupied periods, the supply fan and relief fan shall run continuously, and the outside air and relief dampers shall open. The unit controller shall control the supply fan speed to maintain the current supply duct static pressure setpoint (adj.). The unit controller shall control the relief fan speed to maintain a constant volume (adj.).
3. Unoccupied:
- a. Space conditions shall be communicated via BAS or a hardwire space/temperature humidity sensor. Unoccupied starting sequence shall begin when the Unoccupied Heating, Cooling, or Dehumidification Mode is enabled. Otherwise, the unit shall remain dormant with the supply fan disabled. Supply Fan Startup sequence is identical to occupied operation. The outdoor air damper shall be commanded to close, and the return air damper shall open. If the unit is under Economizer conditions, the Outdoor Air Damper Position Command shall open to the Outdoor Air Damper Maximum Position Setpoint.

4. Cooling:
 - a. Cooling Mode shall be enabled whenever the Outdoor Air Temperature rises above the Outdoor Air Cooling Enable Setpoint. The Outdoor Air Temperature shall be above the Outdoor Air Heating Enable Setpoint. During Cooling Mode, Cooling Capacity shall be adjusted to maintain Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint. Dehumidification Mode shall take priority over Cooling Mode. On units without head pressure control, the compressors shall be locked out if the Outdoor Air Temperature falls below the Compressor Low Ambient Lockout Setpoint and there is a demand for cooling. When this occurs, the unit shall display Compressor Low Ambient Lockout Active as an informational diagnostic. Circuit 1 refrigeration pressure shall be monitored, and Cooling Capacity shall be limited to prevent the indoor coil from freezing. If the unit has digital scroll on the second circuit, then both circuits shall be monitored.
5. Primary Heating:
 - a. Heating Mode shall be enabled whenever the Outdoor Air Temperature is below the Outdoor Air Heating Enable Setpoint. During Heating Mode, Heat Capacity shall be adjusted to maintain the Discharge Air Temperature to Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint.
6. Dehumidification:
 - a. Dehumidification Mode shall be enabled whenever the Outdoor Air Dewpoint rises above the Outdoor Air Dewpoint Enable Setpoint. The Outdoor Air Temperature Active must be above Outdoor Air Heating Enable Setpoint. During Dehumidification Mode, Cooling Capacity shall be adjusted to maintain the Dehumidification Temperature Setpoint (adjustable). Hot Gas Reheat Valve Command shall be adjusted to maintain Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint . If the Hot Gas Reheat Valve Command is at 100%, the hot water valve shall be energized with Heating Capacity at 0%. If Heat Capacity rises above 0%, the Hot Gas Reheat Valve Command shall be locked at 100% and the hot water shall be used to maintain the Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint.
7. Economizer:
 - a. Economizer Mode shall be enabled during Cooling Mode when the Outdoor Air Enthalpy falls below Return Air Enthalpy and the Outdoor Air Temperature Active is below 80°F. The Economizer Mode shall continue with a deadband of 3 BTU/lb, and 1°F for temperature. If the unit is not in Free Cooling Mode during Economizer Mode, the unit shall open the outdoor air damper to the Outdoor Air Damper Maximum Position Setpoint. Mechanical cooling shall not be locked out unless the unit is in Free Cooling Mode.
 - b. Free Cooling Mode shall be enabled when the unit is in Economizer Mode and the Outdoor Air Temperature Active is cooler than five degrees below the Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint. During Free Cooling Mode, mechanical cooling shall be locked out and the unit adjusts the outdoor air damper position to maintain the Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint.
8. Energy Recovery Wheel Operation:
 - a. The Energy Recovery Wheel (ERV) Start Stop Command shall be enabled whenever the unit is enabled. During Ventilation Mode or Economizer Mode the ERV shall be disabled, except during the cleaning cycle, which occurs for two

minutes every thirty minutes. During Economizer Mode and Ventilation Mode the ERV bypass dampers shall be locked in the open position. The unit prevents frost accumulation on the ERV by measuring the differential pressure across the inlet and the outlet of the energy recovery wheel. If the outdoor air temperature is below 5 deg. F (adj.) and the differential pressure across the energy recovery wheel is at 1.5 inches of water (adj.), the energy wheel variable speed drive shall slow down to defrost the wheel. The unit controller shall maintain the Relief Leaving Temperature by modulating the Energy Recovery Outdoor Air Bypass Position Command open. During normal operation, the VSD is at 100% (full speed) and the bypass damper is at 0% (closed). The energy wheel shall resume normal operational speed when the pressure drop decreases to below the pressure switch setpoint (factory set) or the outdoor air temperature has risen above the energy wheel outside air leaving temperature setpoint.

9. Ventilation:

- a. Ventilation Mode shall be enabled when the Outdoor Air Temperature is between the Outdoor Air Cooling Enable Setpoint and the Outdoor Air Heating Enable Setpoint. During Ventilation Mode, heating and cooling shall be locked out and the unit shall supply un-conditioned air. Ventilation Mode shall be locked out whenever the unit is in Dehumidification Mode.

10. Supply Fan Operation:

- a. When the unit becomes occupied, the outdoor air damper shall open. When the outdoor air damper is completely open the damper end switch shall close indicating the damper is fully open and the supply fan sequence can begin. When the fan start sequence has begun, the unit controller shall command the variable speed drive for the supply fan to 50%. A supply fan status switch shall prove fan status. If after 2 minutes (adj.) the fan does not have a proven signal, the Supply Fan Failure alarm shall be displayed and the unit shall shutdown requiring a manual reset. After the startup sequence, the unit controller shall control the speed of the supply fan to maintain a Supply Duct Static Pressure Setpoint. If the supply duct static pressure reaches 3.00 inches of W.C. (adj.), the high limit pressure switch shall shut down the unit, requiring a manual reset to re-start the unit. Supply and relief fans are interlocked via software; a failure of either shall disable both.

11. Static Pressure High Limit:

- a. If for any reason the supply air pressure exceeds the supply air pressure high limit, the supply fan shall shut down. The unit shall be allowed to restart three times after a 15 minute off period. If the over-pressurization condition occurs on the fourth restart, the unit shall shut down and a manual reset diagnostic is displayed at the remote panel and/or the BAS system.

12. Filter Status:

- a. A differential pressure switch shall monitor the differential pressure across the filter(s) when the fan is running. If the switch closes during normal operation a dirty filter alarm shall annunciate at the BAS.

13. Smoke Detector Shutdown:

- a. The unit shall shut down in response to a signal from the smoke detector indicating the presence of smoke. The smoke detector shall be interlocked to the unit through

the dry contacts of the smoke detector. A manual reset of the smoke detector shall be required to restart the unit.

14. Condensate Overflow Shutdown:

- a. The unit shall shut down in response to a signal from the condensate overflow sensor. The sensor shall be interlocked to the unit cooling controller for immediate shutdown of cooling.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping, ducts, and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roof curbs and equipment supports for suitable conditions where units will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Protect unit interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with Section 233113 "Ductwork" Paragraph: Field Quality Control.
- B. Roof Curb: Provide on roof structure, level and secure, in accordance with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems". Provide units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction with Division 7. Secure units to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs with actual equipment provided.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 1. Install ducts to termination in roof curb. Provide flexible connectors.
 2. Decking shall be maintained inside the RTU roof curb to a clearance of ¼" maximum around all duct drops but never contact the duct.
 3. Pack all air gaps around duct drops for return and supply with HUSH BATT™ and seal with HUSH SEALANT™ HSAC-100.
 4. The manufacturer or their local authorized agent shall inspect the in-curb deck system work on site prior to lowering of the units and issue a letter of certification stating that the products have been properly installed and sealed around all ductwork and drops to eliminate air gaps which can compromise performance.
- D. Unit Support: Provide unit level on structural steel supports. Coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts. Coordinate sizes and locations of steel supports with actual equipment provided.

- E. Provide filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.
- F. Provide separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.
- G. Provide new filters at completion of equipment installation and before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to units, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Hydronic Piping Connections:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic HVAC Piping".
 - 2. Provide shutoff valve and union or flange on each supply connection and install balancing valve and union or flange on each return connection.
- E. Duct Connections:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Ductwork"
 - 2. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts.
 - 3. Connect ducts to units with flexible duct connectors.

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring in accordance with Division 26.
- B. Ground equipment in accordance with Division 26.
- C. Provide electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, in accordance with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Provide nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.
- E. Provide control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices. Connect control wiring in accordance Division 26.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup-checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Inspect units for visible damage to refrigerant compressor, condenser and evaporator coils, and fans.
 - 3. Start refrigeration system when outdoor-air temperature is within normal operating limits. and measure and record the following:
 - a. Cooling coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - b. Cooling coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
 - c. Condenser coil entering-air dry-bulb temperature.
 - d. Condenser coil leaving-air dry-bulb temperature.
 - 4. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
 - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
 - b. Short-circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outdoor-air intake.
 - 5. Inspect casing insulation for integrity, moisture content, and adhesion.
 - 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 - 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 - 8. Verify that filters are installed.
 - 9. Clean coils and inspect for construction debris.
 - 10. Inspect and adjust vibration isolators.
 - 11. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - 12. Clean fans and inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
 - 13. Start unit.
 - 14. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices, including response to smoke detectors by fan controls and fire alarm.
 - 15. Operate unit for run-in period.
 - 16. Calibrate controls.
 - 17. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
 - 18. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
 - 19. Verify operational sequence of controls.
 - 20. Measure and record the following airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
 - a. Supply-air volume.
 - b. Relief-air flow.
 - c. Outdoor-air flow.
- B. After startup, change filters, verify bearing lubrication, and adjust belt tension.
- C. Remove and replace components that do not properly operate and repeat startup procedures as specified above.
- D. Prepare written report of the results of startup services.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Cleaning:
 - 1. Comply with Section 233113 "Ductwork" Paragraph: Field Quality Control.
 - 2. After completing system installation; testing, adjusting, and balancing unit and air-distribution systems; and completing startup service, clean units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, casings, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
 - 2. Charge refrigerant coils with refrigerant and test for leaks.
 - 3. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Testing of Drain Pans. To minimize conditions of water stagnation that may result in microbial growth, inspect drain pans to verify proper drainage under operating conditions.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238129

VARIABLE-REFRIGERANT-FLOW HVAC SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes complete variable refrigerant flow (VRF) HVAC systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Heat-Pump System Operation: System capable of operation with all zones in either heating or cooling, but not with simultaneous heating and cooling zones that transfer heat between zones.
- B. Two-Pipe System Design: One refrigerant vapor line and one refrigerant liquid line connect a single outdoor unit or multiple manifold outdoor units in a single system to associated system manifolds. One refrigerant liquid line and refrigerant vapor line connect manifolds to associated indoor units.
- C. VRF: Variable refrigerant flow.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for indoor and outdoor units and for HRCUs.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Include operating performance at design conditions and at extreme maximum and minimum outdoor ambient conditions.
 - 4. Include description of system controllers, dimensions, features, control interfaces and connections, power requirements, and connections.
 - 5. Include system operating sequence of operation in narrative form for each unique indoor-and outdoor-unit and HRCU control.
 - 6. Include description of control software features.
 - 7. Include total refrigerant required and a comprehensive breakdown of refrigerant required by each system installed.
 - 8. Include refrigerant type and data sheets showing compliance with requirements indicated.
 - 9. For system design software.
 - 10. Indicate location and type of service access.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittals: Refrigerant piping layout and design shall be by unit manufacturer.
1. Include design calculations with corresponding diagram of refrigerant piping and tubing sizing for each system installed.
 2. Include calculations showing that system travel distance for refrigerant piping and controls cabling are within horizontal and vertical travel distances set by manufacturer. Provide a comparison table for each system installed.
 3. Include diagrams and details of refrigerant piping and tubing showing installation requirements for manufacturer-furnished divided flow fittings.
 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 5. Size piping system, using a software program acceptable to manufacturer, to provide performance requirements indicated.
 6. Consider requirements to accommodate future change requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VRF HVAC systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:
1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 2. In-place facility located within a 2-hour drive.
 3. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
 4. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
 5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
 6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
 7. Product parts inventory to support ongoing system operation for a period of not less than five years after Substantial Completion.
 8. VRF HVAC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
1. Each employee shall be certified by manufacturer for proper installation of systems, including, but not limited to, equipment, piping, controls, and accessories indicated and furnished for installation.
 2. Installer certification shall be valid and current for duration of Project.
 3. Retain copies of Installer certificates on-site and make available on request.
 4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience. Demonstrated past experience with products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid. Demonstrated past experience on five projects of similar complexity, scope, and value.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store products in a clean and dry place.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.
- C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.
- D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
 - 1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
 - 2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remove coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
- E. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures.
 - b. Faulty operation.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
 - 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts, Including Controls: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following (only):
 - 1. Mitsubishi
 - 2. Samsung
 - 3. Trane
 - 4. Daikin

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Direct-expansion (DX) VRF HVAC systems with variable capacity in response to varying cooling and heating loads. System shall consist of multiple indoor units, outdoor units, controls, and electrical power to make complete operating system) complying with requirements indicated.
 - 1. Two-pipe system design.
 - 2. Systems operation, heat pump as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Each system with one refrigerant circuit shared by all indoor units connected to system.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. AHRI Compliance: System and equipment performance certified according to AHRI 1230 and products listed in AHRI directory.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15: For safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
 - 2. ASHRAE 62.1: For indoor air quality.
 - 3. ASHRAE 135: For control network protocol with remote communication.
 - 4. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: For system and component energy efficiency.
- E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional specialist to design complete and operational VRF HVAC systems complying with requirements indicated.
 - 1. Provide system refrigerant calculations.
 - a. Refrigerant concentration limits shall be within allowable limits of ASHRAE 15 and governing codes.
 - b. Indicate compliance with manufacturer's maximum vertical and horizontal travel distances. Prepare a comparison table for each system showing calculated distances compared to manufacturer's maximum allowed distances.
 - 2. System Controls:
 - a. Network arrangement.
 - b. Network interface with other building systems.
 - c. Product selection.
 - d. Sizing.
- B. Service Access:
 - 1. Provide and document service access requirements.
 - 2. Locate equipment, system isolation valves, and other system components that require service and inspection in easily accessible locations. Avoid locations that are difficult to access if possible.

3. Where serviceable components are installed behind walls and above inaccessible ceilings, provide finished assembly with access doors or panels to gain access. Properly size the openings to allow for service, removal, and replacement.
4. If less than full and unrestricted access is provided, locate components within an 18-inch reach of the finished assembly.
5. Where ladder access is required to service elevated components, provide an installation that provides for sufficient access within ladder manufacturer's written instructions for use.
6. Comply with OSHA regulations.

C. System Design and Installation Requirements:

1. Design and install systems indicated according to manufacturer's recommendations and written instructions.
2. Where manufacturer's requirements differ from requirements indicated, contact Architect for direction. The most stringent requirements should apply unless otherwise directed in writing by Architect.

D. System Adaptability to Future Changes: Arrange and size system refrigerant piping to accommodate future changes to system without having to resize and replace existing refrigerant piping.

1. Future changes to system if indicated on Drawings.
2. Each branch circuit shall accommodate addition of two indoor units with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.
3. Each branch circuit shall accommodate deletion of two indoor units with unit capacity equal to average indoor unit connected to the branch circuit.

E. Isolation of Equipment: Provide isolation valves to isolate each HRCU, indoor unit and outdoor unit for service, removal, and replacement without interrupting system operation.

F. System Capacity Ratio: The sum of connected capacity of all indoor units shall be 100% maximum.

G. System Turndown: Stable operation down to 20 percent of outdoor-unit capacity.

H. System Auto Refrigerant Charge: Each system shall have an automatic refrigerant charge function to ensure the proper amount of refrigerant is installed in system.

I. Outdoor Conditions:

1. Suitable for outdoor ambient conditions encountered.
2. Provide corrosion-resistant coating for components and supports where located in coastal or industrial climates that are known to be harmful to materials and finishes.

J. Thermal Movements: Allow for controlled thermal movements from ambient, surface, and system temperature changes.

2.4 INDOOR UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to ductwork, piping, power, and controls field connections.

- B. Wall & Ceiling Cassette Cabinet: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
1. Material: Painted steel, or coated steel frame covered by a plastic cabinet, with an architectural acceptable finish suitable for tenant occupancy on exposed surfaces.
 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard internal insulation to provide thermal resistance and prevent condensation.
 3. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
 4. Internal Access: Removable panels of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
- C. DX Coil Assembly:
1. Coil Casing: Aluminum, galvanized, or stainless steel.
 2. Coil Fins: Aluminum, mechanically bonded to tubes, with arrangement required by performance.
 3. Coil Tubes: Copper, of diameter and thickness required by performance.
 4. Expansion Valve: Electronic modulating type with linear or proportional characteristics.
 5. Unit Internal Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
 6. Unit Internal Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.
 7. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
 8. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
 9. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.
- D. Drain Assembly:
1. Pan: Non-ferrous material, with bottom sloped to low point drain connection.
 2. Condensate Removal: Unit-mounted pump or other integral lifting mechanism, capable of lifting drain water to an elevation above top of cabinet. Pump shall be Blue Diamond mini condensate pump with reservoir and sensor, model X87-721 or approved equal.
 3. Field Piping Connection: Non-ferrous material.
- E. Fan and Motor Assembly:
1. Fan(s):
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Single or multiple fans connected to a common motor shaft and driven by a single motor.
 - c. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion-resistant finish.
 - d. Wheels statically and dynamically balanced.
 2. Motor: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings.
 3. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 4. Speed Settings and Control: Two (low, high), three (low, medium, high), or more than three speed settings or variable speed with a speed range of least 50 percent.
 5. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Filter Assembly:
1. Access: Bottom, side, or rear to accommodate field installation without removing ductwork and to accommodate filter replacement without need for tools.

2. Efficiency: ASHRAE 52.2, MERV 7.
3. Media: Manufacturer's standard filter with antimicrobial treatment.

G. Unit Controls:

1. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
2. Factory-Installed Sensors:
 - a. Unit inlet air temperature.
 - b. Coil entering refrigerant temperature.
 - c. Coil leaving refrigerant temperature.
3. Field-Customizable I/O Capability:
 - a. Analog Inputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - b. Digital Inputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
 - c. Digital Outputs: Three for use in customizable control strategies.
4. Features and Functions:
 - a. Self-diagnostics.
 - b. Time delay.
 - c. Auto-restart.
 - d. External static pressure control.
 - e. Auto operation mode.
 - f. Manual operation mode.
 - g. Filter service notification.
 - h. Power consumption display.
 - i. Drain assembly high water level safety shutdown and notification.
 - j. Run test switch.
5. Communication: Network communication with other indoor and outdoor units.
6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.

H. Unit Electrical:

1. Enclosure: Metal, suitable for indoor locations.
2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power unit and integral controls.
3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch.
4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in raceways.

2.5 OUTDOOR, AIR-SOURCE HEAT PUMP UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested complete unit with components, piping, wiring, and controls required for mating to piping, power, and controls field connections.

1. Systems shall consist of one unit, or multiple unit modules that are designed by variable refrigerant system manufacturer for field interconnection to make a single refrigeration circuit that connects multiple indoor units.
 2. All units installed shall be from the same product development generation.
- B. Cabinet:
1. Galvanized steel and coated with a corrosion-resistant finish. Coating with documented salt spray test performance of 1000 hours according to ASTM B117 surface scratch test (SST) procedure.
 2. Mounting: Manufacturer-designed provisions for field installation.
 3. Internal Access: Removable panels or hinged doors of adequate size for field access to internal components for inspection, cleaning, service, and replacement.
- C. Compressor and Motor Assembly:
1. One or more positive-displacement, direct-drive and hermetically sealed scroll compressors with inverter drive and turndown to 15 percent of rated capacity.
 2. Protection: Integral protection against the following:
 - a. High refrigerant pressure.
 - b. Low oil level.
 - c. High oil temperature.
 - d. Thermal and overload.
 - e. Voltage fluctuations.
 - f. Phase failure and phase reversal.
 - g. Short cycling.
 3. Speed Control: Variable to automatically maintain refrigerant suction and condensing pressures while varying refrigerant flow to satisfy system cooling and heating loads.
 4. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
 5. Oil management system to ensure safe and proper lubrication over entire operating range.
 6. Crankcase heaters with integral control to maintain safe operating temperature.
 7. Fusible plug.
- D. Condenser Coil Assembly:
1. Aluminum Microchannel Coils: Series of flat tubes containing a series of multiple, parallel-flow microchannels layered between refrigerant header manifolds. Single- or multiple-pass arrangement. Construct fins, tubes, and header manifolds of aluminum alloy.
 2. Coating: Seacoast corrosion resistant.
 3. Hail Protection: Provide condenser coils with louvers, baffles, or hoods to protect against hail damage.
- E. Condenser Fan and Motor Assembly:
1. Fans: Propeller type.
 - a. Direct-drive arrangement.
 - b. Fabricated from non-ferrous components or ferrous components with corrosion protection finish to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
 - c. Statically and dynamically balanced.

2. Fan Guards: Removable safety guards complying with OSHA regulations. If using metal materials, coat with corrosion-resistant coating to match performance indicated for condenser coil.
 3. Motors: Brushless dc or electronically commutated with permanently lubricated bearings and rated for outdoor duty.
 4. Motor Protection: Integral protection against thermal, overload, and voltage fluctuations.
 5. Speed Settings and Control: Variable speed with a speed range of least 75 percent.
 6. Vibration Control: Integral isolation to dampen vibration transmission.
- F. Drain Pan: If required by manufacturer's design, provide unit with non-ferrous drain pan with bottom sloped to a low point drain connection.
- G. Unit Controls:
1. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
 2. Factory-Installed Controller: Configurable digital control.
 3. Factory-Installed Sensors:
 - a. Refrigerant suction temperature.
 - b. Refrigerant discharge temperature.
 - c. Outdoor air temperature.
 - d. Refrigerant high pressure.
 - e. Refrigerant low pressure.
 - f. Oil level.
 4. Features and Functions: Self-diagnostics, time delay, auto-restart, fuse protection, auto operation mode, manual operation mode, night setback control, power consumption display, run test switch equalize run time between multiple same components.
 5. Communication: Network communication with indoor units and other outdoor unit(s).
 6. Cable and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
 7. Field Connection: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
- H. Unit Electrical:
1. Enclosure: Metal, similar to enclosure, and suitable for unprotected outdoor locations.
 2. Field Connection: Single point connection to power entire unit and integral controls.
 3. Disconnecting Means: Factory-mounted circuit breaker or switch, complying with NFPA 70.
 4. Control Transformer: Manufacturer's standard. Coordinate requirements with field power supply.
 5. Wiring: Manufacturer's standard with each connection labeled and corresponding to a unit-mounted wiring diagram.
 6. Raceways: Enclose line voltage wiring in raceways to comply with NFPA 70.
- I. Unit Hardware: Zinc-plated steel, or stainless steel. Coat exposed surfaces with additional corrosion-resistant coating if required to prevention corrosion when exposed to salt spray test for 1000 hours according to ASTM B117.
- J. Unit Piping:
1. Unit Tubing: Copper tubing with brazed joints.
 2. Unit Tubing Insulation: Manufacturer's standard insulation, of thickness to prevent condensation.

3. Field Piping Connections: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Factory Charge: Dehydrated air or nitrogen.
5. Testing: Factory pressure tested and verified to be without leaks.

2.6 SYSTEM CONTROLS

A. General Requirements:

1. Network: Indoor units, HRCUs, and outdoor units shall include integral controls and connect through a manufacturer-selected control network.
2. Network Communication Protocol: Manufacturer proprietary or open control communication between interconnected units.
3. Integration with Building Automation System: BACnet IP and certified by BACnet Testing Lab (BTL), including the following:
 - a. Ethernet connection via RJ-45 connectors and port with transmission at 100 Mbps or higher.
 - b. Integration devices shall be connected to local uninterruptible power supply unit(s) to provide at least 5 minutes of battery backup operation after a power loss.
 - c. Integration shall include control, monitoring, scheduling, and change of value notifications.
4. Operator Interface:
 - a. Operators shall interface with system and unit controls through the following:
 - 1) Operator interfaces integral to controllers.
 - 2) Web interface through web browser software.
 - 3) Integration with Building Automation System.
 - b. Users shall be capable of interface with controllers for indoor units control to extent privileges are enabled. Control features available to users shall include the following:
 - 1) On/off control.
 - 2) Temperature set-point adjustment.

B. Central Controllers (TE-200):

1. Centralized control for all indoor and outdoor units from a single central controller location. Include multiple interconnected controllers as required.
2. Controls operation mode of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units. Operation modes available through central controller shall match those operation modes of controllers for indoor units.
3. Schedule operation of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.
 - a. Sets schedule for daily, weekly, and annual events.
 - b. Schedule options available through central controller shall at least include the schedule options of controllers for indoor units.
4. Changes operating set points of indoor units as individual units, by selected groups of indoor units, or as collection of all indoor units.

5. Optimized-start feature to start indoor units before scheduled time to reach temperature set-point at scheduled time based on operating history.
6. Night setback feature to operate indoor units at energy-conserving heating and cooling temperature set-points during unoccupied periods.
7. Service diagnostics tool.
8. Able to disable and enable operation of individual controllers for indoor units.
9. Information displayed on individual controllers shall also be available for display through central controller.
10. Information displayed for outdoor units, including refrigerant high and low pressures.
11. Multiple RJ-45 ports for direct connection to a local PC and an Ethernet network switch.
12. Operator interface through a backlit, high-resolution color display touch panel and web accessible through standard web browser software.
13. Provide integration to BAS via Bacnet MS/TP.

C. Wired Controllers for Indoor Units (TAC-YT53CRAU-J):

1. Single controller capable of controlling multiple indoor units as group.
2. Auto Timeout Touch Screen LCD: Timeout duration shall be adjustable.
3. On/Off: Turns indoor unit on or off.
4. Hold: Hold operation settings until hold is released.
5. Operation Mode: Cool, Heat, Auto, Dehumidification, Fan Only, and Setback.
6. Temperature Display: 1-degree increments.
7. Temperature Set-Point: Separate set points for Cooling, Heating, and Setback. Adjustable in 1-degree increments between.
8. Relative Humidity Display: 1 percent increments.
9. Relative Humidity Set-Point: Adjustable in 1 percent increments.
10. Fan Speed Setting: Select between available options furnished with the unit.
11. Airflow Direction Setting: If applicable to unit, select between available options furnished with the unit.
12. Seven-day programmable operating schedule with up to five events per day. Operations shall include On/Off, Operation Mode, and Temperature Set-Point.
13. Auto Off Timer: Operates unit for an adjustable time duration and then turns unit off.
14. Occupancy detection.
15. Service Notification Display: "Filter".
16. Service Run Tests: Limit use by service personnel to troubleshoot operation.
17. Error Code Notification Display: Used by service personnel to troubleshoot abnormal operation and equipment failure.
18. User and Service Passwords: Capable of preventing adjustments by unauthorized users.
19. Setting stored in nonvolatile memory to ensure that settings are not lost if power is lost. Battery backup for date and time only.
20. Low-voltage power required for controller shall be powered through non-polar connections to indoor unit.

- D. Provide external heater adapters: Mitsubishi CN24RELAY-KIT-CM3; connect to the indoor unit and shall send a signal to the backup heat (perimeter heating) when the indoor temperature drops below setpoint by 2°F (adj.). Not required for units that don't have associated perimeter heating.

2.7 Sequence of Operation: VRF Indoor Unit

A. Building Automation System Interface:

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) will allow the user to monitor the status of Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) terminal units, outdoor units, and secondary VRF

equipment, and modify control parameters of terminal units and secondary VRF equipment as necessary to maintain the desired space conditions.

2. If communication between the VRF equipment and the BAS is lost, the VRF system will continue to operate using the current control parameters stored within the equipment to maintain the desired space conditions.

B. External Control Device:

1. In this specification the term 'external control device' is used to denote one or more user interface control devices that may be present in the system. The control devices that may be present are a Local Control device, VRF System Control device, or a Building Automation System. When more than one external control device is present in the control system, the last command or configuration value received by the indoor unit governs indoor unit operation.
2. There may be other means to provide commands and configuration parameters to the VRF system, such as hardwired control inputs. However, these are not considered the typical system control use case and the specification does not address them as written.

C. On/Off Mode:

1. The terminal unit has two modes that drive the overall operation of the unit, On and Off mode.
2. On. The internal algorithm will control the unit to maintain the desired zone air temperature.
3. Off. The internal algorithm will NOT control the unit to maintain the desired zone air temperature. The algorithm will control components internal to the unit to minimize energy consumption and isolate it from VRF system refrigerant circuit. The zone air temperature sensor in use will be monitored to allow the Zone Air Temperature Value to be displayed at an External Control Device(s).

D. Operation Mode:

1. Operation mode is the primary control parameter of the indoor unit when it is in the On state. The operation mode command provided to the indoor unit from an external control device will determine the base HVAC control function the indoor unit is providing. Available modes of operation are Cool, Dry, Fan, Heat, Setback, and Auto.
2. Cool. When the terminal unit Operation Mode is the Cool state, liquid refrigerant is provided to the terminal unit. The amount of refrigerant entering the evaporator coil is regulated by the Linear Expansion Valve. The position of LEV is determined by an algorithm internal to the terminal unit. The algorithm calculates the temperature difference value between the measured zone air temperature value and the Cooling Temperature Setpoint value. When a large difference value exists, the LEV is driven open to allow more refrigerant into the evaporator coil. As the zone air temperature decreases the difference value becomes less. The algorithm will respond and drive the LEV to more closed position reducing the amount of refrigerant entering into the evaporator coil. As the difference value approaches zero, the system stabilizes and the amount of LEV modulation is minimal.
3. Dry. When the terminal unit Operation Mode is the Dry state, liquid refrigerant is provided to the terminal unit. The amount of refrigerant entering the evaporator coil is regulated by the Linear Expansion Valve. The goal in Dry mode is to remove water vapor from the air, not control the zone air temperature value to a zone temperature setpoint. When the terminal unit is commanded to the Dry state, an algorithm internal to the terminal unit drives the LEV to an open position. It is assumed that the position of the valve allows a sufficient amount of refrigerant to enter the coil, to cause the surface temperature of the

- coil fins to fall below the dew point temperature. The result is condensation that removes water vapor from the air passing through the coil.
4. When the zone air temperature value is greater than or equal to the Cooling Temperature Setpoint, Dry state is beneficial from both a humidity and zone temperature perspective because water vapor is being removed from the air in the zone and the difference value between the zone air temperature value and the Cooling Temperature Setpoint value is reduced.
 5. Continued dehumidification will cause the zone air temperature value to become less than the Cooling Temperature Setpoint, which is undesirable. To combat the effect, the algorithm calculates the temperature difference value between the zone air temperature value and Cooling Temperature Setpoint. Based on the difference value, the algorithm uses a sliding time scale method to modulate the LEV between the open position and the fully closed position for a variable length of time. It is assumed that when the LEV is in the fully closed position latent heat within the zone will cause the zone air temperature value to increase. The method allows some dehumidification to take place without significantly lowering the air temperature in the zone below the Cooling Temperature Setpoint.
 6. Fan. When the terminal unit Operation Mode is the Fan state, the LEV is closed and the terminal unit does not attempt regulate the air temperature in the zone. The temperature of the air in the zone may change due to latent heat within the zone. With the use of an external user interface, the speed of the fan may be modulated between the discrete states supported by the terminal unit.
 7. Heat. When the terminal unit Operation Mode is the Heat state, hot gas refrigerant is provided to the terminal unit. The amount of refrigerant entering the evaporator coil is regulated by the Linear Expansion Valve. The position of LEV is determined by an algorithm internal to the terminal unit. The algorithm calculates the temperature difference value between the measured zone air temperature value and the Heating Temperature Setpoint value. When a large difference value exists, the LEV is driven open to allow more refrigerant into the evaporator coil. As the zone air temperature increases the difference value becomes less. The algorithm will respond and drive the LEV to more closed position reducing the amount of refrigerant entering into the evaporator coil. As the difference value approaches zero, the system stabilizes and the amount of LEV modulation is minimal.
 8. Setback. Some terminal units may not support the Setback state. When the terminal unit Operation Mode transitions to Setback state, the LEV is driven closed and the zone air temperature is allowed to drift. The amount of drift is bounded by the Setback Cooling Temperature Setpoint and the Setback Heating Temperature Setpoint.
 9. When the Heat Pump system mode is Cool. If the zone air temperature value is greater than the Setback Cooling Temperature Setpoint, the terminal unit will execute the setback cool algorithm. The algorithm modulates the LEV to maintain the zone temperature to the Setback Cooling Temperature Setpoint.
 10. When the Heat Pump system mode is Heat, cooling the zone is not possible. If the zone air temperature value is greater than the Setback Cooling Temperature Setpoint, the terminal unit will not execute the setback cool algorithm and the LEV will remain closed.
 11. When the Heat Pump system mode is Heat. If the zone air temperature value is less than the Setback Heating Temperature Setpoint, the terminal unit will execute the setback heat algorithm. The algorithm modulates the LEV to maintain the zone temperature to the Setback Heating Temperature Setpoint.
 12. When the Heat Pump system mode is Cool, heating the zone is not possible. If the zone air temperature value is less than the Setback Heating Temperature Setpoint, the terminal unit will not execute the setback heat algorithm and the LEV will remain closed.
 13. Fan Control. When the indoor unit is in the Off state, the fan is controlled to the minimum speed required to measure zone air temperature at the return air temperature sensor. This allows zone air temperature to be accurately measured while the indoor unit is in the Off state.

14. Upon transition from the Off state to the On state, the RPM of the fan is governed to match a manufacture specified, RPM value assigned to the each discrete fan speed state available in the unit. The number of distinct fan speed states and the fan RPM value for each state varies by manufacture and model of indoor unit. The fan speed state is controlled by one of two methods, automatic fan speed control or manual fan speed control. The choice of control method is made by a user of the system.
15. Upon indoor unit transition from the On state to the Off state, the fan transitions to the state described when the indoor unit is in the Off state.
16. Manual Fan Speed Control. A user of the system selects a desired fan speed state. The fan speed RPM will change to match the manufacture specified RPM value and maintain the RMP value until a different fan speed state is selected or a change is made to another control parameter of the indoor unit that causes the fan to change to a different state.
17. Automatic Fan Speed Control. When a user of the system selects the fan speed state Auto, an algorithm internal to the indoor unit controls the selection of the fan speed state. The algorithm calculates the temperature difference value between the measured zone air temperature value and the zone temperature setpoint value in use. When a large difference value exists, the fan state selected will have a highest fan speed RPM value. As the difference value is reduced, the algorithm will change the fan speed in use to a state with a smaller RPM value.

E. Vane Direction:

1. The terminal unit has movable air vanes to change the direction of air flow from the unit. Three air vane control modes are available: Auto, Swing, and Manual. The external user interface is used to select the air vane position in use.
2. Auto. When the Operation Mode is Cool state, the air vanes modulate to direct airflow parallel to the ceiling. When the Operation Mode is Heat state, the air vanes modulate to direct airflow perpendicular to the ceiling.
3. Swing. Regardless of Operation Mode state, the air vanes continuously modulate between parallel and perpendicular flow to the ceiling in a periodic manner.
4. Manual. Regardless of Operation Mode state, the air vanes are fixed at a position. The number of individual positions available varies by manufacturer and model type. Typically, two to five fixed positions are supported.

F. Condensate Overflow Monitoring:

1. The unit shall be equipped with a condensate drain pan level sensor to protect against drain pan overflow. If the sensor detects a high condensate level in the drain pan, the control shall shut down the indoor unit before an overflow can occur and a condensate alarm diagnostic shall annunciate at the BAS.

2.8 Sequence of Operation: VRF Central Control System

A. Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) System Sequence of Operation:

1. This sequence of operations describes the "system-level" control functions of a variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system, which includes coordinating the operation of the outdoor unit with terminal units during the various operating modes. The "equipment-level" control functions of the outdoor unit and the terminal units are contained in their respective sequence of operations documents.

B. Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) Heat Pump System:

1. A Heat Pump system shall provide asynchronous heating or cooling to all zones served by the VRF system. The state of the VRF system is Off when the outdoor unit is off and all terminal units are off. When any terminal unit transitions to the On state, the VRF system shall transition to the On state and the outdoor unit shall transition to either the Cool state or Heat state, depending on the call to heat or cool from the terminal units.
2. When the outdoor unit is in Cool state, it supplies subcooled liquid refrigerant to the terminal units. When the outdoor unit is in Heat state, it supplies superheated gas refrigerant to the terminal units. Each terminal unit shall communicate to the outdoor unit the need for cooling or heating.
3. When the outdoor unit is in the Heat state and all terminal units communicate the need for cooling. The outdoor unit will transition from providing superheated gas refrigerant to providing subcooled liquid refrigerant to the terminal units. Upon completion of this action, the outdoor unit state is Cool.
4. When the outdoor unit is in the cooling state and all terminal units communicate the need for heat. The outdoor unit shall transition from providing subcooled liquid refrigerant to providing superheated gas refrigerant to the terminal units. Upon completion of this action, the outdoor state is Heat.
5. When the state of the VRF system is On and all of the indoor units transition to the Off state, the outdoor unit shall transition to the Shutdown state. Entering this state shall cause the outdoor unit to perform the necessary functions required to prepare the refrigerant system to stop operation. Once the refrigerant system has stopped operation, the outdoor unit shall transition to the Off state and the VRF System state shall transition to the Off state.

C. Building Automation System Control:

1. The Building Automation System (BAS) is a computer based, application that provides a method for a building operator to monitor and control the operation of a building. The BAS coordinates the actions of one or more building sub-systems (HVAC, lighting, etc.). The purpose of the system is to provide a safe and comfortable occupant environment using advanced control strategies to minimize the environmental footprint of the building.
2. The BAS shall have the ability to monitor and display data emanating from any piece of equipment connected to the system in human readable form. The BAS shall have the ability to perform building level control functions such as, but not limited to, time schedule based system operation, recording of operating parameter data values as a time or sample series, collection and annunciation for alarms generated by equipment, and control of equipment within the building.
3. The BAS shall monitor the status of the zone(s) in the building served by the Variable Refrigerant Flow (VRF) system and send commands to the VRF terminal unit(s) to maintain the environment in the zone.
4. The VRF system shall use the last control commands and values received from any control device (BAS, space controller, etc.) to maintain the environment in the zone.

D. Unoccupied Zone Temperature Control:

1. Unoccupied zone temperature (UZZT) control is an energy minimization strategy. The BAS shall monitor the time schedule(s) controlling a group(s) of terminal units. When the time schedule transitions from the Occupied state to the Unoccupied state, the terminal units shall transition from the Occupied state to the Unoccupied state, and the UZZT algorithm shall be enabled.
2. While enabled, the UZZT algorithm shall monitor the air temperature of each zone in the group, calculate the average zone air temperature, and compare the average value to the unoccupied cooling and unoccupied heating zone temperature setpoints.

3. When the average zone air temperature is above the unoccupied cooling zone temperature setpoint, the terminal units in the group shall transition from the Unoccupied state to the Occupied state. This will cause the VRF system to transition from the Off state to the On state, allowing the group of zones to be cooled.
4. When the average zone air temperature is below than the unoccupied cooling zone temperature setpoint minus a dead band value, the terminal units in the group shall transition from the Occupied state to the Unoccupied state. Once all terminal units in the VRF system are in the Unoccupied state, the VRF system will transition from the On state to the Off state.
5. Conversely, when the average zone air temperature is below the unoccupied heating zone temperature setpoint, the terminal units in the group shall transition from the Unoccupied state to the Occupied state. This will cause the VRF system to transition from the Off state to the On state, allowing the group of zones to be heated.
6. When the average zone air temperature is above the unoccupied heating zone temperature setpoint plus a dead band value, the terminal units in the group shall transition from the Occupied state to the Unoccupied state. Once all terminal units in the VRF system are in the Unoccupied state, the VRF system will transition from the On state to the Off state.
7. When the time schedule controlling the group of terminal units transitions from the Unoccupied state to the Occupied state, all terminal units shall transition from the Unoccupied state to the Occupied state and the UZT algorithm shall be disabled. While disabled, the UZT algorithm is dormant.

E. Optimal Start Functionality:

1. Optimal start is a comfort strategy. The BAS shall monitor the time schedule controlling the operation of each zone, occupied zone air temperature setpoint(s), zone air temperature, and other parameters as needed. Using these inputs, the optimal start algorithm shall calculate the time of day when each zone should transition from Off (Unoccupied) to On (Occupied) mode. The system shall transition the terminal units serving the zone from Off to On at this time. The desired result is to have the air temperature of each zone equal the occupied zone air temperature setpoint currently in control, at the moment in time when the time schedule transitions from Off (unoccupied) to On (Occupied).
2. If there is a delta in time (time error) between when the time the schedule transitions from Off to On and the time when the zone air temperature is equal to the occupied zone temperature setpoint in control, the optimal start algorithm shall adjust the time calculation such that the time error is minimized for the next optimal start iteration.

2.9 Optimal Stop Functionality:

1. Optimal stop is an energy minimization strategy. The BAS shall monitor the time schedule controlling the operation of each zone, zone unoccupied air temperature setpoint(s), zone air temperature, and other parameters as needed. Using these inputs, the optimal stop algorithm shall calculate the time of day when each zone should transition from On (Occupied) to Off (Unoccupied) mode. The system shall transition the terminal units serving the zone from On to Off at this time. The desired result is to have the air temperature of each zone equal the unoccupied zone air temperature setpoint currently in control, at the moment in time when the time schedule transitions from On (Occupied) to Off (Unoccupied).
2. If there is a delta in time (time error) between when the time the schedule transitions from On to Off and the time when the zone air temperature is equal to the unoccupied zone temperature setpoint in control, the stop start algorithm shall adjust the time calculation such that the time error is minimized for the next optimal stop iteration.

2.10 OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT STANDS

- A. Description: Individual foot supports with elevated adjustable channel cross bars and clamps/fasteners/bolts for ground or roof-supported outdoor equipment components, without roof membrane penetration, in a prefabricated system that can be modularly assembled on-site.
- B. Foot Material: Rubber or polypropylene.
- C. Rails Material: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
- D. Height: 24" minimum.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS

- A. Provide a programmable 3-phase line voltage monitor for each outdoor unit, see 230500.
- B. Refrigerant: As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer for system to comply with performance requirements indicated.
- C. Oil: As required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer and to comply with performance requirements indicated.
- D. Low-Voltage Control Cabling: Provide per Division 26, NFPA 70, and VRF manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Comply with requirements in Division 26 for control wiring and cable raceways.
- F. Factory Tests: Test and inspect factory-assembled equipment.
- G. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports for historical record. Submit reports only if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Examination
 1. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 2. Examine products before installation. Reject products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 3. Examine roughing-in for piping and tubing to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
 4. Examine roughing-in for ductwork to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
 5. Examine roughing-in for wiring and conduit to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.

6. Examine for suitable conditions where equipment will be installed. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected

B. Clearance:

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
2. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

C. Electrical: Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and in applicable Division 26 Sections.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF INDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Unless otherwise required by VRF HVAC system manufacturer, support ceiling-mounted units from structure above using threaded rods; minimum rod size of 3/8 inch.
- C. Adjust supports of exposed and recessed units to draw units tight to adjoining surfaces.
- D. Protect finished surfaces of ceilings, floors, and walls that come in direct contact with units. Refinish or replaced damaged areas after units are installed.
- E. Provide lateral bracing if needed to limit movement of suspended units to not more than 0.25 inch.
- F. For floor- and wall-mounted units that are exposed, conceal piping and tubing, controls, and electrical power serving units within walls.
- G. Install floor-mounted units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results."
- H. Attachment: Install hardware for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- I. Grouting: Place grout under equipment supports and make bearing surface smooth.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Install units to be level and plumb while providing a neat and finished appearance.
- B. Pad-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 230500.
- C. Roof-Mounted Installations: Install outdoor units on equipment supports. Coordinate with Division 7. Anchor units to supports with removable, stainless-steel fasteners.

3.4 PIPING

- A. Provide per manufacturer's instructions and the following sections:

1. Refrigerant Piping: Provide per Section 232300.
 2. Condensate Drain Piping: Provide per Section 221316.
- B. Pre-insulated line sets may be used if approved by the heat pump manufacturer, provided the line sets meet all requirements set forth by the manufacturer and all joints are brazed. General requirements for the Basis of Design product are as follows:

9-2. Pipe selection

CAUTION

Use refrigerant piping made of phosphorus deoxidized copper (copper and copper alloy seamless pipes) that meets local requirements. Pipe joints should also meet local requirements. Keep the inner and outer surfaces of the pipes clean and free of sulphur, oxides, dust/dirt, shaving particles, oils, moisture, or any other contaminants.

- Contaminants on the inside of the refrigerant piping will cause the refrigerant oil to deteriorate and cause the compressor to malfunction.

Use refrigerant pipes for use with R410A refrigerant system. Piping for systems for use with other types of refrigerants may not be able to be used. Use refrigerant pipes with the thicknesses specified in the table below.

| Size [mm (in)] | Radial thickness [mm (mil)] | Type |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------|
| ø6.35 (ø1/4) | 0.8 (32) | Type-O |
| ø9.52 (ø3/8) | 0.8 (32) | Type-O |
| ø12.7 (ø1/2) | 0.8 (32) | Type-O |
| ø15.88 (ø5/8) | 1.0 (40) | Type-O |
| ø19.05 (ø3/4) | 1.2 (48) | Type-O |
| | 1.0 (40) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø22.2 (ø7/8) | 1.0 (40) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø25.4 (ø1) | 1.0 (40) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø28.58 (ø1-1/8) | 1.0 (40) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø31.75 (ø1-1/4) | 1.1 (44) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø34.93 (ø1-3/8) | 1.2 (48) | Type-1/2H or H |
| ø41.28 (ø1-5/8) | 1.4 (56) | Type-1/2H or H |

3.5 INSTALLATION OF SYSTEM CONTROL CABLE

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
 3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
 4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable.
 5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
 6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
 10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.

11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles or access panels.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals.
15. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD.
16. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
17. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

C. Balanced Twisted-Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Do not untwist balanced twisted-pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

E. Separation from EMI Sources: Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power wiring and equipment.

3.6 GROUNDING INSTALLATION

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control cabling, comply with requirements in Division 26.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to advise and assist installers; witness testing; and observe and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including controls and connections.
 1. Field service shall be performed by an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer whose primary job responsibilities are to provide direct technical support of its products.
 2. Manufacturer shall provide on-site visits during the course of construction at installation milestones indicated. System Installer shall coordinate each visit in advance to give manufacturer sufficient notice to plan the visit.
 3. Kick-off Meeting:

- a. Meeting shall include system Installer and other related trades with sole purpose of reviewing VRF HVAC system installation requirements and close coordination required to make a successful installation.
 - b. Meeting shall be held at Project site and scheduled at a mutually agreed to time that occurs before the start of any part of system installation.
 - c. Meeting shall cover the following as a minimum requirement:
 - 1) Review of latest issue of Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications, relevant to VRF HVAC systems.
 - 2) Manufacturer's installation requirements specific to systems being installed.
 - 3) Review of all relevant VRF HVAC system submittals, including delegated-design submittals.
 - 4) Required field activities related installation of VRF HVAC system.
 - 5) Project team communication protocol, contact information, and exchange of responsibilities for each party involved, including manufacturer, supplier, system Installer, and other related trades.
4. Site Visits: Activities for each site visit shall include the following:
- a. Meet with VRF HVAC system Installer to discuss field activities, issues, and suggested methods to result in a successful installation.
 - b. Offer technical support to Installer and related trades as related to VRF system(s) being installed.
 - c. Review progress of VRF HVAC system(s) installation for strict compliance with manufacturer's requirements.
 - d. Advise and if necessary assist Installer with updating related refrigerant calculations and system documentation.
 - e. Issue a report for each visit, documenting the visit.
 - 1) Report to include name and contact information of individual making the visit.
 - 2) Date(s) and time frames while on-site.
 - 3) Names and contact information of people meeting with while on-site.
 - 4) Clearly identify and list each separate issue that requires resolution. For each issue, provide a unique identification number, relevant importance, specific location or equipment identification, description of issue, recommended corrective action, and follow-up requirements needed. Include a digital photo for clarification if deemed to be beneficial.
5. Final Inspection before Startup:
- a. Before inspection, Installer to provide written request to manufacturer stating the system is fully installed according manufacturer's requirements and ready for final inspection.
 - b. All system equipment and operating components shall be inspected. If components are inaccessible for inspection, they shall be made accessible before the final inspection can be completed.
 - c. Manufacturer shall provide a comprehensive inspection of all equipment and each operating component that comprise the complete system(s). Inspection shall follow a detailed checklist specific to each equipment and operating component.
 - d. Inspection reports for indoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
 - 2) Manufacturer model number.
 - 3) Serial number.

- 4) Network address, if applicable.
 - 5) Each equipment setting.
 - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
 - 7) Proper service clearance provided.
 - 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
 - 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
 - 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
 - 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
 - 12) Controller type and model controlling unit.
 - 13) Controller location.
 - 14) Temperature settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 15) Humidity settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 16) Condensate removal acceptable.
 - 17) Fan settings and readings within an acceptable range.
 - 18) Unit airflow direction within an acceptable range.
 - 19) If applicable, fan external static pressure setting.
 - 20) Filter type and condition acceptable.
 - 21) Noise level within an acceptable range.
 - 22) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
 - 23) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
 - 24) If applicable, ductwork properly connected.
 - 25) If applicable, external interlocks properly connected.
 - 26) Remarks.
- e. Inspection reports for outdoor units shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
- 1) Unit designation on Drawings.
 - 2) Manufacturer model number.
 - 3) Serial number.
 - 4) Network address, if applicable.
 - 5) Each equipment setting.
 - 6) Mounting, supports, and restraints properly installed.
 - 7) Proper service clearance provided.
 - 8) Wiring and power connections correct.
 - 9) Line-voltage reading(s) within acceptable range.
 - 10) Wiring and controls connections correct.
 - 11) Low-voltage reading(s) within an acceptable range.
 - 12) Condensate removal acceptable.
 - 13) Noise level within an acceptable range.
 - 14) Refrigerant piping properly connected and insulated.
 - 15) Condensate drain piping properly connected and insulated.
 - 16) Remarks.
- f. Installer shall provide manufacturer with the requested documentation and technical support during inspection.
- g. Installer shall correct observed deficiencies found by the inspection.
- h. Upon completing the on-site inspection, manufacturer shall provide a written report with complete documentation describing each inspection step, the result, and any corrective action required.
- i. If corrective action is required by Installer that cannot be completed during the same visit, provide additional visits, as required, until deficiencies are resolved and systems are deemed ready for startup.
- j. Final report shall indicate the system(s) inspected are installed according to manufacturer's requirements and are ready for startup.

- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of manufacturer's service representative:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Refrigerant Tubing Positive Pressure Testing:
1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
 2. After completion of tubing installation, pressurize tubing systems to a test pressure of not less than 1.5 times VRF HVAC system operating pressure, but not less than 600 psig, using dry nitrogen.
 3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of 24 hours. Allowance for pressure changes attributed to changes in ambient temperature are acceptable.
 4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.
 - f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
 5. Submit test reports for Project record.
- D. Refrigerant Tubing Evacuation Testing:
1. Comply with more stringent of VRF HVAC system manufacturer's requirements and requirements indicated.
 2. After completion of tubing positive-pressure testing, evacuate tubing systems to a pressure of 500 microns.
 3. Successful testing shall maintain a test pressure for a continuous and uninterrupted period of one hour(s) with no change.
 4. Prepare test report to record the following information for each test:
 - a. Name of person starting test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - b. Name of manufacturer's service representative witnessing test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - c. Detailed description of extent of tubing tested.
 - d. Date and time at start of test.
 - e. Test pressure at start of test.

- f. Outdoor temperature at start of test.
 - g. Name of person ending test, company name, phone number, and e-mail address.
 - h. Date and time at end of test.
 - i. Test pressure at end of test.
 - j. Outdoor temperature at end of test.
 - k. Remarks:
5. Submit test reports for Project record.
 6. Upon successful completion of evacuation testing, system shall be charged with refrigerant.
- E. System Refrigerant Charge:
1. Using information collected from the refrigerant tubing evacuation testing, system Installer shall consult variable refrigerant system manufacturer to determine the correct system refrigerant charge.
 2. Installer shall charge system following VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. System refrigerant charging shall be witnessed by system manufacturer's representative.
 4. Total refrigerant charge shall be recorded and permanently displayed at the system's outdoor unit.
- F. Products will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's service representative to perform system(s) startup service.
1. Service representative shall be an employee or a factory-trained and -authorized service representative of VRF HVAC system manufacturer.
 2. Complete startup service of each separate system.
 3. Complete system startup service according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Startup checks shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
1. Check control communications of equipment and each operating component in system(s).
 2. Check each indoor unit's response to demand for cooling and heating.
 3. Check each indoor unit's response to changes in airflow settings.
 4. Check each indoor unit, HRCU, and outdoor unit for proper condensate removal.
- C. Installer shall accompany manufacturer's service representative during startup service and provide manufacturer's service representative with requested documentation and technical support during startup service.
1. Installer shall correct deficiencies found during startup service for reverification.

D. System Operation Report:

1. After completion of startup service, manufacturer shall issue a report for each separate system.
2. Report shall include complete documentation describing each startup check, the result, and any corrective action required.
3. Manufacturer shall electronically record not less than two hours of continuous operation of each system and submit with report for historical reference.
 - a. All available system operating parameters shall be included in the information submitted.

E. Witness:

1. Invite Owner and Commissioning Agent to witness startup service procedures.
2. Provide written notice not less than 10 business days before start of startup service.

3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust equipment and components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points. Adjust initial airflow settings and discharge airflow patterns.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges according to VRF HVAC system manufacturer's written instructions, and as indicated.
- D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Protect products from moisture and water damage. Remove and replace products that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Protect equipment from physical damage. Replace equipment with physical damage that cannot be repaired to new condition. Observable surface imperfections shall be grounds for removal and replacement.
- C. Protect equipment from electrical damage. Replace equipment suffering electrical damage.
- D. Cover and seal openings of equipment to keep inside of equipment clean. Do not remove covers until finish work is complete.

3.11 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a VRF HVAC system manufacturer's employed training instructor or factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain entire system.

- B. Instructor:
1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified by VRF HVAC system manufacturer with current training on the system(s), equipment, and controls that are installed.
 2. Instructor(s) shall have not less than three years of training experience with VRF HVAC system manufacturer and past training experience on at least three projects of comparable size and complexity.
- C. Schedule and Duration:
1. Schedule training with Owner at least 20 business days before first training session.
 2. Training shall occur before Owner occupancy.
 3. Training shall be held at mutually agreed date and time during normal business hours.
 4. Each training day shall not exceed eight hours of training. Daily training schedule shall allow time for one-hour lunch period and 15-minute break after every two hours of training.
 5. Perform not less than 16 total hours of training.
- D. Location: Owner shall provide a suitable on-site location to host classroom training.
- E. Training Attendees: Assume three people.
- F. Training Attendance: For record purposes, document training attendees at the start of each new training session. Record attendee's name, signature, phone number, and e-mail address.
- G. Training Format: Individual training modules shall include classroom training followed by hands-on field demonstration and training.
- H. Training Materials: Provide training materials in electronic format to each attendee.
1. Include instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
 2. Video record each classroom training session and submit an electronic copy to Owner before requesting Owner acceptance of training.
- I. Acceptance: Obtain Commissioning Agent or Owner written acceptance that training is complete, and requirements indicated have been satisfied.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238216

DUCT MOUNTED HEATING COILS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes duct heating air coils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each air coil.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and pressure drops for each air coil.
 - 3. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air coils to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing heating coils.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- D. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5, "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7, "Construction and Startup."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER COILS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Trane.
 - 2. McQuay
 - 3. Aerofin Corporation.
 - 4. Carrier Corporation.
 - 5. Coil Company, LLC.
 - 6. Super Radiator Coils.
 - 7. USA Coil & Air.
- B. Performance Ratings: Tested and rated according to ARI 410 and ASHRAE 33.
- C. Minimum Working-Pressure/Temperature Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.
- D. Source Quality Control: Factory tested to 300 psig.
- E. Construction
 - 1. Tubes: ASTM B 743 copper, minimum 0.020 inch thick.
 - 2. Fins: Aluminum, minimum 0.006 inch thick.
 - 3. Headers: Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
 - 4. Frames: Galvanized-steel channel frame, minimum 0.052 inch thick for slip-in mounting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine ducts, plenums, and casings to receive air coils for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting coil performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before coil installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide coils level and plumb. Provide coils in metal ducts and casings constructed according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Metal and Flexible."
- B. Straighten bent fins on air coils.
- C. Clean coils using materials and methods recommended in writing by manufacturers, and clean inside of casings and enclosures to remove dust and debris.

3.3 HW DUCT COILS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Provide piping adjacent to coils to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect water piping with unions and shutoff valves to allow coils to be disconnected without draining piping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238219

FAN-COIL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fan-coil units and accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit the following for each fan-coil unit type and configuration:
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Details of anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
 - 3. Power, signal, and control wiring diagrams. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - 4. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Field Test Reports: Written reports of tests specified in Part 3 of this Section.
- E. Maintenance Data: For fan-coil units to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include the following:
 - 1. Maintenance schedules and repair parts lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan-coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fan-Coil Unit Filters: Furnish one complete set of spare filters for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Trane
 - 2. Daikin
 - 3. Carrier Corp.
 - 4. Dunham-Bush, Inc.
 - 5. Engineered Air.
 - 6. International Environmental Corp.
 - 7. York International Corp.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. The product line consists of a horizontal air handling unit and optional accessories. Air-handling airflow data is certified in accordance with AHRI standard 430. The unit is UL listed to U. S. and Canadian safety standards and complies with NFPA 90A. Air handlers consist of a hydronic and/or DX coil, drain pan, and centrifugal fan with motor in a common cabinet. Air handlers are provided with mounting brackets on the top and bottom in all four corners for installing the unit suspended from the ceiling with threaded rods. Unit and accessories are insulated with 1" 1.0 lb/cu. ft density fiberglass insulation.
- B. Fan housing sides are directly attached to the air handler top and bottom panels strengthening the entire unit assembly. Coil access panels are located on one side of the air handler main access panels provide generous access to the fan and motor from one side of the air handler.
- C. Double Wall Panels: Double wall panel casings are constructed of a galvanized steel inner panel and a galvanized steel outer panel. Enclosed between the panels is 1" 1.0 lb/cu. ft density fiberglass fire resistant and odorless fiberglass material to provide thermal and acoustical insulation.
- D. Heating coils are one or two row hot water. Water coils are 12 fins per inch and have 3/8" tubes with 0.012" wall thickness. Water coils use highly efficient Trane Delta Flo, Type H aluminum fins, mechanically bonded to seamless copper tubes. Coils are specifically designed and

circuited for water use. All coils are factory tested with 450.00 psi air under water. Maximum standard operating conditions are 300.00 psi at 200.0 F. Sweat type connections are standard. Coil performance data is in accordance with the current edition of AHRI Standard 410.

- E. The fans are DWDI (double width double inlet) forward curved centrifugal blower type. The fans are direct drive mounted directly to the motor shaft. All fans are dynamically balanced. All air handlers have a single fan.
- F. All motors are brushless DC (BLDC) electronically commutated motors (ECM) factory programmed and run tested in assembled units. The motor controller is mounted in a control box with a built-in integrated user interface and LED tachometer. If adjustments are needed, motor parameters can be adjusted through momentary contact switches accessible without factory service personnel on the motor control board. Motors will soft ramp between speeds to lessen the acoustics due to sudden speed changes. Motors can be operated at three speeds or at variable speed with factory supplied or field supplied controllers. The motor will choose the highest speed if there are simultaneous or conflicting speed requests. All motors have integral overload protection with a maximum ambient operating temperature of 130.0 F and use permanently sealed ball bearings. Motors can operate at plus or minus 10 percent of rated voltage on all speed settings.
- G. 2-inch pleated media filters made with 100% synthetic fibers that are continuously laminated to a supported steel-wire grid with water repellent adhesive shall be provided. Filters shall be capable of operating up to 625 fpm face velocity without loss of filter efficiency and holding capacity. The filters shall have a MERV 8 rating when tested in accordance with the ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 52.2.
- H. The drain pan is noncorrosive and double-sloped to allow condensate drainage. The drain pan construction is polymer. Coils mount above the drain pan, not in the drain pan thus allowing the drain pan to be fully inspected and cleaned. The drain pan can also be removed for cleaning. The drain pan connections are unthreaded 3/4" schedule 40 PVC for solvent bonding. The main drain connection is at the lowest point of the drain pan. An auxiliary drain connection is provided on the same side as the main connection.
- I. The customer supplied terminal interface (CSTI) is a pre-wired control offering of selected control components. This option intended to be used with a field-supplied, low-voltage thermostat or controller and field supplied temperature sensors.
 - 1. The control box contains a relay board which includes a line voltage to 24-volt transformer and disconnect switch.
 - 2. Selected components are wired to a low-voltage terminal block and are run-tested, so only a power connection and thermostat/controller connection are needed to commission the unit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive fan-coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan-coil unit installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fan-coil units level and plumb.
- B. Install fan-coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Suspend fan-coil units from structure with rubber-in-shear vibration isolators (rubber hangers).

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- D. Ground equipment.
- E. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing and report results in writing:
 - 1. After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Operate electric heating elements through each stage to verify proper operation and electrical connections.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing units, inspect unit cabinet for damage to finish. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. After installing units, clean fan-coil units internally according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install new filters in each fan-coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan-coil units.
 - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
 - 2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."
 - 3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
 - 4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238233

CONVECTION HEATING UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following: Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hydronic convection heating units.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Enclosure joints, corner pieces, access doors, and other accessories.
- B. Color Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For convection heating units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Factory test and rate finned-tube radiators according to Hydronic Institute's "Testing and Rating Standard for Finned-Tube (Commercial) Radiation."
- C. Performance Ratings: Rate according to Hydronics Institute's "I=B=R Testing and Rating Standard for Finned-Tube (Commercial) Radiation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL HOT-WATER FINNED-TUBE RADIATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Sterling
 2. Trane
 3. Rittling
 4. Slant/Fin.
 5. Trane.
 6. Vulcan
- B. Furnish and install where shown on all plans, Sterling Versa-Line Finned-Tube or approved equal quality and capacity.
- C. Heating Elements as scheduled:
1. Seamless copper tubing suitable for soldered fittings, mechanically expanded into evenly spaced aluminum fins.
 2. Tube Diameter: as scheduled.
 3. Fin Size: as scheduled.
- D. Partial back plates shall be machine roll formed, pre-painted, 20-gauge steel with formed mounting channel into which the enclosure shall self-locate and secure.
- E. All brackets and hangers shall be die-formed 14-gauge galvanized steel with channel type wiped edge construction for rigidity. Nickel-chromium plated ball bearings inserted into a nylon isolator insert shall be used in conjunction with an 18 gauge galvanized die-formed element support cradle to provide friction free lateral movement during expansion and contraction. Brackets shall have preformed contour at the top allowing the bracket to interlock with the back-plate channel. Brackets shall be self-locating in the vertical (height) position. Full engagement enclosure locks are to be supplied with each bracket.
- F. Hangers shall provide for vertical element adjustment when pitch is required. Water applications do not require adjustable hangers.
- G. Finned-tube enclosures
1. Style and size as scheduled.
 2. Enclosure Style: Sloped top.
 3. Material shall be 16-gauge cold rolled steel with baked primer suitable for field painting.
 4. Air discharge and/or inlet louvers shall be "pencil proof."
 5. Welded male and female slip joints shall be provided at each end to allow for positive engagement and alignment of adjoining enclosures.
 6. Internal 14-gauge gussets (minimum of two) shall be welded into place at ends of each enclosure style and design configuration.
 7. All bends (lateral) on enclosure are to be formed on bottoming dies to ensure continuity of all adjoining enclosures and accessories.
 8. Finish: Factory-applied baked enamel in manufacturer's standard color.

2.2 FLAT-PIPE STEEL RADIATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Runtal North America, Inc.
 2. Embassy Industries, Inc.
 3. Panel Radiator, Inc., a div. of Hydro-Air Components.

- B. Runtal Model RF, or approved equal.
- C. Provide steel panel radiator elements of lengths and in locations as indicated, and of capacities, style and having accessories as scheduled. The wall hung heating panel radiation shall be of one-piece all-welded steel construction, consisting of flattened water tubes welded to headers at each end. The radiator shall include an integral heavy gauge (0.09" minimum) all-welded perforated top grille. Radiator shall have steel corrugated fins welded to the rear side of the water tubes to increase the convective output of the unit. There shall be no less than 32 fins per foot. Fins shall start within 1" of the headers, and shall be spot-welded three times per tube.
- D. The radiator's headers shall include all necessary inlet, outlet and vent connections as required. Standard connection sizes are 1/2" NPT tapered thread for supply and return piping, and 1/8" for the vent connection. Internal baffling shall be provided where required for proper water flow.
- E. The radiant heating panels shall be available in lengths from 2'-0" to 29'-6" in two inch even increments without the need for splicing. The panel radiation shall be capable of being mounted to typical stud wall construction without additional blocking or strapping.
 - 1. Based on field conditions, appropriate wall mounting brackets or floor post mounting shall be provided with the radiation.
- F. Panel radiation expansion shall not exceed 1/64" per foot of radiation at 215°F. The installer shall provide adequate expansion compensation for each radiator.
- G. Finish: The panel radiation shall be cleaned and phosphatized in preparation for the powder coat finish. The radiation shall then finish painted with a gloss powder coat finish, for a total paint thickness of 2-3 mils. The color shall be selected from Runtal's ten Standard Colors. Submit color chart for Architect approval.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Provide ribbed pipe cover trims, finished to match the radiators shall be provided with the radiation.
 - 2. The radiation manufacturer shall provide combination shutoff valve/union fitting of less than two inches in width for the supply and return to each panel radiator; to be field installed by contractor.
 - 3. Runtal-Flex connectors shall be used where appropriate to provide expansion compensation for the radiators.
 - 4. Provide NPT-MV manual air vent for up-fed radiators.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive convection heating units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for hydronic-piping connections to verify actual locations before convection heating unit installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 GENERAL

- A. Provide units level and plumb.
- B. Provide valves within reach of access door provided in enclosure.
- C. Provide piping adjacent to units to allow service and maintenance.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide enclosure continuously around corners, using outside and inside corner fittings.
- B. Join sections with splice plates and filler pieces to provide continuous enclosure.
- C. Provide enclosure continuously from wall to wall.
- D. At end of each run, provide a 3-foot section to allow for removal and access to valves.
- E. Terminate enclosures with manufacturer's end caps, except where enclosures are indicated to extend to adjoining walls.
- F. Expansion joints shall be provided in accordance with Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings And Loops For HVAC Piping". Fintube backplate shall be compatible with the specified guides and anchors.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect hot-water units and components to piping according to Division 23 Section "Hydronic Piping."
- C. Provide control valves as specified.
- D. Provide piping adjacent to convection heating units to allow service and maintenance.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform a leak test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Remove and replace convection heating units that do not pass tests and inspections and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238239

UNIT HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following: Division 23 Section "Common Work Results"

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes hydronic unit heaters.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include specialties and accessories for each unit type and configuration.
 - 1. Plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Power, signal, and control wiring diagrams. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - 3. Equipment schedules to include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
 - 4. Cabinet Unit Heater color samples for initial selection: Manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for units with factory-applied color finishes.
- B. Maintenance Data: For unit heaters to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1. Include maintenance schedules and repair parts lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Test unit heater coils according to ASHRAE 33.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of unit heaters and suspension system components
- B. Coordinate wall construction and conditions with recessed or semi-recessed cabinet unit heater installation requirements.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Cabinet Unit Heater Filters: Furnish one set of spare filter for each filter installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Corp.
 - 2. Trane
 - 3. McQuay
 - 4. Sterling
 - 5. Vulcan
 - 6. Modine
 - 7. Rittling

2.2 COMMON ELEMENTS

- A. Motors shall be brushless DC (BLDC)/electronically commutated motors (ECM) factory-programmed and run-tested in assembled units. The motor controller shall be mounted in a touch-safe control box with a built-in integrated user interface and LED tachometer. If adjustments are needed, motor parameters can be adjusted through momentary contact switches accessible without factory service personnel on the motor control board. Motors shall soft-ramp between speeds to lessen the acoustics due to sudden speed changes. Motors shall be operated at three speeds. The motor will choose the highest speed if there are simultaneous/conflicting speed requests. Motors shall have integral thermal overload protection with a maximum ambient operating temperature of 104°F and shall be permanently lubricated. Motors shall be capable of starting at 50 percent of rated voltage and operating at 90 percent of rated voltage on all speed settings. Motors shall operate up to 10 percent over voltage.
- B. Provide a unit-mounted disconnect switch.

2.3 CABINET UNIT HEATERS

- A. Description: An assembly including filter, chassis, coil, fan, and motor in blow-through configuration with heating coil.
- B. Cabinet: Provide configuration as scheduled.
- C. Chassis: Galvanized steel, with flanged edges.
- D. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch duct liner complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916. Fire-Hazard Classification: Duct liner and adhesive shall

have a maximum flame-spread rating of 25 and smoke-developed rating of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

- E. Cabinet: Galvanized steel, with removable panels.
- F. Cabinet Finish: Cabinet parts and exposed recessed panels shall be cleaned, bonderized, phosphatized, and painted with a baked powder finish available in six colors. Finish shall meet ASTM B117 specifications (salt spray test).
- G. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and with manual air vent. Coils shall be rated for a minimum working pressure of 300 psig and a maximum entering water temperature of 275 deg F, with manual air vent.
- H. Filters: 1-inch- thick, pleated glass-fiber media in fiberboard frame, Farr 30/30 Pleated Panel Air Filter or equivalent.
- I. Fan: Centrifugal, with forward-curved, double-width wheels and fan scrolls made of galvanized steel or thermoplastic material; directly connected to motor.
- J. Accessories
 - 1. Steel recessing flanges for recessing cabinet unit heaters into ceiling or wall.
 - 2. Tamperproof locks.
 - 3. Leveling feet for vertical floor mounted cabinet unit heaters.
 - 4. Suspend from structure with rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.

2.4 UNIT HEATERS

- A. Description: An assembly including casing, coil, fan, and motor; provide horizontal or vertical configuration as scheduled.
- B. Casing: Galvanized steel, with removable panels.
- C. Cabinet Finish: Bonderize, phosphatized, and flow-coat with baked-on primer and manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested propeller unit heater before shipping.
- D. Hot-Water Coil: Copper tube, 0.031-inch wall thickness, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering water temperature of 325°F, with manual air vent. Test for leaks to 375 psig underwater.
- E. Propeller with aluminum blades directly connected to motor.
- F. Units mounted shall be equipped with an OSHA fan guard. Fan guards shall be welded steel, zinc plated or painted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to unit heaters for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before cabinet unit heater installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide unit heaters level and plumb.
- B. Provide unit heaters to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Hung unit heaters shall be suspended from structure with rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- C. Provide piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing and report results in writing:
 - 1. After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
- B. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing units, inspect unit cabinet for damage to finish. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. After installing units, clean unit heaters internally according to manufacturers written instructions.

- C. Provide new filters in each cabinet unit heater within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260010

SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Terms and Units of Measure:

1. 8P8C: An 8-position 8-contact modular jack.
2. A: Ampere, unit of electrical current.
3. AC or ac: Alternating current.
4. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
5. AIC: Ampere interrupting capacity.
6. AL, Al, or ALUM: Aluminum.
7. ASD: Adjustable-speed drive; also called "variable-frequency drive" (VFD).
8. ATS: Automatic transfer switch.
9. AWG: American wire gauge; see ASTM B258.
10. BAS: Building automation system.
11. BIL: Basic impulse insulation level.
12. BIM: Building information modeling.
13. CAD: Computer-aided design or drafting.
14. CATV: Community antenna television.
15. CB: Circuit breaker.
16. cd: Candela, the SI fundamental unit of luminous intensity.
17. CO/ALR: Copper-aluminum, revised.
18. COPS: Critical operations power system.
19. CU or Cu: Copper.
20. CU-AL or AL-CU: Copper-aluminum.
21. dB: Decibel, a unitless logarithmic ratio of two electrical, acoustical, or optical power values.
22. dB(A-weighted) or dB(A): Decibel acoustical sound pressure level with A-weighting applied in accordance with IEC 61672-1.
23. dB(adjusted) or dBa: Decibel weighted absolute noise power with respect to 3.16 pW (minus 85 dBm).
24. dBm: Decibel absolute power with respect to 1 mW.
25. DC or dc: Direct current.
26. DCOA: Designated critical operations area.
27. DDC: Direct digital control (HVAC).
28. EGC: Equipment grounding conductor.
29. ELV: Extra-low voltage.
30. EMF: Electromotive force.
31. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
32. EPM: Electrical preventive maintenance.
33. EPS: Emergency power supply.

34. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
35. ESS: Energy storage system.
36. EV: Electric vehicle.
37. EVPE: Electric vehicle power export equipment.
38. EVSE: Electric vehicle supply equipment.
39. fc: Footcandle, an internationally recognized unit of illuminance equal to one lumen per square foot or 10.76 lx. The simplified conversion 1 fc = 10 lx in the Specifications is common practice and considered adequate precision for building construction activities. When there are conflicts, lux is the primary unit; footcandle is specified for convenience.
40. FLC: Full-load current.
41. ft: Foot.
42. ft-cd: Foot-candle, the antiquated U.S. Standard unit of illuminance, equal to one international candle measured at a distance of one foot, that was superseded in 1948 by the unit "footcandle" after the SI unit candela (cd) replaced the international candle; see "fc."
43. GEC: Grounding electrode conductor.
44. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
45. GFPE: Ground-fault protection of equipment.
46. GND: Ground.
47. HACR: Heating, air conditioning, and refrigeration.
48. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
49. HID: High-intensity discharge.
50. HP or hp: Horsepower.
51. HVAC: Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning.
52. Hz: Hertz.
53. IBT: Intersystem bonding termination.
54. inch: Inch. To avoid confusion, the abbreviation "in." is not used.
55. IP: Ingress protection rating (enclosures); Internet protocol (communications).
56. IR: Infrared.
57. IS: Intrinsically safe.
58. IT&R: Inspecting, testing, and repair.
59. ITE: Information technology equipment.
60. kAIC: Kiloampere interrupting capacity.
61. kcmil or MCM: One thousand circular mils.
62. kV: Kilovolt.
63. kVA: Kilovolt-ampere.
64. kVA_r or kVAR: Kilovolt-ampere reactive.
65. kW: Kilowatt.
66. kWh: Kilowatt-hour.
67. LAN: Local area network.
68. lb: Pound (weight).
69. lbf: Pound (force).
70. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.
71. LCDI: Leakage-current detector-interrupter.
72. LED: Light-emitting diode.
73. Li-ion: Lithium-ion.
74. lm: Lumen, the SI derived unit of luminous flux.
75. LNG: Liquefied natural gas.
76. LP-Gas: Liquefied petroleum gas.
77. LRC: Locked-rotor current.
78. LV: Low voltage.
79. lx: Lux, the SI derived unit of illuminance equal to one lumen per square meter.
80. m: Meter.
81. MCC: Motor-control center.
82. MDC: Modular data center.

83. MG set: Motor-generator set.
84. MIDI: Musical instrument digital interface.
85. MLO: Main lugs only.
86. MV: Medium voltage.
87. MVA: Megavolt-ampere.
88. mW: Milliwatt.
89. MW: Megawatt.
90. MWh: Megawatt-hour.
91. NC: Normally closed.
92. Ni-Cd: Nickel-cadmium.
93. Ni-MH: Nickel-metal hydride.
94. NIU: Network interface unit.
95. NO: Normally open.
96. NPT: National (American) standard pipe taper.
97. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
98. ONT: Optical network terminal.
99. PC: Personal computer.
100. PCS: Power conversion system.
101. PCU: Power-conditioning unit.
102. PF or pf: Power factor.
103. PHEV: Plug-in hybrid electric vehicle.
104. PLC: Programmable logic controller.
105. PLFA: Power-limited fire alarm.
106. PoE: Power over Ethernet.
107. PV: Photovoltaic.
108. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.
109. pW: Picowatt.
110. RFI: (electrical) Radio-frequency interference; (contract) Request for interpretation.
111. RMS or rms: Root-mean-square.
112. RPM or rpm: Revolutions per minute.
113. SCADA: Supervisory control and data acquisition.
114. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.
115. SPD: Surge protective device.
116. sq.: Square.
117. SWD: Switching duty.
118. TCP/IP: Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol.
119. TEFC: Totally enclosed fan-cooled.
120. TR: Tamper resistant.
121. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
122. UL: (standards) Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.; (product categories) UL, LLC.
123. UL CCN: UL Category Control Number.
124. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
125. USB: Universal serial bus.
126. UV: Ultraviolet.
127. V: Volt, unit of electromotive force.
128. V(ac): Volt, alternating current.
129. V(dc): Volt, direct current.
130. VA: Volt-ampere, unit of complex electrical power.
131. VAR: Volt-ampere reactive, unit of reactive electrical power.
132. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.
133. VOM: Volt-ohm-multimeter.
134. VPN: Virtual private network.
135. VRLA: Valve regulated lead acid; also called "sealed lead acid (SLA)" or "valve regulated sealed lead acid."
136. W: Watt, unit of real electrical power.

- 137. Wh: Watt-hour, unit of electrical energy usage.
- 138. WPT: Wireless power transfer.
- 139. WPTE: Wireless power transfer equipment.
- 140. WR: Weather resistant.

B. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Raceway Types:

- 1. CR: Communications raceway.
- 2. CR-GP: General-purpose communications raceway.
- 3. CR-P: Plenum communications raceway.
- 4. CR-R: Riser communications raceway.
- 5. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- 6. EMT-A: Aluminum electrical metallic tubing.
- 7. EMT-S: Steel electrical metallic tubing.
- 8. EMT-SS: Stainless steel electrical metallic tubing.
- 9. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- 10. EPEC: Electrical HDPE underground conduit (thin wall).
- 11. EPEC-A: Type A electrical HDPE underground conduit.
- 12. EPEC-B: Type B electrical HDPE underground conduit.
- 13. ERMC: Electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 14. ERMC-A: Aluminum electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 15. ERMC-S: Steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 16. ERMC-S-G: Galvanized-steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 17. ERMC-S-PVC: PVC-coated-steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 18. ERMC-SS: Stainless steel electrical rigid metal conduit.
- 19. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- 20. FMC-A: Aluminum flexible metal conduit.
- 21. FMC-S: Steel flexible metal conduit.
- 22. FMT: Steel flexible metallic tubing.
- 23. FNMC: Flexible nonmetallic conduit. See "LFNC."
- 24. HDPE: HDPE underground conduit (thick wall).
- 25. HDPE-40: Schedule 40 HDPE underground conduit.
- 26. HDPE-80: Schedule 80 HDPE underground conduit.
- 27. IMC: Steel electrical intermediate metal conduit.
- 28. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- 29. LFMC-A: Aluminum liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- 30. LFMC-S: Steel liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- 31. LFMC-SS: Stainless steel liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- 32. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- 33. LFNC-A: Layered (Type A) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- 34. LFNC-B: Integral (Type B) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- 35. LFNC-C: Corrugated (Type C) liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- 36. OFR: Optical fiber raceway.
- 37. OFR-GP: General-purpose optical fiber raceway.
- 38. OFR-P: Plenum optical fiber raceway.
- 39. OFR-R: Riser optical fiber raceway.
- 40. PVC: Rigid PVC conduit.
- 41. PVC-40: Schedule 40 rigid PVC conduit.
- 42. PVC-80: Schedule 80 rigid PVC Conduit.
- 43. PVC-A: Type A rigid PVC concrete-encased conduit.
- 44. PVC-EB: Type EB rigid PVC concrete-encased underground conduit.
- 45. RGS: See ERMC-S-G.
- 46. RMC: See ERMC.
- 47. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
- 48. RTRC-AG: Low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

49. RTRC-AG-HW: Heavy wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
50. RTRC-AG-SW: Standard wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
51. RTRC-AG-XW: Extra heavy wall, low-halogen, aboveground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.
52. RTRC-BG: Low-halogen, belowground reinforced thermosetting resin conduit.

C. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Single-Conductor and Multiple-Conductor Cable Types:

1. AC: Armored cable.
2. CATV: Coaxial general-purpose cable.
3. CATVP: Coaxial plenum cable.
4. CATVR: Coaxial riser cable.
5. CI: Circuit integrity cable.
6. CL2: Class 2 cable.
7. CL2P: Class 2 plenum cable.
8. CL2R: Class 2 riser cable.
9. CL2X: Class 2 cable, limited use.
10. CL3: Class 3 cable.
11. CL3P: Class 3 plenum cable.
12. CL3R: Class 3 riser cable.
13. CL3X: Class 3 cable, limited use.
14. CM: Communications general-purpose cable.
15. CMG: Communications general-purpose cable.
16. CMP: Communications plenum cable.
17. CMR: Communications riser cable.
18. CMUC: Under-carpet communications wire and cable.
19. CMX: Communications cable, limited use.
20. DG: Distributed generation cable.
21. FC: Flat cable.
22. FCC: Flat conductor cable.
23. FPL: Power-limited fire-alarm cable.
24. FPLP: Power-limited fire-alarm plenum cable.
25. FPLR: Power-limited fire-alarm riser cable.
26. IGS: Integrated gas spacer cable.
27. ITC: Instrumentation tray cable.
28. ITC-ER: Instrumentation tray cable, exposed run.
29. MC: Metal-clad cable.
30. MC-HL: Metal-clad cable, hazardous location.
31. MI: Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable.
32. MTW: (machine tool wiring) Moisture-, heat-, and oil-resistant thermoplastic cable.
33. MV: Medium-voltage cable.
34. NM: Nonmetallic sheathed cable.
35. NMC: Nonmetallic sheathed cable with corrosion-resistant nonmetallic jacket.
36. NMS: Nonmetallic sheathed cable with signaling, data, and communications conductors, plus power or control conductors.
37. NPLF: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit cable.
38. NPLFP: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit cable for environmental air spaces.
39. NPLFR: Non-power-limited fire-alarm circuit riser cable.
40. NUCC: Nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors.
41. OFC: Conductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
42. OFCG: Conductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
43. OFCP: Conductive optical fiber plenum cable.

44. OFCR: Conductive optical fiber riser cable.
45. OFN: Nonconductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
46. OFNG: Nonconductive optical fiber general-purpose cable.
47. OFNP: Nonconductive optical fiber plenum cable.
48. OFNR: Nonconductive optical fiber riser cable.
49. P: Marine shipboard cable.
50. PLTC: Power-limited tray cable.
51. PLTC-ER: Power-limited tray cable, exposed run.
52. PV: Photovoltaic cable.
53. RHH: (high heat) Thermoset rubber, heat-resistant cable.
54. RHW: Thermoset rubber, moisture-resistant cable.
55. SA: Silicone rubber cable.
56. SE: Service-entrance cable.
57. SER: Service-entrance cable, round.
58. SEU: Service-entrance cable, flat.
59. SIS: Thermoset cable for switchboard and switchgear wiring.
60. TBS: Thermoplastic cable with outer braid.
61. TC: Tray cable.
62. TC-ER: Tray cable, exposed run.
63. TC-ER-HL: Tray cable, exposed run, hazardous location.
64. THW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.
65. THHN: Thermoplastic, heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
66. THHW: Thermoplastic, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.
67. THWN: Thermoplastic, moisture- and heat-resistant cable with nylon jacket outer sheath.
68. TW: Thermoplastic, moisture-resistant cable.
69. UF: Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable.
70. USE: Underground service-entrance cable.
71. XHH: Cross-linked polyethylene, heat-resistant cable.
72. XHHW: Cross-linked polyethylene, heat- and moisture-resistant cable.

D. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Electrical Flexible Cord Types:

1. SEO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer covering for damp locations.
2. SEOW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer covering for damp or wet locations.
3. SEOO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer covering for damp locations.
4. SEOWW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer covering for damp or wet locations.
5. SJEO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer cover for damp locations.
6. SJEOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer cover for damp or wet locations.
7. SJEOO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer cover for damp locations.
8. SJEOOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer outer cover for damp or wet locations.
9. SJO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer cover for damp locations.

10. SJOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer cover for damp or wet locations.
11. SJOO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer cover for damp locations.
12. SJOOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer cover for damp or wet locations.
13. SJTO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer cover for damp locations.
14. SJTOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer cover for damp or wet locations.
15. SJTOO: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer cover for damp locations.
16. SJTOOW: 300 V hard-usage, junior hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer cover for damp or wet locations.
17. SO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer covering for damp locations.
18. SOW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer covering for damp or wet locations.
19. SOO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer covering for damp locations.
20. SOOW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoset insulation and oil-resistant thermoset outer covering for damp or wet locations.
21. STO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer covering for damp locations.
22. STOW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer covering for damp or wet locations.
23. STOO: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer covering for damp locations.
24. STOOOW: 600 V extra-hard-usage, hard-service cord with oil-resistant thermoplastic insulation and oil-resistant thermoplastic outer covering for damp or wet locations.

E. Definitions:

1. 8-Position 8-Contact (8P8C) Modular Jack: An unkeyed jack with up to eight contacts commonly used to terminate twisted-pair and multiconductor Ethernet cable. Also called a "TIA-1096 miniature 8-position series jack" (8PSJ), or an "IEC 8877 8-pole jack."
 - a. Be careful when suppliers use "RJ45" generically. Obsolete RJ45 jacks used for analog telephone cables have rejection keys. 8P8C jacks used for digital telephone cables and Ethernet cables do not have rejection keys.
2. Basic Impulse Insulation Level (BIL): Reference insulation level expressed in impulse crest voltage with a standard wave not longer than 1.5 times 50 microseconds and 1.5 times 40 microseconds.
3. Cable: In accordance with NIST NBS Circular 37 and IEEE standards, in the United States for the purpose of interstate commerce, the definition of "cable" is (1) a conductor with insulation, or a stranded conductor with or without insulation (single-conductor cable); or (2) a combination of conductors insulated from one another (multiple-conductor cable).
4. Communications Jack: A fixed connecting device designed for insertion of a communications cable plug.
5. Communications Outlet: One or more communications jacks, or cables and plugs, mounted in a box or ring, with a suitable protective cover.
6. Conductor: In accordance with NIST NBS Circular 37 and IEEE standards, in the United States for the purpose of interstate commerce, the definition of "conductor" is (1) a wire

- or combination of wires not insulated from one another, suitable for carrying an electric current; (2) (National Electrical Safety Code) a material, usually in the form of wire, cable, or bar, suitable for carrying an electric current; or (3) (general) a substance or body that allows a current of electricity to pass continuously along it.
7. Designated Seismic System: A system component that requires design in accordance with Ch. 13 of ASCE/SEI 7 and for which the Component Importance Factor is greater than 1.0.
 8. Direct Buried: Installed underground without encasement in concrete or other protective material.
 9. Enclosure: The case or housing of an apparatus, or the fence or wall(s) surrounding an installation, to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage. Types of enclosures and enclosure covers include the following:
 - a. Cabinet: An enclosure that is designed for either surface mounting or flush mounting and is provided with a frame, mat, or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or can be hung.
 - b. Concrete Box: A box intended for use in poured concrete.
 - c. Conduit Body: A means for providing access to the interior of a conduit or tubing system through one or more removable covers at a junction or terminal point. In the United States, conduit bodies are listed in accordance with outlet box requirements.
 - d. Conduit Box: A box having threaded openings or knockouts for conduit, EMT, or fittings.
 - e. Cutout Box: An enclosure designed for surface mounting that has swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the enclosure.
 - f. Device Box: A box with provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
 - g. Extension Ring: A ring intended to extend the sides of an outlet box or device box to increase the box depth, volume, or both.
 - h. Floor Box: A box mounted in the floor intended for use with a floor box cover and other components to complete the floor box enclosure.
 - i. Floor-Mounted Enclosure: A floor box and floor box cover assembly with means to mount in the floor that is sealed against the entrance of scrub water at the floor level.
 - j. Floor Nozzle: An enclosure used on a wiring system, intended primarily as a housing for a receptacle, provided with a means, such as a collar, for surface-mounting on a floor, which may or may not include a stem to support it above the floor level, and is sealed against the entrance of scrub water at the floor level.
 - k. Junction Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway or cable and provides space for connection and branching of the enclosed conductors.
 - l. Outlet Box: A box that provides access to a wiring system having pryout openings, knockouts, threaded entries, or hubs in either the sides or the back, or both, for the entrance of conduit, conduit or cable fittings, or cables, with provisions for mounting an outlet box cover, but without provisions for mounting a wiring device directly to the box.
 - m. Pedestal Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover that, when installed as intended, provides a means for typically vertical or near-vertical mounting of receptacle outlets above the floor's finished surface.
 - n. Pull Box: A box with a blank cover that joins different runs of raceway and provides access for pulling or replacing the enclosed cables or conductors.
 - o. Raised-Floor Box: A floor box intended for use in raised floors.
 - p. Recessed Access Floor Box: A floor box with provisions for mounting wiring devices below the floor surface.
 - q. Recessed Access Floor Box Cover: A floor box cover with provisions for passage of cords to recessed wiring devices mounted within a recessed floor box.

- r. Ring: A sleeve, which is not necessarily round, used for positioning a recessed wiring device flush with the plaster, concrete, drywall, or other wall surface.
 - s. Ring Cover: A box cover, with raised center portion to accommodate a specific wall or ceiling thickness, for mounting wiring devices or luminaires flush with the surface.
 - t. Termination Box: An enclosure designed for installation of termination base assemblies consisting of bus bars, terminal strips, or terminal blocks with provision for wire connectors to accommodate incoming or outgoing conductors, or both.
10. Emergency Systems: Those systems legally required and classed as emergency by municipal, state, federal, or other codes, or by any governmental agency having jurisdiction that are designed to ensure continuity of lighting, electrical power, or both, to designated areas and equipment in the event of failure of the normal supply for safety to human life.
11. Essential Electrical Systems: (healthcare facilities) Those systems designed to ensure continuity of electrical power to designated areas and functions of a healthcare facility during disruption of normal power sources, and also to minimize disruption within the internal wiring system.
12. Fault Limited: Providing or being served by a source of electrical power that is limited to not more than 100 W when tested in accordance with UL 62368-1.
- a. The term "fault limited" is intended to encompass most Class 1, 2, and 3 power-limited sources complying with Article 725 of NFPA 70; Class ES1 and ES2 electrical energy sources that are Class PS1 electrical power sources (e.g., USB); and Class ES3 electrical energy sources that are Class PS1 and PS2 electrical power sources (e.g., PoE). See UL 62368-1 for discussion of classes of electrical energy sources and classes of electrical power sources.
13. High-Performance Building: A building that integrates and optimizes on a life-cycle basis all major high-performance attributes, including energy conservation, environment, safety, security, durability, accessibility, cost-benefit, productivity, sustainability, functionality, and operational considerations.
14. Jacket: A continuous nonmetallic outer covering for conductors or cables.
15. Luminaire: A complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp, together with the parts designed to position the light source and connect it to the power supply. It may also include parts to protect the light source or the ballast or to distribute the light.
16. Mode: The terms "Active Mode," "Off Mode," and "Standby Mode" are used as defined in the Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA) of 2007.
17. Multi-Outlet Assembly: A type of surface, flush, or freestanding raceway designed to hold conductors, receptacles, and switches, assembled in the field or at the factory.
18. Plenum: A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.
19. Receptacle: A fixed connecting device arranged for insertion of a power cord plug. Also called a power jack.
20. Receptacle Outlet: One or more receptacles mounted in a box with a suitable protective cover.
21. Sheath: A continuous metallic covering for conductors or cables.
22. UL Category Control Number (CCN): An alphabetic or alphanumeric code used to identify product categories covered by UL's Listing, Classification, and Recognition Services.
23. Voltage Class: For specified circuits and equipment, voltage classes are defined as follows:
- a. Control Voltage: Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is supplied from a battery or other Class 2 or Class 3 power-limited source.

- b. Line Voltage: (1) (controls) Designed to operate using the supplied low-voltage power without transformation. (2) (transmission lines, transformers, SPDs) The line-to-line voltage of the supplying power system.
 - c. Extra-Low Voltage (ELV): Not having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, exceeding 30 V(ac rms), 42 V(ac peak), or 60 V(dc).
 - d. Low Voltage (LV): Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated above 30 V but not exceeding 1000 V.
 - e. Medium Voltage (MV): Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated about 1 kV but not exceeding 69 kV.
 - f. High Voltage: (1) (circuits) Having electromotive force between any two conductors, or between a single conductor and ground, that is rated above 69 kV but not exceeding 230 kV. (2) (safety) Having sufficient electromotive force to inflict bodily harm or injury.
24. Wire: In accordance with NIST NBS Circular 37 and IEEE standards, in the United States for the purpose of interstate commerce, the definition of "wire" is a slender rod or filament of drawn metal. A group of small wires used as a single wire is properly called a "stranded wire." A wire or stranded wire covered with insulation is properly called an "insulated wire" or a "single-conductor cable." Nevertheless, when the context indicates that the wire is insulated, the term "wire" will be understood to include the insulation.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notify Owner and engineer of record no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.
 - 3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Exercising generators.
 - b. Emergency lighting.
 - c. Elevators.
 - d. Fire-alarm systems.
- B. Arrange to provide temporary electrical power to support construction effort in accordance with requirements specified in Division 01.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Electrical Preconstruction Conference: Schedule conference with Architect and Owner, not later than 10 days after notice to proceed. Agenda topics include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Electrical installation schedule.
 - 2. Status of power system studies.
 - 3. Value analysis proposals and requests for substitution of electrical equipment.
 - 4. Utility work coordination and class of service requests.
 - 5. Commissioning activities.

1.5 SEQUENCING

- A. Conduct and submit results of power system studies before submitting Product Data and Shop Drawings for electrical equipment.

1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. Generated by contractor for review by owner and engineer of record.

1.7 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination drawings.

1.8 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Electrical installation schedule.
- B. Qualification statements.

1.9 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Facility EPM program binders.
- B. Operation and maintenance data.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Prepare and submit qualification statements for the following entities performing Work on Project:
 - 1. Qualified Regional Manufacturer: Manufacturer, possessing qualifications that maintains a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency on-site repairs to Project site with response time less than eight hours.
 - 2. Structural Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications with expertise in structural engineering.
 - 3. Electrical Professional Engineer: Professional engineer possessing active qualifications with expertise in electrical engineering, including electrical power system modeling and analysis of electrical safety in accordance with NFPA 70E.
 - 4. ERMC-S-PVC Installers: Installer possessing active qualifications and able to present unexpired certified Installer credentials issued by ERMC-S-PVC manufacturer prior to starting installation.
 - 5. Medium-Voltage Cable Installer: Entity possessing active qualifications with training and manufacturer certification to install, splice, and terminate medium-voltage cable in accordance with electrical utility service provider's requirements.
 - a. Medium-voltage cable Installer must be approved by owner.

6. Medium-Voltage Duct Installer: Entity possessing active qualifications with documented training and experience with installation of medium-voltage duct banks in accordance with electrical utility service provider's requirements.
 - a. Medium-voltage duct Installer must be approved by owner.
7. Medium-Voltage Equipment Installer: Entity possessing active qualifications with documented training and experience with hazards and safety requirements associated with installation and operation of medium-voltage equipment in accordance with electrical utility service provider requirements.
 - a. Medium-voltage equipment Installer must be approved by owner.
8. Medium-Voltage Electrical Testing and Inspecting Agency: Entities possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. On-site electrical testing supervisors must have documented certification and experience with testing electrical equipment in accordance with NETA testing standards.
9. Power-Limited Electrical Testing Agency: Entity possessing active credentials from a qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. On-site power-limited testing supervisor must have BICSI Registered Communications Distribution Designer certification and documented training and experience with testing power-limited equipment in accordance with NETA testing standards.

B. Certifications:

1. Seismic-Load Performance Certificates: Provide special certification for designated seismic systems as indicated in Paragraph 13.2.2 "Special Certification Requirements for Designated Seismic Systems" of ASCE/SEI 7-05 for all designated seismic-load systems identified on Drawings or in the Specifications.
 - a. Include the following information:
 - 1) Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2) Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3) Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4) Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 5) Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification for each designated active electrical seismic device and system, stating that it will remain operable following the design earthquake. Certification must be based on requirements of ASCE/SEI 7, including shake table testing per ICC-ES AC156 or a similar nationally recognized testing standard procedure acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or experience data as permitted by ASCE/SEI 7-05.

- 6) Provide equipment manufacturer's written certification that components with hazardous contents maintain containment following the design earthquake by methods required in ASCE/SEI 7-05.
 - 7) Submit evidence demonstrating compliance with these requirements for approval to authorities having jurisdiction after review and acceptance by qualified structural professional engineer.
- b. The following systems and components are Designated Seismic Systems and require written special certification of seismic qualification by manufacturer:
- 1) Hangers and supports specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
 - 2) Equipment, accessories, and components specified in Section 261219 "Pad-Mounted, Liquid-Filled, Medium-Voltage Transformers."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
1. Notification of Contractor's intent to request substitutions for convenience must be declared during the Electrical Preconstruction Conference so potential risks to system performance and construction schedule may be identified for Contractor's response in submission of the substitution request. Submission of requests for substitutions for convenience must meet the conditions and deadline specified in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" to receive approval.
 2. For electrical equipment and systems, substitutions for cause are considered major construction risks. If it is possible that Contractor may need to request substitutions for cause because of equipment unavailability, or inability to meet construction schedule because of lead time, Contractor must declare the possibility during the Electrical Preconstruction Conference to permit establishing a mitigation plan for minimizing risks to system performance and construction schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions
- B. Preinstallation Testing
- C. Evaluation and Assessment

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Electrical Installation Schedule: At preconstruction meeting, and periodically thereafter as dates change, provide schedule for electrical installation Work to Owner and Architect including, but not limited to, milestone dates for the following activities:

1. Submission of power system studies.
2. Submission of specified coordination drawings.
3. Submission of action submittals specified in Division 26.
4. Orders placed for major electrical equipment.
5. Arrival of major electrical equipment on-site.
6. Preinstallation meetings specified in Division 26.
7. Utility service outages.
8. Utility service inspection and activation.
9. Requests for inspections by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Coordination Drawings for Large Equipment Outdoor Installations:

1. Utilities site plan, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths for maintenance and replacement, with the following items shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - a. Fences and walls, dimensioned concrete bases, outlines of equipment, conduit entries, and grounding and bonding locations.
 - b. Indicate clear dimensions for fence gates and wall openings.
 - c. Indicate depth and type of ground cover, and locations of trees, shrubbery, and other obstructions in access path.
 - d. Indicate clear height below tree branches, overhead lines, bridges, and other overhead obstructions in access path, or where cranes and hoists will be needed to handle large electrical equipment.
 - e. Support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Locate structural supports for structure-supported raceways.
 - f. Dimensioned working clearances and dedicated areas around electrical equipment.

C. Coordination Drawings for Duct Banks:

1. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
2. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.

D. Protection of In-Place Conditions

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

- A. Unless more stringent requirements are specified in the Contract Documents or manufacturers' written instructions, comply with NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 1 for installation of Work specified in Division 26. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

3.4 SYSTEM STARTUP

A. Commissioning Activities:

1. Medium voltage cable, medium voltage transformer, low voltage cable and all related termination devices.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Administrant for Medium-Voltage Electrical Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Engage qualified medium-voltage electrical testing and inspecting agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.
- B. Administrant for Low-Voltage Electrical Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Administer and perform tests and inspections with assistance of factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Administrant for Power-Limited Electrical Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Engage qualified power-limited electrical testing and inspecting agency to administer and perform tests and inspections.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Waste Management:
 - 1. Coordinate with owner for location to turn over removed transformer for on site storage

3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: Prepare and submit the following:
 - 1. Provide emergency operation, normal operation, and preventive maintenance manuals for each system, equipment, and device listed below:
 - a. New medium voltage transformer
 - b. New medium voltage cable.
 - 2. Include the following information:
 - a. Manufacturer's operating specifications.
 - b. User's guides for software and hardware.
 - c. Schedule of maintenance material items recommended to be stored at Project site.
 - d. Detailed instructions covering operation under both normal and abnormal conditions.
 - e. Time-current curves for overcurrent protective devices and manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting their settings.
 - f. List of load-current and overload-relay heaters with related motor nameplate data.
 - g. List of lamp types and photoelectric relays used on Project, with ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
 - h. Manufacturer's instructions for setting field-adjustable components.
 - i. Manufacturer's instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor controls.
 - j. EPSS: Manufacturer's system checklists, maintenance schedule, and maintenance log sheets in accordance with NFPA 110.
 - k. Exterior pole inspection and repair procedures.
 - l. Include copies of demonstration and training videos.

- B. Training: With assistance from factory-authorized service representatives, train Owner's maintenance personnel on the following topics:
 - 1. How to adjust, operate, and maintain equipment specified in Section 261219 "Pad-Mounted, Liquid-Filled, Medium-Voltage Transformers."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260100

BASIC ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. General requirements applicable to all Division 26 sections.
 - 2. Temporary power and lighting.

1.3 TEMPORARY POWER AND LIGHTING

- A. The existing electrical service shall be the source for temporary power.
- B. Power Distribution: Provide weatherproof, grounded circuits with ground-fault interruption features, with proper power characteristics and either permanently wired or plug-in connections as appropriate for intended use. Provide overload-protected disconnect switch for each circuit at distribution panel. Space 4-gang convenience outlets (20 amp circuit) so that every portion of work can be reached with 100' extension cord.
- C. Temporary Lighting: Provide lighting of intensity and quality sufficient for proper and safe performance of the work and for access thereto and security thereof, minimum average illumination level in every room shall be 20 footcandles.

1.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS APPLICABLE TO ALL DIVISION 26 SECTIONS

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. Conform to the requirements of all laws and regulations applicable to the work.
 - 2. Conform to the requirements of Federal State and Municipal Building Codes.
 - 3. Cooperate with all authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 4. Compliance with laws and regulations governing the work on this project does not relieve the Contractor from compliance with more restrictive requirements contained in these specifications.
 - 5. If the Contract Documents are found to be at variance with any law or regulation, the Contractor shall notify the Architect/Engineer promptly in writing. The Contractor shall

assume full responsibility for any work contrary to law or regulation, and shall bear all costs for the corrections thereof.

6. Minimum Requirements: The National Electrical Code (NEC), Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL), the National Fire Codes, and National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) are a minimum requirement for work under this section. Design drawings and other specification sections shall govern in those instances where requirements are greater than those required by code.

B. REFERENCES

1. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.
 - a. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA).
 - b. National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - c. National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
 - d. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)
 - e. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
 - f. Certified Ballast Manufacturers Association (CBM)
 - g. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)
 - h. International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA)
 - i. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE)
 - j. American Society for Testing Materials Specifications (ASTM)
 - k. National Bureau of Standards Handbook (NBS)
 - l. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
 - m. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
 - n. Insulated Power Cable Engineers Association Specifications (IPCEA)

C. Permits, Fees, and Inspections:

1. Secure and pay for all permits, fees, licenses, inspections, etc., required for the work under Division 26.
2. Schedule and pay for all legally required inspections and cooperate with inspecting officers.
3. Provide Certificates of Inspection and Approval from all regulatory authorities having jurisdiction over the work in Division 26.

- D. The Contractor shall study all drawings and specifications, visit the site, and acquaint itself with the existing conditions and the requirements of the plans and specifications. No claim will be recognized for extra compensation due to the failure of the Contractor to familiarize itself with the conditions and extent of the proposed work.

1.5 EFFICIENCY MAINE

- A. This project intends to pursue Efficient Maine prescriptive and/or custom incentives. The contractor shall be an Efficiency Maine Qualified Partner and shall participate in the activities associated with Efficiency Maine incentive pre-approval and approval process including but not limited to; preparation and submission of required incentive application(s) and the tracking and submission of measure specific invoices to Efficiency Maine within 60 days of the completion of the work.

- B. The contractor shall also:
 - 1. Become familiar with the Efficiency Maine Business Program including available incentives and the application and review process.
 - 2. Review plans and specifications for any and all lighting and lighting control incentive opportunities, prescriptive and custom.
 - 3. Participate and support the effort for advancing and completing the application process for lighting, lighting control and HVAC rebates.
- C. The project schedule shall reflect and accommodate the time required to achieve application preapproval from Efficiency Maine. No equipment shall be purchased until preapproval is received from Efficiency Maine.
- D. All invoices shall be forwarded to Efficiency Maine in accordance with Efficiency Maine requirements. This deliverable shall be shown on the project schedule as a milestone date and coordinated with all contractors to assure compliance with this requirement.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work of Division 26 with other Divisions, the Owner, and utility companies.
- B. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
 - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
 - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
 - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
 - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- C. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS – Not Used

PART 3 - EXECUTION – Not Used

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260513

MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cables and related cable splices, terminations, and accessories for medium-voltage (2001 to 35,000 V) electrical distribution systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Jacket: A continuous nonmetallic outer covering for conductors or cables.
- B. NETA ATS: Acceptance Testing Specification.
- C. Sheath: A continuous metallic covering for conductors or cables.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cable. Include splices and terminations for cables and cable accessories.
- B. Samples: 16-inch lengths for each type of cable specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Indicate location of each cable, splice, and termination.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type of cable and accessory.
- D. Design Data: Cable pulling calculations, including conduit size and fill percentage, pulling tensions, cable sidewall pressure, jam probability, voltage drop, and ground wire sizing for each cable.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer: Engage a cable splicer, trained and certified by splice material manufacturer, to install, splice, and terminate medium-voltage cable.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 and NFPA 70.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain cables and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CABLES

- 1. [General Cable; Prysmian Group North America.](#)
- 2. [Hendrix Wire and Cable; Marmon Holdings, Inc.; Berkshire Hathaway Inc.](#)
- 3. [Kerite Power Cable; Marmon Holdings, Inc.; Berkshire Hathaway Inc.](#)
- 4. [Okonite Company \(The\).](#)
- B. Cable Type: Type MV 105.
- C. Conductor Insulation: Ethylene-propylene rubber.
 - 1. Voltage Rating: 15 kV.
 - 2. Insulation Thickness: 133 percent insulation level.
- D. Conductor: Copper.
- E. Comply with UL 1072, AEIC CS8, ICEA S-93-639/NEMA WC 74, and ICEA S-97-682, and ICEA S-94-649.
- F. Conductor Stranding: Compact round, concentric lay, Class B.

- G. Shielding: Copper tape, helically applied over semiconducting insulation shield.
- H. Cable Jacket: Sunlight-resistant PVC.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- 1. [3M.](#)
- 2. [ABB, Electrification Business.](#)
- 3. [Eaton.](#)
- B. Comply with ANSI C119.4 for connectors between aluminum conductors or for connections between aluminum to copper conductors.
- C. Copper-Conductor Connectors: Copper barrel crimped connectors.

2.4 SOLID TERMINATIONS

- 1. [3M.](#)
- 2. [ABB, Electrification Business.](#)
- 3. [G&W Electric Company..](#)
- B. Multiconductor Cable Sheath Seals: Type recommended by seal manufacturer for type of cable and installation conditions, including orientation.
 - 1. Cold-shrink sheath seal kit with preformed sleeve openings sized for cable and insulated conductors.
- C. Shielded-Cable Terminations: Comply with the following classes of IEEE 48. Insulation class shall be equivalent to that of cable. Include shield ground strap for shielded cable terminations.
 - 1. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief tube; multiple, molded-silicone-rubber, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
 - 2. Class 1 Terminations: Modular type, furnished as a kit, with stress-relief shield terminator; multiple-wet-process, porcelain, insulator modules; shield ground strap; and compression-type connector.
 - 3. Class 1 Terminations, Indoors: Kit with stress-relief tube, nontracking insulator tube, shield ground strap, compression-type connector, and end seal.

2.5 SEPARABLE INSULATED CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Modular system, complying with IEEE 386, with disconnecting, single-pole, cable terminators and with matching, stationary, plug-in, dead-front terminals designed for cable voltage and for sealing against moisture.
 - 1. [3M.](#)
 - 2. [ABB, Electrification Business.](#)
 - 3. [Eaton](#)
- B. Load-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type units with 200-A-load make/break and continuous-current rating; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.

- C. Dead-Break Cable Terminators: Elbow-type unit with 200-A continuous-current rating; designed for de-energized disconnecting and connecting; coordinated with insulation diameter, conductor size, and material of cable being terminated. Include test point on terminator body that is capacitance coupled.
- D. Dead-Front Terminal Junctions: Modular bracket-mounted groups of dead-front stationary terminals that mate and match with above cable terminators. Two-, three-, or four-terminal units as indicated, with fully rated, insulated, watertight conductor connection between terminals and complete with grounding lug, manufacturer's standard accessory stands, stainless-steel mounting brackets, and attaching hardware.
 - 1. Protective Cap: Insulating, electrostatic-shielding, water-sealing cap with drain wire.
 - 2. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: Two-terminal, dead-front junction arranged for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction.
 - 3. Grounding Kit: Jumpered elbows, portable feed-through accessory units, protective caps, test rods suitable for concurrently grounding three phases of feeders, and carrying case.
 - 4. Standoff Insulator: Portable, single dead-front terminal for removable mounting on accessory stand of stationary terminal junction. Insulators suitable for fully insulated isolation of energized cable-elbow terminator.
- E. Test-Point Fault Indicators: Applicable current-trip ratings and arranged for installation in test points of load-break separable connectors, and complete with self-resetting indicators capable of being installed with shotgun hot stick and tested with test tool.
- F. Tool Set: Shotgun hot stick with energized terminal indicator, fault-indicator test tool, and carrying case.

2.6 SPLICE KITS

- A. Description: For connecting medium voltage cables; type as recommended by cable or splicing kit manufacturer for the application.
 - 1. [3M](#).
 - 2. [ABB, Electrification Business](#).
 - 3. [Eaton](#)
- B. Splicing Products: As recommended, in writing, by splicing kit manufacturer for specific sizes, materials, ratings, and configurations of cable conductors. Include all components required for complete splice, with detailed instructions.
 - 1. Premolded, cold-shrink-rubber, in-line splicing kit.
 - 2. Premolded, EPDM splicing body kit with cable joint sealed by interference fit of mating parts and cable.
 - 3. Separable multiway splice system with all components for the required splice configuration.

2.7 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TAPES

- A. Description: Electrical grade, insulating tape rated for medium voltage application.

- B. Ethylene/propylene rubber-based, 30-mil splicing tape, rated for 130 deg C operation. Minimum 3/4 inch wide.
- C. Silicone rubber-based, 12-mil self-fusing tape, rated for 130 deg C operation. Minimum 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide.

2.8 FAULT INDICATORS

- A. Indicators: Manually reset fault indicator with inrush restraint feature, arranged to clamp to cable sheath and provide a display after a fault has occurred in cable. Instrument shall not be affected by heat, moisture, and corrosive conditions and shall be recommended by manufacturer for installation conditions.
- B. Resetting Tool: Designed for use with fault indicators, with moisture-resistant storage and carrying case.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect cables according to ICEA S-97-682 before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cables according to IEEE 576.
- B. Proof conduits prior to conductor installation by passing a wire brush mandrel and then a rubber duct swab through the conduit. Separate the wire brush and the rubber swab by 48 to 72 inches on the pull rope.
 - 1. Wire Brush Mandrel: Consists of a length of brush approximately the size of the conduit inner diameter with stiff steel bristles and an eye on each end for attaching the pull ropes. If an obstruction is felt, pull the brush back and forth repeatedly to break up the obstruction.
 - 2. Rubber Duct Swab: Consists of a series of rubber discs approximately the size of the conduit inner diameter on a length of steel cable with an eye on each end for attaching the pull ropes. Pull the rubber duct swab through the duct to extract loose debris from the duct.
- C. Pull Conductors: Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
 - 1. Where necessary, use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant that does not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
 - 2. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave cable grips, that do not damage cables and raceways. Do not use rope hitches for pulling attachment to cable.
 - 3. Use pull-in guides, cable feeders, and draw-in protectors as required to protect cables during installation.
 - 4. Do not pull cables with ends unsealed. Seal cable ends with rubber tape.

- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- F. In manholes, handholes, pull boxes, junction boxes, and cable vaults, train cables around walls by the longest route from entry to exit; support cables at intervals adequate to prevent sag.
- G. Install sufficient cable length to remove cable ends under pulling grips. Remove length of conductor damaged during pulling.
- H. Install cable splices at pull points and elsewhere as indicated; use standard kits. Use dead-front separable watertight connectors in manholes and other locations subject to water infiltration.
- I. Install terminations at ends of conductors, and seal multiconductor cable ends with standard kits.
- J. Install separable insulated-connector components as follows:
 - 1. Protective Cap: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal to which no feeder is indicated to be connected.
 - 2. Portable Feed-Through Accessory: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal.
 - 3. Standoff Insulator: At each terminal junction, with one on each terminal.
- K. Install fault indicators on each phase where indicated.
- L. Ground shields of shielded cable at terminations, splices, and separable insulated connectors. Ground metal bodies of terminators, splices, cable and separable insulated-connector fittings, and hardware.
- M. Identify cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Identify phase, cable kV rating, circuit number and served load name (or source name) of each conductor at each splice, termination, pull point, and junction box. Arrange identification so that it is unnecessary to move the cable or conductor to read the identification. Inside the existing transformer vault provide same cable label product to indicate at interior wall of duct bank departure the same information described above.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. After installing medium-voltage cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Perform direct-current High Potential test of each new conductor according to NETA ATS, Ch. 7.3.3. Do not exceed cable manufacturer's recommended maximum test voltage.
 - 4. Perform Partial Discharge test of each new conductor according to NETA ATS, Ch. 7.3.3 and to test equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

- C. Medium-voltage cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Armored cable, Type AC, rated 600 V or less.
5. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
6. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.
2. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for twisted pair cabling used for data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [Alpha Wire Company](#).
 - 2. [American Bare Conductor](#).
 - 3. [Belden Inc.](#)
 - 4. [General Cable Technologies Corporation](#).
 - 5. [Okonite Company \(The\)](#).
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. RoHS compliant.
 - 3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type NM: Comply with UL 83 and UL 719.
 - 2. Type RHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
 - 3. Type SE: Comply with UL 854.
 - 4. Type TC-ER: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 1277.
 - 5. Type THHN: Comply with UL 83.
 - 6. Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
 - 7. Type UF: Comply with UL 83 and UL 493.
 - 8. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- F. Shield:
 - 1. Type TC-ER: Cable designed for use with VFCs, with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - 2. Belden Inc.
 - 3. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
- C. Standards:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
 - 2. Comply with UL 1569.
 - 3. RoHS compliant.
 - 4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Circuits:
 - 1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
 - 2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.
- E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.
- G. Conductor Insulation:
 - 1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
 - 2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.
- H. Armor: Aluminum, interlocked.
- I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
 - 2. Comtran Corporation.
 - 3. Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.
 - 4. Radix Wire.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation, and complying with requirements in UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum, in pathway.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with outer jacket with red identifier stripe, NRTL listed for fire-alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.4 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. [3M Electrical Products.](#)
 - 2. [Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Ideal Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.](#)
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
 - 1. Material: Copper.
 - 2. Type: Two hole with standard barrels.
 - 3. Termination: Crimp.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- I. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is permitted.
 - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables shall not be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- E. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- F. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire-alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements:
 - 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.

- f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
 4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
 5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 1. Procedures used.
 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1) Test wells.
 - 2) Ground rods.

- 3) Ground rings.
- 4) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
 2. ERICO; a brand of nVent.
 3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.

2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
 4. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- G. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- H. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- I. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- J. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- K. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- L. Straps: Solid copper, cast-bronze clamp. Rated for 600 A.
- M. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal two-piece clamp.
- N. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- O. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector.

2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.
- B. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
 - 3. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
 - 1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 - 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 - 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- G. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.

1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 2. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
 3. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
6. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
 - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
 - b. Clamps.
 - c. Hangers.
 - d. Sockets.
 - e. Eye nuts.
 - f. Fasteners.
 - g. Anchors.
 - h. Saddles.
 - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.
 - 1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
 - 2. Slotted support systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.
 - 4. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.
 - 1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.
 - 2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
 - 2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
 - 3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
 - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.

- B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the supported equipment and systems will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
 - b. CADDY; a brand of nVent.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in

riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.

- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
 - 1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti, Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, [zinc-coated] [stainless] steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
 - 2) Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 - 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 - 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325.
 - 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
 - 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
 - 1. NECA 1.
 - 2. NECA 101
 - 3. NECA 105.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or

greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.

6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260533

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

- C. Samples: For wireways nonmetallic wireways and surface raceways and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches long.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

- A. Metal Conduit:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - c. Calconduit.
 - d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
 - 4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
 - 5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.

6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
 - c. Calconduit.
 - d. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
6. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: Setscrew.
7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
 - b. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
 - c. Condux International, Inc.
 - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fiberglass:

- a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
 - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
 - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
4. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
 5. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
 6. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
 7. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
 8. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
 9. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
 10. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.
- B. Nonmetallic Fittings:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. [AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.](#)
 - b. [Anamet Electrical, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Condux International, Inc.](#)
 - d. [Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.](#)
 2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
 3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
 - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
 4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [B-line, an Eaton business.](#)
 2. [Hoffman; a brand of nVent.](#)
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Moulded Products, Inc.
 - 2. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. MonoSystems, Inc.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated.
 - b. MonoSystems, Inc.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Crouse-Hinds, an Eaton business.
 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 3. Hoffman; a brand of nVent.
 4. Hubbell Incorporated.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- K. Gangable boxes are allowed.
- L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- M. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. NewBasis.
 - c. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.

4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Mechanical rooms.
4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

F. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to GRC or IMC before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

- Q. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- R. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- S. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- T. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- U. Surface Raceways:
1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch radius control at bend points.
 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- V. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- W. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- X. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.

- c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
- 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
 - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- Z. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
- 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- CC. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- DD. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- EE. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- FF. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- GG. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- HH. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT
- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
- 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 - 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260543

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Direct-buried conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
 - 2. Concrete-encased conduit, ducts, and duct accessories.
 - 3. Handholes and boxes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
 - 2. Include ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
 - 3. Include accessories for handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
 - 4. Include warning tape.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:
 - a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
 - b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - c. Include cover design.
 - d. Include grounding details.
 - e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.
- C. Source quality-control reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.
- B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is **36 inches** below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DUCTS AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with ANSI C2.

2.2 CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.
- B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC and Type EPC-80-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.3 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 2, UL 651, ASTM F 512, Type EPC-80 and Type EPC-40, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3.
- B. Duct Accessories:
 - 1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.

2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

2.4 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- B. Comply with utility company specifications for each service.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
 1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 2. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 3. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, As indicated for each service.
 4. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.
 6. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks, plus an additional **12 inches** vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - a. Windows shall be located no less than **6 inches** from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded-wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
 - c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 3 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 7. Handholes **12 inches wide by 24 inches long** and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
 1. Color: Gray.
 2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, As indicated for each service.

- B. Polymer Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Armorcast Products Company](#).
 - b. [Carson Industries LLC](#).
 - c. [Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.](#)

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 - 1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 - 2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Division 31. Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Division 31.

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Ducts for Electrical Cables More than 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank under paved areas and direct buried under non-paved areas unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-80 for emergency systems and Type EPC-40-PVC, for non-emergency systems in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks and Driveways: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
 - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
 - 3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
 - 4. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 31, but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32.
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01.

3.5 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts according to NEMA TCB 2.
- B. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two handholes, to drain in both directions.
- C. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured standard sweep bends both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- E. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.
- F. Duct Entrances to Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches o.c. for 5-inch ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct banks with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch.
 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- G. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 10 feet outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- H. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig hydrostatic pressure.
- I. Pulling Cord: Install 100-lbf-test nylon cord in empty ducts.
- J. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 31 for pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 2. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches wider than duct bank on each side.
 3. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
 4. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per 20 feet of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately 6 inches between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 5. Elbows: Use manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete.

- b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For fixtures and equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches** from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
7. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
8. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of **3 inches** of concrete cover at top and bottom, and a minimum of **2 inches** on each side of duct bank.
9. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between handholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install **3/4-inch** reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of **18 inches** into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
10. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03. Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

K. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Comply with requirements in Division 31 for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than **6 inches** in nominal diameter.
2. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
3. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than four spacers per **20 feet** of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately **6 inches** between tiers.
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct run.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with **3 inches** of concrete.
 - b. For fixtures and equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of **60 inches** from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to **4 inches** over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use

hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Division 31 for installation of backfill materials.

- a. Place minimum **3 inches** of sand as a bed for duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of **6 inches** above top level of duct bank.
- L. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately **12 inches** below grade above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within **3 inches** of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each **12-inch** increment of duct-bank width over a nominal **18 inches**. Space additional tapes **12 inches** apart, horizontally.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Precast Concrete Handhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1-inch** sieve to **No. 4** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:

1. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
2. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch** above finished grade.
3. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

C. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07. After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars.

D. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Division 07. After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars.

E. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes and cable stanchions as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

F. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than **2 inches** for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box

extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from **1/2-inch** sieve to **No. 4** sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes **1 inch** above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, provide structural protection as recommended by handhole or box manufacturer.

3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
 - 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum **6-inch**-long mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
 - 3. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

- B. Clean internal surfaces of handholes. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260544

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
 - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Advance Products & Systems, Inc.](#)
 - b. [CALPICO, Inc.](#)
 - c. [Metraflex Company \(The\).](#)
 - d. [Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Proco Products, Inc.](#)
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating or Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Presealed Systems.](#)

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: **5000-psi**, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Cables Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07.
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches** above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Cables Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel or cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- F. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260548

SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Restraint channel bracings.
2. Restraint cables.
3. Seismic-restraint accessories.
4. Mechanical anchor bolts.
5. Adhesive anchor bolts.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each seismic-restraint device.

1. Include design calculations and details for selecting seismic restraints complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading caused by equipment weight, operation, and seismic forces required to select seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.

- a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

3. Seismic-Restraint Details:

- a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
- b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.
- c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis. They shall bear anchorage preapproval from OSHPD in addition to preapproval, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings, by ICC-ES or another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) that support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Structural Design.
- B. The following components are Ip= 1.5:
 - 1. Fire alarm system
 - 2. Generator and emergency power distribution system.

2.2 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a Division of Cooper Industries.](#)
 - 2. [Hilti, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Unistrut; Atkore International.](#)
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end, with other matching components, and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.3 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Loos & Co., Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.](#)
- B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.4 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a Division of Cooper Industries.](#)
 - 2. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [TOLCO; a brand of NIBCO INC.](#)

- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener:
 - 1. Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections.
 - 2. Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.
- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.5 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a Division of Cooper Industries.](#)
 - 2. [Hilti, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.6 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. [Hilti, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Mason Industries, Inc.](#)
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03.
- B. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:
 - 1. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds **0.125 inch**.
 - 2. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction providing required submittals for component.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- F. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where connection is terminated to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
- B. Seismic controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Identification for conductors.
 - 2. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 3. Warning labels and signs.
 - 4. Equipment identification labels.
 - 5. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than **3 mils** thick by **1 to 2 inches** wide.
- B. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, **3-mil**-thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the conductor diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
- C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- F. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, **0.015 inch** thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
 - 1. Labels for Tags: Self-adhesive label, machine-printed with permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer, sized for attachment to tag.

2.2 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
 - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
 - 4. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - 5. Thickness: **4 mils**.
 - 6. Weight: **18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft.**
 - 7. **3-Inch** Tensile According to ASTM D 882: **30 lbf**, and **2500 psi**.
- B. Color and Printing:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.

2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE,.
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE,.

2.3 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
 1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 2. **1/4-inch** grommets in corners for mounting.
 3. Nominal size, **7 by 10 inches**.
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
 1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with **0.0396-inch** galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 2. **1/4-inch** grommets in corners for mounting.
 3. Nominal size, **10 by 14 inches**.
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD."

2.4 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum **1/16 inch** thick for signs up to **20 sq. inches** and **1/8 inch** thick for larger sizes.
 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
- B. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch**.
- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch**. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.5 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch**.

- B. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch**.

2.6 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch**.
 - 2. Tensile Strength at **73 deg F**, According to ASTM D 638: **12,000 psi**.
 - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F**.
 - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
 - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- G. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at **6 to 8 inches** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds **16 inches** overall.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
 - 1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Brown.
 - 2) Phase B: Orange.
 - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
 - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches** from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic plastic tag holder with adhesive-backed phase tags, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.
- C. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- D. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, self-adhesive, self-laminating polyester labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- E. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations provide self-adhesive, self-laminating polyester labels with the conductor designation.
- F. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
 - 1. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- H. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

- I. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
 1. Labeling Instructions:
 - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch**-high letters on **1-1/2-inch**-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches** high.
 - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - c. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
 2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Enclosed switches.
 - e. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - f. Enclosed controllers.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260572

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section..

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- B. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- C. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- D. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals may be in digital form.
 - 1. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - b. Revised single-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Short-Circuit Study Specialist
- B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Short-Circuit Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

- A. Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide software by one of the following:
 - 1. ESA Inc
 - 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 - 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
- C. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Cable size and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.

4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements, where needed.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article in the Evaluations.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output:
1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.
 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
 - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
 3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the study.
 - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
 - 2. For equipment provided that is Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
 - 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 - 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 - 3. Power sources and ties.
 - 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 - 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
 - 6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 - 7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 - 8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
 - 9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 - 10. Cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.

2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.
1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault at each of the following:
1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
 2. Incoming switchgear.
 3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
 4. Low-voltage switchgear.
 5. Motor-control centers.
 6. Control panels.
 7. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
 8. Branch circuit panelboards.
 9. Disconnect switches.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit study.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's operating and maintenance personnel in the use of study results.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260573

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - 1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
 - 3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in

equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Coordination Study Software Developer Coordination Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For the overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. The following parts from the Protective Device Coordination Study Report:
 - 1) One-line diagram.
 - 2) Protective device coordination study.
 - 3) Time-current coordination curves.
 - b. Power system data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Coordination Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Coordination Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available software developers offering software that may be used for the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. ESA Inc.
 2. Operation Technology, Inc.
 3. Power Analytics, Corporation.
 4. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
1. Optional Features:
 - a. Arcing faults.
 - b. Simultaneous faults.
 - c. Explicit negative sequence.
 - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

2.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 2. Cable size and lengths.
 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study – Refer to Section 260572 – “Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study”.

- F. Protective Device Coordination Study:
1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
 - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
 - 1) Device tag.
 - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
 - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
 - b. Circuit Breakers:
 - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, ground).
 - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
 - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
 - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
 - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- G. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
 2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
 3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
 4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
 - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
 - b. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
 - c. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
 - d. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
 - e. Cables and conductors damage curves.
 - f. Ground-fault protective devices.
 - g. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
 - h. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
 - i. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
 5. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
 6. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. The study shall be based on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. Motor Protection:
 - 1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.
- H. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- I. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written recommendations and to IEEE 242.
- J. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- K. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at each of the following:
 1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
 2. Low-voltage Switchboards.
 3. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
 4. Branch circuit panelboards.
- L. Protective Device Evaluation:
 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
 2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
 3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.

3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied in the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
 2. For new equipment, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study. The list below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 241 and IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. Short-circuit current at each system bus, three phase and line-to-ground.
 5. Voltage level at each bus.
 6. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 7. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 8. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.

9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
10. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
11. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.
12. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
 - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
 - k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of the downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

3.4 FIELD ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to the recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of the equipment manufacturer under the Startup and Acceptance Testing contract portion.
- B. Make modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.
 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage the Coordination Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:
 1. Acquaint personnel in the fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.

2. Hand-out and explain the objectives of the coordination study, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting the time-current coordination curves.
3. Adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260574

OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE ARC-FLASH STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- E. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
 - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal

of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Arc-Flash Study Specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance procedures according to requirements in NFPA 70E shall be provided in the equipment manuals.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Arc-Flash Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Arc-Flash Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available software developers offering software that may be used for the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [ESA Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Operation Technology, Inc.](#)
 - 3. [Power Analytics, Corporation.](#)
 - 4. [SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.](#)

- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis and scope.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
 - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
 - 2. Cable size and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center and panelboard designations.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output:
 - 1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- F. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
 - 1. Arcing fault magnitude.
 - 2. Protective device clearing time.
 - 3. Duration of arc.
 - 4. Arc-flash boundary.
 - 5. Working distance.
 - 6. Incident energy.
 - 7. Hazard risk category.
 - 8. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- G. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.

2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Produce a **3.5-by-5-inch** thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis.

- B. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - 1. Location designation.
 - 2. Nominal voltage.
 - 3. Flash protection boundary.
 - 4. Hazard risk category.
 - 5. Incident energy.
 - 6. Working distance.
 - 7. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
 - 2. Exclude equipment rated 240-V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- F. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- G. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems.
- H. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and single line-to-ground fault at each of the following:
 - 1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
 - 2. Switchgear.

3. Low-voltage switchgear.
4. Motor-control centers.
5. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
6. Branch circuit panelboards.

3.3 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Use the short-circuit study output and the field-verified settings of the overcurrent devices.
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
 1. The minimum calculation shall assume that the utility contribution is at a minimum and shall assume no motor load.
 2. The maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in the electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.
- E. Include medium- and low-voltage equipment locations, except 240-V ac and 208-V ac systems fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Safe working distances shall be specified for calculated fault locations based on the calculated arc-flash boundary, considering incident energy of 1.2 cal/sq.cm.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
 1. Fault contribution from induction motors should not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators should be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (e.g., contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash computation shall include both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

3.4 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram on Drawings. Call discrepancies to the attention of Architect.
 2. Use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in per cent, and phase shift.
 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
 6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 8. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
 9. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
 10. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
 11. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
 12. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, and cable construction and metallic shield performance parameters.

3.5 LABELING

- A. Apply one arc-flash label for 600-V ac, 480-V ac, and applicable 208-V ac panelboards and disconnects and for each of the following locations:
1. Low-voltage switchboard.
 2. Switchgear.
 3. Control panel.

3.6 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install the arc-fault warning labels under the direct supervision and control of the Arc-Flash Study Specialist.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage the Arc-Flash Study Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of the arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260800

COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following electrical components, systems, assemblies, and equipment:
 - 1. Electrical equipment connected to Normal power systems, including the following:
 - a. Transformers.
 - b. Stand-by power generator
 - c. Automatic Transfer Switches
 - d. Primary and secondary service electrical systems.
 - e. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
 - f. Lightning protection systems.
 - g. Grounding systems.
 - 2. Electrical equipment connected to Essential power systems that provide an alternative source of power in the absence of power from the Normal power system, including the following:
 - a. Secondary service electrical systems.
 - b. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
 - c. Automatic Transfer Switches
 - d. Manual Transfer Switches (Storm Switch)
 - e. Lighting protection systems.
 - f. Grounding systems.
 - g. Stand-by power generator
 - h. Emergency egress lighting systems and illuminated exit signs
 - i. Emergency egress lighting inverters.
 - 3. Controls and instrumentation, including the following:
 - a. Equipment monitoring systems.
 - b. Energy monitoring and control systems.
 - c. Electrical metering and metering system.
 - d. Demand response systems.
 - e. Lighting control systems.
 - f. Security systems.
 - g. Fire-alarm systems.
 - 4. Systems testing and verification, including Normal and Essential power systems, and transitions from Normal to Essential power systems and back.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BoD: Basis-of-Design Document, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- D. Essential Power Systems: A power system that a facility transitions to in the absence of Normal power. This power includes all systems classified as "standby" or "emergency," including "legally required."
- E. Low Voltage: 600 V and below.
- F. Medium Voltage: 601 V and above.
- G. Normal Power Systems: A power system that provides primary power to a facility.
- H. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- I. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For BAS and electrical testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.
- C. Construction Checklists: Include the following and comply with requirements in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for construction checklists:
 1. Instrumentation and control for electrical systems.
 2. Instrumentation and control for lighting control systems.
 3. Low-voltage power cables.
 4. Control voltage power cables.
 5. Electrical feeders and branch circuits.
 6. Liquid-filled transformers.
 7. Dry-type transformers.
 8. Instrument transformers.
 9. Switchgear and switchboard assemblies rated 1200 A or greater.
 10. Low-voltage motor starters.

11. Low-voltage air circuit breakers.
12. Low-voltage insulated case circuit breakers.
13. Low-voltage network protectors.
14. Low-voltage air switches.
15. Low-voltage surge protective devices.
16. Medium-voltage power cables.
17. Metering devices.
18. Molded-case circuit breakers.
19. Low-voltage power circuit breakers.
20. Grounding systems.
21. Ground-fault protection systems.
22. Panelboards.
23. Receptacles and devices.
24. Engine generators.
25. Automatic transfer switches.
26. Variable-frequency drives.
27. AC synchronous motors and generators.
28. AC induction motors and generators.
29. Battery systems.
30. Battery chargers.
31. Flooded lead-acid batteries.
32. Flooded lead-calcium batteries.
33. VRLA batteries.
34. UPS and Emergency Lighting inverter systems.
35. Lighting.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electrical systems and components to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform electrical Construction Checklist verification tests, Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
 1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in electrical systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience as an apprentice or a journey-level electrician. Generally, required knowledge includes electrical and HVAC&R concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of electrical equipment, assemblies, and systems.
 2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration: For test equipment and instrumentation required to perform electrical Cx work, perform the following:
 1. Submit test equipment and instrumentation list. For each equipment or instrument, identify the following:
 - a. Equipment/instrument identification number.

- b. Planned Cx application or use.
 - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
2. Test equipment and instrumentation shall meet the following criteria:
- a. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
 - b. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
 - c. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
 - d. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- C. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, perform the following:
- a. Submit proprietary instrumentation and tools list. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
 - 1) Instrument or tool identification number.
 - 2) Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
 - 3) Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
 - 4) Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.
 - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - c. Electrical proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components. Complete and submit construction checklists.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

- A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.

- B. Return draft Construction Checklist review comments within 10 days of receipt.
- C. When review comments have been resolved, CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
- D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Certify that electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals.
- B. Certify that electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- D. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- E. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- F. Construction Checklists: Prepare and submit detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
 - 1. Contributors to development of construction checklists shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Electrical systems and equipment installers.
 - b. Electrical instrumentation and controls installers.
- G. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
 - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA, and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.
 - 2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
 - 3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- H. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

- I. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.
- J. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of the CxA.
- K. Comply with Construction Checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Sections specifying electrical systems and equipment.
- L. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to complete and document the following:
 - 1. Performance tests.
 - 2. Demonstration of a sample of performance tests.
 - 3. Cx tests.
 - 4. Cx test demonstrations.

3.4 Cx TESTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Verification of Normal Power System Operation:

- 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Normal power system.
- 2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
- 3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Normal power system.
- 4. Test Conditions: Energize components of Normal power system, one at a time.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria: Proper operation of Normal power system over a 48-hour period.

B. Verification of Essential Power System Operation:

- 1. Prerequisites:
 - a. Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Essential power system.
 - b. Completion of "Verification of Normal Power System Operation" tests.
- 2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
- 3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Essential power system.
- 4. Test Conditions:
 - a. Energize components of Normal power system.
 - b. Simulate a failure of Normal power system.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria: Transfer of power from Normal to Essential power system within OPR.

C. Verification of Control and Instrumentation:

- 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists.
 - a. Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - b. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards."
 - c. Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls."

- d. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
 - e. Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
 - f. Section 262713 "Electricity Metering."
 - g. Section 263533 "Power Factor Correction Equipment."
- D. Test Purpose: Verify operation of control and monitoring systems for Normal and Essential power systems.
- E. Test Conditions:
- 1. Energize components of Normal power system.
 - 2. Test operation of equipment.
- F. Acceptance Criteria: Operation of equipment according to OPR.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260923

LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Photoelectric switches.
 - 2. Indoor occupancy sensors.
 - 3. Lighting contactors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
 - 1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. [Cooper Industries, Inc.](#)
2. [Intermatic, Inc.](#)
3. [NSi Industries LLC; TORK Products.](#)
4. [Tyco Electronics; ALR Brand.](#)

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800 VA, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: **1.5 to 10 fc**, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.

2.2 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. [Bryant Electric; a Hubbell company.](#)
2. [Cooper Industries, Inc.](#)
3. [Hubbell Building Automation, Inc.](#)
4. [Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.](#)
5. [Lithonia Lighting; Acuity Lighting Group, Inc.](#)
6. [Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.](#)
7. [Sensor Switch, Inc.](#)
8. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a **1/2-inch** knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.

8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from **2 to 200 fc**; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of **6-inch**-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than **36 sq. in.**, and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than **12 inches** in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of **12 inches/s**.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of **1000 sq. ft.** when mounted on a **96-inch**-high ceiling.

2.3 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. [Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.](#)
 2. [ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a division of Emerson Electric Co.](#)
 3. [Eaton Corporation.](#)
 4. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution; Total Lighting Control.](#)
 5. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
- B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
 4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.
 5. Where two-wire maintained switch control is indicated, provide solid-state control modules as required for indicated switching arrangement.

2.4 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 16 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is **1/2 inch**.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- B. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control systems specified in Section 260943 "Network Lighting Controls."
- B. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 261219

PAD-MOUNTED, LIQUID-FILLED, MEDIUM-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pad-mounted, liquid-filled, medium-voltage distribution transformers, with primary and secondary bushings within or without air-terminal enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIL: Basic Impulse Insulation Level.
- B. Bushing: An insulating structure including a central conductor, or providing a central passage for a conductor, with provision for mounting on a barrier, conducting or otherwise, for the purpose of insulating the conductor from the barrier and conducting current from one side of the barrier to the other.
- C. Bushing Elbow: An insulated device used to connect insulated conductors to separable insulated connectors on dead-front, pad-mounted transformers and to provide a fully insulated connection. This is also called an "elbow connector."
- D. Bushing Insert: That component of a separable insulated connector that is inserted into a bushing well to complete a dead-front, load break or nonload break, separable insulated connector (bushing).
- E. Bushing Well: A component of a separable insulated connector, either permanently welded or clamped to an enclosure wall or barrier, having a cavity that receives a replaceable component (bushing insert) to complete the separable insulated connector (bushing).
- F. Elbow Connector: See "bushing elbow" above.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For pad-mounted, liquid-filled, medium-voltage transformers.

1. Include plans and elevations showing major components and features.
 - a. Include a plan view and cross section of equipment base, showing clearances, required workspace, and locations of penetrations for grounding and conduits.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include single-line diagram.
4. Include list of materials.
5. Include nameplate data.
6. Manufacturer's published time-current curves of the transformer high-voltage fuses, with transformer damage curve, inrush curve, and thru fault current indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Utilities site plan, drawn to scale, showing heavy equipment or truck access paths for maintenance and replacement.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For transformer assembly, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For transformers, signed by product manufacturer.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformer and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2.
- C. Comply with IEEE C57.12.00.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: The transformers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the transformer will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the transformer will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - 3. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
 - 4. Component Response Modification Factor: 6.0.
- B. Windings Material: Copper.
- C. Surge Arresters: Comply with IEEE C62.11, Distribution Class; metal-oxide-varistor type, fully shielded, separable-elbow type, suitable for plugging into the inserts provided in the high-voltage section of the transformer. Connected in each phase of incoming circuit and ahead of any disconnecting device.
- D. Winding Connections: The connection of windings and terminal markings shall comply with IEEE C57.12.70.
- E. Efficiency: Comply with 10 CFR 431, Subpart K.
- F. Insulation: Transformer kVA rating shall be as follows: The average winding temperature rise above a 30 deg C ambient temperature shall not exceed 65 deg C and 80 deg C hottest-spot temperature rise at rated kVA when tested according to IEEE C57.12.90, using combination of connections and taps that give the highest average winding temperature rise.
- G. Tap Changer: External handle, for de-energized operation.
- H. Tank: Sealed, with welded-on cover. Designed to withstand internal pressure of not less than 7 psi (50 kPa) without permanent distortion and 15 psig (104 kPa) without rupture. Comply with IEEE C57.12.36.
- I. Enclosure Integrity: Comply with IEEE C57.12.28 for pad-mounted enclosures that contain energized electrical equipment in excess of 600 V that may be exposed to the public.
- J. Mounting: An integral skid mounting frame, suitable to allow skidding or rolling of transformer in any direction, and with provision for anchoring frame to pad.

K. Insulating Liquids:

1. Less-Flammable Liquids:

- a. Edible-Seed-Oil-Based Dielectric: Listed and labeled by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 requirements for fire point of not less than 300 deg C when tested according to ASTM D92. Liquid shall be biodegradable and nontoxic, having passed the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development G.L.203 with zero mortality, and shall be certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency as biodegradable, meeting Environmental Technology Verification requirements.

L. Sound level shall comply with NEMA TR 1 requirements.

M. Corrosion Protection:

1. Transformer coating system shall be factory applied, complying with requirements of IEEE C57.12.28, in manufacturer's standard color green.

2.3 THREE-PHASE TRANSFORMERS

A. Provide one the follow manufacturers or follow the substitution process to seek approval for a manufacturer not listed below:

1. ABB
2. Cooper Power
3. Maddox
4. Schneider Electric (Square D)
5. Sun Belt

B. Description:

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with IEEE C57.12.26.

C. Compartment Construction:

1. Single-Compartment Construction: Clamshell style, with provision for padlocking, hinged cover, and single-point latching.
2. Double-Compartment Construction: Individual compartments for high- and low-voltage sections, formed by steel isolating barriers that extend full height and depth of compartments, with hinged, lift-off doors and three-point latching, with a stop in the open position and provision for padlocking.

D. Primary Fusing: Designed and rated to provide thermal protection of transformer by sensing overcurrent and high liquid temperature.

1. 150-kV BIL current-limiting fuses, conforming to requirements of IEEE C37.47.
2. Interrupting Rating: 50,000 rms A symmetrical at system voltage.

3. Fuse Assembly: Bayonet-type, liquid-immersed, expulsion fuses in series with liquid-immersed, partial-range, current-limiting fuses. Bayonet fuse shall sense both high currents and high oil temperature to provide thermal protection to the transformer.
4. Provide bayonet fuse assembly with an oil retention valve and an external drip shield inside the housing to eliminate or minimize oil spills. Valve shall close when fuse holder is removed and an external drip shield is installed.
5. Provide a conspicuously displayed warning adjacent to bayonet fuse(s), cautioning against removing or inserting fuses unless transformer has been de-energized and tank pressure has been released.

E. High-Voltage Section: Dead-front design.

1. To connect primary cable, use separable insulated connectors; coordinated with and complying with requirements of Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables." Bushings shall be one-piece units, with ampere and BIL ratings the same as connectors.
2. Bushing inserts and feed-through inserts:
 - a. Conform to the requirements of IEEE 386.
 - b. Rated at 200 A, with voltage class matching connectors. Provide a parking stand near each bushing well. Parking stands shall be equipped with insulated standoff bushings for parking of energized load-break elbow connectors on parking stands.
 - c. Provide insulated protective caps for insulating and sealing out moisture from unused bushing inserts and insulated standoff bushings.
3. Bushing wells configured for loop-feed application.
4. Access to liquid-immersed fuses.
5. Dead-front surge (lightning) arresters.
6. Tap-changer operator; 5 positions (2 above, normal, 2 below). Provided for both primary voltage selections.
7. Load-Break Switch:
 - a. Loop-feed sectionalizing switches, using three two-position, liquid-immersed-type switches for closed transition loop-feed and sectionalizing operation. Voltage class and BIL shall match that of separable connectors, with a continuous current rating and load-break rating of 200 amperes, and a make-and-latch rating of 12 kA rms symmetrical. Switch operation shall be as follows:
 - 1) Position I: Line A connected to line B and both lines connected to the transformer.
 - 2) Position II: Transformer connected to line A only.
 - 3) Position III: Transformer connected to line B only.
 - 4) Position IV: Transformer disconnected and line A not connected to line B.
 - 5) Position V: Transformer disconnected and line A connected to line B.
8. Ground pad.

F. Low-Voltage Section:

1. Bushings with spade terminals drilled for terminating the number of conductors indicated on the Drawings, and the lugs that comply with requirements of Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
2. Metering: Coordinated with and complying with requirements of Section 262713 "Electricity Metering." Make provision for the installation by providing mounting space, brackets, and cable and conduit routing as well as the following:

- a. Sensors.
- b. BAS interface.
- c. Kilowatt-hour meter.
- d. Kilowatt-hour demand meter.

G. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Rating (kVA): 750 kVA
2. Voltage Ratings: Primary; 12,470 V, Secondary - 480Y/277 V.
3. Taps: Comply with IEEE C57.12.26 requirements.
4. Transformer BIL (kV): Comply with IEEE C57.12.26 requirements.
5. Minimum Tested Impedance (Percent at 85 deg C): 2.87 (BASE 300 kVA) and 4.03 ADD ALT 500 kVA).
6. K-factor: K1, complying with UL 1562.
7. Comply with FM Global Class No. 3990.
8. Comply with UL listing requirements for combination classification and listing for transformer and less-flammable insulating liquid.

H. Transformer Accessories:

1. Drain and filter connection.
2. Filling and top filter press connections.
3. Pressure-vacuum gauge.
4. Dial-type analog thermometer with alarm contacts.
5. Magnetic liquid level indicator with high and low alarm contacts.
6. Automatically resetting pressure-relief device. Device flow shall be as recommended by manufacturer. With alarm contacts and a manual bleeder.
7. Stainless-steel ground connection pads.
8. Machine-engraved nameplate, made of anodized aluminum or stainless steel.
9. Sudden pressure relay for remote alarm or trip when internal transformer pressure rises at field-set rate. Provide with seal-in delay.

2.4 SERVICE CONDITIONS

A. Transformers shall be suitable for operation under service conditions specified as usual service conditions in IEEE C57.12.00, except for the following:

1. Altitudes above 3300 feet.
2. Cooling air temperature exceeds limits.
3. Excessive load current harmonic factor.
4. Operation above rated voltage or below rated frequency.
5. Exposure to explosive environments.
6. Exposure to fumes, vapors, or dust.
7. Exposure to hot and humid climate or to excessive moisture, including steam, salt spray, and dripping water.
8. Exposure to seismic shock or to abnormal vibration, shock, or tilting.
9. Exposure to excessively high or low temperatures.
10. Unusual transportation or storage conditions.
11. Unusual grounding resistance conditions.

2.5 CONTROL NETWORK

- A. Controllers: Support serial MS/TP and Ethernet IP communications, and able to communicate directly via RS-485 serial networks and Ethernet 10Base-T networks as a native device.

2.6 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with requirements for labels and signs specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. High-Voltage Warning Label: Provide self-adhesive warning signs on outside of high-voltage compartment door(s). Sign legend shall be "DANGER HIGH VOLTAGE" printed in two lines of nominal 2-inch-high letters. The word "DANGER" shall be in white letters on a red background and the words "HIGH VOLTAGE" shall be in black letters on a white background.
 - 2. Arc Flash Warning Label: Provide self-adhesive warning signs on outside of high-voltage compartment door(s), warning of potential electrical arc flash hazards and appropriate personal protective equipment required.

2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Provide manufacturer's certificate that the transformer design tests comply with IEEE C57.12.90.
 - 1. Perform the following factory-certified routine tests on each transformer for this Project:
 - a. Resistance.
 - b. Turns ratio, polarity, and phase relation.
 - c. Transformer no-load losses and excitation current at 100 percent of ratings.
 - d. Transformer impedance voltage and load loss.
 - e. Operation of all devices.
 - f. Lightning impulse.
 - g. Low frequency.
 - h. Leak.
 - i. Transformer no-load losses and excitation current at 110 percent of ratings.
 - j. Insulation power factor.
 - k. Applied potential, except that this test is not required for single-phase transformers or for three-phase Y-Y-connected transformers.
 - l. Induced potential.
 - m. Resistance measurements of all windings on rated voltage connection and at tap extreme connections.
 - n. Ratios on rated voltage connection and at tap extreme connections.
 - o. Polarity and phase relation on rated voltage connection.
 - p. No-load loss at rated voltage on rated voltage connection.
 - q. Exciting current at rated voltage on rated voltage connection.
 - r. Impedance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pad-mounted, liquid-filled, medium-voltage transformers upon delivery.

1. Upon delivery of transformers and prior to unloading, inspect equipment for any damage that may have occurred during shipment or storage.
2. Verify that tie rods and chains are undamaged and tight, and that all blocking and bracing is tight. Verify that there is no evidence of load shifting in transit, and that readings from transportation shock recorders, if equipped, are within manufacturer's recommendations.
3. Verify that there is no indication of external damage and no dents or scratches in doors and sill, tank walls, radiators and fins, or termination provisions.
4. Verify that there is no evidence of insulating-liquid leakage on transformer surfaces, at weld seams, on high- or low-voltage bushing parts, and at transformer base.
5. Verify that there is positive pressure or vacuum on tank. Check pressure gauge; it is required to read other than zero.
6. Compare transformers and accessories received with bill of materials to verify that shipment is complete. Verify that transformers and accessories conform with manufacturer's quotation and shop drawings. If shipment is incomplete or does not comply with Project requirements, notify manufacturer in writing immediately.
7. Verify presence of polychlorinated biphenyl content labeling.
8. Unload transformers carefully, observing all packing label warnings and handling instructions.
9. Open termination compartment doors and inspect components for damage or displaced parts, loose or broken connections, cracked or chipped insulators, bent mounting flanges, dirt or foreign material, and water or moisture.

B. Handling:

1. Handle transformers carefully, in accordance with manufacturer recommendations, to avoid damage to enclosure, termination compartments, base, frame, tank, and internal components. Do not subject transformers to impact, jolting, jarring, or rough handling.
2. Protect transformer termination compartments against entrance of dust, rain, and snow.
3. Transport transformers upright, to avoid internal stresses on core and coil mounting assembly and to prevent trapping air in windings. Do not tilt or tip transformers.
4. Verify that transformer weights are within rated capacity of handling equipment.
5. Use only manufacturer-recommended points for lifting, jacking, and pulling. Use all lifting lugs when lifting transformers.
6. Use jacks only at corners of tank base plate.
7. Use nylon straps of same length to balance and distribute weight when handling transformers with a crane.
8. Use spreaders or a lifting beam to obtain a vertical lift and to protect transformer from straps bearing against enclosure. Lifting cable pull angles may not be greater than 15 degrees from vertical.
9. Exercise care not to damage tank base structure when handling transformer using skids or rollers. Use skids to distribute stresses over tank base when using rollers under large transformers.

C. Storage:

1. Store transformers in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. Transformers may be stored outdoors. If possible, store transformers at final installation locations on concrete pads. If dry concrete surfaces are unavailable, use pallets of

- adequate strength to protect transformers from direct contact with ground. Ensure transformer is level.
3. Ensure that transformer storage location is clean and protected from severe conditions. Protect transformers from dirt, water, contamination, and physical damage. Do not store transformers in presence of corrosive or explosive gases. Protect transformers from weather when stored for more than three months.
 4. Store transformers with compartment doors closed.
 5. Regularly inspect transformers while in storage and maintain documentation of storage conditions, noting any discrepancies or adverse conditions. Verify that an effective pressure seal is maintained using pressure gauges. Visually check for insulating-liquid leaks and rust spots.
- D. Examine areas and space conditions for compliance with requirements for pad-mounted, liquid-filled, medium-voltage transformers and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Examine roughing-in of conduits and grounding systems to verify the following:
1. Wiring entries comply with layout requirements.
 2. Entries are within conduit-entry tolerances specified by manufacturer, and no feeders will cross section barriers to reach load or line lugs.
- F. Examine concrete bases for suitable conditions for transformer installation.
- G. Pre-Installation Checks:
1. Verify removal of any shipping bracing after placement.
 2. Remove a sample of insulating liquid according to ASTM D923. Insulating-liquid values shall comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.4. Sample shall be tested for the following:
 - a. Dielectric Breakdown Voltage: ASTM D877 or ASTM D1816.
 - b. Acid Neutralization Number: ASTM D974.
 - c. Interfacial Tension: ASTM D971.
 - d. Color: ASTM D1500.
 - e. Visual Condition: ASTM D1524.
- H. Verify that ground connections are in place and that requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at transformer location.
- I. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Transformer shall be installed level and plumb and shall tilt less than 1.5 degrees while energized.
- B. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" and Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Maintain minimum clearances and workspace at equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions and IEEE C2.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. For counterpoise, use tinned bare copper cable not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG, buried not less than 30 inches below grade interconnecting the grounding electrodes. Bond surge arrester and neutrals directly to transformer enclosure and then to grounding electrode system with bare copper conductors, sized as shown. Keep lead lengths as short as practicable, with no kinks or sharp bends.
 - 2. Fence and equipment connections shall not be smaller than No. 4 AWG. Ground fence at each gate post and corner post and at intervals not exceeding 10 feet. Bond each gate section to fence post using 1/8 by 1 inch tinned flexible braided copper strap and clamps.
 - 3. Make joints in grounding conductors and loops by exothermic weld or compression connector.
 - 4. Terminate all grounding and bonding conductors on a common equipment grounding terminal on transformer enclosure.
 - 5. Complete transformer tank grounding and lightning arrester connections prior to making any other electrical connections.

- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 1. Maintain air clearances between energized live parts and between live parts and ground for exposed connections in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
 - 2. Bundle associated phase, neutral, and equipment grounding conductors together within transformer enclosure. Arrange conductors such that there is not excessive strain that could cause loose connections. Allow adequate slack for expansion and contraction of conductors.

- C. Terminate medium-voltage cables in incoming section of transformers according to Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables."

3.4 SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Comply with installation requirements for labels and signs specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install warning signs as required to comply with 29 CFR 1910.269.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. General Field-Testing Requirements:
 - a. Comply with provisions of NFPA 70B Ch. "Testing and Test Methods."
 - b. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - c. After installing transformer but before primary is energized, verify that grounding system at the transformer is tested at specified value or less.

- d. After installing transformer and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - e. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Verify equipment nameplate data complies with Contract Documents.
 - 2) Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following two methods:
 - a) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter to compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS, Table 100.12. Bolt-torque levels shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS, Table 100.12.
 - f. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.
 - g. Prepare test and inspection reports. Record as-left set points of all adjustable devices.
2. Medium-Voltage Surge Arrester Field Tests:
- a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 2) Verify arresters are clean.
 - 3) Verify that ground lead on each device is individually attached to a ground bus or ground electrode.
 - b. Electrical Test:
 - 1) Perform an insulation-resistance test on each arrester, phase terminal-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.1. Replace units that fail to comply with recommended minimum insulation resistance listed in that table.
 - 2) Perform a watts-loss test. Evaluate watts-loss values by comparison with similar units and test equipment manufacturer's published data.
3. Liquid-Filled Transformer Field Tests:
- a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Test dew point of tank gases if applicable.
 - 2) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 3) Verify bushings are clean.
 - 4) Verify that alarm, control, and trip settings on temperature and level indicators are set and operate within manufacturer's recommended settings.
 - 5) Verify that liquid level in tanks is within manufacturer's published tolerances.
 - 6) Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by manufacturer.

- 7) Verify presence of transformer surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.
- 8) Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.

b. Electrical Tests:

- 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Calculate polarization index; the value of the index shall not be less than 1.0.
- 2) Perform power-factor or dissipation-factor tests on all windings according to test equipment manufacturer's published data. Maximum winding insulation power-factor/dissipation-factor values shall be according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.3.
- 3) Measure core insulation resistance at 500-V dc if the core is insulated and the core ground strap is removable. Core insulation-resistance values shall not be less than 1 megohm at 500-V dc.
- 4) Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after energization and prior to loading.
- 5) Remove a sample of insulating liquid according to ASTM D923, and perform dissolved-gas analysis according to IEEE C57.104 or ASTM D3612.

3.6 FOLLOW-UP SERVICE

- A. Voltage Monitoring and Adjusting: After Substantial Completion, if requested by Owner, but not more than six months after Final Acceptance, perform the following voltage monitoring:
1. During a period of normal load cycles as evaluated by Owner, perform seven days of three-phase voltage recording at the outgoing section of each transformer. Use voltmeters with calibration traceable to the National Institute of Science and Technology standards and with a chart speed of not less than 1 inch per hour. Voltage unbalance greater than 1 percent between phases, or deviation of any phase voltage from the nominal value by more than plus or minus 5 percent during test period, is unacceptable.
 2. Corrective Action: If test results are unacceptable, perform the following corrective action, as appropriate:
 - a. Adjust transformer taps.
 - b. Prepare written request for voltage adjustment by electric utility.
 3. Retests: Repeat monitoring, after corrective action is performed, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 4. Report:
 - a. Prepare a written report covering monitoring performed and corrective action taken.
- B. Infrared Inspection: Perform survey during periods of maximum possible loading. Remove all necessary covers prior to inspection.
1. After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform infrared inspection of transformer's electrical power connections.

2. Instrument: Inspect distribution systems with imaging equipment capable of detecting a minimum temperature difference of 1 deg C at 30 deg C.
3. Record of Infrared Inspection: Prepare a certified report that identifies testing technician and equipment used, and lists results as follows:
 - a. Description of equipment to be tested.
 - b. Discrepancies.
 - c. Temperature difference between area of concern and reference area.
 - d. Probable cause of temperature difference.
 - e. Areas inspected. Identify inaccessible and unobservable areas and equipment.
 - f. Identify load conditions at time of inspection.
 - g. Provide photographs and thermograms of deficient area.
4. Act on inspection results according to recommendations of NETA ATS, Table 100.18. Correct possible and probable deficiencies as soon as Owner's operations permit. Retest until deficiencies are corrected.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262413

SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.

- B. Related Requirements

1. Section 260574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.
2. Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.
3. Section 260572 "Overcurrent Protective Device Short-Circuit Study" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.

4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
8. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated Design Submittal:

1. For arc-flash hazard, short-circuit and coordination analysis and report.
2. For arc-flash labels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
 - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - c. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 - 2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
 - 3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no less than one of each size and type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and install temporary electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.
- C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to NECA 400.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.
- B. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- C. Unusual Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, as follows:
1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.
- D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to the immediate facility and campus facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures, buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.
 2. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

2.3 SWITCHBOARDS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 2.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Comply with UL 891.
- G. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:
1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
 2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
 3. Sections front and rear aligned.
- H. Nominal System Voltage: 120/208 V.
- I. Main-Bus Continuous: 3000 A.

- J. AIC ratings shall align with the results of the fault study.
- K. Arc Flash labels shall be applied in accordance with arc flash study.
- L. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- M. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- N. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.
- O. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.
- P. Insulation and isolation for main bus of main section and main and vertical buses of feeder sections. In the emergency switchboard isolate the life safety distribution circuit breaker section from the stand-by distribution breaker sections.
- Q. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.
- R. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment and section with front hinged door, and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.
- S. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.
- T. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
- U. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:
 - 1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
 - 2. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
 - 3. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
 - 4. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

- V. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
 2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity.
 3. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
 4. Ground Bus: Minimum-size required by UL 891, hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with compression connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.
 5. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
 6. Disconnect Links:
 - a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
 - b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.
 7. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with compression connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
 8. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.
- W. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.
- X. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.
- Y. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.4 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eaton.
 2. General Electric Company.
 3. Siemens
 4. Schneider Electric (Square D)
- B. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1.
- C. Features and Accessories:
1. Integral disconnect switch.
 2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 3. Indicator light display for protection status.
 4. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge

diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.

5. Surge counter.
- D. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 250kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V.
 3. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V.
- F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 200 kA.
- G. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB) for distribution breakers: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long and short time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.
 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
 6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 8. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.

- c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
 - d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - e. Communication Capability: Circuit-breaker-mounted communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 - f. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - g. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - h. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB) for main breaker: 100 percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.
1. Fixed circuit-breaker mounting.
 2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
 3. Standard-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
 - c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.
 4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 5. Remote trip indication and control.
 6. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
 7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 8. Control Voltage: 120-V ac.

2.6 INSTRUMENTATION

- A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:
1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, single secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
 2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; wound type; single secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
 3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
 4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of

main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

- B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:
 - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
 - h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
 - i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
 - j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
 2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
 3. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
 4. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
 5. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
 6. Appropriate multiplier tag.

2.7 CONTROL POWER

- A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

2.8 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.
- B. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.
- C. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" or manufacturer's instructions.

2.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to NECA 400.
 - 1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's instructions.
 - 2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
 - 3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
 - 4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the performance of the equipment.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install switchboards and accessories according to NECA 400.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, **4-inch** nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base. Extend **2 inches** above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
 - 3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
 - 6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.

- F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install spare-fuse cabinet.
- I. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.
- B. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.
- C. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Acceptance Testing:
 - a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within the switchboard, and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.

- b. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
 - 3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - E. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- 3.6 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
 - B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.
- 3.8 DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262416

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS (SPD): Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Quality-Control Reports:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 - 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards.

- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:

- 1. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding **minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F**.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet**.

- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

- 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
- 2. Altitude not exceeding **6600 feet**.

- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

- 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
- 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
- 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets as indicated on the drawings.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
 - 3. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel or Same finish as panels and trim.
 - 4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Top or bottom to match feeder locations.
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
 - 1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum or Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 - 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 - 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 - 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

- I. Selective Coordination: Provide overcurrent protective devices that selective coordinate in accordance with code requirements.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
- B. Surge Suppression (SPD/TVSS): Provide factory installed SPD's as an integral part of, as a minimum, new distribution panels, new panelboards serving dorm room loads, in panels as required by NEC 215.18 and any other panels indicated on plans, complying with UL 1449 SPD Type 2.

2.3 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than **36 inches** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker or Lugs only as scheduled.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only as scheduled.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 4. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip). Provided where indicated on plan or required in accordance with the NEC.
 - 5. AFCI Circuit Breakers: provided where indicated on plan or as required for apartment circuits in accordance with the NEC for apartment (residential) load centers and panelboards.
 - 6. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip). Provided where indicated on plan or required in accordance with the NEC.
 - 7. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
 - d. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at percent of rated voltage.
 - e. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.

- f. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
- g. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
- h. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
- i. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
- j. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Mount top of trim **90 inches** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- D. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- E. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- F. Stub four **1-inch** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

- G. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- H. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
 - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
 - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.

3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262713

ELECTRICITY METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes work to accommodate utility company revenue meters, and Owner's electricity meters used to manage the electrical power system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. KY or KYZ Pulse: Term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity (kWh) that is based on a relay opening and closing in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter. Electronic meters generate pulses electronically.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of meter.
 - 2. For metering infrastructure components.
 - 3. For metering software.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
 - 1. Include elevation views of front panels of control and indicating devices and control stations.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 - 3. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - 4. Include series-combination rating data for modular meter centers with main disconnect device.
 - 5. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Submit evidence that meters are compatible with connected monitoring and control devices and systems specified in
 - 1. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring, and interface devices to show compatibility of meters.
 - 2. For reporting and billing interfaces and adapters, list network protocols and provide statements from manufacturers that input and output devices comply with interoperability requirements of the protocol.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Application and operating software documentation.
 - 2. Software licenses.
 - 3. Software service agreement.
 - 4. Device address list.
 - 5. Hard copies of manufacturer's operating specifications, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on a USB storage device of hard-copy Submittal.
 - 6. Meter data sheet for each meter, listing nameplate data and serial number, accuracy certification, and test results.
 - 7. Meter installation and billing software startup report.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metering equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Damage from transient voltage surges.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Cost to repair or replace any parts for two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Electrical Service Connections:
 - 1. Coordinate with utility companies and utility-furnished components.
 - a. Comply with requirements of utility providing electrical power services.

- b. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 916.

2.2 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

1. Labels: Comply with requirements for "Self-Adhesive Equipment Labels" and "Signs" in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems." Apply a **3-1/2-by-5-inch** thermal transfer label of high-adhesion polyester for each work location included in the analysis. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.
2. The label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
 - a. Location designation.
 - b. Nominal voltage.
 - c. Flash protection boundary.
 - d. Hazard risk category.
 - e. Incident energy.
 - f. Working distance.
 - g. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.

2.3 ELECTRICITY METERS

- A. System Description: Able to meter designated activity loads, with or without external alarm, control, and communication capabilities, or other optional features.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
 1. Eaton.
 2. E-Mon.
 3. General Electric Company.
 4. SIEMENS Industry, Inc.; Energy Management Division.
 5. Square D.
- C. General Requirements for Meters:
 1. Certify that meters comply with ANSI C12.20 requirements by a laboratory accredited by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) of the National

- Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). The laboratory shall use test equipment that is certified annually and is traceable to NIST standards.
2. Enclosure: Supplied by meter manufacturer, NEMA 250, Type 1 minimum, with provisions for locking or sealing.
 3. Identification: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 4. Onboard Nonvolatile Data Storage: kWh, until reset.
 5. Sensors: Current-sensing type, supplied by electronic meter manufacturer, with current or voltage output, selected for optimum range and accuracy for meters indicated for this application.
 - a. Type: Split and solid core, complying with recommendation of meter manufacturer.
- D. kWhd Meter: Electronic three-phase meters, measuring electricity use and demand. Demand shall be integrated over a 15-minute interval.
1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
 2. Display: LCD with characters not less than **0.25 inch** high, indicating the following:
 - a. Accumulative kWh.
 - b. Current time and date.
 - c. Current demand.
 - d. Historic peak demand.
 - e. Time and date of historic peak demand.
 3. Retain accumulated kWh and historic peak demand in a nonvolatile memory, until reset.
- E. KY and KYZ Pulse Totalizer:
1. Pulse Totalizer: An instrument for demand and billing applications where one or more utility revenue meters stream KY or KYZ energy pulses. The instrument shall totalize kWh accumulated over the user-selected period and shall log the maximum and minimum kWhd for that period. Record each period with a date/time stamp. Time period shall be user selected from one to 60 minutes.
 - a. Pulse Input: One, individually programmable, KYZ Form C (three-wire) contact pulse channels. Pulse interval, pulse rate, and minimum pulse width shall be field adjustable, set for the pulse stream provided by the utility revenue meter.
 - b. Data Totalizing Capacity of Each Channel: Not less than 149 days at 15-minute intervals.
 - c. Instrument Power: User selectable, 120-V and 277-V ac.
 - d. Clock: Line frequency.
- F. Remote Reading Options:
1. Pulse Output: KYZ, complete with optical sensor and interface devices.
 2. Serial Interface: RS-232.
 3. Serial Interface: RS-485.
 4. USB interface.
 5. TCP/IP adapter.
- G. Current-Transformer Cabinet: Size and configuration as recommended by metering equipment manufacturer for use with indicated connected feeder and sensors.

- H. Data Transmission Cable: Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with equipment installation requirements in NECA 1.
- B. Install arc-flash labels as required by NFPA 70.
- C. Wiring Method:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 2. Install unshielded, twisted-pair cable for control and signal transmission conductors, complying with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
 - 3. Minimum conduit size shall be **1/2 inch**.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive labels, with text as required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Equipment Identification Labels: Self-adhesive labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide an additional card holder suitable for typewritten card with occupant's name

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Equipment and Software Setup:
 - a. Set meter date and time clock.
 - b. Test, calibrate, and connect pulse metering system.
 - c. Report settings and calibration results.
 - d. Set up reporting and billing software, insert billing location names and initial constant values and variable needed for billing computations.
 - 2. Connect a load of known kilowatt rating, 15 kW minimum, to a circuit supplied by metered feeder.
 - 3. Turn off circuits supplied by metered feeder and secure them in off condition.

4. Run test load continuously for eight hours minimum, or longer, to obtain a measurable meter indication. Use test-load placement and setting that ensures continuous, safe operation.
 5. Check and record meter reading at end of test period and compare with actual electricity used, based on test-load rating, duration of test, and sample measurements of supply voltage at test-load connection. Record test results.
 6. Generate test report and billing for each tenant or activity from the meter reading tests.
- D. Electricity metering will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's clerical and maintenance personnel to use, adjust, operate, and maintain the electronic metering and billing software.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262726

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience, receptacles.
2. GFCI receptacles
3. AFCI receptacles
4. Tamper-resistant receptacles
5. Twist-locking receptacles.
6. Cord and plug sets.
7. Toggle switches.
8. Wall switch sensor light switches with dual technology sensors.
9. Wall plates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

- B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

- C. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

- D. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter

- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.
- F. Provide device boxes installed in exterior walls with a nail-on flanged vapor box (including ground clip) for each receptacle or switch (single and multi-ganged device boxes) for minimizing air infiltration (Arlington No. FN101FLGC and FN102FLGC or equal).

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. General-Grade, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with AFCI and GFCI Device:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXX, UL 498, UL 943, UL 1699, and UL Subject 1699A.
3. Options:
 - a. Device Color: As indicated on architectural Drawings.
 - b. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
4. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General-Grade, Weather-Resistant, Tamper-Resistant Duplex Straight-Blade Receptacle with GFCI Device:
 1. Regulatory Requirements:
 - a. Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. General Characteristics:
 - a. Reference Standards: UL CCN KCXS, UL 498, and UL 943.
 3. Options:
 - a. Device Color: As indicated on architectural Drawings.
 - b. Configuration: Heavy-duty, NEMA 5-20R.
 4. Accessories:
 - a. Cover Plate: 0.060 inch thick, high-impact thermoplastic (nylon) with smooth finish and color matching wiring device; from same manufacturer as wiring device.
 - b. Securing Screws for Cover Plate: Metal with head color matching wall plate finish.

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Twist-Lock, Single Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description:

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.6 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Single Pole
2. Two Pole
3. Three Way
4. Four Way

C. Pilot-Light Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A.

1. Description: Single pole, with LED-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is off.

D. Key-Operated Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A.

1. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

2.7 WALL SWITCH SENSOR LIGHT SWITCH, DUAL TECHNOLOGY

A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual technology.

1. Connections: Hard wired.
2. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 A at 277-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
3. Adjustable time delay of five to 30 minutes.
4. Able to be locked to Automatic-On or Manual-On mode as directed by Owner.
5. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
6. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.8 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
 - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Light Almond unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to panels that are not connected to the UPS system: Identify using a separate color to be selected by Owner.
- B. Wall Plate Color: Light Almond for plastic covers.
- C. Final color selection for devices and device plates shall be confirmed or directed by the architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ADA apartment unit device mounting heights:
 - 1. Applicable to all receptacles, light control devices and load center circuit breakers
 - 2. Maximum allowed mounting height to top of receptacle box, top of light control device box or top of circuit breaker toggle is 48" AFF.
 - 3. Minimum allowed mounting height to bottom of receptacle box, bottom of light control device box or bottom of circuit breaker toggle is 15" AFF
- C. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.

2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

D. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

E. Device Installation:

1. AFCI, GFCI and combination AFCI/GFCI circuit breakers are acceptable substitutions for serving circuits in locations where AFCI and GFCI receptacles are required.
2. GFCI receptacle resets must be in accessible locations as defined by the electrical code.; locate respective GFCI receptacle accordingly, utilize remote GFCI reset devices or utilize GFCI circuit breakers.
3. Provide AFCI devices (or circuit breakers) for all devices located in residential units and any other areas as required by the electrical code.
4. Provide GFCI devices (or circuit breakers) for all devices located bathroom, kitchen, laundry, outdoors, garages, accessory buildings, sheds, crawl spaces or basement areas and any other areas as required by the electrical code.
5. General grade device installations shall be permitted in back of house spaces and staff support spaces that will not be accessed, occupied or utilized by residents. (eg. electrical rooms, mechanical rooms, tel/com rooms, commercial kitchen commercial laundry, attics and roof)
6. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
7. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
8. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
9. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than **6 inches** in length.
10. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
11. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
12. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
13. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
14. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

- F. Receptacle Orientation: Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.

- G. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.
- J. Envelope integrity and sound transmission:
 - 1. Provide device boxes mounted on exterior walls with Energy Star rated receptacle box vapor barrier; Thomas & Betts, Nutek or equal.
 - 2. Provide device plate gaskets for boxes mounted on exterior walls with Energy Star rated device gasket; Hubbell, Madison Electric or equal
 - 3. Utilize fire stop sealant around conduit penetrations to aid with minimizing the sound transmission between each unit and between units and common space
 - 4. Utilize wall insulation material and device plate gaskets to aid with minimizing the sound transmission between each unit and between units and common space.
 - 5. Do not install devices back-to-back in walls between units; shift the devices so that they are installed one horizontal stud bay away from each other when mounted on common walls between units

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with white-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262813

FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, and enclosed controllers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

- 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
- 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
- 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
- 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
- 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
- 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified Division 01, include the following:

- 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
- 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.

3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than **40 deg F** or more than **100 deg F**, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
 4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Feeders: Class RK1, time delay or Class RK5, time delay.
 - 2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.
 - 3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay or Class RK5, time delay.
 - 4. Control Circuits: Class CC, time delay.
- B. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Shunt trip switches.
 - 4. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 5. Molded-case switches.
 - 6. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.

3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
5. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than **minus 22 deg F** and not exceeding **104 deg F**.
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet**.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
 - 2. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
 - 3. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac as appropriate for circuit voltage, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
2. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
3. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
4. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, -240 or 600-V ac as appropriate for circuit voltage, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
2. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
3. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
4. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:

1. Instantaneous trip.
 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I²t response.
- D. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- E. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- F. Ground-Fault, Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- G. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 5. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 7. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 8. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
 2. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
 3. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 4. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
- B. General Requirements: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Auxiliary Contacts: One SPDT switch with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.

2.5 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262913

ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following enclosed controllers rated 600 V and less:
 - 1. Full-voltage manual.
 - 2. Full-voltage magnetic.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPT: Control power transformer.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. MCP: Motor circuit protector.
- D. N.C.: Normally closed.
- E. N.O.: Normally open.
- F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- G. SCR: Silicon-controlled rectifier.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed controllers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified"

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed controller. Include manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and enclosure types and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each enclosed controller. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, details, and required clearances and service spaces around controller enclosures.
 - 1. Show tabulations of the following:
 - a. Each installed unit's type and details.
 - b. Factory-installed devices.
 - c. Nameplate legends.
 - d. Short-circuit current rating of integrated unit.
 - e. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual OCPDs in combination controllers.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed controllers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate full-load currents.
- D. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:
 - 1. Routine maintenance requirements for enclosed controllers and installed components.
 - 2. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting circuit breaker and MCP trip settings.
 - 3. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. IEEE Compliance: Fabricate and test enclosed controllers according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store enclosed controllers indoors in clean, dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation. Protect enclosed controllers from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than **minus 22 deg F** and not exceeding **104 deg F**.
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding **6600 feet**.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electrical Systems: Do not interrupt electrical systems in facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical systems.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical systems without Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of enclosed controllers with other construction including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FULL-VOLTAGE CONTROLLERS

- A. General Requirements for Full-Voltage Controllers: Comply with NEMA ICS 2, general purpose, Class A.
- B. Motor-Starting Switches: "Quick-make, quick-break" toggle or push-button action; marked to show whether unit is off or on.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
 - b. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
 - c. [Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.](#)
 - d. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
2. Configuration: Nonreversing.
 3. Surface mounting.
 4. Red pilot light.
- C. Magnetic Controllers: Full voltage, across the line, electrically held.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
 - b. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
 - c. [Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.](#)
 - d. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
 2. Configuration: Nonreversing
 3. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type.
 - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
 4. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double-break, silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
 5. Control Circuits: 120-V ac maximum; obtained from integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses, of sufficient capacity to operate integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
 - a. CPT Spare Capacity: 100 VA.
 6. Melting Alloy Overload Relays:
 - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
 - b. Class 20 tripping characteristic.
 - c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
 7. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
 - a. Inverse-time-current characteristic.
 - b. Class 20 tripping characteristic.
 - c. Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
 - d. Ambient compensated.
 - e. Automatic resetting.

8. Solid-State Overload Relay:
 - a. Switch or dial selectable for motor running overload protection.
 - b. Sensors in each phase.
 - c. Class 20 tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.
 9. N.O., isolated overload alarm contact.
 10. External overload reset push button.
- D. Combination Magnetic Controller: Factory-assembled combination of magnetic controller, OCPD, and disconnecting means.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. [Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.](#)
 - b. [General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.](#)
 - c. [Rockwell Automation, Inc.; Allen-Bradley brand.](#)
 - d. [Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.](#)
 - e. [Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.](#)
 2. Fusible Disconnecting Means:
 - a. NEMA KS 1, heavy-duty, horsepower-rated, fusible switch with clips or bolt pads to accommodate Class R fuses.
 - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
 3. Auxiliary Contacts: N.O./N.C., arranged to activate before switch blades open.
 4. MCP Disconnecting Means:
 - a. UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents, instantaneous-only circuit breaker with front-mounted, field-adjustable, short-circuit trip coordinated with motor locked-rotor amperes.
 - b. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
 - c. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCP handle.
 - d. N.O. alarm contact that operates only when MCP has tripped.
 - e. Current-limiting module to increase controller short-circuit current (withstand) rating to 100 kA.
 5. MCCB Disconnecting Means:
 - a. UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents; thermal-magnetic MCCB, with inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - b. Front-mounted, adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - c. Lockable Handle: Accepts three padlocks and interlocks with cover in closed position.
 - d. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with MCCB handle.
 - e. N.O. alarm contact that operates only when MCCB has tripped.

2.2 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Controllers: NEMA ICS 6, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
 - 1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R
 - 3. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: Type 4X.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in controller enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Push Buttons, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: Heavy-duty, type.
 - a. Push Buttons: Recessed types; momentary.
 - b. Pilot Lights: LED types; colors as indicated; push to test.
 - c. Selector Switches: Rotary type Hand-off-automatic for units with remote automatic control; on-off for units with only local control.
- B. Reversible N.C./N.O. auxiliary contact(s).
- C. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
- D. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in Type 4X enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and surfaces to receive enclosed controllers, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine enclosed controllers before installation. Reject enclosed controllers that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounted Controllers: Install enclosed controllers on walls with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not at walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

- B. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install fuses in each fusible-switch enclosed controller.
- D. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Section 262813 "Fuses."
- E. Install heaters in thermal overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors have been installed.
- F. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.
- G. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify enclosed controllers, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved nameplate.
 - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect controllers, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.
 - 2. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed-controller element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
 - 3. Test continuity of each circuit.
 - 4. Verify that voltages at controller locations are within plus or minus 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify Architect before starting the motor(s).
 - 5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
 - 6. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Enclosed controllers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports including a certified report that identifies enclosed controllers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- B. Adjust overload-relay heaters or settings if power factor correction capacitors are connected to the load side of the overload relays.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of MCPs and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to six times the motor nameplate full-load ampere ratings and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cooldown between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed eight times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify Architect before increasing settings.
- D. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until enclosed controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace controllers whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain enclosed controllers

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263213.13

DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged diesel engine generators for emergency use with the following features:
 - 1. Diesel engine.
 - 2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
 - 3. Control and monitoring.
 - 4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
 - 5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
 - 6. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
 - 7. Vibration isolation devices.
 - 8. Finishes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches, including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.
- C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation, from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
 - 3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.

4. Include fuel consumption in **gallons per hour** at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in **cubic feet per minute** at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of **95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F**. Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails, identify center of gravity and total weight, including supplied enclosure, external silencer, subbase-mounted fuel tank, and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine generator, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:
 - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
 - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
 - c. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
 - 2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
 - 3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
 - 4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide equipment and services as manufactured by Caterpillar, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Caterpillar, Milton CAT
2. Generac Power Systems
3. Kohler Co.; Generator Division.
4. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Engine generator housing, subbase fuel tank, engine generator, batteries, battery racks, silencers, sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- B. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.
- C. NFPA Compliance:
1. Comply with NFPA 37.
 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
 3. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 3 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- F. Noise Emission: Comply with 71 dB(A) @ 23' under full load for maximum noise level due to sound emitted by engine generator, including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- G. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
1. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F.
 2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a Class 48 according to NFPA 110.
- D. Service Load: 600 kW, 750 kVA.

- E. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.
- F. Frequency: 60 Hz
- G. Voltage: 208/120 V ac.
- H. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire wye.
- I. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.
- J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- K. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.
- L. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
 - 2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- M. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:
 - 1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
 - a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
 - 2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
 - 3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
 - 4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
 - 5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
 - 6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
 - 7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content, measured line to neutral, shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
 - 8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not

less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.

9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
10. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

A. Fuel: Fuel oil, Grade DF-2.

1. Ultra Low Sulphur content as required by the State of Maine.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and with UL 499.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and noncollapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
 2. Sound level measured at a distance of **10 feet** from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 85 dBA or less.
- G. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- H. Starting System: 24 V electric, with negative ground.
1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
 4. Battery: Adequate capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 6. Battery Rack: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place.
 7. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
 8. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from **minus 40 deg F** to **140 deg F** to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
 - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 3R, wall-mounted cabinet mounted within generator enclosure.
- 2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM
- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
 - B. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.

- C. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
 - 1. Tank level indicator.
 - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Capacity: Fuel for seventy-two (72) hours' continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output.
 - 3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
 - 4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
 - 5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic-Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.
- B. Provide minimum run time control set for 30 minutes, with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.
- C. Comply with UL 508A.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.
- E. Control and Monitoring Panel:
 - 1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
 - 2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.
 - a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 - b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 - c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - d. Running-time meter.
 - e. AC voltmeter, for each phase connected to a phase selector switch.
 - f. AC ammeter, for each phase connected to a phase selector switch.
 - g. AC frequency meter.
 - h. Generator-voltage-adjusting rheostat.
 - 3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:
 - a. Cranking control equipment.
 - b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 - c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 - d. Overcrank alarm.
 - e. Overcrank shutdown device.

- f. Low water temperature alarm.
 - g. High engine temperature pre-alarm.
 - h. High engine temperature.
 - i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
 - j. Overspeed alarm.
 - k. Overspeed shutdown device.
 - l. Low-fuel main tank.
- 1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required for the indicated EPSS class.
- m. Coolant low-level alarm.
 - n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 - o. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
 - p. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
 - q. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 - r. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
 - s. EPS load indicator.
 - t. Battery high-voltage alarm.
 - u. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
 - v. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 - w. Battery low-voltage alarm.
 - x. Lamp test.
 - y. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 - z. Remote manual-stop shutdown device.
 - aa. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.

F. Connection to Datalink:

- 1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
- 2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via Ethernet.

G. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

H. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

I. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

- 1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

- B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
 - 1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 - 2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 - 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
 - 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- C. Refer to power one line diagram for quantity and ampacity for the required two output breakers (stand-by power output breaker and life safety output breaker)

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
 - 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.9 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to **100 mph**. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

1. Sound Attenuation Level: 2. The enclosure shall have a resulting sound level of 71.0 dB(A) @ 23 ft with the genset running under full load.
 2. Enclosure Sound Attenuation: Acoustical foam shall be provided between all supports and inside doors and sound baffles on air intake and air discharge.
- B. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads of up to **100 mph**.
- C. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in Section 260548 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
- E. Provide stair and platform system with appropriate handrails that will allow maintenance staff direct access to one side of the enclosure (without the need for a ladder or step ladder). Stair and platform shall have an open grating design (so not hold snow) and be constructed of galvanized steel or heavy-duty industrial aluminum.
- F. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
- G. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.

2.10 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

2.11 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer. Outdoor enclosure color shall be ANSI 70 Gray

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full-load run.
4. Maximum power.
5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.
- B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Division 03.
 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- E. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- B. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- E. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. All fuel for testing shall be supplied by the contractor. At completion of testing the fuel tank shall be left full.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and in "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" and "Electrical and Mechanical Tests" subparagraphs below, as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify that the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:
 - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.
 - a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp: Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.

- 2) Test protective relay devices.
 - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
 - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
 - 5) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
 - 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
 - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
- D. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches, and run them concurrently.
 - E. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
 - F. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - G. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.
 - H. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - I. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - J. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.
 - K. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component, indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
 - L. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus

connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263600
TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

- 1. Automatic transfer switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, weights, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, installed features and devices, and material lists for each switch specified.
 - 1. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass/isolation switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that transfer switches accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01, include the following:
 1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintain a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs within a response period of less than eight hours from time of notification.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain automatic transfer switches through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.
- G. Comply with NFPA 110.
- H. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
 1. Notify Owner no fewer than five days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. For floor mounted equipment, coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Contactor Transfer Switches:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. ASCO
 - b. Kohler Power Systems; Generator Division.
 - c. Onan/Cummins Power Generation; Industrial Business Group.
 - d. Russelectric, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL TRANSFER-SWITCH PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Withstand Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
- C. Suitable for use as service equipment, with manual disconnecting means and overcurrent protective device for both utility and standby sources.
- D. Solid-State Controls: Repetitive accuracy of all settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- E. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.41. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- F. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism, mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions.
- G. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are not acceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.

3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Conventional automatic transfer-switch units, rated 225 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
- H. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, either by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable tape markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable tape markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- J. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508. Indoor enclosures shall be NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated. Outdoor enclosures shall be NEMA 250, Type 3R with strip heater.

2.3 AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Refer to one line power diagram for quantities and ampacity ratings.
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switching Arrangement: Double-throw type, incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during normal functioning, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- E. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval is adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.
- F. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so it occurs only when the two sources are synchronized in phase. Relay compares phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiates transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer is initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
- G. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay: Controls designate starters so they disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters is through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Time delay for reconnecting individual motor loads is adjustable between 1 and 60 seconds, and settings are as indicated. Relay contacts handling motor-control circuit inrush and seal currents are rated for actual currents to be encountered.

H. Automatic Transfer-Switch Features:

1. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage is adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
2. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from 0 to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes to automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods are adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings are for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is not available.

2.4 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.

2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:
 - a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
 - b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.
 - c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
 - d. Transition:
 - 1) Provide open-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
 - e. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
 - f. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
 - g. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
 - h. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
 - i. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.
4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

2.5 3-WAY MANUAL TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 1. ESL Power Systems, Inc.
 2. Trystar, Inc.
- B. Refer to one line power diagram for quantities and ampacity ratings.
- C. 3- way manual transfer switches shall be Triple-Switch as manufactured by ESL Power Systems, Inc. is identified as the basis of design for both performance and cost. Provide identified product or equal as approved by the Engineer. Utilize the substitution procedures outlined in the Division 1 specification sections to gain pre-approval by the engineer prior to submission of equipment during the submittal process.
- D. 3-way manual transfer switch manufacturer must have produced and sold UL 1008 Listed manual transfer switches as a standard product for a minimum of (3) years.

- E. 3-way manual transfer switches shall be molded case circuit breaker type; knife switch or fused switches are not acceptable.
- F. 3-way manual transfer switch shall consist of (3) mechanically-interlocked molded case circuit breakers, male cam-style inlet connectors, female cam-style outlet connectors, power distribution blocks and grounding terminals, all housed within a padlockable enclosure.
- G. 3-way manual transfer switch enclosure shall be Type 3R, wall mounted, constructed of continuous seam-welded, powder coated galvanized steel. The main access shall be through an interlocked, hinged door that extends the full height of the enclosure. Access for both portable generator cables with female cam-style plugs and for load bank cables with male cam-style plugs shall be via a) drawn flange cable entry openings in the bottom of enclosure for wall mount units, or b) hinged lower door for pad mount units. A hinged flap door shall be provided to cover the cable openings when cables are not connected; the hinged flap door shall allow cable entry only after the main access door has been opened. Enclosure shall be powder coated after fabrication; color shall be wrinkle gray RAL 7035.
- H. Cam-style male connectors (inlets) and cam-style female connectors (outlets) shall be UL Listed single-pole separable type and rated 400 amps at 600VAC. All cam-style connectors shall be color coded. Cam-style connectors shall be provided for each phase and for ground, and shall also be provided for neutral. Each of the phase cam-style connectors and the neutral cam-style connectors within the enclosure shall be factory-wired to a molded case circuit breaker. The ground cam-style male connectors shall be bonded to the enclosure, and a ground lug shall be provided for connection of the facility ground conductor. None of the cam-style connectors shall be accessible unless all (3) molded case circuit breakers are in the "OFF" position and the main access door is open.
- I. A power distribution block shall be provided for load-side field wiring. The power distribution block shall be factory wired to the molded case circuit breakers.
- J. Molded case circuit breakers shall be UL Listed 3-pole and the short circuit interrupt rating shall be a minimum of 35kAIC at 480VAC (wall mount units) or 50kAIC at 480VAC (pad mount units) and comparatively for 208 volt rated units. Trip rating of the molded case circuit breakers shall be as shown on the drawings. One molded case circuit breaker shall control the connection between the permanent generator and the automatic transfer switch. The second circuit breaker shall control the connection between the permanent generator and the load bank female cam-style connectors. The third circuit breaker shall control the connection between the automatic transfer switch and the portable generator male cam-style connectors. All (3) molded case circuit breakers shall include UL Listed door-mounted operating mechanisms, preventing the opening of the main access door unless all (3) breakers are in the "OFF" position. All (3) molded case circuit breakers shall be mounted behind a deadfront panel. The load-side of the molded case circuit breakers shall not be energizable unless the main access door is closed and one of the molded case circuit breakers is in the "ON" position. The (3) molded case circuit breakers shall be safety interlocked by mechanical means to ensure that only certain breakers can be closed at any given time.
- K. Auxiliary contacts, factory wired to terminal blocks, are to be provided in the unit. The auxiliary contacts are to provide a means to activate an annunciator circuit in compliance with NEC 2017 700(3) F.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency,

and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.
 - l. Short-time current capability.
 - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
 - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Concrete Bases: **4 inches** high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than **4 inches** in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switch, unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic support. Construct concrete bases according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to control and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- C. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
 - 1. After installing equipment and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 3. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - 4. After energizing circuits, demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and of emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for 1 pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - f. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
 - 5. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- B. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
- C. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- F. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment as specified below. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 265119

LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes LED luminaires and luminaire supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
 - 2. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.
 - 3. Section 260100 "Basic Electrical requirements" for Efficiency Maine lighting fixture and lighting control rebate program participation and support efforts shall be included in this project's scope of work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.

2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

- a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Samples for Verification: as requested during submittal review.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

B. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Standards:
 1. ENERGY STAR certified or listed by the DesignLights Consortium (DLC).
 2. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

3. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
 4. User Replaceable Lamps:
 - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
 - b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1.
- C. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
- D. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 1 percent of maximum light output.
- E. Internal driver. For luminaires indicated for individually addressable control, provide individually addressable DALI drivers that are compatible with the system specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable Luminaire Lighting Controls".
- F. Nominal Operating Voltage: As scheduled on the drawings.
1. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: **1/2-inch** steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gauge**.
- D. Rod Hangers: **3/16-inch** minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.

2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls or attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Ceiling mount with two **5/32-inch**-diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **120 inches** in length.
2. Ceiling mount with pendant mount with **5/32-inch**-diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to **120 inches** in length.

H. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches**, brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.
 - 1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
 - 2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
 - 3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 265600
EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior luminaires with LED arrays and drivers.
- 2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
- 3. Poles and accessories.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 265119 "LED Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- D. LED: Light emitting diode
- E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- G. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
- H. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

- A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf, distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

- C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft., applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
 - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet high or less is 90 mph.
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
 - 2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
 - 3. Details of installation and construction.
 - 4. Luminaire materials.
 - 5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.
 - a. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - 6. Photoelectric relays.
 - 7. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
 - 8. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
 - 9. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
 - 10. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
 - 11. Anchor bolts for poles.
 - 12. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.

- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Lamps: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 2. Glass and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 3. Ballasts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 - 4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least **12 inches** above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- B. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty

period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.

1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
 2. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- B. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- I. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.

- J. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- K. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- L. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- M. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
- N. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 2. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
- O. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps/LED engines and ballasts/drivers. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
- 2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS
- A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.
- B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc and off at 4.5 to 10 fc with 15-second minimum time delay. Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 DRIVERS FOR LED ENGINES

- A. UL 1598, suitable for Wet Locations.
- B. RoHS compliant.
- C. Design Lights Consortium (DLC) Certified.
- D. Housing: IP 66 rating.
- E. Voltage: Unit accepts 120V through 277V, 50hz to 60hz input.
- F. Output based on wattage of LED array.
- G. Include plug type disconnect.
- H. Power factor shall not be less than 90 percent.

2.5 LED LIGHT ENGINES

- A. Array wattage shall be as scheduled on the drawings plus or minus 8 percent for ambient temperature and forward voltage.
- B. Minimum Lumen Output: As scheduled on the drawings based on IESNA LM-79 or LM-80 testing.
- C. Color Temperature: As scheduled on the drawings with minimum 70 CRI.
- D. Lumen depreciation: 70 percent of initial output after 215,000 hours at a temperature of 40°C using IESNA LM-80 methodology.

2.6 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
 1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
 2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of **2-1/2 by 5 inches**, with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.
- E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Pre-cast, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Division 03.

2.7 STEEL POLES

- A. Poles: Comply with ASTM A 500, Grade B, carbon steel with a minimum yield of **46,000 psig**; one-piece construction up to **40 feet** in height with access handhole in pole wall.
1. Shape: Square, straight.
 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- B. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.
1. Adapter fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole mounted adapter, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
 3. Match pole material and finish.
- C. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- D. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded **1/2-inch** threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- E. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported cable times a 5.0 safety factor.
- F. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
 3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

2.8 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
 - 1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: **60 inches**.
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: five feet.
 - 3. Trees: **15 feet** from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Division 03.
- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
 - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
 - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
 - 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Use a short piece of **1/2-inch**-diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of **6-inch**-wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel to a level **1 inch** below top of concrete slab.
- F. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
- B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches** above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Division 03.

3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with **0.010-inch-thick**, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
 - 1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 280513

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. RS-232 cabling.
 - 2. RS-485 cabling.
 - 3. Low-voltage control cabling.
 - 4. Control-circuit conductors.
 - 5. Fire alarm wire and cable.
 - 6. Identification products.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Network cabling shall comply with Division 27.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For coaxial cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that wire and cables are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration and sagging of factory packing materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 RS-232 CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Plastic insulation.
 - 3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
 - 4. Plastic jacket.
 - 5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
 - 6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.4 RS-485 CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.5 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

- A. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.
 - 1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
 - 2. PVC insulation.
 - 3. Unshielded.
 - 4. PVC jacket.
 - 5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.6 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway or MC cable as specified in Part 3.
- B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, power-limited cable, complying with UL 83, concealed in building finishes. Install cable in metal raceways where specified in Part 3.
- C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83. Install cable in metal raceways where specified in Part 3.

2.7 FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Comtran Corporation.](#)
 - 2. [Draka Cableteq USA.](#)
 - 3. [Genesis Cable Products; Honeywell International, Inc.](#)
 - 4. [West Penn Wire.](#)
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.

- C. Signaling Line Circuits:
 - 1. Twisted, shielded pair in metal raceway, size as recommended by system manufacturer but not less than No. 18 AWG.
 - 2. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated..
- D. Non-Power-Limited Circuits: Solid-copper conductors with 600-V rated, 75 deg C, color-coded insulation.
 - 1. Low-Voltage Circuits: No. 16 AWG, minimum.
 - 2. Line-Voltage Circuits: No. 12 AWG, minimum.
 - 3. Multiconductor Armored Cable: NFPA 70, Type MC, copper conductors, Type TFN/THHN conductor insulation, copper drain wire, copper armor with red identifier stripe, NTRL listed for fire alarm and cable tray installation, plenum rated.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. [Brady Worldwide, Inc.](#)
 - 2. [Kroy LLC.](#)
 - 3. [Panduit Corp.](#)
- B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of supports for cables.

3.2 WIRING METHOD

- A. Install cable, concealed in accessible ceilings, and walls in finished areas.
- B. Install wiring in metal pathways and wireways where exposed in mechanical rooms and at exposed structural ceilings.
 - 1. Minimum conduit size shall be ½-inch. Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.

C. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.
4. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with intrusion system to terminal blocks.
5. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams.
6. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding **30 inches** and not more than **6 inches** from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
2. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
4. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of **8 inches** above ceilings by cable supports not more than **60 inches** apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

3.4 FIRE ALARM WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.

B. Cables and raceways used for fire alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with the fire alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.

C. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or raceway as signaling line circuits.

- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Risers: Install at least two vertical cable risers to serve the fire alarm system. Separate risers in close proximity to each other with a minimum one-hour-rated wall, so the loss of one riser does not prevent the receipt or transmission of signals from other floors or zones.
- H. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: **1-inch** conduit between the fire alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

3.5 POWER AND CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
 - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
 - 2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
 - 3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 07.

3.8 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 283111

DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit, DAC, Knox box.(existing)
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Magnetic door holders.
7. Remote annunciator (existing)
8. Addressable interface device.
9. Firefighters' smoke-control station
10. Digital alarm communicator transmitter (existing).

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 23 for duct smoke detectors
2. Division 26 for basic requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- B. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded addressable system, with automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors and multiplexed signal transmission, dedicated to fire-alarm service only.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Fire-alarm control unit and raceways shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Comply with recommendations in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Include voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits.
 3. Include battery-size calculations.
 4. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector, verifying that each detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 5. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale and coordinating installation of duct smoke detectors and access to them. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 6. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits.
- C. General Submittal Requirements:
 1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
 2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified fire-alarm technician.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For fire-alarm control unit, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 include the following:
 1. Comply with the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

2. Provide "Record of Completion Documents" according to NFPA 72 article "Permanent Records" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter.
3. Record copy of site-specific software.
4. Provide "Maintenance, Inspection and Testing Records" according to NFPA 72 article of the same name and include the following:
 - a. Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - b. Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - c. Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - d. Manufacturer's user training manuals.
5. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
6. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit.

F. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Obtain fire-alarm system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. NFPA Certification: Obtain certification according to NFPA 72 by a UL-listed alarm company.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate all device programming and addressing with the Owner.

1.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software.

1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

1.10 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Lamps for Remote Indicating Lamp Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
 2. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than 1 unit.
 3. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.
 4. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to 2 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than 1 unit of each type.
 5. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked and tamperproofed components.
 6. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
 7. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER (Existing to be Maintained)

- A. The fire alarm system control panel is a Simplex 4100ES.
- B. All devices utilized for system improvement shall be UL listed to operate with the existing system.
- C. Scope shall include all programming required for any added, replaced or removed device. Provide new system battery and power supply calculations that account for any added, replaced or removed devices. Provide new or additional batteries and power supplies to satisfy system stand-by and activation performance in accordance with NFPA requirements.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
 1. Manual stations.
 2. Heat detectors.
 3. Smoke detectors.
 4. Duct smoke detectors.
 5. Verified automatic alarm operation of smoke detectors.
 6. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
 7. Heat detectors in elevator shaft and pit.
 8. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
 9. Pre-action system operation
 10. Fire standpipe system.

- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:
1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
 2. Identify alarm at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
 3. Transmit an alarm signal to the remote alarm receiving station.
 4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
 5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
 6. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 7. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
 8. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 9. Record events in the system memory
 10. Activate smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
- C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Valve supervisory switch.
 2. Low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe sprinkler system.
 3. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
- D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:
1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
 2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
 3. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
 4. Ground or a single break in fire-alarm control unit internal circuits.
 5. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
 6. Break in standby battery circuitry.
 7. Failure of battery charging.
 8. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
 9. Low-air-pressure switch operation on a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
- E. System Trouble and Supervisory Signal Actions: Initiate notification appliance and annunciate at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators. Transmit a trouble or supervisory signal to the remote alarm receiving station.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT (Existing to be Maintained)

- A. General understood performance for the existing Simplex 4100ES Fire-Alarm Control Unit:
1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864 and listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in flash electrically erasable programmable read-only memory (EEPROM), retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder.
 2. Addressable initiation devices that communicate device identity and status.
 - a. Smoke sensors shall additionally communicate sensitivity setting and allow for adjustment of sensitivity at fire-alarm control unit.

- b. Temperature sensors shall additionally test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
 3. Addressable control circuits for operation of mechanical equipment.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
 1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 2 line(s) of 40 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.
- C. Circuits:
 1. Initiating Device, Notification Appliance, and Signaling Line Circuits: NFPA 72, Class A.
 - a. Notification Appliance Circuits: Style Z.
 - b. Signaling Line Circuits: Style 6.
 - c. Pathway Survivability Level 1.
 - d. Install no more than 50 addressable devices on each signaling line circuit.
 2. Serial Interfaces: Two RS-232 ports for printers.
- D. Smoke-Alarm Verification:
 1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Activate an NRTL-listed and -approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
 3. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
 4. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.
- E. Elevator Recall:
 1. Smoke detectors at the following locations shall initiate automatic elevator recall.
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
 2. Elevator lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor.
 3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
 - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.
- F. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select specific addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated

changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory, and print out the final adjusted values on system printer.

- G. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.
- H. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.
 - 1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.
- I. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.
 - 1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.
- J. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

- A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.
 - 1. Single-action mechanism, type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 2. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
 - 3. Indoor Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm. Lifting the cover actuates an integral battery-powered audible horn intended to discourage false-alarm operation.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:
 - 1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
 - 2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
 - 3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
 - 4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
 - 5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.

6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
 7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be analog-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.
 - a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
 - b. Fixed-temperature sensing shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
 - c. Provide multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
- B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
- C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.
1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
 2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).
 3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector. Must be UL listed to function with installed fire alarm system.
 4. Watertight and Corrosive Resistant Enclosure (for use in each DOAS unit exhaust compartment): NEMA 4X, NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector and equal to performance of Air Products & Controls, model No. RT-3000-P (plus required tube assembly). Must be UL listed to function with installed fire alarm system.
 5. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
 6. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
 7. Relay Fan Shutdown: Rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of **135 deg F** or a rate of rise that exceeds **15 deg F** per minute unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of **190 deg F**.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Notification appliance circuit panel (NAC); installed at each floor to provide AC and DC power to support the indication loop devices.
 - 2. Fire alarm terminal cabinets (FATC); installed at each floor to facilitate network, initiation loop and indication loop wiring.
 - 3. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured **10 feet** from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- C. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights comply with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum **1-inch**-high letters on the lens.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Wall mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.

5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, [red] [white].

2.8 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR (Existing to be Maintained)

- A. Description: Simplex Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
1. Mounting: Surface cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Refer to plans for proposed location on basement maintenance office
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.9 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. Description: Microelectronic monitor module, NRTL listed for use in providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- B. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown.

2.10 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER (Existing to be Maintained)

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.
- B. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:
1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 2. Programming device.
 3. LED display.
 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
 2. Address of the supervisory signal.

3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply or loss of power.
5. Low battery.
6. Abnormal test signal.
7. Communication bus failure.

- E. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.11 FIREFIGHTERS' SMOKE-CONTROL SYSTEM

A. Initiate Smoke-Management Sequence of Operation:

1. Comply with sequence of operation as described in Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."
2. Fire-alarm system shall provide all interfaces and control points required to properly activate smoke-management systems.
3. First fire-alarm system initiating device to go into alarm condition shall activate the smoke-control functions.
4. Subsequent devices going into alarm condition shall have no effect on the smoke-control mode.

B. Addressable Relay Modules:

1. Provide address-setting means on the module. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
2. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
3. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
4. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72 for installation of fire-alarm equipment and system devices.
- B. Comply with ADA for installation (heights and locations) of occupant manual initiation and indication devices.
- C. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than **72 inches** above the finished floor.
1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 260548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
1. Comply with NFPA 72, "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for smoke-detector spacing.

2. Comply with NFPA 72, "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" Section in the "Initiating Devices" Chapter, for heat-detector spacing.
 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed **30 feet**.
 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Appendix A or Appendix B in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than **3 feet** from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than **12 inches** from any part of a lighting fixture.
- E. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct.
- F. Heat Detectors in Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location.
- G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install near each smoke detector, heat detector, sprinkler water-flow switch and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- H. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than **6 inches** below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille.
- I. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn (or a single combined fire alarm system A/V unit) and at least **6 inches** below the ceiling.
- J. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.
- K. Fire-Alarm Control Unit (and other system cabinets; NAC or FATC): Surface mounted, with tops of cabinets not more than **72 inches** above the finished floor.
- L. Annunciator: Install with top of panel not more than **72 inches** above the finished floor.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than **3 feet** from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection, when such feedback is available, at the device or system being controlled. Refer to other division plans and specifications to coordinate the exact location and quantity for all required addressable control and monitoring modules required to support each related system listed below.
1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighter smoke-control system panel.
 2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
 3. Alarm-initiating connection to sprinkler system water flow switches
 4. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
 5. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 6. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 7. Supervisory connections at each sprinkler system valve supervisory switches. Note there are approximately (12) new isolation valves planned for this project. Each will need a new addressable monitor module connected and programed into the existing system.

8. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
9. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt trip breaker.
10. Retain one of three subparagraphs below.
11. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
12. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Owner's representative.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed Record Drawings and system documentation that is required by NFPA 72 in its "Completion Documents, Preparation" Table in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter.
 - b. Comply with "Visual Inspection Frequencies" Table in the "Inspection" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 2. System Testing: Comply with "Test Methods" Table in the "Testing" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.
 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 4. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.

5. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" Section of the "Fundamentals of Fire Alarm Systems" Chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" Section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" Chapter in NFPA 72.

- D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 283115

EMERGENCY RESPONDER RADIO ANTENNA/REPEATER SYSTEM

Signal Strength Testing – BASE BID

Furnish and Install System – ADD ALTERNATE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Under the BASE BID contract provide fire fighter communication system signal strength testing for the facility. Testing shall occur once final finishes have been applied and FFE has been installed. Results of signal strength testing will be shared and reviewed by the fire department for final agreement as to whether the repeater system is required or is not. Should it be determined as a result of the signal strength testing that the antenna/repeater system is required then provide an ADD ALTERNATE price to the owner for system procurement and installation within the base bid project completion schedule.
- B. Furnish, install, and test a complete and operating Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System. The system will support only the Fire Department radio system and no others. Provisions for supporting other public safety systems (e.g. police); cellphone carriers; the Owners' private security and/or maintenance personnel radio systems, etc. – now or in the future – shall not be included.
- C. This Section includes the requirements for an Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System for the purposes of amplifying Emergency Responder radio signals to achieve minimum signal strength in 95% of all areas on each floor of the building.
- D. Final acceptance and approval is required from the local Fire Department in writing prior to contract closeout.
- E. Section Includes
 - 1. Bi-directional amplifiers (BDA's)
 - 2. Distributed Antenna System
 - 3. Coaxial cables
 - 4. Splitters and direction couplers
 - 5. UPS
 - 6. All other equipment and components necessary for a complete and functioning Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System.

1.2 REGULATIONS

- A. Codes, regulations and standards referenced in the Section are:
 - 1. NFPA 1 – The National Fire Code (including Annex O from 2009)
 - 2. NFPA 70 – The National Electrical Code

3. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code, the Ohio Basic Building Code, and Local Code and Building Authority requirements.
4. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code
5. FCC 47 CFR Private Land Mobile Radio
6. 90.219-2007 Services-Use of Signal Boosters
7. ICC 2009 International Fire Code, Code and Commentary
8. ADA "Americans with Disabilities Act"
9. FCC's OET 65 Standards "Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields".
10. FCC Rules Part 22, Part 90 and Part 101.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Bi-Directional Amplifier BDA: Device used to amplify band-selective or multi-band RF signals in the uplink, to the base station for enhanced signals and improved coverage.
- B. Emergency Responder Radio Coverage System: A two-way radio communication system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communications systems for fire, emergency medical services or law enforcement agencies within a building or structure. A system used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel.
- C. Delivered Audio Quality Definitions (DAQ): This is a universal standard often cited in system designs and specifications.
 1. DAQ 1: Unusable, speech present but unreadable.
 2. DAQ 2: Understandable with considerable effort. Frequent repetition due to noise/distortion.
 3. DAQ 3: Speech understandable with slight effort. Occasional repetition required due to noise/distortion.
 4. DAQ 3.5: Speech understandable with repetition only rarely required. Some noise/distortion
 5. DAQ 4: Speech easily understood. Occasional noise/distortion.
 6. DAQ 4.5: Speech easily understood. Infrequent noise/distortion.
 7. DAQ 5: Speech easily understood. Coupled Bonding Conductor (CBC) – The term "Coupled Bonding Conductor" shall mean a bonding conductor placed, e.g. strapped, on the outside of any technology cable, used to suppress transient noise.
- D. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
- E. OET 65 Standards: FCC's Bulletin 65 provides Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields.
- F. Public Safety/First Responder: Public Safety or First Responder agencies which are charged with the responsibility of responding to emergency situations. These include, but are not limited to: law enforcement departments, fire departments, and emergency medical companies.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data for each type of proposed system component specified, including dimensioned drawings showing minimum clearances and installed features.

B. Layout Drawings

1. Component specification sheets shall be 8.5 inch x 11 inch or greater, scaled or dimensioned, with dimensions or scale clearly noted.
2. Floor plan drawings shall be 24 inch x 36 inch minimum with drawings scaled to legible size.
3. Floor plan drawings may include elevation detail names for each elevation view. Sheet title shall include site name, address, sheet number, floor plan number and north arrow. Include site plan view of the subject buildings and surrounding property to clearly indicate the location and orientation of roof mounted outdoor antennas associated with the proposed system.
4. Include a minimum of (1) building elevation depicting the location of any outdoor antennas associated with the proposed system. Include height of antenna centerline above building, orientation, and location of all external grounding connections.
5. Include a detail plan view of all Telecommunications Spaces housing head-end and/or other consolidated equipment, showing the location of the rack(s) and/or enclosure(s) of the Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System equipment.
6. Include a separate plan view of each interior floor where indoor antenna systems are proposed. Include antenna numbers, coaxial cable routes, and the locations of any other system components including splitters, couplers, filters, amplifiers, etc. All components shall be named or labeled for reference in power budget calculations tables. Overlay approximated coverage radii indicating -95 dBm downlink (base to mobile) signal strength around each proposed indoor coverage antenna. Include results of any previous coverage testing per grid, if available.
7. Include a minimum of one (1) detail elevation view(s) of all rack(s) and/or enclosure(s) housing the Emergency Responder Radio Antenna/Repeater System equipment.
8. Identify each piece of equipment by brand, model number and equipment type (e.g. Acme BA123 RF amplifier).
9. Specify antenna grounding and surge protection in accordance with NEC Article 810.
10. Specify the backup power source (Life Safety), and include calculations to ensure the backup power requirements as specified in this standard are met.

C. Equipment Specification Sheets

1. Provide copies of manufacturer specification sheets of all system components, including:
 - a. Amplifiers
 - b. Antennas
 - c. Coaxial cable, couplers, splitters, combiners, or other passive components
2. Operation and maintenance data
3. Pass band curves in for the uplink and downlink portions of the NPSPAC band for any amplifiers, if not included in #1. Amplifiers may NOT amplify portions of other licensed services, including Nextel and Specialized Mobile Radio Licensee band, or Cellular A or B bands.
4. Backup battery and charging system.

D. Submit wiring diagrams from manufacturer differentiating clearly between factory and field-installed wiring. Include diagrams for each component of the system with all terminals and interconnections identified. Make all diagrams specific to this Project.

E. Submit product certificates signed by the manufacturer of radio system components certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.

F. Submit agenda for training class and copies of all handouts for the class.

- G. Maintenance data for radio system shall be included in the operation and maintenance manual. Include data for each type of product, including all features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual. Provide the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of service organizations that carry stock of repair parts for the system to be furnished.
- H. Record of field tests of the radio system shall be included in the operation and maintenance manuals.
- I. Design Approval: Plans shall be submitted and approved prior to installation. The following information shall be provided to the local Fire Department unit representative by the system designer/Contractor:
 - 1. A minimum of three (3) copies of detailed drawings showing the location of the amplification equipment and associated antenna systems which includes a view showing building access to the equipment; and
 - 2. A minimum of three (3) copies of schematic drawings of the electrical system, backup power, antenna system and any other associated equipment relative to the amplification equipment including panel locations and labeling.
 - 3. A minimum of one (1) copy of the Manufacturer's data sheets on all equipment to be installed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced factory-authorized installer to perform work of this Section.
- B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain radio system components from a single source who assumes responsibility for compatibility of system components.
- C. All equipment shall be UL listed and labeled, and in accordance with applicable NEMA and ANSI Standards. Where copper cabling is routed to an area, either in another building, or with a separate electrical service, the Technology Contractor shall provide primary protective equipment.
- D. All racks and enclosures shall be either welded or assembled with paint piercing ground washers, grounding strip and bonding jumper as indicated on the Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, available Integrators offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Radio Solutions, Inc
 - 2. Corning
 - 3. Times Microwave
 - 4. TESCO
 - 5. CCI (Communication Components Inc.)
 - 6. Solid Technologies
 - 7. CommScope/Andrew

2.2 GENERAL PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Compatibility:** The equipment, including but not limited to repeaters, transmitters, receivers, signal boosters, cabling, fiber distributed antenna system, etc., shall not interfere with the existing communication systems utilized by the Public Safety and First Responder agencies.
- B. **Power Supplies:** At least two (2) independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided, one primary and one secondary. The primary power source shall be supplied from a dedicated 20 ampere branch circuit and comply with 4.4.1.4 of NFPA 72. The secondary power source shall be a dedicated battery, capable of operating the in-building radio system for at least 12 hours of 100% system operation. The battery system shall automatically charge in the presence of external power input. The battery system shall be contained in one NEMA 4 or 4X type enclosures. Monitoring the integrity of power supplies shall be in accordance with 4.4.7.3 of NFPA 72.
- C. **Survivability**
 - 1. **Physical Protection:** All wiring and fiber optics shall be installed in conduit. Refer to Section 260533, "Conduit and Fittings" for type, sizing and installation standards.
 - 2. **Fire Performance:** All main risers or trunks of the antenna system shall be installed with resistance to attack from a fire using one of the following methods:
 - a. A 2-hour fire rated cable or cable system.
 - b. Routing the cable through a 2-hour fire rated enclosure(s) or shaft(s).
 - c. A system configured in a looped design, routed through 1-hour fire rated enclosure(s) or shaft(s). The circuit shall be capable of transmitting and receiving a signal during a single open or non-simultaneous single ground fault on a circuit conductor.
 - d. Performance alternative approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
 - 3. **Cabinet:** The signal booster and all associated RF filters shall be housed in a single, NEMA 4 certified, painted steel weather tight box. The cabinet shall be large enough to dissipate internal heat without venting the inside of the cabinet to the outside atmosphere. Operating temperatures: -22 degrees F to +120 degrees F (-30 degrees C to +50 degrees C) minimum temperature range, including microprocessors. Equipment installed on the roof of structures shall be rated for the expected extreme temperatures associated with rooftop installations.
 - 4. **Passive Equipment:** Passband shall be 700-900 MHz, IP rating of 2 GHz.
 - 5. **Cable:** Passband shall be 700-900 MHz. Cable shall be rated for fire plenum and riser rating.

2.3 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. **Signal Strength**
 - 1. **Downlink:** A minimum signal strength of -95 dBm shall be provided throughout the coverage area.
 - 2. **Uplink:** Minimum signal strength of -95 dBm received at the local Fire Department Radio System from the coverage area.
 - 3. A donor antenna must maintain isolation from the distributed antenna system. The donor antenna signal level shall be a minimum of 15 dB above the distributed antenna system under all operating conditions.

B. Permissible Systems

1. Buildings and structures shall be equipped with an FCC Certificated Class B Bi-Directional UHF Amplifier(s) as needed.
2. The distributed antenna system may utilize a radiating cable, fixed antennas or a combination of both.

C. Supported Frequencies: The radio system shall support frequencies in the 700 and 800 MHz public safety bands as utilized by the local Fire Department.

D. Reject Filters: Notch filter sections shall be incorporated to minimize adjacent channel cellular and SMR (Nextel) degradation of the signal booster performance. The minimum downlink band adjacent band rejection shall be 35 dB or greater at 865 MHz and 870 MHz.

E. Band Migration Capability: The signal booster shall include re-tunable or replaceable filters to accommodate rapid and economic passband changes in the event of mandatory FCC changes within the NPSPAC band. The use of non-adjustable and non-replaceable RF input and output filters is prohibited.

F. Output Level Control: An automatic output leveling circuit shall be included for both passbands with a minimum dynamic range of 60 dB, less any gain reduction setting, to maintain FCC out of band and spurious emission compliance.

G. Degraded Performance in Emergencies: The system shall be designed to allow degraded performance in adverse conditions, such as abnormally high temperatures resulting from nearby fires, extreme voltage fluctuations or other abnormal conditions that may occur during an emergency. Circuits that intentionally disable the signal booster in such situations (i.e. under/over voltage, over/under current, over/under temperature, etc.) will not be implemented as the standard mode for public safety applications.

H. Mode of Operation: The system shall be normally powered on and shall continuously provide passing of frequencies within the Public Safety and First Responder bands.

I. All in-building radio systems shall be compatible with both analog and digital communications simultaneously at the time of installation.

2.4 SYSTEM MONITORING

A. The distributed antenna system shall include a connection to the fire alarm system to monitor the integrity of the circuit of the signal booster(s) and power supplies and annunciate this malfunction on the fire alarm system shall comply with 4.4.7.1 of NFPA 72.

B. A sign shall be located at the fire alarm panel with the name and telephone number of the local Fire Department indicating that they shall be notified of any failures that extend past the 2 hour time limit.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Distribution System Signal Wires and Cables.

1. Wires and cables shall enter each equipment enclosure, console, cabinet or rack in such a manner that all doors or access panels can be opened and closed without removal or disruption of the cables.
2. Routing and Interconnection
 - a. Wires or cables routed between consoles, cabinets, racks, and other equipment shall be installed in an approved conduit or cable tray that is secured to building structure.
 - b. Completely test all of the cables after installation and replace any that are found to be defective.
3. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
4. Do not bend cables, while handling or installing, to radii smaller than as recommended by manufacturer.
5. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.

B. Product Delivery, Storage, and Handling

1. Delivery: Deliver materials to the job site in OEM's original unopened containers, clearly labeled with the OEM's name and equipment model and serial identification numbers.
2. Store and protect equipment in a conditioned space until installation.

C. System Installation

1. Coaxial antenna cabling shall not be installed in the same conduit, raceway, or cable trays used for other systems.
2. All equipment shall be connected according to the OEM's specifications to insure correct installation and system performance.
3. Coordinate all roof penetrations with Owner and/or roofing contractor.

3.2 LICENSING

- A. All fees associated with the licensing shall be paid by the Owner.
- B. All testing must be done on frequencies authorized by the FCC.

3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment per Manufacturer's requirements.
- B. Antenna mast shall be grounded per NFPA 70 NEC requirements, Section 270526, "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" and antenna manufacturer's requirements. Provide grounding blocks and surge protection for outside coaxial cabling. Bond the antenna mast to the existing lightning protection system.

3.4 APPROVAL TESTING

- A. The local Fire Department will review plans and specifications. Upon acceptance, plans will be stamped to indicate approval. Stamped plans are required to be present at the acceptance test. Any field changes that occur during construction shall be incorporated into new As-Built plans, including any manufacturer's data sheets for any equipment changes not submitted in the

original submittal. As-Built plans, if required due to system changes, shall be submitted to the local Fire Department for approval.

- B. Tests shall be made using frequencies close to the frequencies used by the Fire Department and appropriate emergency services. If testing is done on the actual frequencies, then this testing must be coordinated with the local Fire Department unit. All testing must be done on frequencies authorized by the FCC. A valid FCC license will be required if testing is done on frequencies different from the police, fire or emergency medical frequencies.
- C. Testing Procedures
 - 1. Minimum Signal Strength: For testing system signal strength and quality, the testing shall be based on the delivered audio quality (DAQ) system. A DAQ level below 3.0 shall be considered a failed test for a given grid cell.
 - 2. Measurements shall be made with the antenna held in a vertical position at 3 to 4 feet above the floor to simulate a typical portable radio worn on the belt or turnout coat pocket.
- D. Final Acceptance Testing
 - 1. All acceptance testing shall be done in the presence of a local Fire Department representative or by the local Fire Department unit at no expense to the City.
 - 2. Small scale drawings (11 inch x 17 inch maximum) of the structure shall be provided by the Contractor to the Owner. The plans shall show each floor divided into the grids as described above, and the results of the pre-testing. Each grid shall be labeled to indicate the DAQ result from the final acceptance testing.
 - 3. The Contractor shall provide the latest approved plans for the system, including any manufacture's data sheets for any equipment changes not submitted in the original submittal to the Owner.
 - 4. Include testing results of the repeater (output wattage, gain level, etc) and connection to the fire alarm.

3.5 MAINTENANCE AND ANNUAL TESTING

- A. Annual tests will be conducted by the local Fire Department unit or authorized company.
 - 1. The re-testing will be done at no expense to the City or the appropriate emergency services departments as required in the original testing procedures.
- B. Maintenance Contract
 - 1. Maintenance contract with a Radio Service Provider in place with name of authorized company, who will provide a 24 hour by 7 day emergency response within two (2) hours after notification. The system shall be maintained in accordance with FCC requirements. The contract shall be for 5 years.
 - 2. All tests shall be conducted, documented, and signed by a person in possession of a current FCC General Radio telephone Operator License, or a technician certification issued by the Association of Public-Safety Communications Officials International (APCO) or equivalent as determined by the local Fire Department.
 - 3. Maintain a list of contact personnel with phone numbers at the radio repeater system cabinet. The contact personnel shall have knowledge of the building and the repeater system and be available to respond to the building in the case of an emergency.
 - 4. Radio Service Provider maintenance contract shall include but not limited to:

- a. Annual Test
 - 1) All active components of the distributed antenna system, including but not limited to amplifier, power supplies, and back-up batteries, shall be tested a minimum of once every 12 months.
 - 2) Amplifiers shall be tested to insure that the gain is the same as it was upon initial installation and acceptance. The original gain shall be noted and any change in gain shall be documented.
 - 3) Back-up batteries and power supplies shall be tested under load for a period of 1 hour to verify that they will operate during an actual power outage.
 - 4) Active components shall be checked to determine that they are operating within the manufacturer's specifications for their intended purpose.
 - 5) Documentation of the test shall be maintained on site and a copy forwarded to the local Fire Department Radio Supervisor upon completion of the test.
5. Fire Department Radio personnel, after providing reasonable notice to the Owner or their representative, shall have the right to enter onto the property to conduct field testing to be certain that the required level of radio coverage is present.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 10 00

SITE CLEARING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Remove surface debris.
- B. Remove paving, curb, structures, and pipes.
- C. Clear site of plant life and grass.
- D. Remove trees and shrubs.
- E. Remove root system of trees and shrubs.
- F. Topsoil Excavation.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 56 00 - Temporary Facilities and Controls.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.

1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for disposal of debris.
- B. Contractor is required to contact Dig Safe prior to construction.
- C. Coordinate clearing Work with local utility companies.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that existing plant life designated to remain is tagged or identified.
- B. Install silt fencing in accordance with Section 01 56 00 before starting clearing.
- C. Coordinate clearing work with Owner.

2.2 PROTECTION

- A. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that are to remain, from damage.
- B. Protect trees, plant growth, and features designated to remain, as final landscaping.
- C. Protect benchmarks and existing structures from damage or displacement.

2.3 CLEARING

- A. Remove paving where applicable.
- B. Remove trees and shrubs within marked areas. Remove stumps, main root ball, root system and surface rock to depth limitation on plans.
- C. Clear undergrowth and deadwood using proper methodology to minimize the mixing of topsoil.
- D. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of work.

2.4 REMOVAL

- A. Any debris, rock, and extracted plant life must be removed off site and disposed of at an approved location.
- B. Remove the existing culverts, valves, pipe, structures, curb and other site features as indicated on the Contract Drawings and disposed of at an approved location. The Owner shall have first right and refusal of the equipment and materials associated with the site features.
 - 1. Contractor to remove all existing storm drainage structures within the project limits not scheduled for reuse, unless otherwise noted. Backfill with approved granular material.
 - 2. Contractor to remove all existing storm drainage piping within proposed trenches; all other pipe to be abandoned in-place, unless otherwise noted.
 - a. Contractor to fill all abandoned pipes with flowable fill. Contractor to ensure that entire run of abandoned pipe is filled with flowable fill.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 22 13

ROUGH GRADING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Completion of rough grading.
- B. Removal of topsoil and subsoil. Stockpile for later reuse. Evenly distribute excess on site.
- C. Grading and rough contouring the site.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedure.
- B. Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- C. Section 31 10 00 – Site Clearing.
- D. Section 31 23 16 – Excavation.
- E. Section 31 23 23 – Backfill.
- F. Section 32 12 16 - Asphaltic Paving.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12-inch (304.8 mm) Drop.
- B. ANSI/ASTM D1556 - Test Method for Density of Soil in Place by the Sand-cone Method.
- C. ANSI/ASTM D1557 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures Using 10 lb (4.54 Kg) Rammer and 18-inch (457 mm) Drop.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: Submit 10 lb. sample of each type of fill to testing laboratory, in air-tight containers.
- B. Accurately record actual locations of utilities remaining, by horizontal dimensions, elevations or inverts, and slope gradients.

1.5 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. It is the intent of this item for the Contractor to perform whatever rough grading may be required to complete installation of utilities, dumpster pad and paved areas, and building foundation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Excavated material, graded, free of roots, rocks larger than 1-inch subsoil, debris, and large weeds.

- B. Subsoil: Excavated material, graded, free of lumps larger than six inches, rocks larger than three inches and debris.

PART 3 - EXCAVATION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site conditions under provisions of Section 31 10 00.
- B. Verify that survey benchmark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Identify known underground, above ground, and aerial utilities. Stake and flag locations.
- C. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities if required.
- D. Protect above the below grade utilities which are to remain.
- E. Upon discovery of unknown utility or concealed conditions, discontinue affected Work. Notify Architect/Engineer.
- F. Protect plant life and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- G. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.

3.3 TOPSOIL EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate topsoil from areas to be further excavated.
- B. Stockpile in area designated on site. Cover to protect from erosion. Remove excess topsoil not being reused, from site.
- C. Do not excavate wet topsoil.

3.4 SUBSOIL EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate subsoil from areas to be further excavated, landscaped, or re-graded.
- B. Stockpile in area designated on site. Remove excess subsoil not being reused from site.
- C. Do not excavate wet subsoil; dewater prior to excavation.
- D. Stockpile subsoil to depth not exceeding eight feet. Cover to protect from erosion.
- E. When excavation through roots is necessary, perform work by hand and cut roots with sharp axe.

3.5 FILLING

- A. Fill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Granular Fill: Place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches

compacted depth, compacted to 95 percent.

- C. Subsoil Fill: Place and compact material in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth, compacted to 95 percent.
- D. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- E. Slope grade away from building minimum six inches in 10 feet unless noted otherwise.
- F. Make grade changes gradually. Blend slope into level areas.
- G. Remove surplus fill materials from site.

3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Subgrade: Plus or minus one-inch.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D1557, ANSI/ASTM D2922, and with Section 01 40 00.
- C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.
- D. Frequency of Tests: One test per 1,000 s.f.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 16

EXCAVATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavation for site structures.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 10 00 – Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

1.3 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that survey benchmark and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Identify known underground, above ground, and aerial utilities. Stake and flag locations.
- C. Erect sheeting, shoring, and bracing as necessary for protection of persons, improvements, and excavations and as indicated on the Drawings.
- D. Provide dewatering and drainage as required to accomplish work of this section.
- E. Protect new construction, existing structures, existing utilities, plants, trees, etc. at all times. Report any damages immediately to Engineer and proper authorities.
- F. Use extreme caution when excavating near underground utilities. Employ manual excavation where necessary.
- G. Inform appropriate utility or agency of all actions in vicinity of underground pipes, mains, conducts, wires, etc. Coordinate all work with appropriate utility or agency and comply with all requirements.

2.2 EXCAVATION

- A. Underpin adjacent structures which may be damaged by excavation work, including utilities and pipe chases.
- B. Excavate existing material as necessary and as delineated on the Contract Drawings. Excavated material may be used as backfill as specified in Section 31 23 23, when approved by the Engineer.
- C. Machine slope banks to angle of repose or less, until shored.
- D. Excavate all materials regardless of nature of elevations and dimensions indicated plus sufficient

space for forming, shoring, draining, inspection, etc. Excavate using open cut method unless otherwise indicated or permitted.

- E. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.
- F. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
- G. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to two cubic yards measured by volume.
- H. Allow Engineer to inspect bottom of excavation for suitability of base material.
- I. Remove unsuitable base material to a depth of at least six inches below any pipe or structure or to a depth directed by the Engineer and replace with compacted screened gravel or crushed stone or provide proper base as otherwise directed by Engineer. Place no footing, wall, structure, pipe, etc. on unsuitable material.
- J. Place no structure, pipe, etc. partially on earth and partially on rock. Remove rock and replace with compacted screened gravel or crushed stone.
- K. Protect excavation bottoms from frost and weathering. Place no structure, pipe, etc. on frozen or weathered ground.
- L. Notify Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
- M. Correct unauthorized excavation at no extra cost to Owner.
- N. Correct areas over-excavated by error in accordance with Section 31 23 23.
- O. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and remove excess material not being reused, from site.

2.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection will be performed under provisions of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Provide for visual inspection of bearing surfaces.

2.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect excavations by methods required to prevent cave-in or loose soil from falling into excavation.
- B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation, from freezing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 17

TRENCHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavation of trenches for utilities.
- B. Bedding and backfilling of utilities.
- C. Compaction of bedding, and backfill material over utilities to subgrade elevations.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 23 16 – Excavation.
- B. Section 31 23 18 – Rock Removal.
- C. Section 31 23 23 – Backfill.
- D. Section 32 12 16 – Asphaltic Paving.
- E. Section 33 11 13 – Public Water Utility Distribution Piping.
- F. Section 33 31 00 – Sanitary Sewage Systems.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM C136 – Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
- B. ANSI/ASTM D1557 – Modified Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 10 lb. Rammer and 18-inch Drop.

1.4 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that survey benchmark and intended elevations for the Work are as shown on drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Types as specified in Section 31 23 23.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify fill materials to be reused, are acceptable and obtain Engineer's approval.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.

- B. Maintain and protect existing utilities remaining, which pass through work area.
- C. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- D. Protect benchmarks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.
- E. Protect above and below grade utilities which are to remain.
- F. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of in situ compaction. Backfill with approved granular material and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent backfill material.
- G. Cut pavement using masonry saw, pavement breaker, or other appropriate device to provide a uniform edge and to minimize damage to remaining pavement. Do not use removed pavement as fill.

3.3 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate subsoil required for water service installation, culverts, sanitary sewers, storm sewers, underground conduits, and precast light bases.
- B. Cut trenches sufficiently wide to enable installation of utilities and allow inspection.
- C. Excavation shall not interfere with normal 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- D. Hand trim excavation. Hand trim for bell and spigot pipe joints. Remove loose matter.
- E. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 2 cubic yards, measured by volume. Larger material will be removed under Section 31 23 18.
- F. Correct unauthorized excavation at no cost to Owner.
- G. Correct areas over-excavated by error in accordance with Section 31 23 23.
- H. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and provide proper erosion control measures. Excess material shall be removed off site and disposed of properly.

3.4 BEDDING

- A. Support pipe and conduit during placement of crushed stone or specified bedding material.
- B. Do not compact crushed stone over any flexible plastic pipe.
- C. Bedding material thickness shall be in accordance with the Contract Drawings.

3.5 BACKFILLING

- A. Backfill trenches to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- C. Granular Fill: Place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 6 inches

compacted depth.

- D. Soil Fill: Place and compact material in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
- E. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage pipe in trench.
- F. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- G. Surplus fill materials shall be removed off site.
- H. Fill material stockpile areas shall be compiled neatly and provided proper erosion control protection.

3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Backfilling: Under Paved Areas plus or minus one half inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus one inch from required elevations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field testing will be performed under the provisions of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Tests and analysis of fill material will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D1557 and Section 01 40 00.
- C. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D6938 and with Section 01 40 00.
- D. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, compact, and retest at no cost to Owner.

3.8 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 56 00.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 18

ROCK REMOVAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Removal of rock uncovered during excavation.
- B. Explosives to assist rock removal.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 10 00 - Site Clearing.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 23 17 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 495 - Code for Explosive Materials.
- B. MDOT Standard Specifications - Highway and Bridges, current revision.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Rock is defined as any stone, boulder, or pieces of concrete or masonry, two cubic yards or more in volume, and any hard natural material or rock ledge that will withstand removal by the usual mechanical excavation methods such as, power shovels or toothed bulldozer blades, and such that normally requires blasting or continuous drilling, wedging, sledging, or barring for removal. No soft or disintegrated rock which can be removed with a hand pick or power operated excavator shovel; no loose, shaken, or previously blasted rock or broken stone in rock fillings or elsewhere; and no rock exterior to the maximum limits of measurements allowed, which may fall into the excavation, will be measured or allowed. The Engineer shall be sole judge as to whether the material encountered shall be classified as rock in accordance with the above description.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Seismic Survey Firm: Company specializing in seismic surveys with five years documented experience.
- B. Explosives Firm: Company specializing in explosives for disintegration of rock, with five years documented experience.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for explosive disintegration of rock and to NFPA 495 for handling explosive materials.
- B. Obtain permits from authorities having jurisdiction before explosives are brought to site or drilling is started.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule work under the provisions of Section 01 30 00.
- B. Schedule Work to avoid disruption to occupied buildings nearby.
- C. No blasting is to occur until the Contractor and Engineer agree to the quantity of rock that is to be removed. If blasting occurs otherwise, Engineer will compute quantities and those quantities will be considered final.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Explosives: Type recommended by explosive firm following seismic survey and required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Delay Device: Type recommended by explosive firm.
- C. Blast Mat Materials: Type recommended by explosives firm.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site conditions and note subsurface irregularities affecting work of this section.
- B. Beginning of work of this Section means acceptance of existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Conduct survey and document conditions of buildings near locations of rock removal and prior to blasting, photograph existing conditions identifying existing irregularities.

3.3 ROCK REMOVAL – EXPLOSIVE METHOD

- A. If rock is uncovered requiring the explosives method for rock disintegration, notify the Engineer and execute as follows.
- B. Advise owners of adjacent buildings or structures in writing, prior to executing seismographic survey. Explain planned blasting and seismic operations.
- C. Obtain a seismic survey prior to rock excavation to determine maximum charges that can be used at different locations in area of excavation without damaging adjacent properties or other work.
- D. Provide seismographic monitoring during progress of blasting operations.
- E. Disintegrate rock and remove from excavation.
- F. Remove rock at excavation bottom to form level bearing.
- G. Remove shaled layers to provide a sound and unshattered base.

- H. In utility trenches, excavate to 6 inches below invert elevation of pipe and 24 inches wider than pipe diameter; and 12 inches below base elevation of structures and 24 inches wider than structures.
- I. Remove excess excavated material from site after obtaining Engineers permission.
- J. Correct unauthorized rock removal in accordance with backfilling and compacting requirements of Section 31 23 23.
- K. Perform no blasting without informing Engineer, governing authorities, and other concerned parties. Conform to all local, State, and Federal regulations concerning blasting and pertinent provisions of the "Manual of Accident Contractors of America, inc., of the "Construction Safety Rules and Regulations, as adopted by the State Board of Construction Safety, Augusta, Maine, and Maine Department of Transportation "Standard Specifications" Section 107.12, Use of Explosives.
- L. Blast only with such quantities and strength of explosives and in such manner as will break the rock approximately to the intended lines and grades and yet will leave the rock not to be excavated in an unshattered condition. Avoid excessive cracking of the rock upon or against which any structure will be built and to prevent injury to existing pipes or other structures and property above or below ground. Cover rock where necessary.
- M. Blast no closer than 20 feet from completed pipes, manholes, or other structure. Any damages to the work resulting from blasting shall be repaired at the Contractor's expense.
- N. The Contractor shall maintain and submit (if requested) to the Engineer accurate record of each blast. Show the general location of the blast, the depth and number of drill holes, the kind and quantity of explosive used, and other data required for a complete record.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Provide for visual inspection of foundation bearing surfaces and cavities formed by removed rock.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 23 23

BACKFILL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Site filling and backfilling.
- B. Fill, aggregate subbase, and aggregate base under paving.
- C. Consolidation and compaction.
- D. Fill for over-excavation.

1.2 RELATED SECTION

- A. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- B. Section 31 23 17 - Trenching.
- C. Section 31 37 00 - Riprap.
- D. Section 32 12 16 - Asphaltic Paving.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM C136 - Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates.
- B. ANSI/ASTM D1557 – Modified Test Method for Moisture Density Relations of Soils and Soil Aggregate Mixtures, Using 10 lb Rammer and 18 inch Drop.
- D. ASTM D6938 – Standard Test Method for In-Place Density and water content of soil and soil aggregate by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth).
- E. ASTM D2487 - Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.
- F. ASTM 4318 - Test Method For Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils.
- G. ASTM D1140 - Test Method For Amount of Material in Soils Finer than the No. 200 (75 - μ m) sieve.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUITABLE FILL AND BACKFILL MATERIAL REQUIREMENT

- A. General: Fill, backfill, and embankment materials shall be suitable selected or processed clean, fine earth, rock or sand, free from grass, roots, brush, or other vegetation.
- B. Fill and backfill to be placed within 6 inches of any structure or pipe shall be free of rocks or unbroken masses of earth materials having a maximum dimension no larger than 3 inches for structures, and 1 inch for DI, PVC and HDPE pipe.
- C. Suitable Materials: Soils not classified as unsuitable as defined in paragraph entitled, "Unsuitable Material" herein, are defined as suitable material and may be used in fills, backfilling, and embankment construction subject to approval by Engineer, some of the material listed as

unsuitable may be used when thoroughly mixed with suitable material to form a stable composite.

- D. Suitable materials may be obtained from on-site excavations, may be processed on-site materials, or may be imported. If imported materials are required to meet the requirements of the section or to meet the quantity requirements of the project, the Contractor shall provide the imported materials at no additional expense to the Owner, unless a unit price item is included for imported materials in the bidding schedule.
- E. The following types of suitable materials are designated and defined as follows:

1. COMMON BORROW

Common borrow shall consist of earth, suitable for embankment construction. It shall be free from frozen material, perishable rubbish, peat, and other unsuitable material.

The moisture content shall be sufficient to provide the required compaction and stable embankment. In no case shall the moisture content exceed 4 percent above optimum.

The optimum moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

2. CRUSHED STONE/BEDDING MATERIAL

Crushed stone shall be durable crushed rock consisting of the angular fragments obtained by breaking and crushing solid or shattered natural rock and reasonably free from thin, flat, elongated, or other objectionable pieces. The crushed stone shall be reasonably free from sand, clay, loam, chemical decay, or deleterious materials and not more than one percent of material passing a No. 200 sieve will be allowed to adhere to the crushed stone. The crushed stone shall be uniformly blended according to the grading requirements listed in the following table:

3/4-inch crushed stone:

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1" | 100 |
| 3/4" | 95-100 |
| 1/2" | 35-70 |
| 3/8" | 0-25 |

1½-inch crushed stone:

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 2" | 100 |
| 1" | 0-60 |
| 3/4" | 0-30 |
| 1/2" | 0-15 |
| 3/8" | 0-25 |

3. SAND

Sand shall be well graded coarse sand without excessive fines and free from loam, clay, and organic matter. Beach sand shall not be used. The grading requirements are as follows:

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 3/8" | 100 |
| No. 4 | 95-100 |
| No. 16 | 50- 85 |

| | |
|---------|------|
| No. 50 | 0-30 |
| No. 100 | 2-10 |

4. AGGREGATE SUBBASE

Aggregate subbase shall be sand or gravel consisting of hard durable particles which are free from vegetable matter, lumps, or balls of clay, and other deleterious substances. The gradation of the portion which will pass a 3-inch sieve shall meet the grading requirements of the following table:

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1/4" | 25-70 |
| No. 40 | 0-30 |
| No. 200 | 0-7 |

Granular subbase and gravel subbase shall not contain particles of rock which will not pass the 6-inch square mesh sieve.

Gradation tests shall conform to ASTM C136 except that the material may be separated on the 1/2-inch sieve.

5. AGGREGATE BASE

Aggregate Base shall be screened or crushed gravel consisting of hard durable particles which are free from vegetable matter, lumps or balls of clay, and other deleterious substances. The gradation shall meet the grading requirements of the following table:

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1/2" | 45-70 |
| 1/4" | 30-55 |
| No. 40 | 0-20 |
| No. 200 | 0-5 |

Screened or crushed gravel base shall not contain particles or rock which will not pass the 2-inch square mesh sieve.

Gradation tests shall conform to ASTM C136 except that the material may be separated on the 1/2-inch sieve.

6. STRUCTURAL FILL AND BACKFILL

Structural fill shall be a material free from organic matter, frozen material and other deleterious substances. Maximum particle size should not exceed two-thirds of the proposed loose lift thickness. All fill will be compacted to at least 95% of its a maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D-6938.

Fill placed adjacent to foundations as backfill will be a clean granular material meeting the gradation requirements of the following table.

| <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 4" | 100 |
| 3" | 90-100 |
| 1/4" | 25-90 |
| #40 | 0-30 |
| #200 | 0-5 |

7. REFILL MATERIAL

Refill material for replacement of unsuitable material or rock excavation below grade shall be aggregate subbase material or crushed stone of ¾-inch maximum size, free from silt, loam, and clay.

8. BEDDING MATERIAL

Where any of the above material is to be used for bedding materials, it shall further meet the following additional criteria. Bedding material shall be so graded that 100% will pass a one (1) inch screen and not more than 10% will pass a 200-mesh sieve. Gradation test results of the bedding material shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval. In the event abnormally unstable or wet conditions are encountered, bedding material shall be crushed stone, if directed by the Engineer.

2.2 UNSUITABLE MATERIAL

- A. Unsuitable soils for fill and backfill material shall include soils which, when classified under the standard method for "Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes" (ASTM D2487), fall in the classifications of Pt, OH, CH, MH, or OL.
- B. In addition, any soil containing organic matter, having a plastic limit of less than 8 percent when tested in accordance with the requirements of ASTM D4318 and containing more than 25 percent of material, by weight, passing the No. 200 sieve when analyzed according to the requirements of ANSI/ASTM D1140, or any soil which cannot be compacted sufficiently to achieve the percentage of maximum density specified for the intended use, shall be classed as unsuitable material.

2.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor shall submit testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify fill materials to be reused are acceptable.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Scarify and recompact subgrade to density required for subsequent backfill materials.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of insitu compaction. Backfill with an approved granular material and compact to a density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent backfill material.
- C. Prior to placement of aggregate subbase course material at paved areas, compact subsoil to 95 percent of its maximum dry density as analyzed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D1557 and field tested in accordance with ASTM D6938.

3.3 BACKFILLING

- A. Use suitable materials from excavations which conform to the requirements herein or are approved by the Engineer for backfill up to rough grade lines except where these specifications have more stringent or special requirements for certain parts of the contract work. Supply extra fill if there is not enough fill to complete the project. Use no material from any excavation as backfill unless approved by the Engineer.
- B. Material within two feet of finished grade in any areas to be paved or within five feet horizontally

of any structure shall contain no stone having any dimension exceeding six inches. Excess and unsuitable excavated materials shall be stockpiled onsite at the Owners discretion. In the event sufficient suitable excavated material is not available for backfill, supply a granular backfill.

- C. Place materials in layers of thicknesses specified herein but in no case greater than 12 inches before compaction. Wet backfill when necessary, uniformly to obtain required density. Compact each layer with vibratory compactors before placing next layer.
- D. In cross-country runs, trenches shall be backfilled and mounded six inches above surrounding grade in addition to the normal compaction procedure.
- E. In backfilling around structures, place material in 8-inch layers and then compact. Allow no heavy machinery within 5 feet of structure during placement. Place no material until structure can withstand the load. Place temporary backfill where required and remove when no longer required. Bring backfill up evenly on all sides of the structure.
- F. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over-porous, wet, frozen, or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- G. Maintain moisture content within 2 percent, plus or minus, of optimum moisture content of backfill materials to attain required compaction density.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01 40 00.
- B. Tests and analysis of fill material will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D1557 and with Section 01 40 00.
- C. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D6938 and with Section 01 40 00.
- D. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no cost to Owner.
- E. Frequency of Tests: Compaction Tests –
 - 1. Trench - 1 test every 300 feet varying lifts.
 - 2. Site Work / Roads - 1 test every 5,000 S.F., each lift.
- F. Proof roll compacted fill surfaces under paving.
- G. Minimum densities following compaction shall be as follows:

| <u>Fill and Backfill Location</u> | <u>Modified Proctor Density %</u> |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Top two feet under pavement | 95 |
| Under or within five feet of structures | 95 |
| Fill For Erosion Repair Areas | 92 |
| Under pavements below top two feet | 92 |
| Trenches through unpaved areas | 92 |
| In embankment (including temporary) | 92 |
| Pipe bedding and trenching | 92 |

- H. Compaction shall be accomplished by appropriate methods, i.e., vibratory compaction of granular materials, sheepsfoot compaction of cohesive materials, etc. In no case shall trench compaction be deemed adequate with the use of a non-compactive device such as a bulldozer.

The Engineer may withhold 5 percent of the monthly requisition if in his opinion proper compaction was not met. Improperly compacted materials shall be removed, replaced, or recompacted.

3.5 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of Section 01 56 00.
- B. Recompact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 25 13

EROSION CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Site preparation.
- B. Remove surface debris, clear site of plant life and grass.
- C. Remove trees and shrubs, including root systems.
- D. Install and maintain silt fencing, erosion control blanket, and other erosion control measures.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 22 13 - Rough Grading
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavating

1.3 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable codes and regulations for environmental requirements and disposal of debris.
- B. Conform to "Maine Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook for Construction: Best Management Practices, October 2016, hereinafter referred to as "Maine BMP Manual".
- C. Coordinate clearing Work with Owner.

1.4 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. The intent of this item is for the Contractor to complete any site preparation work needed for the project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Silt Fence: Standard strength, permeability of 0.3 gal/sq ft/min.
- B. Erosion Control Blanket: Excelsior blanket rated for 10 fps.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify that existing plant life and features designated to remain are tagged or identified.

3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Locate, identify and protect utilities that remain from damage.
- B. Protect trees, plant growth, and features designated to remain as final landscaping.
- C. Protect bench marks and existing structures from damage or displacement.

3.3 CLEARING

- A. Clear areas required for access to site and execution of Work.
- B. Remove trees and shrubs within areas indicated. Remove stumps, main root ball, root system and surface rock to a depth of 12 inches.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EROSION CONTROL MEASURES

- A. Silt Fence:
 - 1. Install silt fence in accordance with Maine BMP Manual.
 - 2. Install silt fence at bottom of all fill slopes and downstream edge of disturbed soil areas.
 - 3. Install silt fence at constant elevation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 38 00

GEOTEXTILES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Geotextile used as erosion control and for stabilization between fill materials.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- B. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer design data, test reports, and installation instructions.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage and Protection: Material to be wrapped in heavy duty protective covering during shipment, storage, and prior to installation.

1.5 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that site is prepared to receive geotextile.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Geotextile:
 - 1. Roadway Geotextile: Mirafi 600X, ADS Geosynthetics 315W, SKAPS W315, or approved equal.
 - 2. Erosion/Drainage Geotextile: Mirafi 160N, SKAPS GT-160, or approved equal.
- B. Substitutions: In accordance with Section 01 30 00.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Roadway Geotextile Properties
 - 1. Grab Tensile Strength: 315 lbs (ASTM-D4632)
 - 2. Grab Tensile Elongation: 12% (ASTM-D4632)
 - 3. Trapezoidal Tear Strength: 113 lbs (ASTM-D4533)
 - 4. Puncture Strength: 900 lbs (ASTM-D6241)
 - 5. Apparent Opening Size: 40 (ASTM-D4751)
 - 6. Permittivity: 0.05 (ASTM-D4491)
 - 7. Flow Rate: 4 gal/min/sf (ASTM-D4491)
 - 8. UV Resistance: 70 (ASTM-D4355)
 - 9. Weight: 6.0 oz/sy (ASTM D5261)
 - 10. Thickness: 25 mils (ASTM D5199)

B. Erosion/Drainage Geotextile Properties

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. Grab Tensile Strength: | 160 lbs | (ASTM-D4632) |
| 2. Grab Tensile Elongation: | 50% | (ASTM-D4632) |
| 3. Trapezoidal Tear Strength: | 60 lbs | (ASTM-D4533) |
| 4. Puncture Strength: | 410 lbs | (ASTM-D6241) |
| 5. Apparent Opening Size: | 70 | (ASTM-D4751) |
| 6. Permittivity: | 1.5 | (ASTM-D4491) |
| 7. Flow Rate: | 110 gal/mn/sf | (ASTM-D4491) |
| 8. UV Resistance: | 70 | (ASTM-D4355) |
| 9. Weight: | 6.5 oz/sl | (ASTM D5261) |
| 10. Thickness: | 765 mils | (ASTM D5199) |

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify that site is ready to receive geotextile.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Maintain surface free of stones or projections that may damage geotextile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.
- B. Install in maximum practical widths and lengths, with minimum of seams and joints.
- C. Provide full coverage over area where required in accordance with the drawings.

3.4 SCHEDULE

- A. Roadway Geotextile: Between Roadway Subgrade and Sub-Base Gravel.
- B. Erosion/Drainage Geotextile: Under all riprap; Between utility trench bedding material and trench backfill material.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection: Allow Engineer to inspect installation prior to placement of any backfill or riprap.
- B. Repair or replace any areas found to be unsatisfactory.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect geotextile from damage prior to placement of subsequent materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 12 16

ASPHALTIC PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Asphaltic concrete paving.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Maine Department of Transportation Standard Specifications Highways and Bridges, current edition.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with Maine Department of Transportation Standard Specification - Highway and Bridges.
- B. Mixing Plant: Conform to State of Maine Department of Transportation Standards.
- C. Obtain materials from same source throughout.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable standards for paving work on public property.

1.6 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not place asphalt when base surface temperature is less than 40 degrees F, or surface is wet or frozen.
- B. Apply bituminous prime and tack coats only when the ambient temperature in the shade is at least 50°F for 12 hours immediately prior to application.
- C. Do not apply when the base surface is wet or contains an excess of moisture which would prevent uniform distribution and the required penetration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AGGREGATE SUBBASE

- A. As specified in Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

2.2 BITUMINOUS CONCRETE BASE COURSE

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 702 and 703.
- B. 19.0 mm Binder.

2.3 BITUMINOUS TACK COAT

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 702.
- B. Type AE-90, Emulsified Asphalt, Mixing.

2.4 BITUMINOUS CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE

- A. MDOT Specification, Sections 702 and 703.
- B. 9.5 mm.

2.5 DRIVES AND OVERLAYS

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 702 and 703.
- B. 9.5 mm Fine.

2.6 TEMPORARY PATCHING

- A. Hot or cold, at Contractor's option.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Tack Coat: Homogeneous, medium curing, liquid asphalt, in accordance with State of Maine Specifications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 AGGREGATE SUBBASE

- A. As specified in Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

3.2 BITUMINOUS CONCRETE BASE COURSE

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 403.

3.3 BITUMINOUS TACK COAT

- A. Apply emulsified asphalt tack coat between all lifts, to curbing, gutters, manholes, pavement, etc.to promote adequate bond.
- B. Apply at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gallons/square yard; excess coating and/or fat spots will not be permitted.

3.4 BITUMINOUS CONCRETE SURFACE COURSE

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 403.

3.5 SIDEWALKS, DRIVES, AND SHIM

- A. MDOT Specification, Section 608.

3.6 COMPACTION

- A. Bituminous compaction shall take place at as high a temperature as possible without the mix bulging excessively in front of the rolls. For most dense graded mixes this is between 260° F and

285° F. At no time shall the pavement be allowed to fall below 175° F without compaction. Table 1, at the end of this Section, illustrates recommended laydown temperatures for various mix thickness giving 15 minutes until 175° F mat temperature is reached.

B. Pavement compacted at temperatures below 175° may be removed if specified by the Engineer.

3.7 TOLERANCES

- A. Flatness: Maximum variation of 1/4 inch measured with 10 foot straight edge.
- B. Scheduled Compacted Thickness: Within 1/4 inch.
- C. Variation from True Elevation: Within 1/2 inch.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field testing will be performed under provisions of Section 01 40 00.

3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after placement, protect pavement from mechanical injury for 3 days.

3.10 SCHEDULES

- A. Driveways and Driveway Aprons: 2" of 9.5mm HMA
- B. Roadway: Base Course: 2½" of 19.0mm HMA
 Surface Course: 1½" of 9.5mm HMA.
- C. Trench Paving: Leave not more than 300 linear feet of trench unpaved at any time.
- D. Conform to MDOT requirements for minimum laydown temperature and cessation requirements.

TABLE 1
 CESSATION REQUIREMENTS
 Recommended Minimum Laydown Temperature

| <u>Base Temp.</u> | <u>½"</u> | <u>¾"</u> | <u>1"</u> | <u>1½"</u> | <u>2"</u> | <u>3"and Greater</u> |
|--------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 20 - 32 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 285 ¹ |
| +32 - 40 | --- | --- | --- | 305 | 295 | 280 |
| +40 - 50 | --- | --- | 310 | 300 | 285 | 275 |
| +50 - 60 | --- | 310 | 300 | 295 | 280 | 270 |
| +60 - 70 | 310 | 300 | 290 | 285 | 275 | 265 |
| +70 - 80 | 300 | 290 | 285 | 280 | 270 | 265 |
| +80 - 90 | 290 | 280 | 275 | 270 | 265 | 260 |
| +90 | 280 | 275 | 270 | 265 | 260 | 255 |
| Rolling Time, Minutes | 4 | 6 | 8 | 12 | 15 | 15 |

¹ Increase by 15° when placement is on base or subbase containing frozen moisture.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 323119

DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Decorative metal fences and railings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete.
 - 2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for site excavation, fill, and backfill where decorative metal fences and gates are located.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gates. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each fence material and for each color specified.
 - 1. Provide Samples 12 inches in length for linear materials.
 - 2. Provide Samples 12 inches square for sheet or plate materials.
- D. Maintenance Data: For gate operators to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL

- A. Steel material for fence posts shall be galvanized prior to forming in accordance with the requirements of ASTM A653/A653M, with minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa). The steel shall be hot-dip galvanized to meet the requirements of ASTM A653/A653M with a minimum zinc coating weight of 0.60 oz/ft², Coating Designation G-60. Fence posts and gate posts shall meet the minimum size requirements of Table 1.
- B. Steel wire mesh fence panels shall be welded by resistance welding per ASTM A185 using 6 gauge (0.192 inch) pre-galvanized steel wire, welded at each crossing to form rectangles. Vertical 6ga. (0.192) wires shall be spaced at 2 inches; horizontal 6ga. (0.192) wires shall be spaced at 6 inches. The cold rolled wire shall have a tensile strength of at least 70,000 PSI and 74,000 PSI weld shear strength. Wire strand shall be galvanized before welded (GBW), .050 ounces per square foot zinc coating conforming to the ASTM A641.

2.2 DECORATIVE METAL FENCES

- A. Decorative Metal Fences: Fences made from metal extrusions.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ameristar Fence Products. WIREWORKS PLUS

b. Or approved equal

- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard concealed fastening system.
- C. Fabrication: Assemble fences into sections by fastening pickets to rails.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coating.

2.3 METAL FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: Black, Glossy.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, construction layout, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.
 - 1. Construction layout and field engineering are specified in Division 01 Section "Execution"

3.3 DECORATIVE FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install fences according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Post Excavation: Install in sleeve it system.
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts and sleeves and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade. Finish and slope top surface to drain water away from post.
 - b. Concealed Concrete: Top below grade as indicated on Drawings to allow covering with surface material. Slope top surface of concrete to drain water away from post.
 - 3. Posts Set in Concrete: Extend post to within 6 inches of specified excavation depth, but not closer than 3 inches to bottom of concrete.
 - 4. Posts Set into Concrete in Sleeves: Use galvanized-steel pipe sleeves with inside diameter at least 3/4 inch larger than outside diagonal dimension of post, preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts.
 - a. Extend posts at least 5 inches into sleeve.
 - b. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions; shape and smooth to shed water. Finish and slope top surface of grout to drain water away from post.

5. Space posts uniformly at 6 feet o.c.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 32 92 19

SEEDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fertilizing.
- B. Seeding.
- C. Hydroseeding.
- D. Seed Protection.
- E. Maintenance.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with all local, State and Federal regulations concerning seeding.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO):
 - 1. M145-74, Classification of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures for Highway Construction Purposes.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - 1. C 602-69 (1975), Agricultural Liming Materials.
 - 2. D 2487-69 (1975), Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes.
 - 3. D 977-73, Emulsified Asphalt.
- C. Federal Specifications:
 - 1. O-F-241, Fertilizer, Mixed, Commercial.
 - 2. O-P-166E, Peat Moss, Peat Humus, Peat, Reed-Sedge.
- D. Maine Department of Transportation (MDOT):
 - 1. Standard Specifications - Highways and Bridges.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Test Reports
 - 1. Provide analysis of topsoil fill.
 - a. Analyze to ascertain percentage of nitrogen, phosphorus, potash, soluble salt content, organic matter content, and pH value.
 - 2. Results of seed purity and germination tests.
 - 3. Results of fertilizer analysis.
 - 4. Results of peat moss analysis.

- B. Certificates
 - 1. Soil conditions and fertilizers.
 - 2. Grass seed.
 - 3. Quarantine restrictions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Tag seed, with botanical and common names.
- B. Store and protect seed from excessive heat, cold, sun, rain, wind, and other deleterious environmental conditions.
- C. Deliver fertilizer in waterproof bags showing weight, chemical analysis, and name of manufacturer.

1.7 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Place no frozen soils or extremely wet or dry soils.
- B. The seeding process shall meet the following conditions.
 - 1. Not on or in frozen or extremely wet or dry soils.
 - 2. Not between June 15 and August 15 or October 1 and April 15.
 - 3. Do not seed when wind exceeds 15 mph.

1.8 DEFINITIONS

- A. Weeds: Includes Dandelion, Jimsonweed, Quackgrass, Horsetail, Morning Glory, Rush Grass, Mustard, Lamsquarter, Chickweed, Cress, Crabgrass, Canadian Thistle, Nutgrass, Poison Oak, Blackberry, Tansy Ragwort, Bermuda Grass, Johnson Grass, Poison Ivy, Nut Sedge, Nimble Will, Bindweed, Bent Grass, Wild Garlic, Perennial Sorrel, and Brome Grass.

1.9 GUARANTEE

- A. Guarantee seed through one full growing season after planting. Replace if necessary.

1.10 MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit maintenance data for continuing Owner maintenance under provisions of Section 01 70 00.
- B. Include maintenance instructions, cutting method and maximum grass height; types, application frequency, and recommended coverage of fertilizer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSOIL

- A. See Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.

2.2 TOPSOIL

- A. See Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.
- B. See Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.

2.3 SOIL CONDITIONERS

- A. See Section 32 91 19 - Landscape Grading.

2.4 SEED

- A. Lawn Areas: MDOT 717.03, Method Number 1: Park Mixture.
- B. Other Areas: MDOT 717.03, Method Number 2: Roadside Mixture.

2.5 MULCH

- A. Clean hay, wood fiber, jute netting, cheese cloth, burlap, or asphalt emulsion (ASTM D977, Grade SS-1) as appropriate, must meet requirements of MDOT Section 619.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Herbicide: Approved chemical registered in State of Maine for stump or basal bark treatment.
- B. Stakes: Softwood lumber, chisel pointed.
- C. String: Inorganic fiber.
- D. Edging: Galvanized steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Verify that prepared topsoil is ready to receive the work of this Section.
- B. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing site conditions.

3.2 FERTILIZING

- A. Apply fertilizer at a rate of 33 pounds per 1000 square feet.
- B. Apply after smooth raking of topsoil and prior to roller compaction.
- C. Do not apply fertilizer at same time or with same machine as will be used to apply seed.
- D. Mix thoroughly into upper 2 inches with an appropriate method.
- E. Lightly water to aid the dissipation of fertilizer.
- F. Water dry topsoil to a depth of 4 inches, 48 hours prior to seeding to obtain a loose, friable seed bed.

3.3 SEEDING

- A. Apply seed at a rate of 4 lbs per 1000 sq. ft. evenly in two intersecting directions. Rake in lightly to a depth of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch. Do not seed area in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- B. Planting Season: April 15 to June 15 or August 15 to October 1.

- C. Do not sow immediately following rain, when ground is too dry, or during windy periods.
- D. Roll seeded area with roller weighing a maximum of 150 lbs/foot of width.
- E. Immediately following seeding and rolling, apply mulch to a thickness of $\frac{1}{8}$ inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- F. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.

3.4 HYDROSEEDING

- A. Apply seeded slurry at a rate of 4 lbs per 1000 sq. ft. evenly in two intersecting directions, with a hydraulic seeder. Do not hydroseed area in excess of that which can be mulched on same day.
- B. Immediately following seeding, apply mulch to a thickness of $\frac{1}{8}$ inches. Maintain clear of shrubs and trees.
- C. Apply water with a fine spray immediately after each area has been mulched. Saturate to 4 inches of soil.

3.5 SEED PROTECTION

- A. Cover seeded slopes where grade is 4 inches per foot (3:1 slope) or greater with erosion fabric. Roll fabric onto slopes without stretching or pulling.
- B. Lay fabric smoothly on surface, bury top end of each section in 6 inch deep excavated topsoil trench. Provide 12 inch overlay of adjacent rolls. Backfill trench and rake smooth, level with adjacent soil.
- C. Secure outside edges and overlaps at 36 inch intervals with stakes.
- D. Lightly dress slopes with topsoil to ensure close contact between fabric and soil.
- E. At sides of ditches, lay fabric laps in direction of water flow. Lap ends and edges minimum 6 inches.
- F. Erect warning signs and barriers to protect seeded areas.

3.6 MAINTENANCE

- A. Mow grass at regular intervals to maintain at a maximum height of 2½ inches. Do not cut more than $\frac{1}{3}$ of grass blade at any one mowing.
- B. Neatly trim edges and hand clip where necessary.
- C. Immediately remove clippings after mowing and trimming.
- D. Water to prevent grass and soil from drying out.
- E. Roll surface to remove minor depressions or irregularities.
- F. Control growth of weeds. Apply herbicides in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remedy damage resulting from improper use of herbicides.

- G. Immediately reseed areas which show bare spots.
- H. Protect seeded areas with warning signs during maintenance period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 11 13

PUBLIC WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Installation of water mains, fittings and valves.
- B. Flushing
- C. Testing.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 07 21 13 - Board Insulation.
- B. Section 31 23 16 - Excavation.
- C. Section 31 23 17 - Trenching.
- D. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.
- E. Section 33 12 16 - Water Utility Distribution Valves.
- F. Section 33 13 00 - Disinfection of Water Distribution Systems.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A21.4 Cement-mortar lining for ductile iron pipe and fittings for water.
- B. ANSI A21.10 Ductile iron and gray iron fittings 2 in. through 48 in. for water and other liquids.
- C. ANSI A21.11 Rubber-gasket joints for ductile iron and gray iron pressure pipe fittings.
- D. ANSI A21.50 Thickness design for ductile iron pipe.
- E. ANSI A21.51 Ductile iron pipe, centrifugally cast in metal molds or sand-lined molds, for water and other liquids.
- F. ANSI A21.53 Ductile iron compact fittings, 3 in. through 16 in. for water and other liquids.
- G. ANSI B18.2.1 Square and hex bolts and screws, including askew head bolts, hex cap screws, and lag screws.
- H. ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 Ductile Iron Tapping Saddles.
- I. ASTM 3035 Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter.
- J. ASTM 3350, Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fitting Materials.
- K. AWWA C500 Gate valves for water and sewerage systems.
- L. AWWA C509 Resilient-seated gate valves, for water and sewerage systems.
- M. AWWA C550 Protective epoxy interior coatings for valves and hydrants.

N. AWWA C600 Installation of ductile iron water mains and their appurtenances.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Literature: Supply copies of descriptive literature and recommendations for installation.
- B. Certificates: Supply copies of manufacturer's certification that supplied products comply with specification requirements.
- C. Contractor to submit a Temporary Water Plan, outlining the temporary water systems, as required to provide potable water to the residents/businesses throughout the construction. The Temporary Water Plan must be approved by the Owner and Engineer prior to installation.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products on manufacturer's original skids, or in original unopened protective packaging. Remove materials by lifting or skidding. Do not drop any materials.
- B. Store materials in the areas to prevent physical damage.
- C. Protect material during transportation and installation to avoid physical damage.

1.6 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Accurately record location of pipe runs, elbows, valves, and other appurtenances.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All materials, components, products, systems and coatings that come into contact with drinking water must be certified to meet NSF/ANSI Standard 61.

2.2 PIPE

- A. High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Pipe, Conforming to ASTM 3035 and 3350.
 - 1. Class: PE 3408. PE 345434C
 - 2. SDR 11.
 - 3. Joints: Butt fusion weld or Electrofusion coupling
 - 4. Nominal Size: As indicated on Contract Drawings.

2.2 FITTINGS

- A. High Density Polyethylene (HDPE)
 - 1. Fittings: Same material as pipe, molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in required "T", bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps, and other configurations required. Polyethylene fittings to be minimum SDR 11 if fabricated rather than molded.
 - 2. All PE pipe connections to fittings or valves of differing materials shall be by an Engineer approved PE Mechanical Joint Adapter. Flanges and MJ adapters shall have a material designation code of PE4710. Flanges shall be made in accordance with ASTM F2880. MJ adapters shall be made to ASTM D3261. Flanges and MJ adapters shall have a pressure rating equal to the pipe to which it is joined unless otherwise specified on the plans. Markings for molded or machined flange adapters or MJ adapters shall be per ASTM D3261. MJ adapters are the preferred connection method over mechanical fittings.

2.3 TRACER WIRE

- A. Tracer Wire shall be a direct bury wire that meets or exceeds the following requirements:
1. Conductor: 12 AWG solid strand soft drawn copper per ASTM B-3. The breaking strength of the wire shall be a minimum of 124 pounds with an O.D. of 0.174. All wire shall be spark tested at 750Q VAC.
 2. Insulation: Conductor shall be insulated with high density high molecular weight polyethylene (HDPE) insulation suitable for direct bury applications per ASTM D-1248. The minimum insulation thickness shall be 45 mil. The color of the insulation shall be blue with a print line saying "WATER".
 3. Tracer Wire System Manufacturers: Tracing Wire - Pro-Line Safety Products Co. (Pro- Pak Industries, Inc.), or approved equal.
 4. Splices: Wire is not to be spliced. Use single length of wire along pipe from valve to valve. Tee connectors along wire are to be provided for each service line.
 5. Connectors: Pigtails will be installed by Contractor on all hydrants, valve boxes, and service boxes for connection to tracer wire. Connectors should be capable of handling from 2 to 4 wires per connector and designated as CSA and UL-listed for direct bury applications. DryConn Filled Connectors for Direct Bury Use, DryConn Direct Bury Lug, Aqua (Catalog #90220) and DryConn King 6 Blue wire nuts, no substitutions. PVC adhesives or sealing compounds are not acceptable.
 6. Tracer Wire Access Box - Valvco Pipe Tracer Wire Terminal Box or equal. Tracer Wire Access Boxes (if necessary) will be supplied by Owner but tie-in will be Contractor's responsibility.

2.4 RETAINER GLANDS

- A. Mechanical joint retainer glands shall be heavy duty ductile iron body, UL or FM approved, and shall have a minimum working pressure rating as follows:
- | | |
|-------------------|---------|
| 4-inch | 350 psi |
| 6-inch | 350 psi |
| 8-inch and larger | 250 psi |

Set screws shall be either "Cor-Ten" steel, ductile iron, or approved equal. The number of set screws shall be equal to or greater than the number of nominal diameter of the gland (i.e. four-inch, four sets of screws; six-inch, six set of screws). GripRings are acceptable replacements for retainer glands for sizes 4" - 12". Larger than 12", Romac RomaGrips may be used. GripRings are not a replacement for thrust blocks. Megalugs are NOT acceptable.

2.5 BEDDING MATERIAL

- A. Bedding material for HDPE water main shall be the following:
1. Sand: Shall be well graded coarse sand without excessive fines and free from loam, clay, and organic matter. Beach sand shall not be used. The grading requirements are as follows:
- | <u>Sieve Size</u> | <u>Weight Passing (%)</u> |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 3/8" | 100 |
| No. 4 | 95-100 |
| No. 16 | 50- 85 |
| No. 50 | 0-30 |
| No. 100 | 2-10 |

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Locate no water line in same trench as sewer line unless:
1. Water line rests on solid upper shelf at trench side.
 2. 18-inch vertical separation between top of sewer pipe and bottom of water pipe.
 3. Horizontal separation between pipes:
 - a. 10-feet minimum typically.
 - b. 5-feet under extenuating circumstances such as trench ledge, providing required

vertical separation occurs.

- B. Contractor to furnish swing tie measurements for all services. Swing ties shall be measured from permanent structures; i.e. buildings, utility poles, hydrants, etc.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Conform to Manufacturer's recommendation and AWWA Standard C600 for PE pipe, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Water Main Trenches: In accordance to details as shown by Contract Drawings unless otherwise directed.
 - 1. Backfill compaction: per Section 31 23 23.
 - 2. Select material: Notice soil classified as suitable material from trench excavation free of rocks, foreign material, and frozen earth.
- C. Lay no pipe directly on ledge or rock.
- D. Provide bells with bell-hole to remove stress of backfill on unsupported pipe lengths.
- E. Place no rocks or ledge larger than 2-inches within 6 inches of DI pipe.
- F. Place backfill in maximum 12-inch lifts, compacted per Section 31 23 23.
- G. Increase compaction of successive lifts per Section 31 23 23.
- H. Do not displace or damage pipe during compaction.
- I. Continue backfill placement to grade.
- J. Top of trench to be finished and or prepared for paving.
- K. Protect pipes against impact shocks and free falls.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged pipe.
 - 2. Place and tamp sufficient bedding material over and around pipe to prevent damage and movement.
- L. Watertight plug open pipe ends when pipe laying not in progress.
- M. Joint deflection not to exceed 5 degrees.
- N. Install additional fittings as required for utility crossings.
- O. Use solid sleeves only with Engineer's approval.
- P. Cut pipe by mechanical methods without damage to pipe or cement lining leaving smooth end at right angles to axis of pipe.
- Q. Bevel cut pipe ends for use with a rubber joint conforming to manufactured spigot end.
- R. Install (4) four bronze wedges at all bell and spigot joints.
- S. Install concrete thrust blocks at fittings.
 - 1. Pour concrete backfill directly against undisturbed earth.
 - 2. Utilize retainer glands on branch line side of fittings.
 - 3. Schedule for thrust stock size provided on Contract Drawings.
- T. Clean pipe of all debris, e.g. rocks, gravel, etc., prior to making connection to existing water main.

3.3 JOINTING PIPE

- A. Joint pipe according to manufacturer's instruction.
- B. Mechanical joint fittings.
 - 1. Place gland and gasket over insertion pipe end.
 - 2. Mechanically fasten to bell end with "T" bolts.
 - 3. Deflect joints after assembly and before bolt tightening.
 - 4. Tighten bolts to 75-90 ft-lbs of torque (normal range for 4 to 24 inch diameter pipe with ¾ inch bolt size).
 - a. Tighten to normal bolt torque range.
 - b. Maintain same distance between gland and face of flange by partially tightening bolts on opposite sides of the joint until all bolts are within the appropriate range of torque.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Set and join valves to pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set valve box plumb with cover flush with finish grade or as otherwise directed.

3.5 FLUSHING

- A. Prior to testing and disinfection, flush the main to remove particulates. The flushing velocity in the main shall be no less than 2.5 feet/second unless the Engineer determines that conditions do not permit the required flow.
- B. The following table indicates rates of flow required to produce a velocity of 2.5 feet /second in pipes of various sizes.

| REQUIRED FLOW and OPENINGS to FLUSH PIPELINES (40 psi residual pressure in water main)* | | | | | |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|------|----|------------------------------------|
| Pipe Size | Flow Required to Produce 2.5 ft/s (approx.) Velocity in Main | Size of Tap (Inches) | | | Number of 2.5 in. Hydrant Outlets* |
| | | 1" | 1.5" | 2" | |
| | | Number of Taps on Pipe† | | | |
| 4" | 100 gpm | 1 | - | - | 1 |
| 6" | 200 gpm | - | 1 | - | 1 |
| 8" | 400 gpm | - | 2 | 1 | 1 |
| 10" | 600 gpm | - | 3 | 2 | 1 |
| 12" | 900 gpm | - | - | 2 | 2 |
| 16" | 1600 gpm | - | - | 4 | 2 |

* With a 40-psi pressure in the main with the hydrant flowing to atmosphere, a 2½" hydrant outlet will discharge approximately 1,000 gpm and a 4½" hydrant outlet will discharge approximately 2,500 gpm.

† Number of taps on pipe based on discharge through 5 feet of galvanized pipe with one 90° elbow.

- C. Accomplish flushing by partially opening and closing valves and hydrants several times under expected line pressure.
- D. Contractor shall coordinate energizing the main

3.6 TESTING

- A. Contact local utility prior to all testing. Provide all labor, equipment, material, gauges, pumps, etc., to test for leaks in accordance with AWWA Standard C600 as follows:
 - 1. Test newly laid pipe and valved sections at hydrostatic pressure of at least 1.5 times

- working pressure at test location.
- a. Test pressure: Not less than 1.25 times working pressure at highest point along line.
 - b. Test pressure: Not to exceed pipe or thrust restraint design pressures.
 - c. Test duration: 2 hours, minimum.
 - d. Pressure variation tolerance: less than +5 psi.
 - e. Test pressure not to exceed valve or hydrant pressure ratings on sections including closed valves or hydrants.
2. Pressurization of Pipe
 - a. Fill each valved pipe section slowly with water at specified test pressure.
 - b. Apply by means of pump or other approved method.
 3. Air Removal
 - a. Expel all air from pipe, valves, and hydrants before applying test pressure.
 - b. Install corporation stops at high point to vent air if no release valves available.
 - c. After air removal close stops and apply test pressure.
 - d. After test, remove stops and plug holes or leave stops in place permanently if directed by Engineer. Test water to be removed from site and not allowed to remain in trench or on site or cause erosion.
 4. Examination
 - a. Examine exposed pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, and joints during test.
 - b. Repair or replace defective appurtenances discovered during test.
 5. Leakage Test
 - a. Leakage: Quantity of water supplied to pipe test section to maintain pressure within +5 psi.
 - b. Leakage shall not exceed the following limits:
$$L = \frac{SD\sqrt{P}}{133,20}$$

L = allowable leakage, in gallons per hour (gph)
S = length of pipe tested in feet
D = nominal pipe diameter, in inches
P = average pressure during test, in pounds per square inch (gauge)
 - c. When testing against closed Metal-seated valves, an additional leakage per closed valve of 0.0078 gph/inch of nominal valve size shall be allowed.
 - d. Repair visible leaks regardless of leakage amount.
 - e. If failing leakage tests:
 1. Locate and correct leak.
 2. Repeat leakage test until passing test attained.
 - f. HDPE Pipe Leakage Conduct hydrostatic leakage testing per ASTM F2164 and PPI TN-46. The test pressure shall be limited to a minimum of 1.5 x working pressure (and a maximum of 1.5 x PC) and shall not exceed the rating of the lowest component. In a fused HDPE water piping system, no leakage shall be present. If the test fails, the test section shall be depressurized and allowed to 'relax' for at least eight hours before starting the next testing sequence. Leaks, failure or defective construction shall be promptly repaired by the Contractor at the Contractor's sole expense. The Contractor is responsible for the safety of their employees during the testing and repair.

3.7 DISINFECTION OF PIPELINE

- A. Conform to State Public Health Department code or regulation for performing the work of this Section.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from local Utility District indicating approval of water system.
- C. Verify that piping system has been cleaned, inspected, and pressure tested.
- D. Perform scheduling and disinfection activity with start-up, testing, adjusting and balancing, demonstration procedures, including coordination with related systems.

- E. Disinfect all new pipelines prior to being placed in service. Contact local Utility prior to disinfection and provide plan of action. Perform disinfection of water system in accordance with AWWA C651.
- F. Provide and attach required equipment to perform the work of this Section.
- G. Inject treatment disinfectant into piping system.
- H. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- I. Test samples in accordance with AWWA C651. The Town of Castine and/or their assigned agent will collect samples for testing. Contractor to coordinate collection of water samples with the Town of Castine and/or their assigned agent.
- J. Flush, circulate and clean until required cleanliness is achieved; use municipal domestic water.
- K. Replace permanent system devices removed for disinfection.
- L. Dechlorinate wasted water as directed by the Engineer to thoroughly neutralize the residual chlorine.
- M. Following a successful round of disinfection testing the Contractor shall coordinate opening the new main with the Town of Castine and/or their assigned agent.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 12 16

WATER UTILITY DISTRIBUTION VALVES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and incidentals required and provide all buried valves and all accessories as shown on the Drawings and as specified herein.

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 31 23 23 - Backfill.
- B. Section 31 23 17 - Trenching.
- C. Section 33 11 13 - Public Water Utility Distribution Piping.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall include the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's literature, illustrations, specifications and engineering data including:
 - a. Dimensions.
 - b. Size.
 - c. Materials of construction.
 - d. Weight.
 - e. Protection coating.
- B. Test Reports
 - 1. Four copies of all certified shop test results specified herein.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals
 - 1. Submit complete operation and maintenance manuals including copies of all approved Shop Drawings.
- D. Certificates
 - 1. Certificates of compliance where required by referenced standards: For each valve specified to be manufactured and/or installed in accordance with AWWA and other standards, submit an affidavit of compliance with the appropriate standards, including certified results of required tests and certification of proper installation.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions and recommendations of the following, except as otherwise shown or specified.
- B. American Water Works Association (AWWA)
 - 1. AWWA C111 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron and Pressure Pipe and Fittings.
 - 2. AWWA C500 - Metal-Seated Gate Valves, for Water Supply Service.
 - 3. AWWA C502 - Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants.
 - 4. AWWA C504 - Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves.
 - 5. AWWA C509 - Resilient-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service.
- C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)

1. ANSI B16.1 – Cast Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings.
- D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
 1. ASTM A48 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings.
 2. ASTM A126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges and Pipe Fittings
 3. ASTM A153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
 4. ASTM A276 - Standard Specification for Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes.
 5. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings.
- E. Steel Structure Painting Council (SSPC)
 1. SSPC SP-6 - Joint Surface Standard Commercial Blast Cleaning
- F. Where reference is made to one of the above standards, the revision in effect at the time of bid opening shall apply.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications
 1. Valves and appurtenances provided under this Section shall be the standard product in regular production by manufacturers whose products have proven reliable in similar service for at least 5 years. If required, the manufacturer shall furnish evidence of installation in satisfactory operation.
 2. All units of the same type shall be the product of one manufacturer.
- B. Design Criteria
 1. All valves and appurtenances shall be new and in perfect working condition. Valves shall be designed for continuous use with a minimum of maintenance and service required and shall perform the required function without exceeding the safe limits for stress, strain or vibration. In no case will used or damaged valves be acceptable. The selection of equipment to meet the specified design conditions is the responsibility of the Contractor. Both workmanship and material shall be of the very best quality and shall be entirely suitable for the service conditions specified.
- C. Source Quality Control
 1. Valves shall be shop tested in accordance with the following:
 - a. Gate valves: AWWA C500.
 2. Obtain each type of valve from no more than one manufacturer.

1.6 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General
 1. All valves and appurtenances shall be suitable for use on potable water systems.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the site to ensure uninterrupted progress of the work.
- B. Protect threads and seats from corrosion and damage. Rising stems and exposed stem valves shall be coated with a protective oil film which shall be maintained until time of use.
- C. Furnish covers for all openings.
 1. All valves 3-in and larger shall be shipped and stored on site until time of use with wood or plywood covers on each valve end.
 2. All valves smaller than 3-in shall be shipped and stored as above except that heavy card board covers may be furnished instead of wood.

- D. Store equipment to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Any corrosion in evidence at the time of Owner acceptance shall be removed, or the valve shall be removed from the job.
- E. Store all equipment in covered storage off the ground.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Review installation procedures under other Sections and coordinate with the work which is related to this Section including buried piping installation, site utilities, control building construction, storage tank construction, heating, ventilating and air conditioning, and plumbing.
- B. Coordinate the location and placement of concrete thrust blocks when required.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Valves: American Cast Iron Pipe Company or Approved Equal.
- B. Mechanical Joints: Grip Ring by Romac Industries or Approved Equal.

2.2 GENERAL

- A. All buried valves shall open counter-clockwise (left).
- B. The use of a manufacturer's name and/or model or catalog number is for the purpose of establishing the standard of quality and general configuration desired.
- C. Valves shall be of the size shown on the Drawings or as noted and as far as possible equipment of the same type shall be identical and from one manufacturer.
- D. Valves shall have the name of the maker, nominal size, flow directional arrows, working pressure for which they are designed and standard to which they are manufactured cast in raised letters on some appropriate part of the body.
- E. Unless otherwise noted, valves shall have a minimum working pressure of 200 psi or be of the same working pressure as the pipe they connect to, whichever is higher, and suitable for the pressures noted where they are installed.
- F. Valves shall be of the same nominal diameter as the pipe or fittings they are connected to. Except as otherwise noted, joints shall be mechanical joints, with joint restraint where the adjacent piping is required to be restrained.
- G. Valves shall be especially constructed for buried service.

2.3 VALVE BOXES

- A. All gate and butterfly valves shall be provided with operating nuts and valve boxes as follows:
 - 1. Valve boxes shall be a heavy-pattern cast iron, three-piece, telescoping type box with dome base suitable for installation on the buried valves. Inside diameter shall be at least 4-1/2-in. Barrel length shall be adapted to the depth of cover, valve box bottom section shall be 5-feet long and valve box top section shall be 2-feet long, with a lap of at least 6-inches

when in the most extended position. Covers shall be cast iron with "WATER" clearly cast into the cover. Aluminum or plastic are not acceptable.

2. The upper section of each box shall have a top flange of sufficient bearing area to prevent settling. The bottom of the lower section shall enclose the stuffing box and operating nut of the valve and shall be oval.

2.4 RESILIENT SEATED GATE VALVES

- A. End connections: Mechanical joint (MJ) conforming to AWWA Standard C509. Provide tapping end connections at tapping sleeves.
- B. Dual O-ring seals and bronze stem, exceeding AWWA C500 requirements.
- C. Epoxy coated inside and outside.
- D. Ductile iron body.
- E. American Series 2500 RW Gate Valve, or approved equal.
- F. Size: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
- G. Operation: Counter-clockwise (left) opening and non-rising stem (NRS).
- H. Operating Nut: 2-inch square shafts shall be designed to provide a factor of safety of not less than four operating nuts shall be pinned to the shafts.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION AND PREPARATION

- A. During installation of all valves and appurtenances, verify that all items are clean, free of defects in material and workmanship and function properly.
- B. All valves shall be closed and kept closed until otherwise directed by the Engineer.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF BURIED VALVES AND VALVE BOXES

- A. Buried valves shall be cleaned and manually operated before installation. Buried valves and valve boxes shall be set with the stem vertically aligned in the center of the valve box. Valves shall be set on a firm foundation and supported by tamping pipe bedding material under the sides of the valve. The valve box shall be supported during backfilling and maintained in vertical alignment with the top flush with finish grade. The valve box shall be set so as not to transmit traffic loads to the valve.
- B. Before backfilling, all exposed portions of any bolts shall be coated with two coats of bituminous paint.

3.3 FIELD TESTS AND ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Conduct a functional field test of each valve, including actuators and valve control equipment, in presence of Engineer to demonstrate that each part and all components together function correctly. All testing equipment required shall be furnished by the Contractor.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 13 00

DISINFECTION OF WATER UTILITY SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Disinfection of potable water distribution system.
- B. Testing and reporting results.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 33 11 13 - Public Water Utility Distribution Piping.
- B. Section 33 12 16 - Water Utility Distribution Valves.
- C. Section 33 12 19 - Water Utility Distribution Fire Hydrants.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AWWA C651- Standard for Disinfecting Water Mains.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Testing Procedure: Indicate proposed methodology in advance for approval of Engineer and local utility district.
- B. Test Reports: Indicate results comparative to specified requirements.
 - 1. Certificate: Certify that cleanliness of water distribution system meets or exceeds specified requirements.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 70 00.
- B. Disinfection report:
 - 1. Type and form of disinfectant used.
 - 2. Date and time of disinfectant injection start and time of completion.
 - 3. Test locations.
 - 4. Initial and 24 hour disinfectant residuals (quantity in treated water) in parts per million (ppm) for each outlet tested.
 - 5. Date and time of flushing start and completion.
 - 6. Disinfectant residual after flushing in ppm for each outlet tested.
- C. Bacteriological report; record:
 - 1. Date issued, project name, and testing laboratory name, address, and telephone number.
 - 2. Time and date of water sample collection.
 - 3. Name of person collecting samples.
 - 4. Test locations.
 - 5. Initial and 24 hour disinfectant residuals in ppm for each outlet tested.
 - 6. Certification that water conforms, or fails to conform, to bacterial standards of State Public Health Department.
 - 7. Bacteriologist's signature and authority.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with AWWA C651.

1.7 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to State Public Health Department code or regulation for performing the work of this Section.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from local Utility District indicating approval of water system.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping system has been cleaned, inspected, and pressure tested.
- B. Perform scheduling and disinfection activity with start-up, testing, adjusting and balancing, demonstration procedures, including coordination with related systems.

2.2 EXECUTION

- A. Provide and attach required equipment to perform the work of this Section.
- B. Inject treatment disinfectant into piping system.
- C. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- D. Flush, circulate and clean until required cleanliness is achieved; use municipal domestic water.
- E. Replace permanent system devices removed for disinfection.
- F. Dechlorinate wasted water as directed by the Engineer to thoroughly neutralize the residual chlorine.

2.3 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test samples in accordance with AWWA C651.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 31 00

SANITARY SEWAGE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Forcemain Piping.
- B. Service Lateral and connection to existing sewer system.
- C. Fittings.
- D. Testing.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 01 33 00 - Submittal Procedure
- B. Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements
- C. Section 01 77 00 - Closeout Procedures
- D. Section 31 23 16 - Excavating
- E. Section 31 23 17 - Trenching
- F. Section 31 23 23 - Backfilling
- G. Section 33 31 14 – Manholes, Structures, Catch Basins, Frames and Covers

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A21.4 Cement-mortar lining for ductile iron pipe and fittings for water.
- B. ANSI A21.10 Ductile iron and gray iron fittings 2 in. through 48 in. for water and other liquids.
- C. ANSI A21.11 Rubber-gasket joints for ductile iron and gray iron pressure pipe fittings.
- D. ANSI A21.50 Thickness design for ductile iron pipe.
- E. ANSI A21.51 Ductile iron pipe, centrifugally cast in metal molds or sand-lined molds, for water and other liquids.
- F. ANSI A21.53 Ductile iron compact fittings, 3 in. through 16 in. for water and other liquids.
- G. ANSI B18.2.1 Square and hex bolts and screws, including askew head bolts, hex cap screws, and lag screws.
- H. ASTM D3035 Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Plastic Pipe (DR-PR) Based on Controlled Outside Diameter.
- I. ASTM D3350: Standard Specification for Polyethylene Plastic Pipe and Fittings Materials.

- J. ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 Ductile Iron Tapping Saddles.
- K. AWWA C600 Installation of ductile iron water mains and their appurtenances.
- L. AWWA C906 Standard for Polyethylene (PE) Pressure Pipe and Fittings, 4" (100 mm) through 63" (1,575 mm) for Water Distribution and Transmission.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00:
 - 1. Product data for pipe, pipe accessories including documentation that products comply with specification requirements.
 - 2. Manufacturer's recommendations and instructions for installation.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 70 00:
 - 1. Documents for requirements of Contract closeout, including but not limited to, warranties, testing, adjusting, spare parts, etc.
 - 2. Accurately record location of pipe runs, connections, manholes, and invert elevations.
 - 3. Field measurements for locating ends of unconnected service laterals.
 - 4. Identify and describe unexpected variations to subsoil conditions or discovery of uncharted utilities.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products on manufacturer's original skids, or in original unopened protective packaging.
- B. Store materials to prevent physical damage.
- C. Protect material during transportation and installation to avoid physical damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. HDPE Pipe - JM Eagle, Inc., or approved equal.
- B. Ductile Iron Pipe - U.S. Pipe, or approved equal.
- C. Couplings - Fernco, Inc., or approved equal.
- D. Substitutions: In accordance with Section 01 60 00.

2.2 FORCEMAIN PIPE MATERIALS

- A. High Density Polyethylene (HDPE) Pipe, Conforming to ASTM 3035 and 3350.
 - 1. Class: PE 3408. PE 345434C
 - 2. SDR 11
 - 3. Nominal Size: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
 - 4. Joints: Butt fusion weld or Electrofusion coupling

- B. Ductile Iron: Class 54, double cement lined pipe, conforming to ANSI A21.50, A21.51, and A21.4.
 - 1. Joints shall be rubber gasketed push-on joint type. Gaskets shall be made of SBR Rubber. For force main located within petroleum hydrocarbon and/or chlorinated solvent contaminated soils, gaskets shall be made of oil resistant Buna-N (Nitrile) Rubber. When contaminated soil is encountered unexpectedly in the field, Contractor shall immediately notify the Engineer. All joints shall be in conformance with the requirements of ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.
 - 2. All pipe and fittings: Cement and mortar lined and bituminous seal coated per ANSI A21.4 except:
 - a. Cement lining thickness of 1/8 inch with plus 1/8 inch tolerance.
 - 3. Pipe and fitting exteriors: Zinc coated in accordance with ISO 8179-1 with Asphaltic Top Coat per AWWA C151, C110, and C153.
 - 4. Nominal Size: As indicated on Contract Drawings.

2.3 PIPE ACCESSORIES

- A. Fittings: Same material as pipe, molded or formed to suit pipe size and end design, in wyes, bends, elbows, cleanouts, reducers, traps, and other configurations required.
- B. Forcemain Valves
 - 1. Gate Valve
 - a. Valves 2"-12" shall be resilient wedge type rates for 250 psi cold water working pressure.
 - b. End Connections: Mechanical joint (MJ) conforming to AWWA C5091.
 - c. Dual O-ring seals and bronze stem, exceeding C500 requirements.
 - d. Ductile Iron Body.
 - e. Epoxy coated internal and external surfaces.
 - f. Wedge shall be ductile iron or bronze encapsulated with EPDM rubber.
 - g. Size: As indicated on Contract Drawings.
 - h. Operation: Open right (Clockwise).
 - 1. Two-inch Square operating nut with Non-Rising Stem.
 - i. Gate Valves shall be American Flow Control Series 2500 or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that trench cut is ready to receive work, and excavations, locations, dimensions, and elevations are as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Excavate test pits as necessary to verify locations and grades of existing utilities.
- C. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hand trim excavations to required elevations. Correct over-excavation with ¾-inch crushed stone.
- B. Remove large stones or other hard matter which could damage pipes or impede consistent bedding, backfilling, or compaction.

3.3 FORCEMAIN PIPE INSTALLATION

- A. Install pipes, fittings, and accessories according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place pipe on minimum six-inch deep bedding.
- C. Lay pipe to alignment, slope gradient and elevations noted on Drawings.
- D. Joints and joint material conforming to manufacturer's recommendation.
- E. Lay pipe without break, upgrade from structure to structure with bell end upstream.
- F. Install bedding at bottom sides and over top of pipe, at depths shown on Drawings.
- G. Manually "chink" bedding around pipe haunches for lateral support.
 - 1. Do not mechanically compact crushed stone over flexible pipe.
- H. Install and bed pipe up to spring line; do not cover pipe without the presence of the Resident Project Representative (RPR).
 - 1. Work backfilled without presence of RPR shall be uncovered at Contractor's expense.
- I. Place bedding material over pipe as indicated on drawings.
- J. Backfill and secure each pipe length prior to installing next length.
- K. Continue backfill placement to finish grade level as per Section 31 23 23.
 - 1. Place material in maximum 12-inch lifts, compact per Section 31 23 23.
 - 2. Increase compaction of each successive lift per Section 31 23 23.
 - 3. Do not displace or damage pipe during compaction.
- L. Protect pipes against impact shocks and free falls.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged pipe.
 - 2. Place and tamper sufficient bedding material over and around pipe to prevent damage and movement.
- M. Install a watertight plug-in open pipe ends when pipe laying not in progress.
- N. Do not use pipe as trench drain.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Examine pipes for defects, weak structural components, and deviations allowable tolerances.
- B. Remove rejected materials from job site.
- C. Obtain Engineer certification and installation conformance to specifications prior to backfilling.
- D. Install pipe to lines and grades shown on Contract Drawings.
- E. Allowable Tolerances.
 - 1. Pipe elevation: plus or minus 0.02 feet/100 feet.

2. Horizontal layout: plus or minus 0.03 feet/100 feet.

3.9 FORCEMAIN PIPE TESTING

- A. Provide all labor, equipment, material, gauges, pumps, etc., to test for leaks in accordance with AWWA Standard C600 as follows:
 1. Test newly laid pipe and valved sections at hydrostatic pressure of at least 1.5 times working pressure at test location.
 - a. Test pressure: Not less than 1.25 times working pressure at highest point along line.
 - b. Test pressure: Not to exceed pipe or thrust restraint design pressures.
 - c. Test duration: Two hours, minimum.
 - d. Pressure variation tolerance: less than +5 psi.
 - e. Test pressure not to exceed valve or fitting pressure ratings.
 2. Pressurization of Pipe
 - a. Fill each valved pipe section slowly with water at specified test pressure.
 - b. Apply by means of pump or other approved method.
 3. Air Removal
 - a. Expel all air from pipe, valves, and hydrants before applying test pressure.
 - b. Install corporation stops at high point to vent air if no release valves available.
 - c. After air removal close stops and apply test pressure.
 - d. After test, remove stops and plug holes or leave stops in place permanently if directed by Engineer. Test water to be removed from site and not allowed to remain in trench or on site or cause erosion.
 4. Examination
 - a. Examine exposed pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, and joints during test.
 - b. Repair or replace defective appurtenances discovered during test.
 5. Leakage Test
 - a. Leakage: Quantity of water supplied to pipe test section to maintain pressure within +5 psi.
 - b. Leakage shall not exceed the following limits:
$$L = \frac{SD\sqrt{P}}{133,200}$$

L = allowable leakage, in gallons per hour (gph)
S = length of pipe tested in feet
D = nominal pipe diameter, in inches
P = average pressure during test, in pounds per square inch (gauge)
 - c. When testing against closed Metal-seated valves, an additional leakage per closed valve of 0.0078 gph/inch of nominal valve size shall be allowed.
 - d. Repair visible leaks regardless of leakage amount.
 - e. If failing leakage tests:
 1. Locate and correct leak.
 2. Repeat leakage test until passing test attained.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 33 71 19

ELECTRICAL UNDERGROUND DUCTS, DUCTBANKS, AND MANHOLES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Conduit and duct:
 - 1. Galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
 - 2. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit.
 - 3. Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC).
- B. Precast concrete manholes.
- C. Accessories:
 - 1. Underground warning tape.

1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- B. Section 221006 - Plumbing Piping Specialties.
- C. Section 312316 - Excavation.
- D. Section 312316.13 - Trenching: Excavating, bedding, and backfilling.
- E. Section 312323 - Fill: Bedding and backfilling.

1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C80.1 - American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC) 2020.
- B. ASTM A48/A48M - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings 2022.
- C. ASTM C857 - Standard Practice for Minimum Structural Design Loading for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures 2019.
- D. ASTM C858 - Standard Specification for Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures 2019.
- E. ASTM C891 - Standard Practice for Installation of Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures 2020.
- F. ASTM C1037 - Standard Practice for Inspection of Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures 2016.
- G. ASTM D1002 - Standard Test Method for Apparent Shear Strength of Single-Lap-Joint Adhesively Bonded Metal Specimens by Tension Loading (Metal-to-Metal) 2010 (Reapproved 2019).
- H. ASTM D1598 - Standard Test Methods for Time-to-Failure of Plastic Pipe Under Constant Internal Pressure 2021.
- I. ASTM D1599 - Standard Test Method for Resistance to Short-Time Hydraulic Pressure of Plastic Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings 2018.

- J. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code(R) (NESC(R)) 2023.
- K. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable 2014.
- L. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit 2020.
- M. NEMA TC 3 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing 2021.
- N. NEMA TC 6&8 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installations 2020.
- O. NEMA TC 7 - Solid-Wall Coilable and Straight Electrical Polyethylene Conduit 2021.
- P. NEMA TC 9 - Fittings for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Plastic Utilities Duct for Underground Installation 2020.
- Q. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- R. UL 6 - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- T. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- U. UL 746C - Polymeric Materials – Use in Electrical Equipment Evaluations Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- V. UL 2420 - Belowground Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC) and Fittings Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- W. UL 2515 - Aboveground Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC) and Fittings Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide for metallic conduit, nonmetallic conduit, and manhole accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, reinforcement, size and locations of openings, and accessory locations for precast manholes.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under Quality Assurance. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing and elevations of underground conduit and duct, and locations and sizes of manholes.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.

- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience and with service facilities within 100 miles (160 km) of Project.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 CONDUIT AND DUCT

- A. Galvanized Steel Rigid Metal Conduit (RMC): NFPA 70, Type RMC; comply with ANSI C80.1 and list and label as complying with UL 6.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit; www.alliedeg.com/#sle.
 - b. Republic Conduit; www.republic-conduit.com/#sle.
 - c. Wheatland Tube, a Division of Zekelman Industries; www.wheatland.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Fittings: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and list and label as complying with UL 514B; steel or malleable iron, threaded type.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) Bridgeport Fittings Inc; www.bptfittings.com/#sle.
 - 2) O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co; www.emerson.com/#sle.
 - 3) Thomas & Betts Corporation; www.tnb.com/#sle.
- B. Rigid Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit: NFPA 70, Type PVC; comply with NEMA TC 2 and list and label as complying with UL 651; Schedule 40 unless otherwise indicated; rated for use with conductors rated 90 degrees C.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cantex Inc; www.cantexinc.com/#sle.
 - b. Carlon, a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation; www.carlon.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 - 2. Fittings: Comply with NEMA TC 3 and list and label as complying with UL 651.
 - a. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
- C. Reinforced Thermosetting Resin Conduit (RTRC) and Fittings: NFPA 70, Type RTRC; list and label as complying with UL 2420 or UL 2515.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Champion Fiberglass, Inc; www.championfiberglass.com/#sle.
 - b. FRE Composites USA, Inc; www.frecomposites.com/#sle.
 - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive for HDPE Conduit and RTRC:
 - 1. Specifically designed for bonding dissimilar materials in lieu of transition fittings, including but not limited to polyethylene, fiberglass, PVC, aluminum, and steel; UL 746C recognized.
 - 2. Approved by adhesive manufacturer for use with materials to be joined.
 - 3. Adhesive Shear Strength: Not less than 100 psi (720 kPa), when tested in accordance with ASTM D1002.
 - 4. Hydrostatic Pressure Resistance: No leaks, when tested in accordance with ASTM D1598 at 120 psi (830 kPa) for 1,000 hours and when tested in accordance with ASTM D1599 at 250 psi (1700 kPa).

5. Products:
 - a. American Polywater Corporation; Polywater BonDuit Conduit Adhesive: www.polywater.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Duct Bank Spacers: Nonmetallic; designed for maintaining conduit/duct spacing for concrete encasement in open trench installation; suitable for the conduit/duct arrangement to be installed.
 1. Products:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, LLC; Duct Bank Spacers: www.apsonline.com/#sle.
 - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- C. Underground Warning Tape: Polyethylene tape suitable for direct burial.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Brady Corporation; www.bradyid.com/#sle.
 - b. Brimar Industries, Inc; www.brimar.com/#sle.
 - c. Seton Identification Products; www.seton.com/#sle.
 - d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
 2. Foil-backed Detectable Type Tape: 3 inches (76 mm) wide, with minimum thickness of 5 mil (0.1 mm), unless otherwise required for proper detection.
 3. Legend: Type of service, continuously repeated over full length of tape.
 4. Color:
 - a. Tape for Buried Power Lines: Black text on red background.
 - b. Tape for Buried Communication, Alarm, and Signal Lines: Black text on orange background.

2.03 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Precast Manholes: Inspect in accordance with ASTM C1037.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify routing and termination locations of duct bank prior to excavation for rough-in.
- C. Verify locations of manholes prior to excavating for installation.
- D. Duct bank routing is shown in approximate locations unless dimensions are indicated. Route as required to complete duct system.
- E. Manhole locations are shown in approximate locations unless dimensions are indicated. Locate as required to complete ductbank system.

3.02 DUCT BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct to locate top of ductbank at depths as indicated on drawings.
- B. Install duct with minimum slope of 4 inches per 100 feet (100 mm per 25.4 m) (0.33 percent). Slope duct away from building entrances.
- C. Cut duct square using saw or pipe cutter; de-burr cut ends.
- D. Insert duct to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.

- E. Join nonmetallic duct using adhesive as recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Wipe nonmetallic duct dry and clean before joining. Apply full even coat of adhesive to entire area inserted in fitting. Allow joint to cure for 20 minutes, minimum.
- G. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends between pull points.
- H. Provide suitable fittings to accommodate expansion and deflection where required.
- I. Terminate duct at manhole entries using end bell.
- J. Stagger duct joints vertically in concrete encasement 6 inches (150 mm) minimum.
- K. Use suitable separators and chairs installed not greater than 4 feet (1200 mm) on centers.
- L. Band ducts together before backfilling.
- M. Securely anchor duct to prevent movement during concrete placement.
- N. Place concrete under provisions of Section 033000. Use mineral pigment to color concrete red.
- O. Provide minimum 3 inch (75 mm) concrete cover at bottom, top, and sides of ductbank.
- P. Provide two No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in top of bank under paved areas.
- Q. Provide suitable pull string in each empty duct except sleeves and nipples.
- R. Swab duct. Use suitable caps to protect installed duct against entrance of dirt and moisture.
- S. Interface installation of underground warning tape with backfilling. Install tape 6 inches (150 mm) below finished surface.

3.03 PRE-CAST MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. Excavate for manhole installation under the provisions of Section 312316.
- B. Install and seal precast sections in accordance with ASTM C891.
- C. Install manholes plumb.
- D. Use precast neck and shaft sections to bring manhole cover to finished elevation.
- E. Install drains in manholes and connect to 4 inch (DN100) pipe terminating in 1/3 cu yd (1/4 cu m) crushed gravel bed under provisions of Section 221006.
- F. Backfill manhole excavation under the provisions of Section 312323.

END OF SECTION